

THE
ITURRALDE
METHOD

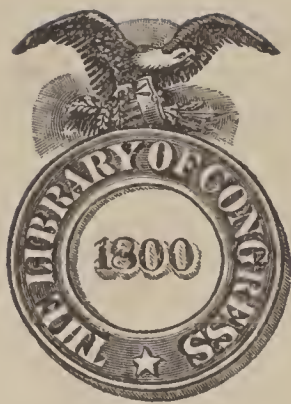
FOR THE STUDY OF

SPANISH

WITH THE AID OF

PHONOGRAPHIC

RECORDS



Class PC4111

Book I82

Copyright N^o cop. 1/2

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

The Iturralde Method

(For the Study of Spanish with the
Aid of Phonographic Records)

By

Máximo Iturralde, B.S. (in Ped.)

Assistant Professor of Spanish

NEW YORK UNIVERSITY SCHOOL OF COMMERCE,
ACCOUNTS AND FINANCE

Formerly in charge of the Spanish Classes at the National
City Bank; Guaranty Trust Company; Bankers Trust
Company; New York Chapter of the American Institute
of Banking, and other institutions



The Iturralde Language Method Company
13 Astor Place (Alexander Hamilton Hall) New York

1922

copy 2

PC 4-111
I 82
copy 2

Copyright, 1922
by
Máximo Iturralde ✓

All rights reserved in all Spanish-speaking countries

Printed in the United States of America



FEB -4 1922 ✓ R

© M. A 654538 ✓

To
JOSÉ MARDONES
THE FAMOUS BASSO OF THE
METROPOLITAN OPERA COMPANY
AS AN EXPRESSION OF GRATITUDE
FOR HIS INVALUABLE LESSONS IN
THE ART OF VOICE PRODUCTION
AND AS A TOKEN OF SINCERE
FRIENDSHIP

B316/222

Deficiencies, inherent in every human work, will undoubtedly be found in the pages which follow. A hearty welcome will be accorded to communications offering constructive criticisms.

PREFACE

THE only people who claim that a language can be learned in ten, twenty or thirty lessons, are those who are not sufficiently informed or those who for personal reasons misrepresent the facts.

It is quite true that in ten, twenty or thirty lessons, of one hour's duration, it is possible to learn, with any method, a certain number of words or conversational phrases. But it is also quite true that this acquirement is only a mere smattering of the language studied, which gives the student neither the ability nor the fluency to acceptably express his thoughts in articulated or written form.

No reasonable proficiency in a foreign tongue, i.e., no adequate knowledge which enables the average student to reveal his personality, in speech and in writing, can be obtained in less than two, three and even more years of serious study and practice the way that languages are now taught and studied.

Languages are now taught and studied, outside of the schools and in nearly all the private and public institutions of learning, by methods which are, as a rule, methodless.

In these methods the pronunciation of the language which is taken into consideration is imperfectly and incompletely offered; the presentation of the tenses of the verb is made at random, in a very unsystematic fashion; the proper development of the subject matter, whether of a theoretical or practical character, is absent.

These methods may be grouped, in a general way, under these three heads:

1. The purely grammatical, with material for translation, which takes grammar as an end in itself and not as a means to obtain an end. This method is, at its best, a failure because it does not succeed in teaching the language. It only teaches its mechanism.

2. The purely conversational which disregards the grammar. This method, frequently defended and praised by many, only produces superficial results even in its happiest manifestations. This is due to the fact that to learn a language without grammar is like building a house disregarding the laws of correct construction.

3. The combined conversational and grammatical method which is at present in its embryonic stage, and which, on this account, does not produce the results which it is bound to produce when it achieves full growth.

The basic principle of the latter method, which blends the material for conversation with the essential rules of grammar, is the one which this work adopts.

This basic principle is adopted because it is the best for imparting knowledge in a more thorough, comprehensive and systematic way than by any other means when conversing, translating or composing. Also because it compels the student to use, in a higher degree than any other principle, his reasoning powers in addition to the four centers of the mind which should be constantly developed when learning languages. These centers are: the visual and the auditory and those for spoken and written speech.

This method also adopts the phonograph, but only as a valuable adjunct for the student and not as a substitute for the living teacher, because this is the only place that a machine can take.

These are the reasons for adopting the phonograph as an aid in the preparation of the lessons of this method: First, because in its present high state of perfection it reproduces sounds, words and sentences with practically absolute accuracy and fidelity. Secondly, because it solves the most important problem of providing the student with the power of using and developing, outside of the classroom and as often and as long as he wishes, the very same centers of the mind that he uses and develops in the classroom. Thirdly, because with the additional interest and intellectual force thus put into the preparation of the lesson by using the auditory area and the

speech center in conjunction with the visual area, the student saves, according to the experiments made, about half of the time and effort usually required in the learning of the assigned lesson.

In conclusion: this method aims to make shorter, pleasanter and easier the road which leads the student to those realms where the treasures of literary art can be easily explored and where the soul of unknown peoples can be seen reflected in the sounds that they articulate, or to those where the commercial world offers material profits and advancement.

MÁXIMO ITURRALDE.

NEW YORK, January, 1922.

INTRODUCTION

THE material of this method is presented in forty lessons.

These forty lessons, which may be mastered in educational institutions in a year, and by students who study privately in a much shorter time, contain an every-day vocabulary, counting the persons of the three model verbs introduced in them, of over two thousand eight hundred words.

Besides the specified number of lessons, with the specified vocabulary, there is a section, called "GRAMMAR" which comprises the most important rules of the Spanish grammar, and which contains, including the irregularities of the model verbs given, over three thousand two hundred new words or expressions. Following the "GRAMMAR" the book contains, under the heading "REFERENCE MATERIAL," a list of over three hundred idiomatic expressions; a list of over three hundred commercial terms; a list with thirty-six proverbs and another with one hundred names of men and women; a list of over two thousand three hundred verbs, Spanish-English, English-Spanish, classified as either regular or irregular, and the Spanish-English, English-Spanish indexes with all the words used in the forty lessons—making altogether a total of over nine thousand words or expressions.

All the above mentioned lessons, with the exception of the first three, which are preliminary in nature and which teach the pronunciation of all the sounds and syllabic combinations which make up all the words included in the method, consist of:

(1) A vocabulary with an average number of seventy commonly used words or expressions for each of the forty lessons.

(2) A Spanish exercise, called "Theme," for the purposes of reading and translating, where the vocabulary of the les-

son is used in sentences which tend to meet the requirements of ordinary life, and where important rules of grammar are illustrated.

(3) A set of Spanish questions, based directly on the Spanish theme, for conversational practice.

(4) An English exercise based on the "Theme," to be translated into Spanish.

(5) The part called "Notes," where all the points which are needed to obtain a clear understanding of the lesson are given, or where reference is made to the page in the book where the explanation of these points may be found.

This method, after giving a few suggestions for the proper position of the body when standing or sitting, for breathing, for correct voice production and for the best way to assimilate its material, begins its first lesson with elementary sounds, i.e., the way that normal children begin to talk.

In the fourth lesson, this method gives the present indicative of the verb, plus all the other elements before enumerated, which belong to every lesson and which are: vocabulary, the Spanish theme, the set of Spanish questions, the English exercise, and the part which is called "Notes." In the sixth lesson the present perfect and the future of the same mode are given, and the twelfth has the past or preterit. And in this way, and in accordance with the main idea of the method of treating its subject matter in the simplest possible manner, additional tenses are added to the lessons until every tense of the verb is gradually introduced.

This method, which often repeats the same thing to strengthen the memory of the student, and which presents its material in conformity with the degree of importance which it has from the point of view of the needs felt by the individual, has forty phonograms, two on each of the twenty ten-inch discs.

The first disc, with the first two phonograms, containing the recorded material of the first two lessons in the book, gives the vowels, the consonants combined with vowel sounds, the names of the letters of the alphabet, the diph-

thongs and triphthongs, and the syllabic combinations which are necessary to learn to pronounce well all the words used in the method. The third phonogram has seventy-three words and a few simple sentences.

Each of the next thirty-seven phonograms, which correspond respectively to the next thirty-seven lessons in the book, offers the vocabulary, the conjugation of the new tense or tenses when they are introduced, those sentences of the "Theme" which are considered most useful in helping the student to solve the problem of training the ear in connected speech and of quickly assimilating the most important part of the lesson under consideration, and two or three interrogative sentences taken from the "Questions" so as to give the student a good basis to formulate interrogative sentences with proper intonation.

In short: this method, which tries to conform with the most advanced pedagogical principles, aims to give the student a basis for obtaining, with a minimum of effort, a good foundation in the language studied.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
FEW WORDS ABOUT IMPORTANT THINGS:	
Sitting	25
Standing	25
Breathing	25
How to Speak Properly	26
Suggestions for the Preparation of the Lessons with the Aid of Phonographic Records	27
LESSON	
I FOR STUDYING WITH THE AID OF THE PHONOGRAPHIC RECORD	
Vowel Sounds	28
Consonants with Vowels	28
Names of the Letters of the Alphabet.	30
FOR STUDYING WITHOUT THE AID OF THE PHONO- GRAPHIC RECORD, OR TO BE USED AS A COMPLE- MENT TO THE MATERIAL GIVEN IN THE FIRST PHONOGRAM	
Sounds of the Vowels	30
Sounds of the Consonants	31
Consonants mispronounced, according to the rules of the Spanish Academy of the Language, by many Spanish-speaking people	34
Defects of Speech which should not be imitated by students of Spanish	39
II Diphthongs.	41
Triphthongs	41
Consonants with Diphthongs and Triphthongs	41
Other Syllabic Combinations	41
How Diphthongs and Triphthongs are formed and pronounced	41
REFERENCE MATERIAL TO BE STUDIED WHERE IN- DICATED IN THE "NOTES" OF THE THIRD AND FOLLOWING LESSONS	
Where to place the Vocal Accent	42
How to place the Written Accent on Spanish Words	42
Punctuation	43
The Use of Capital Letters	44
Syllabication	44
III Vocabulary	45
First Conversational Exercise	47
Second Conversational Exercise	47

LESSON		PAGE
	Third Conversational Exercise	47
	Suggestions as to the best way to use the Conversational Material of the Third Lesson.	49
	Steps suggested for the First Exercise	49
	Steps suggested for the Second Exercise	50
	Steps suggested for the Third Exercise	51
	Suggestions to instructors as to the best way to use the material in this work	51
	Suggestions to students as to the best way to assimilate the material of the lessons which follow	53
IV	Food and Drink	54
	Present Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	54
V	Food and Drink	58
VI	Food and Drink	62
	Present Perfect Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	62
	Future Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	63
VII	Food and Drink	67
VIII	Setting the Table	71
IX	Expressions of Courtesy—Good morning, etc. Clothing. Cardinal Numbers from one to eight	75
X	A Dialogue—How are you? etc. Clothing	79
XI	A Dialogue—Do me the favor of With much pleasure, etc. Clothing	83
XII	Days of the week. Months of the year	87
	Past or Preterit Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	87
XIII	Kindred. Friends. Names of Nations	91
XIV	The Clock. What time is it? etc. Cardinal Numbers from nine to thirty.	95
XV	Seasons of the year. Other Cardinal Numbers	100
XVI	Parts of the Body. Corporal Senses	105
XVII	Meals. Servants	109
XVIII	Our House. To be Hungry, Thirsty, etc.	113
XIX	Cleaning the Teeth. Washing Oneself. Theatres. Weather Conditions	118
XX	Flowers and Musical Instruments	122
XXI	Professions. Colors	126
XXII	Health and Liberty. Nationalities	130
XXIII	House Furnishings. The Points of the Compass	134
XXIV	A Friend of Mine. Colds. Indispositions	138
XXV	An Ideal Young Lady	142
XXVI	In the Country	146
	Imperfect Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	147
XXVII	In the Barber Shop	151
	Past Anterior of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	152
XXVIII	In the Classroom	156
XXIX	The Child	160
	Pluperfect Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	161
	Future Perfect Indicative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	161

LESSON		PAGE
XXX	The Short-Story Writer	165
XXXI	In My Uncle's Office	170
	Imperative of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	171
XXXII	The Fight	175
	Present Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	176
XXXIII	A Prospective Wedding	179
XXXIV	A Visit to the Zoölogical Garden	184
	Conditional of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	184
	Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	185
XXXV	Advertisements and Weather Predictions	189
	Perfect Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	190
XXXVI	A Telegram and a Fire	194
XXXVII	The Inheritance	198
	Past Perfect Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	199
	Past Conditional of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	199
XXXVIII	A Railroad Trip	203
XXXIX	On the Eve of a Voyage	208
	Future Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	209
	Future Perfect Subjunctive of <i>hablar, comer</i> and <i>vivir</i>	209
XL	Examinations	213

G R A M M A R

SUGGESTIONS TO INSTRUCTORS AS TO THE BEST WAY TO USE THE MATERIAL WHICH FOLLOWS	219
---	-----

CHAPTER I

ARTICLES

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

Forms of the Definite Article	219
Contractions of the Article with the Prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>a</i>	220
Substitution of one form of the Definite Article for Another	220
Principal cases where the Definite Article is used in Spanish, but not in English	220
Cases where the Article is usually omitted in Spanish, but not in English	222
Cases when the Definite Article is repeated in Spanish, but not in English	223
Cases where the Definite Article is used in Spanish, when the Demonstrative, the Possessive and <i>he who</i> , etc., are used in English	223
Cases where the Definite Article is used in Spanish and the Indefinite in English	223

	PAGE
THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE	
Forms of the Indefinite Article	224
Repetition of the Indefinite Article	224
Optional Substitution of one form of the Indefinite Article for another	225
Cases where the Indefinite Article is omitted in Spanish, but not in English	225
Other cases where the Indefinite Article is omitted in Spanish, but not in English	226
Use of the plural forms of the Indefinite Article to indicate Approximation	226
 CHAPTER II 	
NOUNS	
GENDER	
Genders of Nouns according to their meaning	227
Gender of Nouns according to their endings	227
Further explanation of the genders	228
Common Gender	228
Epicene Gender	229
Ambiguous Gender	229
Important nouns, with the same form, which have one mean- ing when they are masculine and another when they are feminine	230
How to obtain Feminine Forms from Masculine Nouns	230
NUMBER	
How to obtain the Plural of Singular Nouns	231
Cases in which the letter <i>s</i> is added	231
Cases in which the ending <i>es</i> is added	232
Formation of the plural of nouns ending in either <i>c</i> or <i>z</i>	232
Cases where the noun is the same for both the singular and the plural	232
How the plural of compound nouns is formed	232
Nouns which are always (or usually) used in the plural	233
Plural Nouns which include persons of both sexes	233
THE POSSESSIVE CASE	
How the possessive case of nouns is expressed in Spanish	233
How the prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>para</i> serve to combine Spanish Nouns	234
AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES	
Augmentative Suffixes	234
Diminutive Suffixes	235
Formation of the Augmentatives	235
Feminine nouns which are masculine when they become aug- mentatives	236
Combination of two Augmentative endings	236
Formation of the Diminutives	236

	PAGE
Combinations of Augmentative and Diminutive endings and <i>vice versa</i>	240
Combination of Diminutive Endings	240
Depreciative words with different endings	241

CHAPTER III

ADJECTIVES

THE GENDER OF ADJECTIVES	242
Formation of the Feminine from Masculine Adjectives	242
Adjectives ending in other letters than <i>o</i> which add <i>a</i> to form the Feminine	242
Formation of the Plural	242
Agreement of Adjectives	243
Special cases of agreement	243
Condensation of Expressions where two Adjectives occur	243
Position of Adjectives	243
Cases where the Adjective follows the Noun	243
Cases where the Adjective precedes the Noun	244
Position of Two Adjectives	245
Important Adjectives which have one meaning when placed before the noun, and another when placed after it	245
Apocopation or Shortening of Important Adjectives	246
Apocopation of other Adjectives	246
Adjectives used as Nouns	247
THE COMPARATIVE	
Formation of the Comparative of Superiority	247
Formation of the Comparative of Inferiority	247
Irregular Comparatives	248
Cases where the equivalent of <i>than</i> is <i>de</i> , <i>de lo que</i> , etc.	248
Cases in which <i>que</i> is used followed by any of the forms of the definite article plus another <i>que</i>	249
How to form the Comparative of Equality	250
Cases when <i>tan</i> , <i>as</i> , may be omitted in the comparisons	250
Comparatives formed with the Spanish equivalents of the correlatives <i>the more . . . the more</i> , etc.	251
Special Forms of Comparison	251
Cases where <i>tanto</i> and <i>tan</i> are used with <i>que</i> and not with <i>como</i> as their correlative	252
Cases where the Comparatives of Superiority, Inferiority and Equality need different elements in the two languages	252
Important Idiomatic Expressions with <i>más</i> , <i>menos</i> and <i>tanto</i>	252
SUPERLATIVES	
The Relative Superlative	
How to form the Relative Superlative of Adjectives	253
Cases where the Definite Article is omitted to express the Relative Superlative form of Adjectives	253

	PAGE
Differences in the use of Prepositions after the Relative Superlative in the two languages	254
How to render into Spanish the English <i>most</i> , etc.	254
Cases where the Relative Superlative is used in Spanish and the Comparative in English	254
How to form the Relative Superlative of Adverbs	255
The Absolute Superlative	
Formation of the Absolute Superlative of Adjectives	255
Changes which Adjectives suffer to form the Superlative Absolute	256
Adjectives which have either an Irregular, or both Regular and Irregular Superlative Degrees	257
Use of the Superlatives <i>próximo</i> , <i>mínimo</i> , <i>ínfimo</i> and <i>íntimo</i> as simple Adjectives	258
How to form the Absolute Superlative of Adverbs	258
NUMBERS	
Ordinal Numbers	259
Fractional Numbers	260
Collective Numbers	260
Multiple Numbers	260

CHAPTER IV

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Subject Pronouns

Forms of the Subject Pronouns	261
Remarks about <i>tú</i> , <i>vosotros</i> , <i>vos</i> , <i>nós</i> , etc.	261
Remarks about the use of <i>usted</i>	262

Objective Personal Pronouns

Prepositional Pronouns

Forms of the Prepositional Pronouns	262
---	-----

Conjunctive Pronouns

Forms of the Conjunctive Pronouns	263
---	-----

Position of the Objective Personal Pronouns	263
---	-----

Substitution of the Indirect Pronouns <i>le</i> or <i>les</i> by <i>se</i>	267
--	-----

Duplication of the Objective Personal Pronouns	268
--	-----

The Dative of Possession	268
------------------------------------	-----

Cases where <i>lo</i> is used	268
---	-----

The Dative of Interest	269
----------------------------------	-----

Remarks about the use of the Objective Personal Pronouns in connection with the verbs <i>gustar</i> and <i>agradar</i>	270
--	-----

Reflexive Pronouns	270
------------------------------	-----

Forms of the Reflexive Pronouns	270
---	-----

Intensification of Subject and Object Pronouns as well as of Nouns by <i>mismo</i>	271
--	-----

Idiomatic usage of the Conjunctive Pronouns <i>la</i> and <i>las</i>	271
--	-----

POSSESSIVES

Possessive Adjectives

Full Forms and Position of the Possessive Adjectives	271
Shortened Forms and Position of the Possessive Adjectives	272
Way to obtain clearness of meaning of some ambiguous possessives	273
Cases where the Possessives are used in Spanish and the Objective Personal Pronouns in English	273
Repetition of the Possessives	274
Use of <i>propio</i> , <i>own</i> , to strengthen the Possessive	274
Use of the Definite Article Instead of the Possessive	274

Possessive Pronouns

Forms and Use of the Possessive Pronouns	274
Meaning of <i>lo</i> when placed before a possessive	275

RELATIVES

Forms of the Relative Pronouns	275
General Rules which govern the use of the Relatives	275
Agreement of the Relatives	276
Use of the Relative <i>que</i>	276
Use of the Relative <i>quien</i>	277
Use of the Relative <i>cual</i>	278
Cases where the Relative <i>cual</i> is preceded by the Definite Article	278
Use of <i>el cual</i> , <i>la cual</i> , etc., adjectively	280
Use of <i>cual</i> as a correlative	280
Use of the Relative <i>cuyo</i>	280
Use of <i>cuanto</i> and <i>donde</i> as Relatives	280

DEMONSTRATIVES

Forms	281
Use and Agreement	281
Way to translate into Spanish the English <i>of</i> when preceded by a demonstrative pronoun	281
Spanish equivalents of the English <i>the latter</i> and <i>the former</i>	282

INTERROGATIVES

Forms of the Interrogatives	282
Use of <i>qué</i> , page 282; <i>quién</i> , page 283; <i>cuál</i> , page 283; <i>cuánto</i> , page 284.	

INDEFINITES

Forms of the Indefinites	284
Use of <i>alguien</i> , page 285; <i>algo</i> , page 285; <i>alguno</i> , page 285; <i>nadie</i> , <i>nada</i> and <i>ninguno</i> , page 286; <i>cada</i> , page 287; <i>uno</i> , page 287; <i>todo</i> , page 288; <i>entero</i> , page 290; <i>cierto</i> , page 290; <i>otro</i> , page 290; <i>tal</i> , page 290; <i>mismo</i> , page 291; <i>propio</i> , page 291; <i>ajeno</i> , page 292; <i>semejante</i> , page 292; <i>varios</i> and <i>una porción de</i> , page 292; <i>ambos</i> , <i>solo</i> and <i>único</i> , page 292; <i>cosa</i> ,	

page 293; *cualquiera*, *quienquiera* and *dondequiera*, page 293; *fulano*, *mengano*, *zutano* and *perengano* or *perencejo*, page 294.

CHAPTER V

VERBS

The Spanish Conjugations	295
THE INFINITIVE	295
Verbal forms of the Infinitive	295
Uses of the Infinitive	295
Remarks about <i>haber</i> and <i>deber</i>	298
Remarks about <i>tener</i>	298
Remarks about <i>volver a</i> and <i>acabar de</i>	299
Infinitives preceded by <i>por</i> or <i>para</i>	299
Partial list of Verbs which govern an infinitive without any preposition	299
Partial list of Verbs which take the preposition <i>a</i> to govern a following infinitive	300
Important Verbs which take the preposition <i>de</i> to govern a following infinitive	301
Important Verbs which take the preposition <i>en</i> to govern a following infinitive	301
Examples of Verbs which take the preposition <i>por</i> to govern a following infinitive	301
THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND	
Formation and Uses of the Present Participle or Gerund	301
Substitution of the Infinitive for the Gerund after verbs of perception	303
The Perfect of the <i>Gerundio</i>	303
The Progressive or Periphrastic Conjugation	303
THE PAST PARTICIPLE	
Formation and Uses of the Past Participle	304
AUXILIARY VERBS	306
<i>Haber</i> and <i>Tener</i>	306
<i>Haber</i> as an independent verb	306
The tenses of obligation with the independent verb <i>haber</i>	307
Impersonal use of <i>haber</i>	307
Cases where <i>haber</i> is used impersonally, followed by <i>que</i> , to denote obligation or necessity	308
Cases when nouns governed by <i>haber</i> may be represented by a personal object pronoun.	308
Cases where the infinitive forms <i>haber</i> and <i>haber habido</i> are used impersonally	309
Differences between <i>ha habido</i> and <i>ha estado</i>	309
Cases where <i>haber</i> is used to express measures of time	309

	PAGE
THE PASSIVE VOICE	310
Formation of the Passive Voice with <i>estar</i> and other verbs .	310
Formation of the Passive Voice with the particle <i>se</i> . .	311
<i>Ser</i> and <i>estar</i>	311
REFLEXIVE VERBS	312
Apparent reflexive constructions	313
Pronominal Verbs	313
Important verbs which change their meaning in accordance with their use	314
Reciprocal Verbs	314
Impersonal use of <i>hacer</i>	315
Idiomatic uses of <i>llevar</i>	315
MOODS AND TENSES	
The Indicative Mood	
Present Indicative—Its Uses	316
Formation of the Present Indicative	318
Imperfect—Its Uses	318
Cases where the Imperfect is the equivalent of the Past Perfect	319
Use of the Imperfect instead of the Conditional .	320
Formation of the Imperfect	320
Present Perfect—Its Uses	321
Formation of the Present Perfect	321
Past or Preterite—Its Uses	322
Formation of the Past or Preterite	322
Past Anterior—Its Uses	323
Formation of the Past Anterior	323
Past Perfect—Its Uses	324
Formation of the Past Perfect	324
Future—Its Uses	325
How to obtain the Future	325
Future Perfect—Its Uses	325
Cases where the Future Perfect in Spanish does not correspond to this tense in English	326
Formation of the Future Perfect	326
The Conditional Mood	326
Uses of the Conditional	327
How to obtain the Conditional	329
The Past Conditional	329
Formation of the Past Conditional	330
The Imperative Mood—Its Uses	331
Formation of the Imperative	331
The Subjunctive	332
General Rules	332
Correspondence of Tenses	337
Cases when the verb in the subordinate clause must be either in the present or in the perfect subjunctive	337

	PAGE
Cases when the verb in the subordinate clause must be either in the imperfect or in the past perfect subjunctive	337
Present Subjunctive—Its Uses	338
Formation of the Present Subjunctive	339
Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses	339
Formation of the Perfect Subjunctive	340
Imperfect Subjunctive—Its Uses	340
Deviations from the rule above given for the use of the Imperfect Subjunctive	340
Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive	341
Past Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses	341
Formation of the Past Perfect Subjunctive	342
Future Subjunctive—Its Uses	343
Formation of the Future Subjunctive	343
Future Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses	344
Formation of the Future Perfect Subjunctive	344
Subjunctive in Independent Clauses	345
Cases where the present subjunctive is used instead of the imperative	345
The use of the present subjunctive after <i>que</i> , when a verb of will or volition is understood	345
Cases where the present subjunctive or the imperfect subjunctive is used	346
Cases where the imperfect subjunctive is used	346
Cases where the present, imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is used	346
Conjugation of Model Regular Verbs	347
<i>Hablar</i> —Model verb of the first conjugation	347
<i>Comer</i> —Model verb of the second conjugation	350
<i>Vivir</i> —Model verb of the third conjugation	353
Conjugation of a Model Reflexive Verb— <i>Lavarse</i>	356
Conjugation of <i>Amar</i> in its Passive Form	359
Conjugation of the verb <i>Comprar</i> in its Progressive Form	362
Irregularities of important irregular verbs, and models of important regular verbs which either suffer orthographical changes or are defective	365
Remarks to facilitate the study of the irregularities of the irregular verbs	366

CHAPTER VI

ADVERBS

THE PRINCIPAL SPANISH ADVERBS

Adverbs of

Place	389
Time	389

	PAGE
Manner	389
Quantity and Degree	390
Affirmation and Negation	390
Doubt, Order and Exclusion	390
Important Adverbial Phrases	390
Adverbial Phrases which are used only with certain Verbs	391
Position of Adverbs	392
In regard to the Verb	392
In regard to Adjectives and Past Participles	392
In regard to Adverbial Phrases	392
Position of <i>bien</i>	393
Formation of Adverbs ending in <i>mente</i>	393
Suppression of the ending <i>mente</i> of Adverbs	393
Substitution of Adverbial Phrases for Adverbs ending in <i>mente</i>	394
Shortening of the adverb <i>recientemente</i>	394
Remarks about <i>aquí, allí, and acá, allá</i> , page 394; <i>aun</i> , page 395; <i>muy</i> , page 395; <i>mucho</i> , page 396; <i>ya</i> , page 396; <i>mismo</i> , page 396; <i>donde</i> , page 396; <i>parte</i> when used in adverbial phrases, page 397; <i>no</i> , page 397	397
How to render in Spanish <i>long, very long, a long time</i> , etc.	398

CHAPTER VII

PREPOSITIONS

Important Simple Spanish Prepositions	399
The most commonly used Compound Prepositions or Prepositional Phrases, generally made up of an Adverb or Adjective plus a Preposition	399
Important Compound Prepositions, or Prepositional Phrases, made up of two Prepositions with an intervening term	399
Use of the Prepositions <i>a</i> , page 400; <i>de</i> , page 401; <i>en</i> , page 403	403
<i>encima de, por encima de and sobre</i>	403
<i>detrás de, tras and después de</i>	404
<i>desde, hasta, entre and según</i>	404
<i>ante de, delante de, and antes de</i>	405
<i>bajo and debajo de</i>	405
<i>Por and Para</i>	405
<i>Para</i>	405
<i>Por</i>	406
Further Uses of <i>por</i> and <i>para</i>	407
Combination of the prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>a</i> to designate persons and to express rate or denomination.	408
Use of other Double Prepositions	408

CHAPTER VIII

CONJUNCTIONS

	PAGE
Forms and Uses of Conjunctions	409
Conjunctive Phrases	409
Correlative Conjunctions	409
Use of <i>pero</i> , <i>mas</i> and <i>sino</i>	411
Use of <i>que</i>	411
Remarks about <i>sin . . . ni</i>	412

CHAPTER IX

INTERJECTIONS

The Most Common Interjections	413
Cases where Interjections are followed by the Preposition <i>de</i>	414
Nouns used with intensive force or by way of remonstrance	414

REFERENCE MATERIAL

Idiomatic Expressions	415
Commercial Expressions	420
Spanish Proverbs	426
Names of Men and Women	427
List of the Most Important Regular and Irregular Verbs:	
Spanish-English List	429
English-Spanish List	453
Indexes of all the words and expressions which occur in the lessons:	
Spanish-English	473
English-Spanish	500

A FEW WORDS ABOUT IMPORTANT THINGS

SITTING

Sit as far back in the seat as possible, in an animated manner, with the head erect and the chest broadened out, but without getting stiff. Keep the feet on the floor, in an easy position, uncrossed. Do not ever make a semicircle with your spine and head because this position is both unrefined and harmful.

STANDING

Apply the same fundamental principles given for sitting, i.e., stand straight, with head erect and chest broadened out, but without getting stiff. Have the feet somewhat separated, one slightly back of the other, and place the weight of the body on their balls by putting the tip of the chest on a vertical line with the ball of the forward foot. Do not slouch because this posture hampers digestion, breathing, circulation and other important functions of the body.

BREATHING

Breathe in a natural way by filling the lungs as a balloon is filled, i.e., gently and slowly. Inhale through the nose alone or both through the nose and the mouth, slightly opening the latter. Expand the abdominal walls, at the waist line, and notice that your back also expands, at the same line, when inhaling, and let the abdominal walls return to their natural position, either when exhaling or talking. Do not draw in the abdominal walls nor expand the upper chest while inhaling, because, with this way of breathing, the voice produced is harsher and the soft tones are far more difficult to obtain.

HOW TO SPEAK PROPERLY

As correct voice production is only obtained when the action of the vocal cords and the resonance chambers or cavities of the vocal mechanism are free from any kind of interference, try to produce tones without harshness or roughness, and, by so doing, you will have the best proof that there is no interference with the vocal structures.

Use the natural volume and quality of your speaking voice. Do not ever speak too loud or too low, because, when talking either way, the same pitch of voice is almost always used in every word of the sentence, and this is extremely monotonous and disagreeable. Articulate distinctly every word and syllable, and emphasize the important elements of the sentence. Avoid nasal or throaty sounds.

SUGGESTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF THE LESSONS WITH THE AID OF PHONOGRAPHIC RECORDS

- First: Place the record on the talking machine, and use the kind of needle which best reproduces sounds. As a rule, medium tone needles are the ones which give the most satisfactory results.
- Second: Regulate the speed so as to bring out the words in a clear, natural, and pleasant tone of voice.
- Third: If the talking machine used is good, all the recorded sounds will be very clear, with the possible exception of the *s*, which, on account of its lack of vibrating power, is sometimes indistinct when it ends a word. When this is the case, please supply the sound.
- Fourth: Suit the method of studying the lessons to your needs or desires, but bear in mind that learning the vocabulary of each lesson before studying the rest of the recorded material of each phonogram, produces the most satisfactory results. The word should be seen in the book and should be repeated, either aloud or mentally, immediately after it is heard in the machine. The same principle must be applied in studying the rest of the material of the phonogram, which, of course, should be heard as many times as may be necessary, i.e., until it is thoroughly assimilated.

(For studying with the aid of the phonographic record.)

ITURRALDE METHOD

LESSON NUMBER ONE

VOWEL SOUNDS

Please pronounce: **a, e, i, o, u.**

Please repeat: **a, e, i, o, u.**

CONSONANTS WITH VOWELS

Please pronounce:

ba, be, bi, bo, bu. (The **b** has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is a little softer than in English.)

ca, co, cu. (The **c** with **a, o, u** has the sound of **k**.)

ce, ci. (The **c** with **e** and **i** has the **th** sound of the English word **thought**.)

cha, che, chi, cho, chu. (The **ch** has the same sound as the **ch** of the English word **church**.)

da, de, di, do, du. (The **d** has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is less intense than in English.)

fa, fe, fi, fo, fu. (The **f** has the same sound as in English.)

ga, go, gu. (The **g**, with **a, o, u**, has the **g** sound of the English word **go**.)

ge, gi. (The **g**, with **e** and **i**, has the sound of an intensified English **h**.)

gue, gui. (The **g** with **e** and **i**, when a silent **u** is between them, has the **g** sound of the English word **go**.)

ha, he, hi, ho, hu. (The **h** has no sound in Spanish.)

ja, je, ji, jo, ju. (The **j** has the sound of an intensified English **h**.)

ka, ke, ki, ko, ku. (The **k** has the same sound in both languages.)

la, le, li, lo, lu. (The **l** has the same sound as in English.)

lla, lle, lli, llo, llu. (The **ll** has the sound of **ll'ya** of the English expression **will you**, when **will you** is pronounced carelessly and very hurriedly, and the **w** and **i** are suppressed.)

ma, me, mi, mo, mu. (The **m** has the same sound as in English.)

na, ne, ni, no, nu. (The **n** has the same sound as in English.)

ña, ñe, ñi, ño, ñu. (The **n** with the tilde has the sound of **ny** of the English word **canyon**.)

pa, pe, pi, po, pu. (The **p** has the same sound as in English.)

que, qui. (The **q**, always followed by a silent **u**, has the sound of **k**. It is only used with **e** and **i**.)

ra, re, ri, ro, ru. (When the **r** begins a word, it has the sound of the **rr** in the English name **Carr**, but more intensified.)

arra, arre, arri, arro, arru. (The **rr**, when it occurs in the middle of a word, has the same sound as the initial single Spanish **r**.)

ara, are, ari, aro, aru. (The **r**, when it occurs in the middle of a word is like the **r** of the English word **caramel**, divided thus: **ca-ra-mel**, and pronounced with the tip of the tongue, forward, near the roof of the mouth.)

ar, er, ir, or, ur. (The **r**, when it ends a syllable or a word, is a little stronger than when it occurs in the middle of a word. In this case the Spanish **r** is like the **r** of the English word **per** when it is pronounced with the tip of the tongue, forward, near the roof of the mouth.)

sa, se, si, so, su. (The **s** has the same sound as the last **s** of the English word **sassafras**.)

ta, te, ti, to, tu. (The **t** has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is a little softer than in English.)

va, ve, vi, vo, vu. (The **v** has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is less intense than in English.)

ax, ex, ix, ox, ux. (The **x** has the sound of the **x** in the English word **wax**.)

ya, ye, yi, yo, yu. (The **y** has the same sound in both languages.)

za, ze, zi, zo, zu. (The **z** has the same sound as the **th** of the English word **thought**.)

NAMES OF THE LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET

Please pronounce:

a —a	ene —n
be —b	eñe —ñ
ce —c	o —o
che —ch	pe —p
de —d	cu —q
e —e	ere (also erre suave , soft r)—r
efe —f	erre (also erre doble , double r)—rr
ge —g	ese —s
hache —h	te —t
i —i	u —u
jota —j	ve (or uve)—v
ka —k	u doble (also ve doble)—w
ele —l	equis —x
elle —ll	ye (also i griega , Greek i)—y
eme —m	zeta (also zeda)—z

FIRST LESSON

(For studying without the aid of the phonographic record, or to be used as a complement to the material given in the first phonogram.)

SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS

A—has the sound of the English **ä** in the word **ah**.

E—has the sound of the English **ā** in the word **mate**, but without the vanishing sound of **ē** which the English **ā** has. In other words, it is like the sound of **ê** of the word **there**, when the **ê** is a little more openly or freely pronounced.

I—has the sound of **ï** in the word **unique** or the sound of **ē** in the word **eve**.

O—has the sound of the **ō** in the English word **no**, but without the vanishing sound of **ōō** which the English **ō** has. In other words, it is like the sound of **ô** of the English word **or**, when this English vowel is rounder and more openly pronounced.

U—has the sound of the **u** in the English word **rule**, or the sound of **ōō** in the word **pooh**.

NOTE.—As Spanish orthography only recognizes the five fundamental vowel sounds given, and as these sounds are the only ones which in Spanish schools are taken into consideration for the practical purpose of teaching the language, the sounds which the Spanish vowels have, when phonetically considered, are omitted in this lesson, because they only serve to complicate a simple thing and to confuse the student.

Consequently pronounce, **a, e, i, o, u**, in the way above described when they are alone, and try to give them the same sounds when they are accompanied by other letters. By so doing you will always pronounce the Spanish vowels as the Spanish-speaking people pronounce them, and you will give to them, as the Spanish-speaking people do, those different shades of sound of a more closed or open character which the vowels sometimes assume, owing to purely natural causes such as emphasis, position in the words, and shortening or prolonging of the same.

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS

- b** —has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is a little softer than in English, on this account: the explosion produced at the lips, when the air is expelled, is milder in Spanish than in English. Pronounce: **ba, be, bi, bo, bu; ab.**
- c** —has the sound of **k** when it is placed before **a, o, u**, to form syllables with these vowels. Also when the **c** begins a syllable followed by the consonants **l** or **r**, and other syllabic elements such as a vowel or more than one vowel, a vowel and a consonant or more than one vowel and one consonant. The **c** also has the **k** sound when placed after the vowels **a, e, i, o, u**, forming syllables with these letters. The **c** has the **th** sound of the English word **thought**, when it is placed before the vowels **e** and **i**. Pronounce: **ca, co, cu; cla, cle, cli, cro, cru, cri; ac, ec, ic, oc, uc; ce, ci.**
- ch** —has exactly the same sound as the **ch** of the English word **church**. Pronounce: **cha, che, chi, cho, chu; ach.**
- d** —has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is a little softer than in English. In Spanish the sound is produced by placing the tip of the tongue against the upper teeth, while in English it is produced by placing the tip of the tongue a little farther up, i.e., against the hard palate. Pronounce: **da, de, di, do, du; ad.**
- f** —has exactly the same sound as in English. Pronounce: **fa, fe, fi, fo, fu; uf.**

- g** —has the sound of the **g** in the English word **go**, when it is placed before **a, o, u**, to form syllables with these vowels; also when the **g** begins a syllable followed by the consonants **l** or **r**, and other syllabic elements, such as a vowel or more than one vowel, and a vowel and a consonant or more than a vowel and a consonant. The **g** also has the **g** sound of the English word **go**, when placed after the vowels **a, e, i, o, u**, forming syllables with these letters; also with the vowels **e** and **i**, when the vowel **u** is placed between **g** and **e** and between **g** and **i**, in which case the **u** has no sound. The **g** also has the **g** sound of the English word **go** with the vowels **e** and **i** when the vowel **u**, with a dieresis, is placed between **g** and **e** and between **g** and **i**. In this last case the **u** has its original sound. The letter **g** has the sound of the Spanish **j** with the vowels **e** and **i**. Pronounce: **ga, go, gu; gla, gle, gli, gro, gru, glu, gri; ag, ig, og; gue, gui, güe, güi, ge, gi.**
- h** —is a silent letter which has no sound in Spanish. Pronounce: **ha, he, hi, ho, hu; ah.**
- j** —has the sound of an intensified English **h**. In other words, it has the sound that is generally made when one laughs heartily, if the vowel sound which is produced at the end of the syllable, by the hearty laughter, is suppressed. Combine the **j** with the vowels **a, e, i, o, u**, and pronounce: **ja, je, ji, jo, ju; oj.**
- k** —has the same sound in both languages. In Spanish, this letter, which never ends a syllable or a word, is only used in borrowed foreign words. Pronounce: **ka, ke, ki, ko, ku.**
- l** —has the same sound as in English. Pronounce: **la, le, li, lo, lu; el.**
- ll** —has the sound of **ll'ya** of the English expression **will you**, when **will you** is pronounced carelessly and very hurriedly, and the **w** and **i** are suppressed.
- m** —has exactly the same sound as in English. Pronounce: **ma, me, mi, mo, mu; am.**
- n** —has exactly the same sound as in English. Pronounce: **na, ne, ni, no, nu; on.**
- ñ** —(the **n** with the tilde) has the same sound as **ny** in the English word **canyon**. Pronounce: **ña, ñe, ñi, ño, ñu; añ.**
- p** —has the same sound as in English. Pronounce: **pa, pe, pi, po, pu; ap.**
- q** —The **q**, always followed by a silent **u**, has the sound of **k**. It is only used with **e** and **i**. Pronounce: **que, qui.**
- r** —between two vowels has the sound of the **r** which is in the English word **caramel**, when this word is pronounced

with the tip of the tongue, forward, near the roof of the mouth, and divided this way: **ca-ra-mel**. The **r** also has the same sound when it is followed by one or more vowels and by one or more consonants which end the syllable begun by the consonants **b, c, d, f, g, p, t**. When the **r** ends a syllable or a word, it also has a soft sound, but as this sound must be heard distinctly, it should be made a little stronger than the first, i.e., it should be made as the **r** of the English word **per**, when it is pronounced with the tip of the tongue, forward, near the roof of the mouth. When the **r** begins a word or is preceded by the letters **l, n, or s**, in the middle of a word, the **r** has the same rolling sound as the **rr**, i.e., it has the sound of the **rr** in the English name **Carr**, but more intensely pronounced. Pronounce: **ara, are, ari, aro, aru; bra, cre, dri, fro, gru, pra, tre; ar, er, ir, or, ur; ra, re, ri, ro, ru; malra, enri, isra**.

rr —has the sound of the **rr** in the English name **Carr**, but with more intensive vibrations. This sound should be produced with the tip of the tongue, in the same position as suggested for getting the soft **r**. Pronounce: **arra, erre, erri, orro, urru**.

s —has exactly the same sound as the last **s** in the English word **sassafras**. Pronounce: **sa, se, si, so, su; is**.

t —has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is a little softer than in English. In Spanish the sound is produced by placing the tongue a little above the upper teeth, while in English it is produced by placing it a little farther up. Pronounce: **ta, te, ti, to, tu; et**.

v —has the same fundamental sound in both languages, but in Spanish it is less intense than in English. In Spanish, when the sound is produced, the upper teeth scarcely touch the end of the lower lip.

w —does not belong to the Spanish alphabet. As this letter retains its borrowed foreign value, it is sometimes pronounced like **u**; at other times like **v**.

x —has the sound of the **x** in the English word **wax**. Consequently, the sound of this letter is **ks**. The **x** has, as in English, another sound like **ggs** in the English word **eggs**, but the first sound is the one most generally used. The **x** never begins a word. There is a limited number of exceptions to this rule, found in borrowed foreign terms. In this case the **x** has the sound of the Spanish **j**. Pronounce: **ax, ex, ix, ox, ux**.

y —has the same sound in both languages when the **y** begins a syllable. When the **y** ends a syllable, the **y** has the sound of the Spanish **i**. Pronounce: **ya, ye, yi, yo, yu; ay**.

z —has exactly the same sound as the **th** of the English word **thought**. Pronounce: **za, ze, zi, zo, zu; oz.**

Note. The same principle which has been adopted to teach the vowels is used to teach the consonants, and on this account only one fundamental sound is given to each of those consonants which, when phonetically considered, have more than one. Exceptions: **c, g, and r.**

CONSONANTS MISPRONOUNCED, ACCORDING TO THE
RULES OF THE SPANISH ACADEMY OF THE LANGUAGE,
BY MANY SPANISH-SPEAKING PEOPLE

Practically the whole native population of Spanish America and the population of several provinces of Spain, pronounce the consonant **c**, like the consonant **s**, when the consonant **c** begins a syllable with the vowels **e** and **i**. The same sound of **s** is invariably given to the consonant **z**, when this letter begins or ends a syllable.

Although this is the case, the rules of pronunciation of the Spanish Academy of the Language, for the above letters, are followed and recommended in this work, for beginners, for the following reasons:

1. In Castile, where the Spanish language was first spoken, the consonants which are now being taken into consideration are pronounced in accordance with the rules of the Academy.

2. The Spanish language loses much of its vigor and beauty of tone, and greatly increases its monotony, when such a weak sound as that of the letter **s** is used for the **z** and for the **c** when the latter consonant begins a syllable with the vowels **e** and **i**. What occurs in Spanish is what would happen to English if the **th** sound of words like **theme** or **thought** were pronounced like **s**.

3. Clearness, the most valuable characteristic of the Spanish language, is enormously decreased when the sound of the letter **s** is used for the **z** and for the **c** when the latter consonant precedes in a syllable the vowels **e** and **i**, because, when this is done, different words, ideas, and concepts are unnecessarily confused.

4. As the rules of pronunciation of the Spanish Academy make the Spanish language practically phonetic, people who learn Spanish in accordance with these rules have a better basis for writing this language without making so many orthographical mistakes than those who, for this or that reason, disregard them.

5. Students who learn Spanish in accordance with the rules of pronunciation of the Spanish Academy are able to make themselves understood without the least difficulty wherever the Spanish language is spoken. Moreover, these students can easily learn to pronounce and speak like the Spanish speaking people who do not follow the rules of pronunciation of the Academy, if, for any reason whatsoever, they want to do so.

The following composition is not intended for the purpose of study, but to illustrate, to those who can use Spanish readily, what has been said above regarding the confusion of ideas which results when the *z* and the *c* are pronounced like *s*.

SONIDOS DE ZETAS

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Una zagala inocente | (14) en llano, Andes o |
| (2) que los lunes <i>ceceaba</i> | plaza." |
| (3) y los martes seseaba, | (15) Después que las dos |
| (4) llegó a la <i>Ceca</i> un día | parientas |
| (5) a visitar a una tía | (16) repitieron con candor |
| (6) de los <i>Díaz</i> descendien- | (17) toda la estrofa ante- |
| te. | rior, |
| (7) Tan pronto como se | (18) un <i>mozo</i> noble y leal |
| vieron | (19) de gran brío y pocas |
| (8) tía y sobrina dijeron | rentas |
| (9) una <i>vez</i> que se <i>abra-</i> | (20) habló así a su ideal: |
| zaron | (21) "Para probarte este |
| (10) y luego que se ensalza- | amor |
| ron: - | (22) que tiene aroma de |
| (11) "Dame <i>cazo, cera</i> y | flor |
| taza | (23) y una firmeza de roca, |
| (12) para el clérigo que <i>caza</i> | (24) voy a <i>cerrarle</i> la boca |
| (13) <i>ciervos</i> de Dios con la | (25) al que afilaba la <i>hoz</i> |
| <i>maza</i> | (26) cuando tu divina <i>voz</i> |

- (27) decía *ce*, *tez* y *azar*
 (28) en el salón del *bazar*.”
 (29) “Y al hijo de la *cacica*
 (30) que tiene *azadas* y *pica*
 (31) en la casa de la moza
 (32) que cuando pasa te
 roza,
 (33) le *cegaré* con ceniza
 (34) donde te ofrezca la *liza*
 (35) el día que al corral
 vayas
 (36) a ver los *corzos* de
 Zayas.”
 (37) “Y al que hermosas
 lozas hace
 (38) sobre *cimas* de mon-
 taña,
 (39) le rogaré que se *lace*
 (40) *cien* veces en la cabaña
 (41) del pastor que come
 nueces
 (42) donde saltas o te *me-*
 ces.”
 (43) “Y al que *ceña* si le
 cito
 (44) lo que dijo en el garito
 (45) del que mi *caza ace-*
 cina
 (46) en tu espaciosa cocina,
 (47) le haré ver que *zapo* y
 tazo
 (48) y *cerio*, *paces* y *bazo*
 (49) y *zopas*, *cellos* y *tozo*
 (50) y *raza*, *cerón* y *bozo*
 (51) y *ciente*, *cocido* y *rozo*
 (52) y *cenado*, *uzo* y *pozo*
 (53) y *faz*, *cazuela* y *rebozo*
 (54) son palabras que con-
 funde
 (55) el que *cede* lo que
 funde.”
- (56) Y así continuó el la-
 dino
 (57) al hablar a su zagala
 (58) en ese día de gala
 (59) cerca de un *zaque* de
 vino
 (60) que los de *Ceca ace-*
 chaban
 (61) con ojos que *fucila-*
 ban:
 (62) “Dulce paloma tor-
 caza
 (63) que siempre que digo
 braza
 (64) o *mazonería* o *briza*
 (65) tu dices *azola* y *riza*.
 (66) Hoy que con vosotras
 ceno
 (67) entre *zuecos*, *zudas* y
 heno
 (68) esa *cena* que tu tía
 (69) me prometió el otro
 día,
 (70) es necesario que sepas
 (71) que bebo *zumo* de
 cepas.
 (72) Y que tienes que
 cocerme
 (73) si contento quieres ver-
 me,
 (74) el *pez* que pescó con
 cebo
 (75) el hombre a quien
 tanto debo;
 (76) ese que me da moneda
 (77) cuando de alabarle
 ceso
 (78) si tengo cuidado en
 eso
 (79) de pronunciar bien la
 zeda.”

MÁXIMO ITURRALDE.

The italicized words of the above composition suffer the following specified changes, when the Spanish z and e are pronounced like s:

The word **zetas** of the title, which means **z's**, becomes **mushrooms**. In line number two, the word **ceceaba**, which means (she) **used to pronounce the s like th**, becomes (she) **used to pronounce the th like s**. **Ceca**, the name of a mosque which the Arabs had in Cordova, Spain, fourth line, becomes **dried**. **Díaz**, of the sixth line, which is a Spanish surname, becomes **days**. **Vez** and (se) **abrazaron**, ninth line, which respectively mean **time** and **they embraced** (each other,) become **you see** (familiar form singular) and **they burned** (each other). **Cazo, ccra y taza**, of the eleventh line, the respective meanings of which are **ladle, wax** and **cup**, become **case, large pannier** and **tax**. **Caza**, in the twelfth line, which means (who) **hunts**, becomes (who) **marries**. **Cicrvos** and **maza** of the thirteenth, which respectively mean **deer** and **maze**, become **servants** and **dough**. **Mozo** of the eighteenth line, which means both **lad** and **waiter**, becomes **rope** (made of esparto-grass). **Cerrarle** of line number twenty-four, which means to **close** (his mouth), becomes to **saw** (his mouth). **Hoz** of line number twenty-five, which means **sickle**, becomes **you or to you**. **Voz** of the twenty-sixth line, which means **voice**, becomes **ye**. **Ce, tez y azar**, twenty-seventh line, the respective meanings of which are **c, complexion** (of the face) and **chance**, become **I know, teas** and **to roast**. **Bazar**, of the following line, which means **bazaar**, becomes **to base**. **Cacica** of the twenty-ninth line, which means **the wife of a political boss**, becomes **little house**. **Azadas** of the following line, which means **hocs**, becomes **roasted**. **Roza** of the thirty-second line, which means (he) **rubs against** you, becomes **rose**. **Cegaré** of the thirty-third line, which means **I will blind** (him), becomes, **I will mow** (him). **Liza** of the thirty-fourth line, which means **jousting field**, becomes **smooth** or **flat**. **Corzos, roe-dcer, and Zayas**, a surname, thirty-sixth line, respectively become **Corsican** and **skirts**. **Lozas** and **hace** of the thirty-seventh line, which respectively mean **earthenware** and **makes**, become **slabs** and **grasps**. **Cimas, summits**, thirty-eighth line, becomes **deep caverns**. **Lacc, lassos** (himself), thirty-ninth line, becomes **tires** (himself). **Cien, one hundred**, fortieth line, becomes **temple** (part of the body). **Mcces, you** (familiar form sing.) **swing** (yourself), forty-second line, becomes **months**. **Ccña, (to the one who) frowns**, and **cito, (I) quote** (him), forty-third line, respectively become **sign** and **situated**. **Caza, game, and acecina, salts and dries** (the one who), forty-fifth line, respectively become **house** and **assassinates**. **Zapo, (I) sap, and tazo, (I) fray**, forty-seventh line, respectively become **toad** and **(I) tax**. **Cerio, cerium** (metal), **paces, peace, and bazo, spleen**, forty-eighth line, respectively become **serious, free passes or permits, and glass**. **Zopas, a**

person who lisps too much, cellos, hoops, and tozo, stumpy or (I) **butt** (with the head), forty-ninth line, respectively become **soups, seals or stamps, and (I) cough. Raza, race, cerón, dross of wax, and bozo, down** (of the face) fiftieth line, respectively become **razes, pannier** and (I) **overflow. Ciente, learned, cocido, boiled dinner, and rozo, (I) rub against, fifty-first line, respectively become (he) feels, sewed and thread-bare or red. Cenado, supped, uzo, shutter or door, pozo, well** (noun), fifty-second line, respectively become **senate, use** and (I) **rest. Faz, face, cazuela, earthen pan, and rebozo, muffler, fifty-third line, respectively become fa's** (musical notes), **little house** (depreciative) and (I) **overflow. Cede, yields, fifty-fifth line, becomes see** (ecclesiastical). **Zaque, wine-bag, fifty-ninth line, becomes (I) may draw or (I) may take off. Acechaban, (they) were lurking, sixtieth line, becomes were way-laying. Fucilaban, were flashing, sixty-first line, becomes were shooting. Braza, fathom, sixty-third line, becomes live coal. Mazonería, brickwork, and briza, rocks the cradle, sixty-fourth line, respectively become Freemasonry and breeze. Azola, (he) hews timber, and riza, (she) curls, sixty-fifth line, respectively become devastates and laughter. Ceno, (I) sup, sixty-sixth line, becomes bosom. Zuecos, sabots** (wooden shoes) and **zudas, irrigation water-wheels, sixty-seventh line, respectively become Swedish and (thou) perspirest. Cena, supper, sixty-eighth line, becomes senna** (plant) or **Seine** (river). **Zumo, juice, and cepas, butt-end of vines, seventy-first line, respectively become highest and (you) may know. Cocerme, to cook for me, seventy-second line, becomes to sew for me. Pez, fish** (alive) and **cebo, bait, seventy-fourth line, respectively become p's and tallow or candle grease. Cesó, I stop, seventy-seventh line, becomes brain** (gray matter). **Zeda, z, seventy-ninth line, becomes silk.**

THE LL AND X

The consonant **ll** is pronounced like the consonant **y** by almost the whole native population of Spanish America and by many Spaniards, and the consonant **x** is pronounced like **s**, by many Spanish speaking people, when the **x** forms a syllable with a preceding vowel, followed by another syllable which begins with a consonant.

The consonants **ll** and **x**, when they are respectively pronounced like **y** and **s**, increase the monotony of the Spanish language. They also decrease its vigor and beauty and unnecessarily confuse words and concepts, as can easily be seen in the sentences which follow: **Él calló cuando cayó.** He

became silent when he fell. **Ella espía a los que expían sus delitos.** She spies upon those who expiate their crimes.

If the **ll** of the second word of the first sentence is pronounced as **y**, and the **x** of the sixth word of the second sentence as **s**, we have, when we speak, these different sentences: **Él cayó cuando cayó.** He fell when he fell. **Ella espía a los que espían sus delitos.** She spies upon those who spy upon their crimes.

THE D

It is wrong to pronounce the **d** as **th** in the English word **thought**, as some Spaniards do, when the **d** ends a syllable or a word.

THE V

The proper pronunciation of the **v** is a real problem, because in spite of all the efforts of the Spanish Academy of the Language to have it pronounced as the English **v**, the Spanish speaking people have always disregarded this recommendation and generally pronounce it like a very soft English **b**.

The middle course of pronouncing the **v** like a very soft English **v** has been taken, in this method, for the following reasons:

1. Students can remember the structure of the word better.
2. A very soft **v** sound is not offensive to the Spanish ear.
3. The old wish of the Academy to give a different sound to the **b** and the **v** is thus complied with.
4. Students who, after learning the elements of the language, wish to pronounce the **v** like **b**, may easily do so.

DEFECTS OF SPEECH WHICH SHOULD NOT BE IMITATED BY STUDENTS OF SPANISH

Many persons whose education is defective, or who, for this reason or that, are in the habit of speaking in a slovenly manner, do not pronounce the last consonant of many words, either when the consonant ends the word, or when it begins the formation of the last syllable of a word.

These same persons also omit pronouncing, as a rule, the first vowel of a word when the previous word ends with the same vowel, and, by so doing, they say things that are different from what they mean to say.

Examples of cases where a consonant is omitted when it ends a word, or when it begins the formation of the last syllable of a word:

Pared, wall; they pronounce **paré** which means **I stopped**. **Sed, thirst**; they pronounce **sé** which means **I know**. **Red, net**; they pronounce **re** which means **re**, second note of the scale. **Dados, dice**; they pronounce **daos** which means **give yourselves** (fam. form plur.). **Sentidos, senses** (corporal); they pronounce it **sentíos** which means **hear yourselves** (familiar form plur.). **Lodo, mud**; they pronounce it **loo** which means **I praise**. **Vida, life**; they pronounce it **vía** which means **railroad track**.

Examples of cases when the first vowel of a word is omitted if the previous word ends in the same vowel:

(**Él**) **la adoraba**, (**he**) **adored her**; they pronounce (**él**) **la doraba** which means (**he**) **gilded her**. **Aunque (ella) la aburra**, **although (she) may bore her**; they pronounce **aunque (ella) la burra** which means **although (she) the she-donkey**. **Cuando usted le eche de menos (a él)**, **when you miss him**; they pronounce **cuando usted leche de menos** which means **when you milk of less**. (**Yo**) **me he visto en condiciones peores**, **I have seen myself in worse conditions**; they pronounce (**yo**) **me visto en condiciones peores** which means **I dress myself in worse conditions**. **Mala amiga, bad friend**; they pronounce **mala miga** which means **bad crumb** or **soft part of the bread**. **Más que eso, more than that**; they pronounce **más queso** which means **more cheese**. (**Él**) **la alaba mucho**, **he praises her much**; they pronounce (**Él**) **la laba mucho** which to the ear is **he washes her much**.

Many of these persons defend themselves by saying that only pedants speak the way the Spanish Academy of the Language recommends.

What they should do, instead of offering excuses which do not excuse their ignorance nor their indifference to preserving the purity of our language, is to speak it better.

The same thing should be done by those persons who, owing to excessive local pride, alter the words and the structure of the language, thus destroying much of its clearness and beauty.

LESSON NUMBER TWO

(For studying with or without the aid of the phonographic record.)

DIPHTHONGS

Please pronounce: **ai, au, ei, eu, ia, ie, io, iu, oi, ou, ua, ue, ui, uo.**

TRIPHTHONGS

Please pronounce: **iai,iei, uai, uei.**

CONSONANTS WITH DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS

Please pronounce: **bai, bue, brei; cai, cau, cei, ceu, cia, cie, cio, ciu, coi, cou, cua, cue, cui, cuo, crau, clei; chau, chue; dei, drai; fia, frai, flau; gai, gei, guei, güey, guia, gie, guie, guay; jau, jua; lai, lei; llau, llei; mai, miau; nau, nie; ñau, ñue; pai, pie; rai, rey, rie, rui, arriú, arrué, ariú, arué; sai, sie, sui; tai, tue; via, vue; yai, yue; zai.**

OTHER SYLLABIC COMBINATIONS

Please pronounce: **ab, ach, at; bin, bles, cas, ciais, cieis; club, com, cos, cons, cres, cris, cuin, chen, chin, chis, chum, claus; dad, den, did, dog, dul, dez, dies, dro, dell; fan, fin, fon, for, flan, fuer, uf; gan, gas, guan, guais, gen, guen, güen, gueis, güeis, guez, güez, gin, guin, güin, guien, giais, gun, glan, gra, gram, grey; jac, jar, jus, lien, loj, lus, llar, lliz; mis, mul, nec, pim, plin, pun, pug, pers, pren, plaz; quin, quis, rin, rep, rom, ared, arrín; san, saz, sig, subs, sul; tag, tec, tis, tram, trans, tras, trun; vac, vil, viz, yar, yes, zas.**

HOW DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS ARE FORMED AND PRONOUNCED

Diphthongs are formed by putting together a strong vowel and a weak one, or two weak vowels. The strong vowels are **a, e, o**, and the weak ones **i** and **u**.

Triphthongs are formed by putting together two weak vowels and a strong one.

As diphthongs and triphthongs are respectively the union of two or three vowels, pronounced in one syllable, they should be pronounced in such a way as to bring out every vowel sound as distinctly as possible.

REFERENCE MATERIAL TO BE STUDIED WHEN INDICATED IN THE "NOTES" OF THE THIRD AND FOLLOWING LESSONS

WHERE TO PLACE THE VOCAL ACCENT

1. (a) Words ending in a vowel like **parte, part**, or in the consonants **n** or **s**, like **comprenden**, (they) **understand**, and **partes, parts**, are stressed on the syllable before the last, if no written accent (´) is on the word. (b) If the word has a written accent, like **Perú, Peru**, or **también, also**, stress the accented syllable which has the mark (´). Exceptions to this rule are unimportant words like prepositions and conjunctions, whose syllables are pronounced with the same amount of force. Examples of these exceptions are: **porque, because; entre, between; sobre, above or on; mientras, while**.

2. Words like **favor, favor**, ending in a consonant, except those which end in **n** or **s**, are stressed on the last syllable if no written accent is on the word. If the word has a written accent, like **árbol, tree**, stress the accented syllable which has the mark (´).

3. In compound words, the vocal accent is kept exactly the same as if the words were separated. Example: **perfectamente, perfectly**, is a compound word made of **perfecta** and **mente**, the second and fourth syllables of which are stressed.

HOW TO PLACE THE WRITTEN ACCENT ON SPANISH WORDS

1. Words whose vocal accent is on the last syllable, ending in a vowel, or in the consonants **n** or **s**, require the orthographic or written accent on the last syllable. Examples: **Perú, Peru; París, Paris; también, also**.

2. Words whose vocal accent is on the syllable before the last, ending in a consonant, except **n** or **s**, require the orthographic or written accent on the syllable before the last. Example: **árbol, tree**.

3. All the words of three or more syllables, whose vocal accent is neither on the last nor on the syllable before the last, require the written accent on the syllable which is stressed by the voice. Example: **América, America**.

4. Words of one syllable do not need the orthographic accent, unless there are two of the same form with a different meaning, and unless the monosyllabic words are part of a verb ending in a diphthong. Examples: **el, the; él, he; fué, he was.**

5. Words ending in a strong vowel, that is to say, in **a, e, or o**, or in a strong vowel and a consonant, preceded by either **i** or **u**, need the orthographic accent on the weak vowel, if no diphthong exists. Examples: **día, day; días, days.**

6. Words whose last syllable has a stressed weak vowel, followed by a consonant and preceded by a strong vowel which belongs to the syllable before the last, require the orthographic accent on the weak vowel. Example: **raíz, root.**

7. When a diphthong occurring in a word needs the orthographic accent, the accent should be put on the strong vowel, or on the second vowel, if both of them are weak. Examples: **después, afterwards; fuí, I went.**

8. When a triphthong occurs in a word, the written accent is placed on the strong vowel, if the triphthong needs an orthographic mark to show where the stress is placed. Examples: **despreciáis, you despise.**

9. When a word ends in a diphthong and the consonant **s**, and this diphthong is preceded by a stressed weak vowel which belongs to the syllable before the last, the written accent is placed on the stressed weak vowel. Example: **comprenderíais, you would understand.**

10. In compound words, the orthographic accent is placed on the syllable of the first word which needs it, because the vocal accent is kept in compound words, exactly the same as if the words were separated. Example: **fácilmente, easily.**

11. Demonstrative and interrogative pronouns need the written accent on the syllable which has the stress of the pronunciation to distinguish them from the demonstrative adjectives and relative pronouns, which are the same in form. Examples: **éste, this; qué, what.**

12. The word **solo** when it means **only**, needs the written accent on the **o** of the first syllable. Also the word **aun**, whose English meaning is **still, yet, or as yet**, needs the written accent on the **u** when it follows a verb.

PUNCTUATION

Spanish punctuation is practically the same as English, with the addition of the inverted signs of interrogation and exclamation, which are placed at the beginning of interrogative and exclamatory sentences. The interrogative sentence begins with the mark (*¿*), and it ends, as in English, with this one (*?*). The exclamatory sentence begins with the mark (*¡*) and ends with this one (*!*).

THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS

Capital letters in Spanish are practically used the same as in English, but adjectives which indicate nationality are written with small letters. The names of the months of the year and the names of the days of the week are also written with small letters; but a great many persons disregard this rule and write them with capital letters.

The words **usted**, **you**, and **señor**, **sir** or **Mr.** are generally abbreviated this way: **Ud.** and **Sr.**

The equivalent of the English word **I** is never written in Spanish with a capital letter, unless it begins a sentence.

SYLLABICATION

1. When a consonant occurs between two vowels, the consonant forms a syllable with the following vowel.

2. When two consonants are together in a word, unless there be a combination of **b, c, d, f, g, p, t**, with **l** or **r**, the first consonant forms a syllable with the preceding vowel, and the second with the following vowel. An exception to this rule is the consonant **s** when it is between two consonants, in the middle of a word. In this case, the **s** forms a syllable with the preceding letter or group of letters. Example: **cons-tante**, **constant**.

3. The particles **des**, **sub**, and **ab** must not be broken up when these particles form compound words. Examples: **des-a-gra-da-ble**, **disagreeable**; **sub-a-rren-dar**, **to sublet**; **ab-so-lu-ta-men-te**, **absolutely**. The same rule applies to the particles **nos** and **vos**, respectively, of **nos-o-tros**, **we**; and **vos-o-tros**, **you** (familiar form plural).

4. The letters **ch**, **ll**, and **rr**, are single letters, and, consequently, are not separated.

5. Although the soft **r** never begins a word, it begins a syllable. Consequently, words which in Spanish have the soft **r** at the beginning of the second, third, or fourth syllable, should be divided thus: **ca-ra-me-lo**, **caramel**.

6. The Spanish Academy does not make any recommendation regarding the position of the consonant **x** when this letter occurs between two vowels, as in the word **existencia**, **existence**, but it is advisable to make the division by uniting the **x** to the previous vowel.

LECCIÓN TERCERA—THIRD LESSON

(For studying with or without the aid of the phonographic record.)

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

Please pronounce:

alfabeto	(al-fa-be-to)	alphabet
América	(A-mé-ri-ca)	America
Argentina	(Ar-gèn-ti-na)	Argentina
bien	(bien)	well
Buenos Aires	(Bue-nos Ai-res), (m.)	Buenos Aires
capital	(ca-pi-tal), (f.)	capital (city)
consonante	(con-so-nan-te), (f.)	consonant
continente	(con-ti-nen-te), (m.)	continent
continuar	(con-ti-nuar)	to continue
correcto	(co-rrec-to)	correct
Chile	(Chi-le)	Chile
de	(de)	of
del	(del)	of the
donde	(don-de)	where (dónde, interrogative)
ejercicio	(e-jer-ci-cio)	exercise
el	(el)	the (masc. sing.)
en	(en)	in, at, on, into
es	(es)	is
España	(Es-pa-ña)	Spain
español	(es-pa-ñol), (m.)	Spanish (for both language and nationality)
Estados Unidos	(Es-ta-dos U-ni-dos)	United States
favor	(fa-vor), (m.)	favor
Francia	(Fran-cia)	France
grande	(gran-de)	large, grand
hágame	(há-ga-me)	do me
idea	(i-de-a)	idea
incorrecto	(in-co-rrec-to)	incorrect
Inglaterra	(In-gla-te-rra)	England
la	(la)	the (fem. sing.)
las	(las)	the (fem. plur.)
lección	(lec-ción), (f.)	lesson
letra	(le-tra)	letter

Lima	(Li-ma)	Lima
Londres	(Lon-dres), (m.)	London
los	(los)	the (masc. plur.)
Madrid	(Ma-drid), (m.)	Madrid
muy	(muy)	very
nación	(na-ción), (f.)	nation
no	(no)	no, not
palabra	(pa-la-bra)	word
París	(Pa-rís), (m.)	Paris
parte	(par-te), (f.)	part, place
perfectamente	(per-fec-ta-men-te)	perfectly
Perú	(Pe-rú), (m.)	Peru
porque	(por-que)	because
presidente	(pre-si-den-te), (m.)	president
primero	(pri-me-ro)	first
pronunciar	(pro-nun-ciar)	to pronounce
que	(que)	that, which, who (interrogative form qué, what)
quien	(quien)	who (interrogative quién)
repetir	(re-pe-tir), irr.,	to repeat
República Argentina	(Re-pú-bli-ca Ar-gen-ti-na)	Argentine Republic
reside	(re-si-de)	resides
respectivamente	(res-pec-ti-va-men-te)	respectively
Santiago	(San-tia-go)	Santiago
segundo	(se-gun-do)	second (adj.)
señor	(se-ñor)	Mr., Sir, gentleman
señora	(se-ño-ra)	Mrs., madam, lady
señorita	(se-ño-ri-ta)	Miss, young lady
sí	(sí)	yes
sílaba	(sí-la-ba)	syllable
son	(son)	are
también	(tam-bién)	also
tercero	(ter-ce-ro)	third
un	(un)	a, one (masc. sing.)
una	(u-na)	a, one (fem. sing.)
usted	(us-ted)	you (polite form sing.)
usted expresa	(us-ted ex-pre-sa)	you express
vocabulario	(vo-ca-bu-la-rio)	vocabulary

vocal	(vo-cal), (f.)	vowel
Washington	(Wash-ing-ton)	Washington
y	(y)	and
yo no comprendo	(yo no com-pren-do)	I do not under-stand

Hágame usted el favor de pronunciar bien la letra . . .
Please pronounce well the letter

Hágame usted el favor de pronunciar bien la sílaba . . .
Please pronounce well the syllable

Hágame usted el favor de pronunciar bien la palabra . . .
Please pronounce well the word

Hágame usted el favor de continuar. Please continue.

Hágame usted el favor de repetir. Please repeat.

Hágame usted el favor de repetir, porque yo no comprendo bien la idea que usted expresa. Please repeat, because I do not understand well the idea that you express.

EJERCICIO PRIMERO—FIRST LESSON

El señor— es el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América.

El señor presidente de los Estados Unidos de América reside en Washington.

Washington es la capital de los Estados Unidos.

Madrid es la capital de España.

París es la capital de Francia.

Lima es la capital del Perú.

Santiago es la capital de Chile.

Londres es la capital de Inglaterra.

Buenos Aires es la capital de la República Argentina.

Londres y Buenos Aires son, respectivamente, las capitales de Inglaterra y de la República Argentina.

EJERCICIO SEGUNDO—SECOND EXERCISE

Madrid es una capital.

Buenos Aires es, también, una capital.

España es una nación.

La República Argentina es, también, una nación.

Madrid y Buenos Aires son capitales.

Washington y Londres son, también, capitales.

España y la República Argentina son naciones.

Francia y los Estados Unidos son, también, naciones.

EJERCICIO TERCERO—THIRD EXERCISE

España es parte de un continente grande.

Los Estados Unidos son, también, parte de un continente grande.

Los Estados Unidos y España son partes de continentes grandes.

NOTES

1. The abbreviation *m.*, stands for masculine; *f*, for feminine, and *irr.* for irregular.

2. Study under the heading *Where to Place the Vocal Accent*, page 42, all the rules given; also rules 1, 2, 3, 4 and 10, under the heading, *How to Place the Written Accent on Spanish Words*, page 42, and everything given under the headings *Syllabication*, *Punctuation*, and the *Use of Capital Letters*, pages 44, 43, and 44, respectively.

3. Study rule 1, under *Gender of Nouns According to their Endings*, page 227; also rules 1 and 2, under *How to Obtain the Plural of Singular Nouns*, page 231, and also rule given under *Cases in Which the Letter s is Added*, page 231.

4. Study the forms of the definite article, page 219; also rule given under the heading *Contractions of the Article with the Prepositions de and a*, page 220, and rule 1 under *Principal Cases Where the Definite Article is Used in Spanish but not in English*, page 220.

5. See in the *Note*, page 222, that *Perú* and the *Argentine Republic* are among the names which in Spanish require to be preceded by the definite article.

6. Study under *The Gender of Adjectives* everything given, page 242; also everything given under *Formation of the Feminine from Masculine Adjectives*, page 242; also everything given under *Formation of the Plural*, page 242; also everything given under *Agreement of Adjectives*, page 243, and what is said under the heading *Position of Adjectives*, page 243.

7. It must be borne in mind that the definite or indefinite article always agrees, like adjectives, with the noun which it accompanies, both in gender and number.

8. It must also be borne in mind that the Spanish language does not need the equivalent of the auxiliary verb *to do* to form interrogative, negative or emphatic sentences.

Examples:

¿Reside el presidente de los Estados Unidos en Washington? *Does the President of the United States reside in Washington?* (The only thing which is necessary to do, to form the above Spanish interrogative sentence, is to place the verb before the subject.)

El presidente de los Estados Unidos no reside en Buenos Aires. *The President of the United States does not reside in Buenos Aires.* (Notice that, in the Spanish sentence, there is no equivalent to the English *does*.)

El presidente de los Estados Unidos reside en Washington. *The President of the United States resides or does reside in Washington.*

SUGGESTIONS AS TO THE BEST WAY TO USE THE CONVERSATIONAL MATERIAL OF THE THIRD LESSON

STEPS SUGGESTED FOR THE FIRST EXERCISE

- First: The affirmative sentence, "El señor —— (give here the name of the president of the United States) es el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América," should first be taken into consideration.
- Second: As soon as the first sentence is clearly understood, formulate an interrogative sentence by placing the verb before the subject, preceded by the inverted interrogation mark, in this fashion: "¿Es el señor —— (give here the name of the president of the United States) el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América?"
- Third: Answer the above question this way: "Sí señor, **or** sí, señora, **or** sí señorita," "El señor —— es el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América."
- Fourth: Repeat the same steps with the second sentence, "El señor presidente de los Estados Unidos de América reside en Washington," and formulate the following interrogative sentence: "¿Reside el señor presidente de los Estados Unidos de América en Washington?" Answer the same as before, i.e., by saying: "Sí, señor, **or** señora, **or** señorita," "El señor presidente de los Estados Unidos reside en Washington."
- Fifth: Read until they are well understood the other sentences of the exercise, repeat the same steps as before, and then ask: "¿Es Washington la capital de España?" **or** "¿Es Madrid la capital de los Estados Unidos?" etc. Begin the answer by saying: "No señor, **or** señora, **or** señorita," and then continue this way: "Washington no es la capital de España," etc.; always being careful to place the adverb of negation **no** before the verb, in the negative sentence. After saying "No señor, etc."; read the last sentence of the first exercise, until understood, and then ask: "¿Son Londres y Buenos Aires, respectivamente, las capitales de Inglaterra y de la República Argentina?" Answer affirmatively, in the plural, thus: "Sí, señor," etc. "Londres y Buenos Aires son, respectivamente, las capitales de Inglaterra y de la República Argentina."

- Sixth: Ask indiscriminately questions with every sentence of the first exercise which requires for an answer either an affirmative or a negative sentence, both in the singular and in the plural.
- Seventh: Obtain one more affirmative answer by using the interrogative **quién**, in this fashion: "¿Quién es el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América?"
- Eighth: When the name of the president of the United States is given in the answer to the above question, ask this other one to obtain a negative answer: "¿Es el señor—— (give here the name of the president of the United States) presidente de Francia?" etc.
- Ninth: Obtain one more affirmative answer by using the interrogative **dónde**, thus: "¿Dónde reside el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América?"
- Tenth: Obtain one more negative answer by asking: "¿Reside el presidente de los Estados Unidos en Francia?" etc.

STEPS SUGGESTED FOR THE SECOND EXERCISE

- First: Take into consideration the first two sentences: "Madrid es una capital" and "Buenos Aires es, también, una capital."
- Second: Ask questions with both sentences so as to require affirmative answers.
- Third: Take into consideration the next two sentences and ask questions which require affirmative answers.
- Fourth: Ask questions with the first four sentences in such a fashion that they will require both affirmative and negative answers. Ask questions to obtain negative answers, in this way: "¿Es Madrid una nación?" "¿Es España una capital?" etc.
- Fifth: Obtain affirmative answers by using the interrogative **qué**, in the sentences which follow. Ask: "¿Qué es Madrid?" or "¿Qué es España?" etc., after negative answers to the questions "¿Es Madrid una nación?" and "¿Es España una capital?" have been given.
- Sixth: Take into consideration sentences five and six and ask questions which require affirmative answers.
- Seventh: Do the same with the two sentences which follow.
- Eighth: Ask questions with the last four sentences in such a way as to require both affirmative and negative answers.
- Ninth: Ask, indiscriminately, questions with every sentence of the second exercise in such a fashion as to require either an affirmative or a negative answer.

Tenth: Ask, indiscriminately, questions with every sentence of the first and second exercises so as to require both affirmative and negative answers.

STEPS SUGGESTED FOR THE THIRD EXERCISE

First: Take into consideration the first sentence and ask a question which requires an affirmative answer.

Second: Do the same with the second sentence.

Third: Do likewise with the third.

Fourth: Ask, indiscriminately, questions with every sentence of the three exercises in such a fashion as to require both affirmative and negative answers.

Fifth: Use the expressions **correcto**, **incorrecto**, **bien**, **muy bien**, **perfectamente**, etc., with señor, señora, or señorita, in order to indicate your approval or disapproval of the way the answers are given.

Sixth: Use "Hágame usted el favor de pronunciar (*or* pronunciar bien), (1) la primera, segunda **or** tercera vocal del alfabeto español, (2) las vocales del alfabeto español, (3) las consonantes del alfabeto español, (4) la primera letra de la palabra . . ., (5) la tercera letra de la palabra . . ., (6) la segunda sílaba de la palabra . . ., etc., whenever you wish somebody to do so.

Use "Hágame usted el favor de continuar," in case you wish the answer which is being given to be continued by someone else.

Use "Hágame usted el favor de repetir" or "Hágame usted el favor de repetir, porque yo no comprendo la idea que usted expresa," in case you desire the person who answers a question to repeat the answer.

SUGGESTIONS TO INSTRUCTORS AS TO THE BEST WAY TO USE THE MATERIAL IN THIS WORK

After the problem of pronunciation has been efficiently solved by thoroughly assimilating the important parts of the three preparatory lessons, the following method of procedure is suggested:

(1) The language which is being studied should always be used in the classroom, except when translating, when discussing points of grammar, or when something has to be said which the student is unable to understand in the language he is learning.

(2) The basis of conversation should always be the vocabulary of the lesson assigned for the session which is being held, together with the grammatical points of the same lesson.

In the questions asked, to the whole class or to the individual student, words or points of grammar previously considered may be included, but never any material which has not been studied before.

When the instructor deems it advisable to formulate his own questions to cover the conversational material of the lesson, the most appropriate time to do this is at the beginning of the period, before any other thing is done, because, the answers given by the students, immediately reveal the extent of their preparation. In this case, the section "QUESTIONS" of the lesson does not need to be used later, so as not to duplicate the work.

(3) When the instructor does not deem it advisable to formulate his own questions, the "THEME," which should be translated into English by every student, in writing, as part of the home work, should be the first thing considered in class.

After the student reads the sentence assigned, he must translate it directly from the book, without seeing his written translation, while the other students should look, both in their books and on their papers, to ascertain the correctness of their translation or to correct any error which may occur in them.

When all the sentences in the "THEME" have been read and translated, the papers should immediately be collected, and any uncorrected error found in them should be counted against the student, because it reveals either lack of attention to the lesson or insufficient preparation.

(4) The section "QUESTIONS" should be considered after the "THEME" has been read and translated, if the instructor does not formulate his own questions. These "QUESTIONS" should first be read; then they should be translated into English to see if the student is familiar with every word used in them, and, after being translated, they should be answered in Spanish without looking at the book.

The student must always assume that someone is asking the question assigned, and, in the answer, he must use, preferably in the same order, the greatest possible number of words used in the question, plus all the additional ones that he may care to add.

(5) The "ENGLISH EXERCISE," which should be translated into Spanish by every student, in writing, as part of the home work, should be the last part of the lesson to be considered.

The instructor may follow the suggestions above given for the translation of the "THEME," or may follow this other plan, which undoubtedly is a little better for the purpose:

Write each of the twelve English sentences on a different card, shuffle the cards, and give one to each of the twelve students that may be sent to translate them on the blackboard.

After the twelve sentences have been translated, the instructor should examine and correct them, while all the students in the classroom ascertain the correctness of their translations or correct the errors on their papers. These papers should be collected immediately after the last sentence has been examined.

(6) As a given lesson may need two or more sessions to thoroughly cover it, the assignments may be made this way:

If the students have the aid of the phonographic records, the whole "VOCABULARY" of the lesson and the "THEME" may be assigned for one session, and the rest of the lesson for another; but if they do not have the help of the records with which to prepare lessons, only that half of the "VOCABULARY" which is contained in approximately the first half of the "THEME," plus those sentences of the "THEME" which contain these words, should be assigned for one session; the rest of the "VOCABULARY" and "THEME" for another, and what is left of the lesson for a third session.

(7) Whenever a new lesson is assigned, its vocabulary should always be read in class by the instructor and repeated by the whole class or by the individual student. This practice may be discontinued after the first fifteen or twenty lessons, if the instructor sees that there is no further need for it.

(8) The *grammar* which should be studied in connection with a given lesson, is indicated in the "NOTES" of that lesson; consequently the "NOTES" always need to be carefully considered.

(9) The study of the "GRAMMAR" as a whole must not begin until after the forty lessons have been studied and assimilated.

NOTE.—If any of the above suggestions do not meet with the approval of the instructor, he may disregard them, and follow his own ideas to solve his own individual problem.

SUGGESTIONS TO STUDENTS AS TO THE BEST WAY TO ASSIMILATE THE MATERIAL OF THE LESSONS WHICH FOLLOW

1. If records are used as an aid in the preparation of the lesson, place the corresponding record on the talking machine, and, as previously stated on page 27, learn the vocabulary of each lesson before studying the rest of the recorded material.

2. When the vocabulary of each lesson and the "THEME" have been assimilated, with or without the aid of the phonographic records, translate, into English, in writing, every sentence in the "THEME."

3. Read and answer, in Spanish, every question of the section "QUESTIONS," if you study alone; but if you study the lesson with someone else, one of the students should ask the question, and the other student must answer it without looking at the book.

4. Translate, into Spanish, in writing, every sentence of the English exercise.

5. Read the respective "NOTES" of every lesson very carefully, so as to obtain necessary information, or to see in what part of the "GRAMMAR" you have to study the rule or rules that you may need for the lesson which is being studied.

NOTE.—Students who do not study under the leadership of an instructor, should take steps to have the translation of the "English Exercises" looked over by someone capable of correcting any mistakes which may occur.

LECCIÓN CUARTA—FOURTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a , to, at.	hablar , to speak.
agua , water.	huevo , egg.
aprender , to learn.	idioma , <i>m.</i> , language.
bastante , enough.	importante , important.
bastante bien , fairly well.	leche , <i>f.</i> , milk.
beber , to drink.	limonada , lemonade.
café , <i>m.</i> , coffee.	mucho , much, a great deal.
carne , <i>f.</i> , meat.	necesario , necessary.
coliflor , <i>f.</i> , cauliflower.	o , or.
comer , to eat, to dine.	pan , <i>m.</i> , bread.
comprender , to understand.	pan y mantequilla , bread and butter.
con , with.	patata , potato (papa in almost all Spanish America).
cuando , when (cuándo, interrogative).	poco , little.
desear , to wish, to desire.	por qué , why.
después , after, afterwards.	sin , without.
después de , after.	solamente , only.
dificultad , <i>f.</i> , difficulty.	te , <i>m.</i> , tea.
ella , she.	tomar , to take.
estudiar , to study.	tomate , <i>m.</i> , tomato.
existir , to exist.	útil , useful.
fácil , easy.	vivir , to live.
facilidad , <i>f.</i> , ease, facility.	

Presente de Indicativo—Present Indicative

hablar		comer		vivir	
yo	hablo	yo	como	yo	vivo
tú	hablas	tú	comes	tú	vives
él	habla	él	come	él	vive
nosotros	hablamos	nosotros	comemos	nosotros	vivimos
vosotros	habláis	vosotros	coméis	vosotros	vivis
ellos	hablan	ellos	comen	ellos	viven
I speak, etc.		I eat, etc.		I live, etc.	

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo hablo español. (2) Yo como pan y mantequilla, carne, huevos, patatas, tomates y coliflor. (3) Yo bebo

agua y (yo) tomo leche, te, café y limonada. (4) Yo vivo.

(5) Yo vivo porque (yo) hablo español, porque (yo) como pan y mantequilla, carne, huevos, patatas, tomates y coliflor, y porque (yo) bebo agua y (yo) tomo leche, te, café y limonada. (6) Cuando (yo) no hablo, cuando (yo) no como o cuando (yo) no bebo, solamente (yo) existo.

(7) Yo deseo hablar, comer, beber y vivir, porque ella habla, come, bebe y vive. (8) También usted desea hablar, comer, beber y vivir, porque nosotros hablamos, comemos, bebemos y vivimos. (9) También él desea hablar, comer, beber y vivir, porque ustedes hablan, comen, beben y viven.

(10) Después de hablar, después de comer y después de beber yo estudio. (11) También usted estudia después de hablar, después de comer y después de beber. (12) Usted estudia el idioma español. (13) Usted aprende con facilidad y sin dificultad el idioma que (usted) estudia. (14) Yo aprendo también con facilidad y sin dificultad el idioma que (yo) estudio. (15) Él aprende también con facilidad y sin dificultad el idioma que (él) estudia.

(16) Yo estudio mucho y (yo) comprendo un poco el idioma que (yo) estudio. (17) Ella estudia mucho y (ella) comprende bastante bien el idioma que (nosotros) estudiamos. (18) Nosotros estudiamos el idioma español. (19) Nosotros estudiamos mucho el idioma español cuando (nosotros) comemos bastante.

(20) Yo deseo comer bastante. (21) También (yo) deseo aprender a hablar perfectamente el idioma español, porque el idioma español es fácil, útil, importante y necesario.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Habla usted español? (2) ¿Come usted pan y mantequilla? (3) ¿Come usted carne y huevos? (4) ¿Come usted patatas, tomates y coliflor? (5) ¿Bebe usted agua? (6) ¿Toma usted leche, te, café y limonada? (7) ¿Vive usted porque (usted) habla español, y porque (usted)

come pan y mantequilla, carne, huevos, patatas, tomates y coliflor? (8) ¿Vive usted también porque (usted) bebe agua, y porque (usted) toma leche, te, café y limonada? (9) ¿Cuándo existe usted? (10) ¿Desea usted hablar, comer, beber y vivir, porque ella habla, come, bebe y vive? (11) ¿Quién desea hablar, comer, beber y vivir también, porque ustedes hablan, comen, beben y viven? (12) ¿Desea él hablar, comer, beber y vivir también, porque nosotros hablamos, comemos, bebemos y vivimos? (13) ¿Estudia usted después de hablar, después de comer y después de beber? (14) ¿Quién estudia, también, después de hablar después de comer y después de beber? (15) ¿Quién estudia el idioma español? (16) ¿Quién aprende con facilidad y sin dificultad el idioma que yo estudio? (17) ¿Aprende usted con facilidad y sin dificultad el idioma que usted estudia? (18) ¿Aprende él también, con facilidad y sin dificultad, el idioma que (él) estudia? (19) ¿Estudia usted mucho y comprende (usted) un poco el idioma que (usted) estudia? (20) ¿Estudia ella mucho y comprende (ella) bastante bien el idioma que ustedes estudian? (21) ¿Qué idioma estudian ustedes? (22) ¿Estudian ustedes mucho el idioma español cuando (ustedes) comen bastante? (23) ¿Desea usted comer bastante? (24) ¿Por qué desea usted aprender a hablar perfectamente el idioma español?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I speak the Spanish language with ease and without difficulty. (2) I eat bread and butter, tomatoes, potatoes, eggs, and cauliflower. (3) You (familiar form singular) drink water. (4) When he studies enough, he learns the vocabulary of the lesson very well. (5) When we take milk or coffee, she takes lemonade. (6) You (familiar form plural) eat and drink after studying. (7) You (polite form plural) and they desire to learn the Spanish language very well. (8) We understand fairly well when she speaks. (9) You (polite form singular) desire to learn to speak the Spanish

language perfectly. (10) They desire to take tea after eating. (11) After eating and drinking, I study and learn the Spanish language. (12) I learn the Spanish language, because the Spanish language is useful, important, necessary and easy.

NOTES

1. The plural of *mucho* is *muchos*, *many*. *Manteca de vaca* is used in Spain and in Argentina for *butter*, but the word *mantequilla* is used in Mexico, Cuba, Venezuela and other countries of Spanish America.

2. Study everything under *Subject Pronouns*, page 261; also everything given under *Remarks about TÚ VOSOTROS*, etc., page 261, and everything which is under *Remarks about the use of USTED*, page 262.

3. See the conjugation of the present indicative of *hablar*, with the English equivalents, page 347; of *comer*, page 350, and of *vivir*, page 353.

4. Study under *The Present Indicative—Its Uses*, rule 1, page 316, and everything given under the heading *Formation of the Present Indicative*, page 318.

5. The verb *tomar*, to take, is used with the meaning of *to drink* in sentences 3 and 5 of the *Theme*.

6. Note in sentence 11 of the *Theme*, that the expressions *después de hablar*, *después de comer*, and *después de beber*, are equivalent to *after speaking*, *after eating* and *after drinking*, because, in Spanish, the infinitive is the word which follows a preposition, instead of the present participle as in English.

7. It must be borne in mind that in sentence 16 of the *Theme*, the word *of* must be used in English, after the equivalent of *poco*, *little*, to translate the Spanish idea properly.

8. Notice, in sentence 23 of the *Theme*, this: that after *aprender*, the preposition *a* is used, because, in Spanish, a preposition is required after verbs of learning, when another infinitive follows. This preposition *a* is not translated in English.

9. Study under *Position of Adverbs*, everything given under the subdivision *Position in Regard to the Verb*, page 392.

LECCIÓN QUINTA—FIFTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

alguna , some (plural algunas).	huevo pasado por agua , soft-boiled egg (lit. passed through water).
alguna vez , sometimes (plural algunas veces).	huevo revuelto , scrambled egg.
antes , before.	jamón , <i>m.</i> , ham.
antes de , before.	legumbres , <i>f.</i> , vegetables (also verduras).
bistec , <i>m.</i> , beefsteak (also biftec).	mermelada , marmalade.
café con leche , coffee with milk.	panecillo , roll.
cereal , <i>m.</i> , cereal.	patata asada , baked potato.
comprar , to buy.	patata frita , fried potato.
cortar , to cut.	plato , plate, dish.
costilla , rib, chop.	por , by, through.
costilla de carnero , mutton chop.	por la mañana , in the morning (lit. by the morning).
costilla de cerdo , pork chop.	por la tarde , in the afternoon (lit. by the afternoon).
costilla de cordero , lamb chop.	por la noche , in the evening or in the night (lit. by the evening or by the night).
costilla de ternera , veal chop.	por último , finally, at last.
costilla de vaca , rib of beef.	rosbif , <i>m.</i> , roast beef.
cuchara , spoon.	si , if.
cuchillo , knife.	sopa , soup.
chocolate , <i>m.</i> , chocolate.	taza , cup.
escudilla , bowl.	tenedor , <i>m.</i> , fork.
fruta , fruit.	tocino , bacon.
generalmente , generally.	tortilla , omelet.
huevo cocido , hard-boiled egg.	vaso , glass, tumbler.
huevo frito , fried egg (also huevo estrellado).	

TEMA—THEME

- (1) Yo compro leche por la mañana. (2) Yo tomo leche por la mañana. (3) Yo como costillas de cordero, huevos fritos y patatas fritas por la mañana. (4) Yo corto, con el cuchillo, la carne y el pan que (yo) como por la mañana. (5) Yo aprendo mucho español si (yo) estudio por la mañana. (6) Usted compra y toma leche por la mañana. (7) Usted

corta, con el cuchillo, el pan, las costillas de cordero, los huevos fritos y las patatas fritas que (usted) come por la mañana. (8) Usted aprende mucho español si (usted) estudia por la mañana.

(9) Usted y yo estudiamos mucho por la mañana. (10) Nosotros estudiamos mucho después de tomar una taza de café con leche, y después de comer mermelada, huevos fritos, patatas fritas y panecillos. (11) Cuando nosotros no estudiamos por la mañana, (nosotros) estudiamos por la tarde o por la noche.

(12) Por la noche, después de estudiar, (yo) tomo un plato de sopa. (13) Generalmente (yo) tomo un plato de sopa de legumbres, y también un vaso de leche, una taza de chocolate y huevos pasados por agua. (14) Algunas veces (yo) tomo jamón, tocino, tortilla, patatas asadas y rosbif.

(15) Ustedes toman también, algunas veces, un plato de sopa de legumbres, un vaso de leche y una taza de chocolate, y también jamón, tocino, tortilla, patatas asadas y rosbif.

(16) Algunas veces (yo) como rosbif antes de estudiar español. (17) Yo tomo, con el tenedor, el rosbif que (yo) como. (18) También (yo) tomo, con el tenedor, el jamón, el tocino, la tortilla, los huevos revueltos y las legumbres. (19) Yo no tomo la sopa con el tenedor. (20) Yo tomo la sopa con la cuchara.

(21) Algunas veces (yo) compro cucharas. (22) También (yo) compro, algunas veces, platos, vasos, tazas, escudillas, tenedores, te, café y chocolate. (23) También (yo) compro, algunas veces, huevos cocidos, fruta, cereales y legumbres. (24) También (yo) compro, algunas veces, costillas de carnero, costillas de cerdo, costillas de ternera y costillas de vaca, y, por último, un bistec.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Compra usted leche por la mañana? (2) ¿Toma usted leche por la mañana? (3) ¿Come usted costillas de cordero, huevos fritos y patatas fritas por la mañana? (4) ¿Corta usted, con el cuchillo, la carne y el pan que (usted)

come por la mañana? (5) ¿Aprende usted mucho español si (usted) estudia por la mañana? (6) ¿Quién compra y toma leche por la mañana? (7) ¿Quién corta, con el cuchillo, el pan, las costillas de cordero, los huevos fritos y las patatas fritas que usted come por la mañana? (8) ¿Quién estudia y aprende mucho español por la mañana? (9) ¿Estudian ustedes mucho por la mañana? (10) Estudian ustedes mucho después de tomar una taza de café con leche? (11) ¿Estudian ustedes también mucho, después de comer mermelada, huevos fritos, patatas fritas y panecillos? (12) ¿Estudian ustedes por la tarde o por la noche cuando (ustedes) no estudian por la mañana? (13) ¿Toma usted un plato de sopa, por la noche, después de estudiar? (14) ¿Toma usted, generalmente, un plato de sopa de legumbres? (15) ¿Toma usted, también, un vaso de leche, una taza de chocolate y huevos pasados por agua? (16) ¿Toma usted, algunas veces, jamón, tocino, tortilla, patatas asadas y rosbif? (17) ¿Tomamos nosotros también, algunas veces, un plato de sopa de legumbres, un vaso de leche y una taza de chocolate? (18) Tomamos nosotros, también, jamón, tocino, tortilla, patatas asadas y rosbif? (19) ¿Come usted, algunas veces, rosbif antes de estudiar español? (20) ¿Toma usted con el tenedor el rosbif que (usted) come? (21) ¿Toma usted también, con el tenedor, el jamón, el tocino, la tortilla, los huevos revueltos y las legumbres? (22) ¿Toma usted la sopa con el tenedor? (23) ¿Con qué toma usted la sopa? (24) ¿Compra usted, algunas veces, cucharas? (25) ¿Compra usted también platos, vasos, tazas, escudillas, cuchillos, tenedores, te, café y chocolate? (26) ¿Compra usted también huevos cocidos, fruta, cereales y legumbres? (27) ¿Compra usted también, algunas veces, costillas de carnero, costillas de cerdo, costillas de ternera y costillas de vaca? (28) ¿Qué compra usted por último?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

- (1) I buy the glass of milk that I take in the morning.
(2) She does not buy the rolls, the marmalade, and the cup of

chocolate which she takes in the morning. (3) He buys the omelet, the bacon, the ham, the baked potatoes, and the lamb chops that they eat in the afternoon. (4) You (familiar form singular) eat the bread and the meat which we cut with the knife in the evening. (5) When you (polite form plural) drink water, we wish to drink lemonade. (6) When you (familiar form sing.) take the soup with the spoon, they (feminine) take the vegetables with the fork. (7) She learns to speak Spanish without difficulty when she studies at night. (8) I do not study much after eating mutton chops and fried potatoes. (9) We buy pork chops, veal chops and ribs of beef when you (familiar form sing.) buy fruit, coffee, vegetables and bread. (10) Sometimes you (polite form sing.) take a cup of tea, in the evening, after studying the Spanish language. (11) They wish to learn the vocabulary of the lesson before taking a cup of coffee with milk. (12) Finally, they wish to speak in the language that they study.

NOTES

1. *Vaca* is, in English, *cow*; *ternera* is *heifer calf*; *carnero* is *ram* and *cerdo* is *pig*. Consequently the literal translation of *costilla de carnero* is *chop or rib of ram*; of *costilla de cerdo* is *chop or rib of pig*; of *costilla de cordero* is *chop or rib of lamb*; of *costilla de ternera* is *chop or rib of heifer calf*, and of *costilla de vaca* is *chop or rib of cow*. In Argentina, *chancho* is the word used for *pig*.

2. In Mexico and other Spanish speaking countries, *tortilla* is *corn griddle cake*; *omelet* is *tortilla de huevos*.

3. In sentence 13 of the *Theme*, *sopa de legumbres*, which literally means *soup of vegetables*, must be translated by *vegetable soup*.

LECCIÓN SEXTA—SIXTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

ahora , now.	melocotón , <i>m.</i> , peach (durazno in almost all Spanish America).
algo , something.	melón , <i>m.</i> , melon.
almeja , clam.	miel , <i>f.</i> , honey.
apio , celery.	misma , same.
banana , banana (also plátano).	mosto , grape juice.
bebida , beverage.	nada , nothing.
botella , bottle.	naranja , orange.
bueno , good.	naranjada , orangeade.
cacahuete , <i>m.</i> , peanut (caca-huate in Mexico; maní in almost all Spanish America).	nuez , <i>f.</i> , nut, walnut.
camarón , <i>m.</i> , shrimp.	pastel de manzanas , <i>m.</i> , apple pie.
cereza , cherry.	pavo , turkey.
ciruela , plum.	pera , pear.
clase , <i>f.</i> , class, kind, species.	perfecto , perfect.
comestibles , <i>m.</i> , eatables.	perfecto de indicativo , present perfect.
dulces , <i>m.</i> , candy, sweetmeats.	pero , but.
encurtido , pickle.	pescado , fish.
espárrago , asparagus.	pollo , chicken.
helado , ice cream (also mantecado and sorbete).	por consiguiente , consequently, therefore.
hoy , to-day.	por esta razón , for this reason, on this account.
langosta , lobster.	queso , cheese.
leche condensada , condensed milk.	sardina , sardine.
lechuga , lettuce.	uva , grape.
manzana , apple.	zarzaparrilla , sarsaparilla.
mañana , to-morrow (adverb), morning (noun).	

Perfecto de Indicativo—Present Perfect or Perfect (Indicative)

hablar		comer		vivir	
he	hablado	he	comido	he	vivido
has	hablado	has	comido	has	vivido
ha	hablado	ha	comido	ha	vivido
hemos	hablado	hemos	comido	hemos	vivido
habéis	hablado	habéis	comido	habéis	vivido
han	hablado	han	comido	han	vivido
I have spoken, etc.		I have eaten, etc.		I have lived, etc.	

Futuro (Indicativo)—Future (Indicative)

hablar	comer	vivir
hablaré	comeré	viviré
hablarás	comerás	vivirás
hablará	comerá	vivirá
hablaremos	comeremos	viviremos
hablaréis	comeréis	viviréis
hablarán	comerán	vivirán
I shall or will speak, etc.	I shall or will eat, etc.	I shall or will live, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo he hablado hoy español. (2) Yo he comido hoy nueces, uvas, sardinas, melón y espárragos. (3) Yo he bebido hoy limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla. (4) Por esta razón yo he vivido hoy.

(5) También (yo) viviré mañana, porque (yo) hablaré español, porque (yo) comeré nueces, uvas, sardinas, melón y espárragos, y porque (yo) beberé limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla.

(6) Yo no deseo comprar, ahora, zarzaparrilla. (7) Ahora (yo) deseo comprar dulces, peras, ciruelas, manzanas, naranjas, melocotones y helado, porque él ha comprado pan, pollos, pavos, camarones y langostas. (8) También usted desea comprar, hoy, algo. (9) Usted desea comprar apio, lechuga, almejas, cerezas, leche condensada y queso, porque ellos han comprado carne, pescado, legumbres, bananas, cacahuets, miel y encurtidos.

(10) Usted y yo no deseamos comprar ahora nada, pero nosotros compraremos, mañana, algo bueno. (11) Nosotros compraremos, mañana, la misma clase de comestibles que él ha comprado y que (él) ha comido, y la misma clase de bebidas que (él) ha comprado y que (él) ha bebido. (12) Por consiguiente (nosotros) compraremos, mañana, mucha carne, mucho pescado, muchos pasteles de manzanas, y muchas botellas de mosto.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Ha hablado usted hoy mucho español? (2) ¿Ha comido usted hoy nueces, uvas y sardinas? (3) ¿Ha comido

usted también melón y espárragos? (4) ¿Ha bebido usted hoy limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla? (5) ¿Ha vivido usted hoy por esta razón? (6) ¿Vivirá usted mañana porque (usted) hablará español, y porque (usted) comerá nueces, uvas, sardinas, melón y espárragos? (7) ¿Vivirá usted también porque (usted) beberá limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla? (8) ¿Desea usted comprar, ahora, zarzaparrilla? (9) ¿Desea usted comprar, ahora, dulces, peras, ciruelas, manzanas, naranjas, melocotones y helado? (10) ¿Por qué desea usted comprar dulces, peras, ciruelas, manzanas, naranjas, melocotones y helado? (11) ¿Quién desea comprar, hoy, algo? (12) ¿Quién desea comprar apio, lechuga, almejas, cerezas, leche condensada y queso? (13) ¿Quién desea comprar apio, lechuga, almejas, cerezas y queso, porque ellos han comprado carne, pescado, legumbres, bananas, cacahuets, miel y encurtidos? (14) ¿Desean ustedes comprar algo ahora? (15) ¿Comprarán ustedes, mañana, algo bueno? (16) ¿Comprarán ustedes, mañana, la misma clase de comestibles que (él) ha comprado y que (él) ha comido? (17) ¿Comprarán ustedes, mañana, la misma clase de bebidas que (él) ha comprado y que (él) ha bebido? (18) ¿Comprarán ustedes, por consiguiente, mucha carne y mucho pescado? (19) ¿Comprarán ustedes, también, muchos pasteles de manzanas? (20) ¿Comprarán ustedes también muchas botellas de mosto?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) To-day I have bought the bananas and the peanuts that he will eat to-morrow. (2) To-morrow evening she will eat the shrimps that we shall buy to-morrow afternoon. (3) To-morrow morning you (fam. form pl.) will live where we live to-day. (4) You (fam. form sing.) will study the Spanish lesson, to-morrow, after eating the ice cream and after buying the apple pie. (5) To-morrow afternoon we shall cut the chicken with the knife that we have bought to-day. (6) They will take the soup with the spoon that you (polite form singular) will buy to-morrow morning. (7) You (polite form plural)

will wish to buy forks, cups and glasses to-morrow evening. (8) To-day, after buying the plums and the pears, they will eat the fish and the turkey. (9) He has wished, he wishes and he will wish to buy grapes, melons, honey, nuts, pickles and asparagus, because you (polite form singular) have wished, you wish and you will wish to buy apples, peaches, cherries, candy, celery and clams. (10) They (fem.) do not desire to buy anything now, but to-morrow they will buy something useful. (11) To-morrow I shall eat the eatables and I shall drink the beverages that you (familiar form plur. fem.) have bought to-day. (12) Therefore, to-morrow I shall eat lobster, cheese and cherries, and I shall drink orangeade and lemonade.

NOTES

1. Study under *Formation of The Present Perfect (Indicative)* page 321, everything given, and under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the past participles. Study also under the heading *The Present Perfect—Its Uses*, rule 1 and note, page 321, and see the conjugation of the *Perfecto* of *hablar*, with the English equivalents, page 347; of *comer*, page 351, and of *vivir*, page 354.

2. Study under *How to Obtain the Future* everything given, page 325, and under the heading *The Future—Its Uses*, rule 1, also on page 325. See the conjugation of the future of *hablar* with the English equivalents, page 348; of *comer*, page 351, and of *vivir*, page 354.

3. *Asparagus* is used in Spanish both in the singular and in the plural; *espárrago* for a single stalk and *espárragos* for the plural.

4. The singular of *dulces* is a *piece of candy* as a noun, and as an adjective its meaning is *sweet*.

5. *Langosta* also means *locust*.

6. *Pastel de manzanas* is literally *pie of apples*. The word *pastel* is used followed by *de*, plus a noun in the singular, if the pie is made with something big, as a *pumpkin pie*, *pastel de calabaza*, or *chicken pie*, *pastel de pollo*.

7. In sentence 10, of the *Theme*, there are two negatives in the Spanish sentence. The double negation only intensifies the negation and does not make an affirmation in Spanish. Consequently, *nada*, *nothing*, must be translated by *anything*.

8. In the *English Exercise*, sentence 4, *Spanish lesson* must be translated by *lección de español* or *lección española*; and *after eating the ice cream* by *después de tomar el helado*, because, in Spanish, the verb *tomar* is used instead of *comer* in this connection.

9. In the *English Exercise*, *to-morrow morning* is equivalent to the Spanish expression *mañana por la mañana*, literally, *to-morrow by the morning*; *to-morrow afternoon* is equivalent to *mañana por la tarde*, and *to-morrow evening* to *mañana por la noche*. At night, sentence 7, is rendered by *por la noche*.

LECCIÓN SÉPTIMA—SEVENTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

aceituna , olive (also oliva).	higo , fig.
agua de manantial , spring water.	lata , can (noun); (also a bothersome conversation).
agua mineral , mineral water.	lechería , dairy, creamery.
ajo , garlic.	limón , <i>m.</i> , lemon.
albaricoque , <i>m.</i> , apricot.	lomo de cerdo , loin of pork.
almendra , almond.	mazorca de maíz , ear of corn.
arroz , <i>m.</i> , rice.	mercado , market.
bacalao , codfish.	ostra , oyster.
bombón , <i>m.</i> , bonbon.	panadería , bakery.
calabaza , pumpkin.	pastilla de limón , lemon drop.
cangrejo , crab.	pepino , cucumber.
caramelo , caramel.	pequeña , small (also <i>chica</i> which, as a noun, means girl).
carnicería , meat market.	perejil , <i>m.</i> , parsley.
cebolla , onion.	pescadería , fish market.
coco , cocoanut.	pierna de cabrito , leg of kid.
col , <i>f.</i> , cabbage (repollo in parts of South America).	pierna de carnero , leg of mutton.
confitería , confectionery store.	pierna de cordero , leg of lamb.
cosa , thing.	pimiento , pepper (vegetable) (ají in several Spanish-speaking countries; in Mexico chile).
crema , cream, cold cream (cream is also called nata).	piña , pineapple (also <i>ananá</i>)
chuleta de ternera , veal cutlet.	rábano , radish.
dinero , money.	remolacha , beet.
espinaca , spinach.	sandía , watermelon (also <i>melón de agua</i>).
fresa , strawberry (<i>frutilla</i> in Argentina).	tener , <i>irr.</i> , to have, to hold, to possess.
fresco , fresh.	toronja , grapefruit.
frijoles , <i>m.</i> , beans (in Mexico, Cuba, and other countries). In Argentina, <i>porotos</i> ; in Spain, <i>judías</i> and <i>alubias</i> .	trucha , trout.
frutería , fruit store.	zanahoria , carrot.
guisante , <i>m.</i> , pea.	

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo tengo mucho dinero. (2) Con el dinero que (yo) tengo, (yo) compro muchas cosas.

(3) Hoy (yo) he comprado pepinos y guisantes en el mercado. (4) Mañana por la mañana (yo) compraré piñas, fresas, toronjas, limones, sandías, cocos, higos, almendras y albaricoques. (5) También (yo) compraré, mañana por la mañana, en el mercado, rábanos, frijoles, coles, arroz, espinacas, pimientos, calabazas, cebollas, ajos, perejil, mazorcas de maíz, zanahorias, remolachas y aceitunas.

(6) Usted tiene también mucho dinero, y, por consiguiente, usted comprará la misma clase de cosas que (yo) he comprado, y también una lata de leche condensada, una botella muy grande de agua de manantial, y una botella muy pequeña de agua mineral.

(7) También nosotros tenemos mucho dinero, y, por consiguiente, nosotros compraremos muchas cosas. (8) En la panadería (nosotros) compraremos pan, panecillos, pasteles de manzanas, pasteles de melocotones y pasteles de fresas. (9) En la carnicería (nosotros) compraremos una pierna de cordero, una pierna de carnero, una pierna de cabrito, chuletas de ternera y lomo de cerdo. (10) En la pescadería (nosotros) compraremos ostras, almejas, truchas, cangrejos y bacalao. (11) En la lechería (nosotros) compraremos leche y queso fresco de crema. (12) En la confitería (nosotros) compraremos almendras, bombones, chocolate, caramelos, pastillas de limón y helado. (13) En la frutería (nosotros) compraremos manzanas, peras, ciruelas, cerezas, naranjas y nueces.

(14) Ustedes tienen también mucho dinero, y, por consiguiente, (ustedes) comprarán la misma clase de cosas que nosotros hemos comprado en el mercado, en la panadería, en la carnicería, en la pescadería, en la lechería, en la confitería y en la frutería.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Tiene usted mucho dinero? (2) ¿Compra usted muchas cosas con el dinero que (usted) tiene? (3) ¿Ha comprado usted, hoy, pepinos y guisantes en el mercado? (4) ¿Comprará usted, mañana por la mañana, piñas, fresas,

toronjas y limones? (5) ¿Comprará usted, también, mañana por la mañana, sandías, cocos, higos, almendras y albaricoques? (6) ¿Comprará usted también, mañana por la mañana, en el mercado, rábanos, frijoles, coles, arroz, espinacas, pimientos, calabazas, cebollas, ajos y perejil? (7) ¿Comprará usted, también, mazorcas de maíz, zanahorias, remolachas y aceitunas? (8) ¿Quién tiene, también, mucho dinero? (9) ¿Quién comprará, por consiguiente, la misma clase de cosas que usted ha comprado? (10) ¿Comprará usted, también, una lata de leche condensada, una botella muy grande de agua de manantial, y una botella muy pequeña de agua mineral? (11) ¿Tienen ustedes también mucho dinero? (12) ¿Comprarán ustedes, por consiguiente, muchas cosas? (13) ¿Comprarán ustedes en la panadería pan, panecillos, pasteles de manzanas, pasteles de melocotones y pasteles de fresas? (14) ¿Qué comprarán ustedes en la carnicería? (15) ¿Comprarán ustedes en la pescadería ostras, almejas y truchas? (16) ¿Comprarán ustedes también, en la pescadería, cangrejos y bacalao? (17) ¿Comprarán ustedes, en la lechería, leche y queso fresco de crema? (18) ¿Qué comprarán ustedes en la confitería? (19) ¿Qué comprarán ustedes en la frutería? (20) ¿Quién tiene también mucho dinero? (21) ¿Quién comprará la misma clase de cosas que ustedes han comprado en el mercado y en la panadería? (22) ¿Quién comprará la misma clase de cosas que ustedes han comprado en la carnicería y en la pescadería? (23) ¿Quién comprará la misma clase de cosas que ustedes han comprado en la lechería, en la confitería y en la frutería?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) To-morrow morning I shall buy many things with the money that I have. (2) In the market, in the dairy and in the fruit store, I shall buy the things which she wishes. (3) In the fish store, in the confectionery store and in the meat market, I shall buy the things which they wish. (4) To-morrow morning you (familiar form sing.) will buy, with the money

that you have, olives, spinach, rice, radishes, ears of corn, and beans. (5) To-day you (familiar form plural) will buy, with the money that you have, loin of pork, lamb chops, leg of mutton, oysters, veal cutlets, crabs, lemon drops, and condensed milk. (6) They do not have much money, and consequently they will not buy many things to-morrow morning. (7) When you (familiar form sing.) have money, you buy the things that they (feminine) desire. (8) If you (polite form sing.) have money, to-morrow morning, you will buy the same kind of things that he has bought to-day. (9) You (polite form plural) live when you have money, but you only exist when you do not have money. (10) You (familiar form plural fem.) wish to have money, because money is useful, important and necessary. (11) We have the same kind of things that you (pol. form plur.) have bought, but we have not eaten the same things that you have eaten. (12) Money buys potatoes, clams, spoons, knives, plates, cups, pumpkins and caramels.

NOTES

1. Study under *Haber* and *Tener*, page 306, everything given, excepting the notes.
2. Learn the conjugation of the present indicative of *tener*, page 377.
3. *Ajo*, garlic, *espinaca*, spinach, *toronja*, grapefruit and *trucha*, trout, are used in Spanish both in the singular and plural forms.
4. The word *money* which occurs after *because*, in sentence 10 of the *English Exercise*, and at the beginning of sentence 12, must be preceded by the definite singular article *el*, on this account: general or abstract nouns, especially when used before verbs, require the article in Spanish, as can be seen under *Principal cases where the definite article is used in Spanish but not in English*, rule 2, page 220.

LECCIÓN OCTAVA—EIGHTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

aceite , <i>m.</i> , oil.	lo que , that which, what, that, which.
albóndiga , meat ball.	macarrones , <i>m.</i> , macaroni.
apetito , appetite.	mantel , <i>m.</i> , tablecloth.
arenque en escabeche , <i>m.</i> pickled herring.	mesa , table.
arroz con leche , <i>m.</i> , rice pudding.	mostaza , mustard.
atún , <i>m.</i> , tunny (or tuna) fish.	muchas veces , many times, or many a time.
azúcar , <i>m. f.</i> , sugar.	necesitar , to need.
azúcar granulado o en terrones , granulated or lump sugar.	para , for, in order to
azucarera , sugar bowl.	pastelillos , <i>m.</i> , small cakes (also pastas; masas in several places of South America).
batata , sweet potato.	pavo con salsa de arándano , turkey with cranberry sauce.
berenjena , eggplant.	pimienta , pepper (spice).
casa , house, home.	platillo , saucer, small plate.
cascanueces , <i>m.</i> , nut cracker (also rompenueces).	postre , <i>m.</i> , dessert.
casi , almost.	preparar , to set, to prepare.
castaña , chestnut.	rebanada de pan , slice of bread.
cucharilla , teaspoon.	restaurant , <i>m.</i> , restaurant (also fonda).
dátil , <i>m.</i> , date (fruit).	ruibarbo , rhubarb.
de cuando en cuando , now and then.	sal , <i>f.</i> , salt.
ensalada , salad.	salero , saltcellar.
escarbadientes , <i>m.</i> , toothpick (also mondadientes).	salmón , <i>m.</i> , salmon.
flan , <i>m.</i> , custard (also natilla).	salsa , sauce, dressing.
galleta , biscuit, cracker.	servilleta , napkin.
grosella , currant.	todo , all, everything, whole, every.
hay , there is, there are.	todo lo que hay , everything that there is.
jalea , jelly.	vinagre , <i>m.</i> , vinegar.
jarro de cristal , crystal or glass pitcher.	zarzamora , blackberry (also mora).
lista de los platos , bill of fare (lit. list of the dishes; also lista de la comida).	

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo deseo preparar la mesa. (2) Para preparar la mesa (yo) necesito muchas cosas. (3) (Yo) necesito un mantel y servilletas. (4) También (yo) necesito platos para la sopa, platos para el pescado, platos para la carne, platos para la ensalada, y platillos para las salsas y para el postre. (5) También (yo) necesito cucharas, cucharillas, tenedores, cuchillos para cortar la carne, cuchillos para tomar la mantequilla, y cuchillos de postre si el postre es fruta. (6) También (yo) necesito vasos para el agua, vasos para la leche, un salero con sal, y tazas y platillos para el café o el te. (7) También (yo) necesito aceite, vinagre, pimienta y mostaza. (8) También (yo) necesito una azucarera con azúcar granulado o en terrones, un jarro de cristal para el agua, muchos escarbadiantes, y un cascanueces.

(9) Ahora (yo) no deseo preparar la mesa. (10) Ahora (yo) deseo comer, porque (yo) tengo mucho apetito. (11) También usted tiene ahora mucho apetito, y, por esta razón, (usted) desea comer. (12) Usted desea comer en casa porque (usted) necesita mucho dinero para comer en el restaurant. (13) Usted necesita mucho dinero para comer en el restaurant, porque, cuando usted come en el restaurant, usted come casi todo lo que hay en la lista de los platos.

(14) Yo como en el restaurant de cuando en cuando. (15) En casa (yo) como, muchas veces, los mismos platos que (yo) como en el restaurant. (16) También (yo) como en casa, algunas veces, rebanadas de pan, castañas, dátiles, grosellas, berenjena, zarzamoras, albóndigas y macarrones. (17) También (yo) como en casa arenque en escabeche, atún, salmón, batatas, ensalada de lechuga, y pavo con salsa de arándano. (18) También (yo) como en casa, arroz con leche, flan, jalea, galletas, ruibarbo, manzanas asadas y pastelillos.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Desea usted preparar la mesa? (2) ¿Necesita usted muchas cosas para preparar la mesa? (3) ¿Necesita usted

un mantel y servilletas para preparar la mesa? (4) ¿Necesita usted también platos para la sopa, platos para el pescado y platos para la carne? (5) ¿Necesita usted también platos para la ensalada, y platillos para las salsas y para el postre? (6) ¿Necesita usted también cucharas, cucharillas y tenedores? (7) ¿Necesita usted también cuchillos para cortar la carne, y cuchillos para tomar la mantequilla? (8) ¿Necesita usted también cuchillos de postre, si el postre es fruta? (9) ¿Necesita usted también vasos para el agua y vasos para la leche? (10) ¿Necesita usted también un salero con sal, y tazas y platillos para el café o el te? (11) ¿Necesita usted también aceite, vinagre, pimienta y mostaza? (12) ¿Necesita usted también una azucarera con azúcar granulado o en terrones? (13) ¿Necesita usted también un jarro de cristal para el agua? (14) ¿Necesita usted también muchos escarbadiantes y un cascanueces? (15) ¿Desea usted preparar la mesa ahora? (16) ¿Desea usted comer ahora? (17) ¿Por qué desea usted comer ahora? (18) ¿Quién tiene también, ahora, mucho apetito? (19) ¿Quién desea comer, por esta razón, ahora? (20) ¿Quién desea comer en casa? (21) ¿Por qué deseo yo comer en casa? (22) ¿Quién necesita mucho dinero para comer en el restaurant? (23) ¿Por qué necesito yo mucho dinero para comer en el restaurant? (24) ¿Come usted en el restaurant de cuando en cuando? (25) ¿Come usted en casa, muchas veces, los mismos platos que (usted) come en el restaurant? (26) ¿Come usted, también, rebanadas de pan, castañas, dátiles, grosellas, berenjena y zarzamoras? (27) ¿Come usted, también, albóndigas y macarrones? (28) ¿Come usted, también, arenque en escabeche, atún, salmón, batatas, ensalada de lechuga, y pavo con salsa de arándano? (29) ¿Come usted, también, arroz con leche, flan, jalea, galletas, ruibarbo, manzanas asadas y pastelillos?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I need many things to set the table. (2) For the tables that you (polite form singular) desire to set, you need sugar bowls, tablecloths, napkins, vinegar, pepper, teaspoons,

forks, oil, mustard, saltcellars and toothpicks. (3) You (singular polite form) also need, for the tables that you wish to set, a glass pitcher, glasses, plates, knives, forks, cups, saucers, and nutcrackers. (4) You (familiar form sing.) have a keen appetite in the morning and in the evening. (5) When you (familiar form plural) have a big appetite, you eat slices of bread, macaroni, fried eggs, turkey with cranberry sauce, lettuce salad, and pineapple pie. (6) We generally eat at home, because at home we eat well. (7) When we do not eat at home, we eat at the restaurant. (8) When you (polite form plural) eat at the restaurant, you eat peppers, eggplant, codfish, rhubarb and jelly. (9) When we eat at home, we eat salmon, meat balls, rice pudding, baked apples, and small cakes. (10) I need a teaspoon in order to eat the custard. (11) I have needed, I need and I shall need money in order to eat at the restaurant. (12) I shall not need money to eat at home, if you (fam. form sing.) buy the things that I desire or need.

NOTES

1. See what is said under *The Ambiguous Gender*, page 229.
2. The words *cascanueces*, *nut cracker* and *escarbadiantes*, *toothpick*, are the same in form for both the singular and the plural, because nouns which end in *s* do not change their structure to form the plural if their last syllable is not stressed. See rule given under the heading *Cases Where the Noun is the Same for Both the Singular and the Plural*, page 232.
3. *Platos para la sopa* in sentence 4 of the *Theme* is the equivalent of *soup plates*; and *cuchillos de postre*, in sentence 5 should be translated by *fruit knives*.
4. Notice in sentence 6, *Theme*, that before the feminine noun *agua*, *water*, the definite singular masculine article, *el*, *the*, is used. See the reason for this usage in rule given under the heading *Substitution of one Form of the Definite Article for Another*, page 220.
5. *Tengo mucho apetito* of sentence 10 of the *Theme*, is equivalent to either *I have a keen* or *a big appetite*.
6. *Ensalada de lechuga* of sentence 17, is the equivalent of *lettuce salad*.
7. In sentence 1, of the *English Exercise*, *to set*, the equivalent of *in order to set*, must be translated by *para preparar*.
8. *Palillo*, literally *little stick*, is a popular name for *toothpick*.

LECCIÓN NOVENA—NINTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

adiós, m. , good-bye, farewell.	hasta luego , good-bye for a while, bye-bye, so long.
adiós para siempre , good-bye forever (lit. good-bye for always).	hasta mañana , until to-morrow.
anguila , eel.	hasta pasado mañana , until the day after to-morrow.
buenos días , good morning. (lit. good days).	hospital, m. , hospital.
buenastardes , good afternoon (lit. good afternoons).	hotel, m. , hotel.
buenas noches , good evening or good-night (lit. good evenings or nights).	más , more.
cacao , cocoa.	membrillo , quince.
calcetines, m. , socks (medias cortas in several places of South America).	mero , halibut.
camisa , shirt.	oportunidad, f. , opportunity.
camiseta , undershirt.	pantalones, m. , trousers (also pantalón).
con su permiso , with your permission.	pañuelo , handkerchief.
corbata , necktie.	par, m. , pair.
cortesía , courtesy.	pasado mañana , the day after to-morrow.
chaleco , vest, waistcoat.	próxima , next.
chaqueta , coat (also americana; saco in almost all Spanish America).	puño , cuff.
dispéñseme , excuse me, pardon me.	siguiente , following.
emplear , to use, to employ.	sobretudo , overcoat, (principally in Spanish America; gabán and abrigo in Spain).
expresión de cortesía, f. , expression of courtesy.	sombrerería , hat store.
fideos, m. , vermicelli (a kind of very thin spaghetti).	sombrero , hat.
guante, m. , glove.	tome asiento , take a seat.
harina , flour.	uno , one.
hasta , until, till.	dos , two.
hasta la semana próxima , until next week.	tres , three.
	cuatro , four.
	cinco , five.
	seis , six.
	siete , seven.
	ocho , eight.
	zapatería , shoe store.
	zapato , shoe, low shoe.
	zumos , juice (also jugo).

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo deseo emplear, hoy, las siguientes expresiones de cortesía: “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós.”

(2) Yo empleo las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” por la mañana; “buenas tardes,” por la tarde; “buenas noches,” por la noche, y “adiós” por la mañana, por la tarde y por la noche.

(3) Si (yo) tengo la oportunidad, (yo) empleo en el restaurant, en el hotel y en el hospital las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós.”

(4) En la sombrerería y en la zapatería (yo) empleo también las mismas expresiones de cortesía si (yo) tengo la oportunidad.

(5) También (yo) empleo las mismas expresiones de cortesía en casa, en el mercado, en la panadería, en la pescadería, en la confitería y en la frutería, cuando (yo) tengo la oportunidad.

(6) Ahora que (yo) he aprendido a emplear las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós,” (yo) deseo aprender las siguientes: “con su permiso,” “dispénseme,” “tome asiento,” “hasta luego,” “hasta mañana,” “hasta pasado mañana,” “hasta la semana próxima” y “adiós para siempre.”

(7) Yo no deseo aprender, ahora, más expresiones de cortesía. (8) Ahora yo deseo comprar harina, fideos, cacao, membrillos, meros, anguilas, y zumo de limón. (9) También (yo) deseo comprar, ahora, un par de guantes, dos pares de puños, cuatro pares de zapatos, tres pares de calcetines, seis sombreros, cuatro pañuelos, cinco corbatas, seis camisetas, y siete camisas. (10) También (yo) deseo comprar, ahora, un par de pantalones, una chaqueta, un sobretodo, y ocho chalecos.

(11) Cuando (yo) compro chalecos, (yo) no hablo mucho, pero (yo) empleo, si (yo) tengo la oportunidad, las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós.” (12) También (yo) empleo, si (yo) tengo la oportunidad, las expresiones de cortesía “con su permiso,” “dispénseme” y “hasta luego.” (13) También (yo) empleo,

si (yo) tengo la oportunidad, las expresiones de cortesía “tome asiento,” “hasta mañana,” “hasta pasado mañana,” “hasta la semana próxima” y “adiós para siempre.”

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Desea usted emplear hoy la expresión de cortesía “buenos días?” (2) ¿Desea usted emplear hoy la expresión de cortesía “buenas tardes?” (3) ¿Desea usted emplear hoy la expresión de cortesía “buenas noches?” (4) ¿Desea usted emplear hoy la expresión de cortesía “adiós?” (5) ¿Emplea usted la expresión de cortesía “buenos días” por la mañana? (6) ¿Emplea usted la expresión de cortesía “buenas tardes” por la tarde? (7) ¿Emplea usted la expresión de cortesía “buenas noches” por la noche? (8) ¿Emplea usted la expresión de cortesía “adiós” por la mañana, por la tarde y por la noche? (9) ¿Emplea usted en el restaurant, en el hotel y en el hospital las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós” si usted tiene la oportunidad? (10) ¿Emplea usted también, en la sombrerería y en la zapatería, las mismas expresiones de cortesía si usted tiene la oportunidad? (11) ¿Emplea usted también las mismas expresiones de cortesía en casa, en el mercado y en la panadería cuando usted tiene la oportunidad? (12) ¿Emplea usted las mismas expresiones de cortesía en la pescadería, en la confitería y en la frutería cuando tiene la oportunidad? (13) ¿Ha aprendido usted a emplear las expresiones de cortesía “buenos días,” “buenas tardes,” “buenas noches” y “adiós?” (14) ¿Desea usted aprender las expresiones de cortesía “con su permiso,” “dispénseme,” “tome asiento” y “hasta luego?” (15) ¿Desea usted aprender las expresiones de cortesía “hasta mañana,” “hasta pasado mañana,” “hasta la semana próxima” y “adiós para siempre?”

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I need to learn the expressions of courtesy “good morning,” “good afternoon” and “good evening.” (2) You

(familiar form sing.) use the expression of courtesy "good-bye" in the hat store and in the shoe store, if you have the opportunity. (3) She uses the expression of courtesy "good-bye forever" when she has the opportunity. (4) They have learned, to-day, the following expressions of courtesy: "good-night," "with your permission" and "pardon me." (5) To-morrow morning you (familiar form plural) will learn, after buying a pair of socks, two pairs of gloves and a pair of cuffs, the following expressions of courtesy: "take a seat," "good-bye for a while" and "until to-morrow." (6) To-morrow I shall buy the following things: an overcoat, two pairs of trousers, five waistcoats, and four handkerchiefs. (7) You (polite form plural) need to buy coats, shirts, and neckties. (8) You (polite form singular) will buy the hat with the money that you have. (9) They (feminine) will use the expression of courtesy, "until next week," after learning the vocabulary of to-day's lesson. (10) If you (familiar form sing.) buy eight pairs of shoes, I will buy six handkerchiefs and three pairs of gloves. (11) We shall soon need flour, cocoa, quinces and vermicelli. (12) I have taken a cup of chocolate to-day, I am taking a glass of lemonade now, and I shall take a bottle of grape juice to-morrow.

NOTES

1. *Expresión de cortesía* may also be rendered by *polite expression*.
2. The literal translation of *hasta la semana próxima* is *until the week next*; *hasta pasado mañana* is *until passed to-morrow*.
3. In sentence 7, *Theme*, *más expresiones de cortesía*, may be rendered into English by *any more expressions of courtesy* or *polite expressions*.
4. Translate *I am taking* of sentence 12, English Exercise, by *yo tomo*.
5. See the use of the word *pantalones* under *Nouns Which Are Always (or Usually) Used in the Plural*, page 233.

LECCIÓN DÉCIMA—TENTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abanico , fan.	manguito , muff.
abrigo de pieles , fur coat.	medias , <i>f.</i> , stockings.
aeroplano , aeroplane.	negro , black.
aguja , needle.	ojal , <i>m.</i> , buttonhole.
alfiler , <i>m.</i> , pin.	papel , <i>m.</i> , paper.
algodón , <i>m.</i> , cotton.	papel de cartas , writing paper (lit. paper of letters).
bastón , <i>m.</i> , walking stick, cane.	paquete , <i>m.</i> , package.
billete , <i>m.</i> , ticket.	paraguas , <i>m.</i> , umbrella.
billete de ferrocarril , railroad ticket.	pastilla de jabón , cake of soap.
blanca , white.	pluma , pen.
blusa , blouse, waist.	pronto , soon.
bolsillo , pocket.	ropa interior , underwear.
bota , high shoe, boot (botín in many places of South America).	seda , silk.
botón , <i>m.</i> , button.	sombrero de copa , silk hat, (also chistera).
caja , box.	sombrero de paja , straw hat.
carrete de hilo , <i>m.</i> , spool of thread or cotton.	sombrilla , parasol.
cordón de zapatos , <i>m.</i> , shoe lace.	temprano , early.
cuello , collar, neck.	tienda , store, dry-goods store.
dedal , <i>m.</i> , thimble.	tijeras , <i>f.</i> , scissors.
delantal , <i>m.</i> , apron.	tinta , ink.
diálogo , dialogue.	tintero , inkstand, inkwell.
elegante , elegant, stylish.	traje , <i>m.</i> , suit of clothes, dress.
en todas las partes , everywhere (lit. in all the parts or places).	tren , <i>m.</i> , train.
estación del ferrocarril , railroad station (<i>estación</i> , <i>f.</i> ; <i>ferrocarril</i> , <i>masc.</i>).	vapor , <i>m.</i> , steamer, steam.
falda , skirt.	viajar , to travel.
frac , <i>m.</i> , dress coat.	zapatos de goma , rubbers, rubber shoes; (also <i>chanclos</i> ; in Mexico <i>zapatos de hule</i>).
gorra , cap.	¿cómo está usted? how are you?
jabón , <i>m.</i> , soap.	muy bien, gracias; ¿y usted? very well, thank you; and you?
lápiz , <i>m.</i> , pencil.	muy bien también, gracias , very well also, thank you.
levita , frock coat.	me alegro muchísimo , very pleased to hear it (lit. I rejoice myself very much).
lo , the (neuter) definite article; as a pronoun it is <i>it</i> , <i>him</i> , <i>you</i> , etc.)	gracias , thank you, thanks.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Hoy (yo) aprenderé el diálogo siguiente:—“¿Cómo está usted?”—“Muy bien, gracias; y usted?”—“Muy bien también, gracias.”—“Me alegro muchísimo.”—“Gracias.”

(2) El diálogo de la lección de hoy es muy fácil, muy útil, muy importante y muy necesario. (3) Yo empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy en todas las partes. (4) Yo empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy, en el mercado, en la panadería, en la carnicería, en la estación del ferrocarril y en la tienda.

(5) En la tienda donde (yo) empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy, (yo) compro muchas cosas. (6) Hoy (yo) he comprado lo siguiente: tres gorras, dos paraguas, un par de zapatos de goma, cuatro cuellos, cinco pares de botas, siete pares de medias, mucha ropa interior, y un sombrero de paja. (7) Usted ha comprado hoy, en la misma tienda, un bastón, una levita, un frac, un sombrero de copa y dos trajes. (8) Mañana por la mañana temprano ella comprará, en la misma tienda, una blusa blanca con dos bolsillos, cinco ojales y cinco botones negros, una falda muy elegante, un manguito, un abanico, un abrigo de pieles, un par de cordones de zapatos, un delantal de algodón, y una sombrilla de seda. (9) También comprará (ella) mañana por la mañana temprano, en la misma tienda, un paquete de alfileres, un paquete de agujas, un carrete de hilo, un tintero con tinta, un lápiz, una pluma, una pastilla de jabón, un par de tijeras, un dedal, y una caja de papel de cartas.

(10) En la estación del ferrocarril, donde (yo) empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy, (yo) compro billetes de ferrocarril. (11) Yo compro billetes de ferrocarril de primera clase. (12) Yo compro muchos billetes de ferrocarril porque (yo) viajo mucho. (13) Yo viajo mucho en tren. (14) También (yo) viajo mucho en vapor. (15) Pronto (yo) viajaré en aeroplano.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué diálogo aprenderá usted hoy? (2) ¿Es el diálogo de la lección de hoy muy fácil, muy útil, muy importante

y muy necesario? (3) ¿Emplea usted el diálogo de la lección de hoy en todas las partes? (4) ¿Emplea usted el diálogo de la lección de hoy, en el mercado, en la panadería y en la carnicería? (5) ¿Emplea usted también el diálogo de la lección de hoy, en la estación del ferrocarril y en la tienda? (6) ¿Compra usted muchas cosas en la tienda donde (usted) emplea el diálogo de la lección de hoy? (7) ¿Ha comprado usted hoy, en la tienda, tres gorras, dos paraguas y un par de zapatos de goma? (8) ¿Ha comprado usted también cuatro cuellos, cinco pares de botas, siete pares de medias, mucha ropa interior, y un sombrero de paja? (9) ¿Quién ha comprado hoy, en la misma tienda, un bastón, una levita, un frac, un sombrero de copa y dos trajes? (10) ¿Comprará ella, mañana por la mañana temprano, en la misma tienda, una blusa blanca con dos bolsillos, cinco ojales y cinco botones negros? (11) ¿Comprará ella también una falda muy elegante, un manguito, un abanico y un abrigo de pieles? (12) ¿Comprará ella también un par de cordones de zapatos, un delantal de algodón, y una sombrilla de seda? (13) ¿Comprará ella también, en la misma tienda, un paquete de alfileres, un paquete de agujas, y un carrete de hilo? (14) ¿Comprará ella también un tintero con tinta, un lápiz, una pluma, una pastilla de jabón, un par de tijeras, un dedal, y una caja de papel de cartas? (15) ¿Qué compra usted en la estación del ferrocarril donde (usted) emplea el diálogo de la lección de hoy? (16) ¿Compra usted billetes de ferrocarril de primera clase? (17) ¿Por qué compra usted muchos billetes de ferrocarril? (18) ¿Viaja usted mucho en vapor? (19) ¿Viaja usted en aeroplano? (20) ¿Viajará usted pronto en aeroplano?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) To-day I have learned the following dialogue:—"How are you?" (polite form singular)—"Very well, thank you; and you?"—"Very well also, thank you."—"Very pleased to hear it."—"Thank you." (2) The dialogue of to-day's lesson is easy, useful, important and necessary. (3) You (famil-

iar form plural) will learn the dialogue of to-day's lesson with ease and without difficulty. (4) You (familiar form singular) use the dialogue of to-day's lesson in the meatmarket, in the bakery, at the railroad station and in the shoe store, if you have the opportunity. (5) Early to-morrow morning, she will use some expressions of courtesy in the store where she buys the things that she needs. (6) Early to-morrow morning, they (fem.) will buy a fur coat, a fan, an apron, a cap, a straw hat, a muff, and a white blouse. (7) You (familiar form plural feminine) have bought a suit of clothes, a package of needles, and a very stylish skirt. (8) I do not use the dialogue of to-day's lesson when I buy a dress coat, an umbrella, a walking stick, a frock coat, and a pair of scissors. (9) Sometimes he uses the dialogue of to-day's lesson when he buys rubbers, stockings, and railroad tickets. (10) We do not travel now, but we shall travel soon. (11) We wish to travel by train and by steamer, but we do not wish to travel by aeroplane. (12) He has traveled, he travels and he will travel by train, by steamer and by aeroplane.

NOTES

1. *Billete de ferrocarril*, literally translated, is *ticket of railroad*; *cordón de zapatos* is *lace of shoes*, *estación del ferrocarril* is *station of the railroad*; *sombrero de paja* is *hat of straw*, *zapatos de goma* is *shoes of gum*; *ropa interior* is *interior clothing*, and *abrigo de pieles* is *wrap or overcoat of furs*.

2. In sentence 11, *Theme*, *billetes de ferrocarril de primera clase*, literally translated, is *tickets of railroad of first class*.

3. *Yo viajo mucho en tren*, in sentence 13 of the *Theme*, literally *I travel much in train*, must be translated by *I travel much by train*.

4. *The following dialogue*, first sentence of the *English Exercise*, is *el siguiente diálogo*.

5. *To-day's lesson*, sentence 3, is *la lección de hoy*.

6. *Early*, of sentence 5, must follow *to-morrow morning*, in the Spanish translation, thus: *Mañana por la mañana temprano*.

LECCIÓN UNDÉCIMA—ELEVENTH LESSON

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abrochador, *m.*, button hook.

agradable, agreeable, pleasant.

así, thus, so, in this way.

betún, *m.*, shoe polish.

bolsa de mano, hand bag.

bonita, pretty.

bufanda, muffler.

caballero, gentleman, Sir.

caldo de gallina, chicken broth (lit. broth of hen).

calzador, *m.*, shoe-horn.

cepillo para la ropa, clothes brush.

cinta, ribbon.

cinturón, *m.*, belt.

conjugación, *f.*, conjugation.

conjugar, to conjugate.

de esta manera, in this way or fashion.

de un modo muy agradable, in a very pleasant way or manner.

escobilla, whisk-broom.

escuchar, to listen.

esponja, sponge.

esta, this.

estar, *irr.*, to be.

estar a la mesa, to be at the table.

fósforo, match (also cerilla).

hongo, mushroom (also seta).

horquilla, hair-pin.

impermeable, raincoat.

inmediatamente, immediately.

libro, book.

ligas, *f.*, garters.

mientras, while.

modo, mode, way.

ni . . . ni, neither . . . nor.

otro, other, another.

pasar, to pass, to spend (time).

pasarme, to pass to me.

placer, *m.*, pleasure.

prestar, to lend, to loan.

prestarme, to lend to me.

raso, satin.

responder, to answer, to respond.

sala de clase, *f.*, classroom (also aula).

sombrero blando, soft hat (also sombrero flexible).

sombrero de Jipijapa, Panama hat.

sombrero hongo, derby hat.

tampoco, neither.

tirantes, *m.*, suspenders.

velo para la cara, face veil.

verbo, *m.*, verb.

verdad, *f.*, truth.

zapatilla, slipper (also babucha and chinela).

hágame usted el favor de, do me the favor of.

con mucho gusto, with much pleasure.

sírvase, take it please (lit. serve yourself).

gracias, thank you, thanks (also gracias).

no hay de qué, you are welcome (lit. there is not of what; also de nada, of nothing).

TEMA—THEME

(1) Hoy (yo) aprenderé otro diálogo. (2) El diálogo que (yo) deseo aprender hoy es el siguiente:—"Hágame usted el

favor de prestarme el libro.”—“Con mucho gusto. Sírvasse.”—“Gracias.”—“No hay de qué.”

(3) Yo empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy en la sala de clase. (4) Yo empleo la primera expresión de cortesía del diálogo de la lección de hoy, así:—“Señorita, hágame usted el favor de conjugar el presente de indicativo de un verbo de la primera conjugación.” (5) La señorita responde de esta manera: “Con mucho gusto,” y, de un modo muy agradable, (ella) conjuga, inmediatamente, el presente de indicativo de un verbo de la primera conjugación. (6) Nosotros escuchamos con muchísimo placer a la señorita mientras ella conjuga, de un modo muy agradable, el presente de indicativo del verbo de la primera conjugación.

(7) Yo no conjugo verbos de la primera conjugación cuando (yo) estoy a la mesa. (8) Tampoco (yo) conjugo verbos de las conjugaciones segunda o tercera cuando (yo) estoy a la mesa. (9) Esta es la verdad.

(10) Cuando (yo) estoy a la mesa, comiendo y bebiendo, (yo) empleo el diálogo de la lección de hoy. (11) Yo empleo la primera expresión de cortesía del diálogo de la lección de hoy, así: “Señorita, hágame usted el favor de pasarme la sal, el caldo de gallina y el pescado. (12) Caballero, hágame usted el favor de pasarme el azúcar, los hongos y una cucharilla. (13) Señora, hágame usted el favor de pasarme el pavo y las patatas.”

(14) Ahora (yo) no deseo emplear ni diálogos ni expresiones de cortesía. (15) Ahora (yo) deseo comprar en la sombrerería, en la zapatería y en la tienda, algunas cosas que (yo) necesito.

(16) En la sombrerería (yo) deseo comprar un sombrero de Jipijapa, un sombrero blando y un sombrero hongo. (17) En la zapatería (yo) compraré un calzador y un par de zapatillas. (18) En la tienda (yo) compraré un par de tirantes, un cinturón, un par de ligas, una caja de betún, una escobilla, una bufanda y una caja de fósforos. (19) También (yo) compraré, en la tienda, una bolsa de mano, una cinta de raso blanca muy bonita, un velo para la cara, un cepillo para la ropa, un paquete de horquillas, un abrochador, una esponja y un impermeable.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Aprenderá usted hoy otro diálogo? (2) ¿Qué diálogo desea usted aprender hoy? (3) ¿Emplea usted el diálogo de la lección de hoy en la sala de clase? (4) ¿Cómo emplea usted la primera expresión de cortesía del diálogo de la lección de hoy? (5) ¿Cómo responde la señorita? (6) ¿Conjuga la señorita, de un modo muy agradable, el presente de indicativo de un verbo de la primera conjugación? (7) ¿Escuchamos nosotros, con muchísimo placer, a la señorita, mientras ella conjuga, de un modo muy agradable, el presente de indicativo del verbo de la primera conjugación? (8) ¿Conjuga usted verbos de la primera conjugación cuando (usted) está a la mesa? (9) ¿Conjuga usted verbos de las conjugaciones segunda o tercera cuando (usted) está a la mesa? (10) ¿Es esta la verdad? (11) ¿Emplea usted el diálogo de la lección de hoy cuando (usted) está a la mesa comiendo y bebiendo? (12) ¿Cómo emplea usted la primera expresión de cortesía del diálogo de la lección de hoy cuando usted está a la mesa? (13) ¿Desea usted emplear, ahora, diálogos o expresiones de cortesía? (14) ¿Qué desea usted comprar, ahora, en la sombrerería, en la zapatería y en la tienda? (15) ¿Desea usted comprar, en la sombrerería, un sombrero de Jipijapa, un sombrero blando y un sombrero hongo? (16) ¿Qué comprará usted en la zapatería? (17) ¿Comprará usted, en la tienda, un par de tirantes y un cinturón? (18) ¿Comprará usted también un par de ligas, una caja de betún y una escobilla? (19) ¿Comprará usted también una bufanda y una caja de fósforos? (20) ¿Comprará usted también una bolsa de mano, una cinta de raso muy bonita, un velo para la cara, un cepillo para la ropa, un paquete de horquillas, un abrochador, una esponja y un impermeable?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) In to-day's lesson we have learned the following dialogue:—"Do me the favor of lending me the money which I need to (para) buy a fur coat."—"With much pleasure."

“Take it please.”—“Thank you.”—“You are welcome.” (2) When I am in the classroom, I use the first expression of courtesy of the dialogue in to-day’s lesson, in this way: “Gentleman, please lend me the book.” (3) When I am at the table, I use the same expression of courtesy, thus: “Madam, please pass me the radishes and the olives.” (4) While they are at the table, eating and drinking, we are in the store using expressions of courtesy and buying things. (5) We have bought to-day a black derby hat, a pair of very pretty slippers, and a box of matches. (6) To-morrow we shall buy ribbons, belts, mufflers, suspenders and garters. (7) The day after to-morrow, after buying all the things that we need, you (familiar form sing.) will study the expressions of courtesy that they have learned. (8) They have learned all the expressions of courtesy of the tenth and eleventh lessons. (9) They have also learned to conjugate the present perfect of the verbs *beber* and *vivir*. (10) Neither you (familiar form sing.) nor I have learned to conjugate the future of the verbs that he has learned to conjugate. (11) We have learned to conjugate the present indicative of two verbs of the first conjugation. (12) He is learning to conjugate the present indicative, the future and the present perfect of all the verbs of the first, second and third conjugations.

NOTES

1. *Bolsa de mano*, literally translated, is *purse* or *bag of hand*; *cepillo para la ropa*, is *brush for the clothing*; *de esta manera*, of *this manner*; *de un modo muy agradable*, of *a way very agreeable*.

2. *Jipijapa* is the name of a town in Ecuador, made famous by its Panama hats.

3. Learn the present indicative of *estar*, page 377.

4. Learn the formation of the present participle, under the heading *The Present Participle or Gerund*, page 301, and the formation of the *Progressive or Periphrastic Conjugation*, page 303.

5. Study the forms of the demonstratives under the heading *Demonstratives*, page 281.

6. In Spanish it is customary to use the equivalent of the English words Mr., Mrs., or Miss, without the surname of the person addressed.

7. *Sírvase*, followed by an infinitive, is equivalent to the English *please*. Example: *Sírvase pasarme*, etc., *Please pass me*, etc.

LECCIÓN DOCE—LESSON TWELVE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

absolutamente , absolutely.	lechero , milk-man.
absoluto , absolute.	mes , <i>m.</i> , month.
al , to the, at the.	meses del año , months of the year.
anteayer , the day before yesterday.	enero , January.
año , year.	febrero , February.
ayer , yesterday.	marzo , March.
carnicero , butcher.	abril , <i>m.</i> , April.
confitero , confectioner.	mayo , May.
consideración , <i>f.</i> , consideration.	junio , June.
cual , which (cuál, interrogative; plural cuáles).	julio , July.
días de la semana , days of the week.	agosto , August.
lunes , <i>m.</i> , Monday.	septiembre , <i>m.</i> , September (also setiembre).
martes , <i>m.</i> , Tuesday.	octubre , <i>m.</i> , October.
miércoles , <i>m.</i> , Wednesday.	noviembre , <i>m.</i> , November.
jueves , <i>m.</i> , Thursday.	diciembre , <i>m.</i> , December.
viernes , <i>m.</i> , Friday.	nombre , <i>m.</i> , name.
sábado , Saturday.	nuevo , new.
domingo , Sunday.	panadero , baker.
equivalente , equivalent.	pasado , past.
estas , <i>f.</i> , these.	persona , person.
este , <i>m.</i> , this, the latter.	pretérito , preterit or past.
frutero , fruit dealer.	principiar , to begin.
inglés , <i>m.</i> , English (for both language and nationality).	sombrerero , hatter.
ir , <i>irr.</i> , to go.	tendero , storekeeper.
	tiempo , tense, time, weather, tempo.
	zapatero , shoemaker.

Pretérito Absoluto (Indicativo)—Past or Preterite (Indicative)

hablar	comer	vivir
hablé	comí	viví
hablaste	comiste	viviste
habló	comió	vivió
hablamos	comimos	vivimos
hablasteis	comisteis	vivisteis
hablaron	comieron	vivieron
I spoke, etc.	I ate, etc.	I lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Hoy (yo) voy a tomar en consideración otro tiempo nuevo. (2) Este tiempo nuevo es equivalente al *pasado* o *pretérito* del idioma inglés.

(3) Yo principio a emplear este tiempo así: Yo hablé ayer español. (4) Yo comí ayer pan y mantequilla. (5) Yo bebí ayer agua, limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla. (6) Yo viví ayer. (7) Yo viví ayer porque (yo) hablé español, porque (yo) comí pan y mantequilla, y porque (yo) bebí agua, limonada, naranjada y zarzaparrilla.

(8) Yo hablé, comí, bebí y viví ayer, al mismo tiempo que ella habló, comió, bebió y vivió. (9) También tú hablaste, comiste, bebiste y viviste ayer, al mismo tiempo que nosotros hablamos, comimos, bebimos y vivimos. (10) También vosotros hablasteis, comisteis, bebisteis y vivisteis ayer, al mismo tiempo que ellos hablaron, comieron, bebieron y vivieron.

(11) Anteayer (yo) no estudié absolutamente nada, pero hoy (yo) he estudiado un poco y (yo) he aprendido los nombres de los días de la semana y los nombres de los meses del año.

(12) Algunas personas estudian los nombres de los días de la semana así: martes, domingo, jueves, lunes, sábado, miércoles y viernes. (13) Estas mismas personas estudian los nombres de los meses del año, de esta manera: marzo, junio, febrero, abril, enero, mayo, agosto, julio, diciembre, septiembre, noviembre y octubre.

(14) También estudian los nombres de los días de la semana y los nombres de los meses del año, de la misma manera, el panadero, el carnicero, el zapatero, el sombrerero, el confitero, el tendero, el lechero y el frutero.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Va usted a tomar en consideración, hoy, otro tiempo nuevo? (2) ¿Es este tiempo nuevo equivalente al *pasado* o *pretérito* del idioma inglés? (3) ¿Cómo principia usted a emplear el tiempo nuevo? (4) ¿Comió usted, ayer, pan y

mantequilla? (5) ¿Qué bebió usted ayer? (6) ¿Vivió usted, ayer, porque (usted) habló español, porque (usted) comió pan y mantequilla, y porque (usted) bebió agua, limonada, naranjada y zarzarparilla? (7) ¿Habló, comió, bebió y vivió usted ayer, al mismo tiempo que ella habló, comió, bebió y vivió? (8) ¿Quién habló, comió, bebió y vivió ayer, al mismo tiempo que ustedes hablaron, comieron, bebieron y vivieron? (9) ¿Quiénes hablaron, comieron, bebieron y vivieron ayer, al mismo tiempo que ellos hablaron, comieron, bebieron y vivieron? (10) ¿Estudió usted anteayer algo? (11) ¿Ha estudiado usted hoy un poco? (12) ¿Ha aprendido usted, hoy, los nombres de los días de la semana y los nombres de los meses del año? (13) ¿Cuáles son los nombres de los días de la semana? (14) ¿Cuáles son los nombres de los meses del año? (15) ¿Han estudiado los nombres de los días de la semana el panadero y el carnicero? (16) ¿Han estudiado los nombres de los meses del año el zapatero y el sombrerero? (17) ¿Qué han estudiado el confitero, el tendero, el lechero y el frutero? (18) ¿Qué estudió usted ayer? (19) ¿Que estudiaron ustedes anteayer? (20) ¿Cuándo estudiarán ellas los nombres de los días de la semana y los nombres de los meses del año?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I wish to take into consideration another new tense. (2) I begin to use this new tense thus: He spoke Spanish yesterday. (3) Yesterday you (familiar form sing.) drank the mineral water that he bought the day before yesterday. (4) Early to-morrow morning you (familiar form plural) will speak to the confectioner, to the shoemaker and to the fruit dealer. (5) Yesterday the storekeeper studied the names of the days of the week. (6) The latter will study and will learn, early to-morrow morning, the names of the months of the year. (7) They studied to-day's lesson on (*el*) Monday of last week. (8) To-morrow afternoon you (polite form singular) will eat the things that she bought yesterday morning. (9) You (polite form plural) began to study, the day

before yesterday, the names of the following months: February, March, June, October and January. (10) Last year they lived where we live this year. (11) Next month I shall learn the tenses of the verbs that you (polite form singular) have learned this month. (12) The day before yesterday they (fem.) bought and drank five bottles of grape juice, seven bottles of spring water, and four bottles of sarsaparilla.

NOTES

1. Study under *Formation of the Past or Preterite*, page 322, everything given, and under the heading *The Past or Preterite—Its Uses*, rule 1 and note, also on page 322.

2. Study the present indicative of *ir*, page 380, and bear in mind that this verb requires the preposition *a* to govern a following infinitive.

3. In sentence 3, *Theme, principiar* also requires *a* to govern the following infinite, because this verb expresses *beginning*.

4. In Spanish, *no estudié absolutamente nada*, of sentence 11, *Theme*, is correct, because, as has been said before, two or more negatives serve to strengthen the negation in Spanish.

5. *Algunas personas*, sentence 12, may be rendered by *some people*.

6. *Cuáles* of questions 13 and 14 must be rendered by *what*.

7. *On Monday*, sentence 7 of the English Exercise, is rendered by *el lunes*, and *yesterday morning* of sentence 8, by *ayer por la mañana*.

8. *Last year*, sentence 10 of the *English Exercise*, and *next month*, sentence 11, must be preceded by the definite masculine singular article when translated into Spanish.

9. The *past* of *conjugar*, *to conjugate*, used in the eleventh lesson, undergoes the same orthographical changes as *llegar*, *to arrive*, model 25c, page 374.

LECCIÓN TRECE—LESSON THIRTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abuelo , grandfather (abuela, <i>f.</i>)	millonario , millionaire.
abuelos , grandparents, grandfathers.	mío , mine.
amable , amiable.	mundo , world.
amigo , friend (amiga, <i>f.</i>).	Nicaragua , Nicaragua.
así es la vida , such is life.	nieto , grandson (nieta, <i>f.</i>).
banco , bank, bench.	padre , father.
bisabuelo , great-grandfather.	Panamá , Panama.
biznieto , great-grandson.	Paraguay , Paraguay.
Bolivia , Bolivia.	pariente , <i>m.</i> , relative (parienta, <i>f.</i>).
Colombia , Colombia.	pedazo , piece.
como , as, like.	pobre , poor, unfortunate.
conmigo , with me.	pregunta , question (noun).
Costa Rica , Costa Rica.	primo , cousin (prima, <i>f.</i>).
Cuba , Cuba.	Puerto Rico , Porto Rico.
cuñado , brother-in-law.	rico , rich.
decir , irr., to say, to tell.	San Salvador , <i>m.</i> , San Salvador.
Ecuador , Ecuador.	santo , holy, saint.
especialmente , especially.	Santo Domingo , San Domingo.
esposo , husband (esposa, <i>f.</i>).	ser , irr., to be.
estar a la cuarta pregunta , to be penniless.	ser un pedazo de pan , to be exceedingly good.
Filipinas , Philippines.	sobrino , nephew (sobrina, <i>f.</i>).
Guatemala , Guatemala.	suegra , mother-in-law (suegro, <i>m.</i>).
hermano , brother (hermana, <i>f.</i>).	suyo , yours, his, hers, etc.
hijo , son (hija, <i>f.</i>).	tan bueno como , as good as.
Honduras , Honduras.	tío , uncle (tía, <i>f.</i>).
imaginación , <i>f.</i> imagination.	Uruguay , <i>m.</i> , Uruguay.
madre , mother.	varias , several, various.
Méjico , Mexico (Mexicans say México).	Venezuela , Venezuela.
mentionado , mentioned.	verno , son-in-law (also hijo político).
mi , my.	
millón , <i>m.</i> , million.	

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un amigo mío dice cuando (él) habla en español conmigo: “Yo tengo una prima muy amable y muy bonita. (2)

La prima muy amable y muy bonita que (yo) tengo, es la hija de la hermana de mi madre. (3) La hermana de mi madre es mi tía y la cuñada de mi padre. (4) La hermana de mi madre es la esposa de mi tío. (5) Mi tío es el esposo de mi tía. (6) Mi tío es también el cuñado de mi madre y el yerno de mis abuelos. (7) Mis abuelos son muy buenos, especialmente mi abuela. (8) Mi abuela es la suegra de mi tío. (9) Mi tío tiene muchos sobrinos.

(10) Uno de los sobrinos de mi tío es un pedazo de pan. (11) El sobrino de mi tío que es un pedazo de pan es mi primo. (12) Este primo que es un pedazo de pan es tan bueno como yo. (13) Este primo mío es el nieto de su abuelo y el biznieto de su bisabuelo. (14) Este primo mío es uno de los muchos parientes que (yo) tengo en varias partes del mundo.

(15) Yo tengo parientes en estas partes del mundo: en España, en Francia, en Inglaterra y en los Estados Unidos. (16) También (yo) tengo parientes en Cuba, en Bolivia, en el Uruguay, en el Paraguay, en Colombia, en Venezuela y en Puerto Rico. (17) También (yo) tengo parientes en el Ecuador, en Costa Rica, en Nicaragua, en Guatemala, en Honduras, en Panamá, en San Salvador, en Méjico, en Santo Domingo y en las Filipinas.

(18) Yo tengo parientes en las naciones mencionadas y también amigos. (19) Yo tengo amigos ricos que tienen mucho dinero, y amigos pobres que tienen poco dinero. (20) Un amigo mío es millonario. (21) Otro amigo mío está a la cuarta pregunta. (22) El amigo mío que es millonario tiene muchos millones en el banco. (23) El amigo mío que está a la cuarta pregunta tiene muchos millones en la imaginación.

(24) Algunos amigos míos han sido ricos y ahora son pobres. (25) Otros han sido pobres y ahora son ricos. (26) Así es la vida."

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Quién tiene una prima muy amable y muy bonita?
 (2) ¿Es la prima muy amable y muy bonita que usted tiene, la hija de la hermana de su señora madre? (3) ¿Es su tía

(de usted) la hermana de su señora madre? (4) ¿Es la hermana de su señora madre la cuñada de su señor padre? (5) ¿Es la hermana de su señora madre la esposa de su tío? (6) ¿Es su tío el esposo de su tía? (7) ¿Es su tío el cuñado de su señora madre? (8) ¿Es su tío el yerno de sus abuelos? (9) ¿Son sus abuelos muy buenos? (10) Es su señora abuela especialmente buena? (11) ¿Es su señora abuela la suegra de su tío? (12) ¿Tiene su tío muchos sobrinos? (13) ¿Es uno de los sobrinos de su tío un pedazo de pan? (14) ¿Es el sobrino de su tío que es un pedazo de pan primo de usted? (15) ¿Es este primo suyo, que es un pedazo de pan, tan bueno como usted? (16) ¿Es este primo suyo el nieto de su abuelo y el biznieto de su bisabuelo? (17) ¿Es este primo suyo uno de los parientes que usted tiene en varias partes del mundo? (18) ¿En qué partes del mundo tiene usted parientes? (19) ¿Tiene usted también parientes en Cuba, en Bolivia, en el Uruguay, en el Paraguay, en Colombia, en Venezuela y en Puerto Rico? (20) ¿Tiene usted también parientes en el Ecuador, en Costa Rica, en Nicaragua, en Guatemala, en Honduras, en Panamá, en San Salvador, en Méjico, en Santo Domingo y en las Filipinas? (21) ¿Tiene usted parientes en las naciones mencionadas? (22) ¿Tiene usted también amigos? (23) ¿Tiene usted amigos ricos que tienen mucho dinero, y amigos pobres que tienen poco dinero? (24) ¿Tiene usted un amigo que es millonario? (25) ¿Tiene usted otro amigo que está a la cuarta pregunta? (26) ¿Tiene muchos millones en el banco el amigo suyo que es millonario? (27) ¿Tiene muchos millones en la imaginación el amigo suyo que está a la cuarta pregunta? (28) ¿Son ahora pobres algunos amigos suyos que han sido ricos? (29) ¿Son ahora ricos algunos amigos suyos que han sido pobres? (30) ¿Es así la vida?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We have a very elegant cousin (fem.) who is exceedingly good. (2) She is the daughter of our father's brother. (3) My father's brother is my uncle and my mother's brother-in-

law. (4) My father's brother is my aunt's husband. (5) My mother has many nieces and many nephews, and I have many cousins (masc. or fem.). (6) One of my cousins (masc. or fem.) lives in the United States with me. (7) We have relatives in Spain, in England, in Porto Rico, in Cuba, in Colombia, and in Mexico. (8) Our uncle, who is my mother's brother, has many millions in the bank. (9) This rich uncle of ours, who has a very good mother-in-law, has several relatives who are poor. (10) I have no money, but I have a keen appetite and a good imagination. (11) Your (polite form sing.) grandfather has much money, but your (polite form plur.) cousins (masc.) are penniless. (12) Her granddaughters and great-grandsons say that before long (*antes de mucho tiempo*) they will be millionaires.

NOTES

1. See the formation of *conmigo*, *with me*, in note b, under the *Prepositional Pronouns*, page 262.
2. *Estar a la cuarta pregunta*, literally translated, is *to be at the fourth question*, and *ser un pedazo de pan* is *to be a piece of bread*.
3. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *ser*, model 28, page 377, and *decir*, model 34, page 379. Study under *Ser* and *Estar*, page 311, the fundamental difference between these two verbs.
4. Learn under *Possessives*, the use as well as the full and the shortened forms of the possessives, pages 271 and 272 respectively. See examples.
5. Study under *How the Possessive Case of Nouns is Expressed in Spanish*, page 233, everything given.
6. Study under *How to Form the Comparative of Equality*, the formation of the comparative of equality if an adjective or an adverb is the object of the comparison, page 250, to understand the meaning of *tan bueno como*, *as good as*, of sentence 12 of the *Theme*.
7. In sentence 23, of the *Theme*, *en la imaginación*, must be translated by *in his imagination*. See reason, under the heading *Use of the Definite Article Instead of the Possessive*, page 274.
8. Polite usage requires, in Spanish, the word *señora* before the words *madre*, *abuela*, etc., and the word *señor* before *padre*, *abuelo*, etc., in questions.
9. The word *marido* is also greatly used for *husband*.

LECCIÓN CATORCE—LESSON FOURTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

adelantar , to run fast, to gain time, to improve, to progress.	minuto , minute.
alguicn , someone, somebody, anybody.	níquel , <i>m.</i> , nickel.
alto , tall, high.	omitir , to omit.
América del Sur , South America (also Sud América).	oro , gold.
ancha , wide.	parar , to stop.
andar , to walk, to go.	plata , silver.
atrasar , to run slow, to lose time, to go backwards.	preguntar , to ask, to question.
bajo , short, low.	punta , point.
bccerro , calfskin.	¿qué hora es? what time is it?
cabritilla , kidskin.	reloj , <i>m.</i> , watch.
calamidad , <i>f.</i> , calamity.	relojero , watch maker.
caso , case.	respuesta , answer (noun).
ciudad , <i>f.</i> , city.	siempre , always.
cuánto , how much (cuántos, how many).	singular y plural , <i>m.</i> , singular and plural.
cuarto , quarter, room.	suela , sole (of shoes).
charol , patent leather.	tacón , <i>m.</i> , heel (of shoe); (talón, heel of foot).
dar , irr., to give.	todos los días , every day.
dar cuerda , to wind up (lit. to give cord).	nueve , nine.
de punta ancha , broad-toed (speaking of shoes).	diez , ten.
de punta estrecha , narrow pointed (speaking of shoes).	once , eleven.
descompuesto , out of order.	doce , twelve.
en la misma forma que antes , in the same form (or way) as before.	treee , thirteen.
en punto , sharp, precisely (lit. in point).	catorce , fourteen.
estrecha , narrow.	quince , fifteen.
etcétera , etc., and so forth.	dieciséis , sixteen.
forma , form.	diecisiete , seventeen.
gruesa , stout, fat, corpulent, thick.	dieciocho , eighteen.
le , to him, to her, to you, him, you, etc.	diecinueve , nineteen.
media , half.	veinte , twenty.
menos , less.	veintiuno , twenty-one.
	veintidós , twenty-two.
	veintitrés , twenty-three.
	veinticuatro , twenty-four.
	veinticinco , twenty-five.
	veintiséis , twenty-six.
	veintisiete , twenty-seven.
	veintiocho , twenty-eight.
	veintinueve , twenty-nine.
	treinta , thirty.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo tengo tres relojes. (2) Yo tengo un reloj de oro, otro de plata, y otro de níquel. (3) El reloj de oro que (yo) tengo es muy bonito y anda perfectamente. (4) Yo compré este reloj en una ciudad muy importante de la América del Sur.

(5) Cuando alguien me pregunta, “¿Qué hora es?”, yo respondo de una de estas maneras: “Son las doce en punto; son las cuatro y cuarto; son las seis y media; son las nueve menos cuarto,” etcétera. (6) Cuando es la una en punto, o la una y cuarto, o la una y media, o la una menos cuarto, (yo) respondo en la misma forma que antes, pero (yo) empleo el verbo en el singular. (7) En otros casos, cuando la hora no es la una, (yo) siempre empleo el verbo en el plural.

(8) La palabra *minutos* se omite cuando uno responde a la pregunta “¿Qué hora es?” (9) En este caso (yo) respondo así: “Son las diez y cinco; es la una y veinte; son las once menos trece; son las ocho menos catorce; son las siete menos veintinueve.”

(10) Yo doy cuerda a mi reloj de oro todos los días. (11) También (yo) doy cuerda, todos los días, a mis relojes de plata y de níquel. (12) Mi reloj de níquel atrasa cinco minutos algunos días, y otros días adelanta nueve. (13) Mi reloj de níquel es una calamidad.

(14) Yo no deseo hablar, ahora, de mi reloj de níquel. (15) Tampoco (yo) deseo hablar del reloj de plata suyo que se paró ayer, y que, según el relojero, está descompuesto. (16) Ahora yo deseo comprar un par de guantes de cabritilla, diez camisas, dieciséis manzanas, catorce tomates, diecisiete melocotones, diecinueve peras, once cajas de fósforos, y trece pastillas de jabón. (17) También (yo) deseo comprar, quince melones, veintiún pollos, dieciocho membrillos, doce pasteles de zarzamoras, y nueve latas de sardinas. (18) También (yo) deseo comprar, veinte, o veintidós, o veinticuatro, o veintisiete, o veintinueve pares de botas de charol, de punta muy estrecha, y de tacón muy alto. (19) También (yo) deseo comprar, veintitrés, o veinticinco, o veintiséis, o veintiocho, o treinta pares de zapatos de be-

cerro, de punta muy ancha, de suela muy gruesa, y de tacón muy bajo.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Cuántos relojes tiene usted? (2) ¿Tiene usted un reloj de oro, otro de plata, y otro de níquel? (3) ¿Es muy bonito y anda perfectamente el reloj de oro que usted tiene? (4) ¿Compró usted el reloj de oro que (usted) tiene, en una ciudad muy importante de la América del Sur? (5) ¿Cómo responde usted cuando alguien le pregunta “¿Qué hora es?” (6) ¿Cómo responde usted a la pregunta “¿Qué hora es?” cuando es la una en punto, o la una y cuarto, o la una y media, o la una menos cuarto? (7) ¿Emplea usted el verbo en el plural en otros casos? (8) ¿Se omite la palabra *minutos* cuando uno responde a la pregunta “¿Qué hora es?” (9) ¿Cómo responde usted en este caso? (10) ¿Da usted cuerda a su reloj de oro todos los días? (11) ¿Da usted cuerda a su reloj de plata todos los días? (12) ¿Da usted cuerda a su reloj de níquel todos los días? (13) ¿Cuántos minutos atrasa algunos días su reloj de níquel? (14) ¿Cuántos minutos adelanta algunos días su reloj de níquel? (15) ¿Es su reloj de níquel una calamidad? (16) ¿Desea usted hablar más, ahora, de su reloj de níquel? (17) ¿Qué desea usted comprar ahora? (18) ¿Desea usted comprar, también, quince melones, veintiún pollos, dieciocho membrillos, doce pasteles de zarzamoras, y nueve latas de sardinas? (19) ¿Desea usted comprar, también, veinte, o veintidós, o veinticuatro, o veintisiete, o veintinueve pares de botas de charol, de punta muy estrecha, y de tacón muy alto? (20) ¿Desea usted comprar, también, veintitrés, o veinticinco, o veintiséis, o veintiocho, o treinta pares de zapatos de becerro, de punta muy ancha, de suela muy gruesa, y de tacón muy bajo?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I have seventeen watches. (2) Ten of my watches are of gold, six of silver, and one of nickel. (3) My gold and

silver watches run perfectly, and consequently they neither gain nor lose time. (4) My nickel watch runs fast in the morning, runs slow in the afternoon, and stops (use *parar* reflexively) in the evening. (5) I wind up all my watches at eight o'clock sharp in the evening (*de la noche*), or at a quarter after four in the afternoon (*de la tarde*). (6) Many a time, when someone asks me, "What time is it?" I answer thus: "It is ten minutes after seven"; "it is a quarter of twelve"; "it is one o'clock precisely"; "it is half-past one," etc. (7) Yesterday, at half-past eleven, they bought eighteen neckties and thirty pairs of socks, and to-morrow they will buy, at a quarter of three, twenty-six collars and thirteen waistcoats. (8) When you (polite form singular) say that the Spanish language is easy, I say nothing, because I do not wish to say the same thing. (9) With the Spanish words that I have studied and learned, I answer (use *a* after the verb) all his questions very well. (10) One of his watches stopped (use *parar* reflexively) yesterday. (11) Another one of his watches is now out of order. (12) When he winds up the watch that he bought last year, I ask him: "Does it run well?"

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities in the present indicative of *dar*, model 33, page 379.

2. Study, on page 263, under *Conjunctive Pronouns*, all the forms given, as well as the notes; and under *Position of Objective Personal Pronouns*, the rule given.

3. The literal translation of *¿Qué hora es?*, *What time is it?*, in sentence 5 of the *Theme*, is, *What hour is?*

4. Notice in the answers given, in sentence 5 of the *Theme*, that the word *it* has no equivalent in Spanish, and that the verb is always used in the plural, except when *one o'clock* is considered.

5. In sentence 8, *Theme*, *se omite* must be translated by *is omitted*. See reason under *Formation of the Passive Voice with the Particle SE*, page 311.

6. *De*, of sentence 14, *Theme*, must be rendered in English by the word *about*.

7. In sentence 21, *Theme*, the numeral *veintiuno*, *twenty-one*, suffers the loss of the *o* when placed before the noun *pollos*, *chickens*. See *Apocopation or Shortening of Important Adjectives*, page 246.

8. The literal translation of *reloj de oro*, *gold watch*, is *watch of gold*; *reloj de plata*, *silver watch*, is *watch of silver*, and *reloj de níquel*, *nickel watch*, is *watch of nickel*.

9. In Spanish, instead of saying *a quarter after twelve* or *half-past twelve*, etc., for instance, it is said *are the twelve and quarter* or *the twelve and half*, etc., and instead of *a quarter of twelve*, etc., it is said *the twelve less quarter*.

LECCIÓN QUINCE—LESSON FIFTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

año bisiesto , leap year.	terminar , to end, to finish, to terminate.
cada , each, every.	treinta y uno , thirty-one.
cardinal , cardinal (as a noun cardinal is a prelate of the church).	cuarenta , forty.
¿cuánto tiempo? how long? (lit. how much time?)	cincuenta , fifty.
duración , <i>f.</i> , duration.	cincuenta y dos , fifty-two.
durar , to last.	sesenta , sixty.
ejemplo , example.	setenta , seventy.
esa , that.	ochenta , eighty.
estación , <i>f.</i> season, station.	noventa , ninety.
estaciones del año , seasons of the year.	ciento , one hundred.
primavera , spring.	doscientos , two hundred.
verano , summer.	trescientos , three hundred.
otoño , autumn, fall.	trescientos sesenta y cinco , three hundred and sixty-five.
invierno , winter.	cuatrocientos , four hundred.
hora , hour.	quinientos , five hundred.
la misma , the same.	seiscientos , six hundred.
más que , more than.	setecientos , seven hundred.
número , number.	ochocientos , eight hundred.
números cardinales , cardinal numbers.	novecientos , nine hundred.
olvidar , to forget.	mil , one thousand.
poder , <i>irr.</i> , to be able (also used as the equivalent of the auxiliaries <i>may</i> and <i>can</i>).	diez mil , ten thousand.
por ejemplo , for example, for instance.	veinte mil , twenty thousand.
por otras razones , for other reasons.	treinta mil , thirty thousand.
posible , possible.	cuarenta mil , forty thousand.
segundo , second (noun).	cincuenta mil , fifty thousand.
	cien mil , one hundred thousand.
	quinientos mil , five hundred thousand.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Las estaciones del año son las siguientes: primavera, verano, otoño e invierno. (2) Cada una de estas estaciones dura tres meses.

(3) La primavera principia el veintiuno de marzo y termina el veintiuno de junio. (4) El verano principia el veintiuno de junio y termina el veintiuno de septiembre. (5) El otoño principia el veintiuno de septiembre y termina el veintiuno de diciembre. (6) El invierno principia el veintiuno de diciembre y termina el veintiuno de marzo.

(7) Los doce meses del año no tienen la misma duración. (8) Por ejemplo: los meses de noviembre, abril, junio y septiembre, tienen treinta días; los meses de enero, marzo, mayo, julio, agosto, octubre y diciembre tienen treinta y un días, y el mes de febrero tiene veintiocho días cuando el año no es bisiesto.

(9) El año bisiesto es muy agradable para algunas personas porque (ellas) pueden hablar más que en los años que no son bisiestos. (10) También es el año bisiesto agradable para estas personas por otras razones que ahora no es posible tomar en consideración.

(11) Ahora (yo) deseo olvidar esas razones y otras cosas, porque (yo) deseo decir lo siguiente: el año tiene trescientos sesenta y cinco días, si no es bisiesto, y cincuenta y dos semanas. (12) La semana tiene siete días, y el día tiene veinticuatro horas. (13) La hora tiene sesenta minutos, y el minuto sesenta segundos.

(14) En sesenta segundos (yo) digo, con facilidad y sin dificultad, estos números cardinales: cuarenta, noventa, treinta y uno, cincuenta, setenta, ochenta, ciento, quinientos, setecientos, novecientos, doscientos, seiscientos, cuatrocientos, trescientos, ochocientos, y mil. (15) También (yo) puedo decir en sesenta segundos, con facilidad y sin dificultad, estos otros números cardinales: cincuenta mil, veinte mil, diez mil, cuarenta mil, cien mil, treinta mil, quinientos mil, y un millón. (16) Con un millón (yo) tengo bastante.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Cuáles son las estaciones del año? (2) ¿Cuánto tiempo dura cada una de estas estaciones? (3) ¿Cuándo principia la primavera? (4) ¿Cuándo termina la primavera?

(5) ¿Cuándo principia el verano? (6) ¿Cuándo termina el verano? (7) ¿Cuándo principia el otoño? (8) ¿Cuándo termina el otoño? (9) ¿Cuándo principia y cuándo termina el invierno? (10) ¿Tienen la misma duración los doce meses del año? (11) ¿Cuántos días tienen los meses de noviembre, abril, junio y septiembre? (12) ¿Cuántos días tienen los meses de enero, marzo, mayo y julio? (13) ¿Cuántos días tienen los meses de agosto, octubre y diciembre? (14) ¿Cuántos días tiene el mes de febrero cuando el año no es bisiesto? (15) ¿Cuántos días tiene el mes de febrero cuando el año es bisiesto? (16) ¿Es el año bisiesto muy agradable para algunas personas? (17) ¿Por qué es el año bisiesto muy agradable para algunas personas? (18) ¿Es también el año bisiesto muy agradable para estas personas por otras razones que ahora no es posible tomar en consideración? (19) ¿Desea usted olvidar ahora esas razones y otras cosas? (20) ¿Por qué desea usted olvidar ahora esas razones y otras cosas? (21) ¿Cuántos días tiene la semana, y cuántas horas tiene el día? (22) ¿Cuántos minutos tiene la hora, y cuántos segundos tiene el minuto? (23) ¿Qué números cardinales dice usted con facilidad en sesenta segundos? (24) ¿Tiene usted bastante con un millón?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Next summer, I shall study more Spanish than my friend. (2) Next autumn I shall learn the following cardinal numbers: sixty, ninety, three hundred and sixty-five, one thousand, and five hundred thousand. (3) Winter begins on (el) the same day on which autumn ends. (4) Every season of the year lasts three months. (5) A friend of mine has forgotten that we have a leap year every (*cada*) four years. (6) Generally there are three hundred and sixty-five days in the year. (7) There are sixty seconds in a minute, twenty-four hours in a day, and fifty-two weeks in a year. (8) In forty seconds I can say, with ease and without difficulty, these cardinal numbers: one hundred, three hundred, seven hundred, two

hundred and eighty-eight, and eighty thousand. (9) I have less money than they, but they have fewer (*menos*) books than I. (10) This month we are studying as much as you (familiar form singular) are studying, and on this account we are learning as much as (*tanto como*) you are learning. (11) They studied more than seventy-five Spanish words the day before yesterday. (12) To-day we shall study and learn as many Spanish words as they studied and learned the day before yesterday.

NOTES

1. Numbers *thirty-two*, etc., as far as *forty*, are obtained in Spanish by adding to *treinta* the word *y*, followed by one of these numbers, *dos*, *tres*, *cuatro*, *cinco*, *seis*, *siete*, *ocho* or *nueve*. The same thing must be done to obtain *forty-one*, etc., *fifty-one*, etc., *sixty-one*, etc., and the rest, as far as one hundred.

2. *One hundred and one*, is obtained in Spanish by adding to *ciento* the word *uno*, thereby obtaining *ciento uno*, *one hundred and one*. The same principle must be followed to obtain *ciento dos*, *one hundred and two*, *ciento tres*, *one hundred and three*, etc., as far as *ciento veinte*, *one hundred and twenty*, i.e., the number desired must be added to *ciento*.

3. From *ciento veinte*, *one hundred and twenty*, as far as *two hundred*, add the number desired to *ciento*, bearing in mind that *ciento* must not be connected, with the number which follows, by *y*, and. Examples: *ciento veinte y cinco*, *one hundred and twenty-five*; *ciento sesenta y dos*, *one hundred and sixty-two*.

4. From two hundred as far as one thousand, the numbers are obtained in exactly the same way as from one hundred to two hundred, i.e., by adding to *two hundred*, *three hundred*, etc., the number desired.

5. From one thousand, as far as one million, the numbers are obtained in exactly the same way as from one hundred to two hundred. Examples: *mil uno*, *one thousand and one*; *mil ciento cuarenta*, *one thousand one hundred and forty*; *quinientos mil seis cientos sesenta y cuatro*, *five hundred thousand six hundred and sixty-four*.

6. In sentence 1, *Theme*, the word *e*, and, is used instead of *y* for euphonic reasons.

7. In sentences 3, 4, 5 and 6, *Theme*, the cardinal number *veintiuno* is used in Spanish; the ordinal *twenty-first* in English. See *Apocopa-tion or Shortening of Important Adjectives*, page 246.

8. In sentences 11, 12 and 13, *tiene*, *has*, may be rendered in English by *there are*.

9. Use the definite article before *summer*, *autumn* and *winter* when translating into Spanish, sentences 1, 2 and 3 of the *English Exercise*.

10. *Every season of the year*, sentence 4, must be rendered into Spanish by *todas las estaciones del año*.

11. *There are* of sentences 6 and 7, is rendered by *tiene*. Example: *El minuto tiene sesenta segundos*.

12. Study the irregularities of *poder* in the present indicative, model 39, page 381.

13. Study, on page 247, everything given under *Formation of the Comparative of Superiority*, and *Formation of the Comparative of Inferiority*.

LECCIÓN DIECISÉIS—LESSON SIXTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

arteria , artery.	labio , lip.
barba , chin, beard.	lengua , tongue.
brazo , arm.	mandíbula , jaw.
cabeza , head.	mano , <i>f.</i> , hand.
cadera , hip.	mano derecha , right hand.
cara , face (expensive, as <i>adj.</i>).	mano izquierda , left hand.
ceja , eyebrow.	mejilla , cheek.
cerebro , brain, cerebrum.	muñeca , wrist, doll.
cintura , waist line.	músculo , muscle.
corazón , <i>m.</i> , heart.	nariz , <i>f.</i> , nose.
dedo , finger.	nervio , nerve.
dedos de la mano , fingers of the hand.	oído , hearing (sense of).
dedo pulgar , thumb.	olfato , smell (sense of).
dedo índice , index finger.	oreja , ear.
dedo cordial , middle finger.	paladar , <i>m.</i> , palate.
dedo anular , ring finger.	párpado , eyelid.
dedo meñique , little finger (also <i>pequeño</i> , small).	pecho , chest, breast.
dedo del pie , toe.	pestaña , eyelash.
diente , <i>m.</i> , tooth.	pie , <i>m.</i> , foot.
encia , gum (of the mouth).	pierna , leg.
espalda , back.	pulmón , <i>m.</i> , lung.
estómago , stomach.	riñón , <i>m.</i> , kidney.
fosa nasal , nostril.	rodilla , knee.
garganta , throat.	sangre , <i>f.</i> , blood.
gusto , taste (sense of), pleasure.	sentidos corporales , corporal senses.
hacer , <i>irr.</i> , to do, to make.	sér (noun), being.
hígado , liver.	sienes , <i>f.</i> , temples (part of the body).
hombro , shoulder.	sobaco , armpit.
hueso , bone.	solo , only, alone.
humano , human.	tacto , touch (sense of), tact.
infinidad , <i>f.</i> , endless number (lit. infinity).	tobillo , ankle.
intestino , intestine.	uña , fingernail.
	vena , vein.
	vista , sight (sense of).

TEMA—THEME

(1) Los seres humanos tienen treinta y dos dientes, veinticuatro costillas, y los siguientes sentidos corporales: la vista, el oído, el olfato, el gusto y el tacto.

(2) También tienen los seres humanos cara, lengua, nariz, orejas, labios, brazos, piernas, pies, cabeza, paladar y garganta. (3) También tienen los seres humanos hombros, cejas, uñas, riñones, caderas, mandíbulas, encías, pestañas y pulmones. (4) También tienen los seres humanos sangre, rodillas, barba, sobacos, tobillos, mejillas, huesos, fosas nasales, nervios, venas, músculos y arterias. (5) También tienen los seres humanos sienes, muñecas, párpados, cintura, cerebro, intestinos, hígado, pecho, espalda, estómago y corazón.

(6) Yo tengo corazón. (7) También (yo) tengo dos manos. (8) Yo tengo la mano derecha y la mano izquierda. (9) Yo hago infinidad de cosas con la mano derecha. (10) También (yo) hago infinidad de cosas con la mano izquierda. (11) Con las dos manos (yo) puedo hacer más cosas que con una sola mano. (12) Con las dos manos (yo) puedo tomar los platos, los vasos, las tazas y las cucharas con más facilidad que con una sola mano. (13) También (yo) puedo cortar el pan y la carne con las dos manos con más facilidad que con una sola mano. (14) También nosotros podemos hacer muchas cosas con las dos manos con más facilidad que con una sola mano. (15) También ustedes pueden hacer muchas cosas con las dos manos con más facilidad que con una sola mano.

(16) Para terminar este ejercicio (yo) digo que los nombres de los dedos de las manos son los siguientes: dedo pulgar, índice, cordial, anular y meñique.

(17) Yo no deseo hablar ahora de los dedos de los pies.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Cuántos dientes tienen los seres humanos? (2) ¿Cuántas costillas tienen los seres humanos? (3) ¿Qué sentidos corporales tienen los seres humanos? (4) ¿Tienen los seres humanos cara, lengua, nariz, orejas y labios? (5) ¿Tienen también, los seres humanos, brazos, piernas, pies, cabeza, paladar y garganta? (6) ¿Tienen también, los seres humanos, hombros, cejas, uñas, riñones, caderas, mandíbulas, encías, pestañas y pulmones? (7) ¿Tienen también, los

seres humanos, sangre, rodillas, barba, sobacos, tobillos, mejillas, huesos, fosas nasales, nervios, venas, músculos y arterias? (8) ¿Tienen también, los seres humanos, sienes, muñecas y párpados? (9) ¿Tienen también, los seres humanos, cintura, cerebro, intestinos, hígado, pecho, espalda, estómago y corazón? (10) ¿Tiene usted corazón? (11) ¿Tiene usted también dos manos? (12) ¿Tiene usted la mano derecha y la mano izquierda? (13) ¿Hace usted infinidad de cosas con la mano derecha? (14) ¿Hace usted también infinidad de cosas con la mano izquierda? (15) ¿Puede usted hacer más cosas con las dos manos que con una sola mano? (16) ¿Puede usted tomar los platos, los vasos, las tazas y las cucharas con las dos manos con más facilidad que con una sola mano? (17) ¿Puede usted cortar el pan y la carne con más facilidad con las dos manos que con una sola mano? (18) ¿Pueden ustedes hacer también muchas cosas con más facilidad con las dos manos que con una sola mano? (19) ¿Qué dice usted para terminar este ejercicio? (20) ¿Desea usted hablar ahora de los dedos de los pies?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Human beings have teeth, ribs, lungs, eyes, arteries and fingers. (2) Human beings also have muscles, veins, head, back and chest. (3) Human beings also have lips, hands, tongue, fingernails, ears, wrists, nose, face and arms. (4) Now and then a human being says: "I can do an infinite number of things with my left hand." (5) You (familiar form sing.) can also do an infinite number of things with your left hand. (6) You (familiar form plural) do as many things with your right hand as they do. (7) I do what they do, but I do not do what you (familiar form plural) do. (8) We need the sense of touch; we also need the sense of sight and the other three senses. (9) If you say that your hat is better than mine, I say that your taste is not so good as mine. (10) Her little finger is very small. (11) Her sense of smell is almost as good as ours. (12) Her face is as pretty as her sister-in-law's.

NOTES

1. In sentence 6, *Theme*, the indefinite article is not used in Spanish before *corazón*. Expressions like *He has a heart, a head or a voice*, do not require the indefinite article in Spanish.

2. Notice the omission of the indefinite article *una* before *infinidad* in sentences 9 and 10 of the *Theme*.

3. Use the definite article before *human beings*, sentences 1, 2 and 3, *English Exercise*, when translating into Spanish.

4. Study everything given under *How to Form the Comparative of Equality*, page 250.

5. *As good as ours*, sentence 11, and *as her sister-in-law's*, sentence 12, are respectively translated thus: *tan bueno como el nuestro*, and *como la de su cuñada*.

LECCIÓN DIECISIETE—LESSON SEVENTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a eso de , at about.	invariablemente , invariably.
además , besides.	jardinero , gardener.
almorzar , irr., to breakfast.	lavandera , laundress, washerwoman.
almuerzo , breakfast.	lavandería , laundry.
ayuda de cámara , valet.	lavar , to wash.
camarero , steward, waiter (camarera, chambermaid, waitress).	ligera , light, swift.
cena , supper.	loncha , slice.
cenar , to sup.	llamarse , to be called.
cocido , boiled dinner which consists of meats and vegetables.	mediodía , <i>m.</i> , noon.
cocinera , cook.	menú , <i>m.</i> , menu.
cochero , coachman.	merendar , irr., to lunch.
comida , meal, dinner.	merienda , lunch.
comida fuerte , heavy meal.	miembro , member.
comida ligera , light meal.	mozo , waiter, young man.
consistir , to consist.	mujer , woman, wife.
costumbre , <i>f.</i> , custom, habit.	paciencia , patience.
criado , servant (also sirviente).	portero , porter.
chófer , <i>m.</i> , chauffeur.	propina , tip, gratuity.
de doce a una , between twelve and one o'clock (lit. from twelve to one).	querer , irr., to want; to love (when the object is a person).
desayunar , to breakfast lightly.	querer decir , to mean to say (lit. to want to say).
desayuno , light breakfast.	refrigerio , refreshment (with something to eat).
doncella , maid.	ropa blanca , linen, underwear, handkerchiefs, etc.
emparedado , sandwich (sandwich is generally used instead of emparedado).	salchichón , <i>m.</i> , salami, big sausage.
entre , between.	secreta , secret.
entremés , <i>m.</i> , relish, appetizer.	según , according to.
excepción , <i>f.</i> , exception.	sereno , night-watchman (as adjective, serene).
familia , family.	servir , irr., to serve.
generoso , generous.	sociedad , <i>f.</i> , society.
gente , <i>f.</i> , people.	sucia , dirty, soiled.
hombre , man.	tentempié , <i>m.</i> , a bite to eat, a snack (also pisco-labis).
honradez , <i>f.</i> , honesty.	tostada , toast (noun).

TEMA—THEME

(1) Estos son los nombres de las comidas que mucha gente hace: desayuno, almuerzo, comida, merienda y cena. (2) Esto quiere decir que mucha gente desayuna, almuerza, come, merienda y cena.

(3) La gente que hace cinco comidas al día desayuna muy temprano, por la mañana; almuerza a eso de las ocho; come entre doce y una o un poco antes; merienda a eso de las cinco, y cena entre siete y ocho.

(4) Yo como tres veces al día. (5) Primero, entre ocho y nueve de la mañana, (yo) tomo el desayuno. (6) En esta comida ligera (yo) tomo solo una taza de café con leche, y tostadas con mantequilla. (7) De doce a una, o un poco antes, (yo) hago la primera comida fuerte del día, que, según la costumbre de las familias, se llama almuerzo o comida. (8) El menú de esta comida es casi siempre el siguiente: entremeses, sopa, cocido, pescado, carne asada, ensalada, uno o dos postres, y café. (9) La segunda y última comida fuerte del día, que invariablemente consiste de los mismos platos que la del mediodía, con la excepción del cocido, la hago entre siete y ocho de la noche. (10) Esta comida de la noche se llama cena por algunos, y comida por otros.

(11) Yo como para vivir, pero un amigo mío, que es miembro de una sociedad secreta muy importante, vive para comer. (12) Este amigo, además del desayuno, almuerzo, comida, merienda y cena, toma, algunas veces, algún tenteempié o refrigerio que, generalmente, consiste de cinco o seis empareados y algunas lonchas de salchichón.

(13) Cuando este amigo come en el restaurant, le da una propina muy buena al mozo o camarero que le sirve. (14) También es este amigo mío muy generoso con estos criados que en su casa tiene: con el portero, con la cocinera, con la doncella, con el cochero, con el ayuda de cámara, con el chófer, con el jardinero y con el sereno. (15) También es este amigo mío muy generoso con la lavandera que lava en la lavandería su ropa blanca sucia. (16) Esta buena mujer es la esposa de un hombre que tiene mucha honradez y mucha paciencia.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Cuáles son los nombres de las comidas que mucha gente hace? (2) ¿Quiere esto decir que mucha gente desayuna, almuerza, come, merienda y cena? (3) ¿Cuándo desayuna la gente que hace cinco comidas al día? (4) ¿A qué hora almuerza la gente que hace cinco comidas al día? (5) ¿Cuándo come la gente que hace cinco comidas al día? (6) ¿A qué hora merienda la gente que hace cinco comidas al día? (7) ¿Cuándo cena la gente que hace cinco comidas al día? (8) ¿Cuántas veces come usted al día? (9) ¿Qué toma usted entre ocho y nueve de la mañana? (10) ¿Qué toma usted en esta comida ligera? (11) ¿Cuándo hace usted la primera comida fuerte del día? (12) ¿Cómo se llama la primera comida fuerte del día? (13) ¿Cuál es casi siempre el menú de esta comida? (14) ¿Cuándo hace usted la segunda y última comida fuerte del día? (15) ¿De qué platos consiste, invariablemente, esta comida? (16) ¿Cómo se llama esta comida de la noche? (17) ¿Come usted para vivir? (18) ¿Para qué vive un amigo suyo que es miembro de una sociedad secreta muy importante? (19) ¿Qué necesita tomar este amigo, algunas veces, además de lo que come en las cinco comidas que (él) hace al día? (20) ¿De qué consiste, generalmente, el tenteempié o refrigerio? (21) ¿Le da este amigo una propina muy buena al mozo o camarero que le sirve cuando (él) come en el restaurant? (22) ¿Con qué criados es también generoso este amigo? (23) ¿Es también generoso este amigo con la lavandera que lava en la lavandería su ropa blanca sucia? (24) ¿Es esta buena mujer la esposa de un hombre que tiene mucha honradez y mucha paciencia?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We take three meals a day. (2) At about half-past eight o'clock I take my first light meal. (3) He takes the first heavy meal of the day between eleven and one o'clock. (4) At noon I generally eat more than in the morning or in the evening. (5) I give very good tips to the waiter who serves me when I eat in the restaurant. (6) The woman who washes

the handkerchiefs of the man who never eats in the restaurant, has a son who is a chauffeur. (7) The porter, the cook, the maid and the gardener, breakfast at the same time as (*que*) the coachman. (8) Many persons eat cheese sandwiches, olives and slices of watermelon between the heavy meals that they take. (9) Some friends of mine who are members of very important secret societies dined with me yesterday. (10) According to the custom of Spanish families, the noon meal is called "breakfast" or "dinner." (11) The light breakfast and the luncheon are light meals, and the breakfast, the dinner and the supper are heavy meals. (12) We generally eat to live, but two friends of ours who have a very keen appetite in the morning, at (*a*) noon, in the afternoon and in the evening, live to eat.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities in the present indicative of *almorzar*, model 5, page 367; of *merendar*, in model 1, page 367; of *querer*, model 41, page 382, and of *servir*, model 15, page 370.

2. Spanish speaking people, who take three meals a day, call *desayuno* the cup of coffee or chocolate, with rolls or toast, which they take in the morning; *almuerzo*, the heavy meal taken at noon or a little before or after, and *comida* the heavy evening meal. The *almuerzo* of the people who take five meals a day is a heavy meal taken between 7 and 9 in the morning.

3. *Lonchar* is used, as the equivalent of the English verb *to lunch*, by many Spanish speaking people who reside in English speaking countries. *Lonch* is also used, by many persons, as the equivalent of the noun *lunch*. *Lonchar* and *lonch* are used neither in Spain nor in Spanish America.

4. Notice that in sentences 2 and 3, of the *Theme*, *mucha gente* is used collectively; consequently the verb which follows must be in the singular.

5. The equivalent of *al día* in sentence 3 is *a day*.

6. In sentences 7 and 9, the verb *hacer* is used idiomatically with the meaning of the English verb *to take*. The verb *tomar* may also be used in Spanish, if so desired, instead of *hacer*, but the verb *hacer* is used more than *tomar* in this connection.

7. *Alguno*, *some*, of sentence 12, suffers the loss of its last vowel. See *Apocopation or Shortening of Important Adjectives*, page 246.

8. *Que tiene mucha honradez*, sentence 16, literally *who has much honesty*, may be translated by *who is very honest*.

9. In sentences 5, 6 and 9 of the *English Exercise*, *who* must be rendered in Spanish by *que*.

10. The word *slice* used in sentence 8 must be rendered by *tajada*.

LECCIÓN DIECIOCHO—LESSON EIGHTEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abrir , irr., to open.	luz , <i>f.</i> , light.
Africa , Africa.	madera , wood.
alegría , joy.	mercadería , merchandise.
almacenar , to store.	mosca , fly.
árbol , <i>m.</i> , tree.	mosquito , mosquito.
artículo , article.	oficina , office (also despacho and escritorio; bufete, lawyer's office).
Asia , Asia.	ómnibus , <i>m.</i> , bus, jitney, omnibus (guagua in Cuba).
bodega , cellar, hold of a ship (in Cuba, grocery store).	ópera , opera.
calle , <i>f.</i> , street.	pájaro , bird.
canción , <i>f.</i> , song (also canto).	para mí , for me.
cantar , to sing.	pared , <i>f.</i> , wall.
cerca de , near (cerca also means near when used alone).	patio , courtyard.
cerrar , irr., to close, to shut.	paz , <i>f.</i> , peace.
cocina , kitchen.	piso , story, floor.
coche , carriage, coach.	popular , popular.
color , <i>m. f.</i> , color.	puerta , door.
comedor , <i>m.</i> , dining room.	roble , <i>m.</i> , oak.
comerciante , <i>m.</i> , merchant.	rosa , pink (adj.); (rosa as a noun is rose).
cuarto de baño , bathroom.	sala , parlor.
dar a , to face (lit. to give to).	soñar , irr., to dream.
despensa , pantry.	sótano , basement.
disturbar , to disturb.	suelo , floor.
dormir , irr., to sleep.	techo , ceiling.
dormitorio , bedroom, dormitory (also alcoba).	tejado , roof.
edificio , building, edifice.	tener ganas de , to have a mind to, to feel like.
espacio , space.	tener hambre , to be hungry.
Europa , Europe.	tener sed , to be thirsty.
exportador , <i>m.</i> , exporter.	tener sueño , to be sleepy.
exportar , to export.	tranquila , tranquil, quiet.
flor , <i>f.</i> , flower.	tranvía eléctrico , <i>m.</i> , trolley car, electric car.
fuelle , <i>f.</i> , fountain.	trozo , piece, chunk.
habitación , <i>f.</i> , room, habitation.	último , last.
hermoso , beautiful.	vecindad , <i>f.</i> , neighborhood, vicinity.
hierba , grass.	ventana , window.
importador , <i>m.</i> , importer.	
importar , to import.	

TEMA—THEME

(1) Mi familia vive en una casa muy bonita que está en una calle muy tranquila. (2) Por la calle en que (nosotros) vivimos no pasan tranvías eléctricos. (3) Sólo algún coche o algún ómnibus pasa, de cuando en cuando, que disturba la paz de la vecindad. (4) La casa tiene dieciséis habitaciones.

(5) Yo tengo una habitación para mí solo, en la cual duermo, estudio y sueño. (6) Mi habitación está en el último piso de la casa, cerca del tejado. (7) Mi habitación da a un patio muy hermoso, en donde hay pájaros, hierba, árboles, fuentes y flores. (8) El techo de mi habitación es blanco, las paredes son rosa, y el suelo, que es de madera, tiene el color del roble. (9) Mi habitación tiene tres ventanas y dos puertas. (10) Algunas veces (yo) abro las puertas y las ventanas. (11) Otras veces (yo) cierro las ventanas y las puertas. (12) En mi habitación no hay moscas. (13) Tampoco hay mosquitos. (14) En mi habitación hay espacio, luz y alegría.

(15) También hay espacio, luz y alegría en el comedor de la casa, el cual es muy grande y muy hermoso. (16) También son muy grandes y muy hermosos los dormitorios, la sala, los cuartos de baño, la despensa, la bodega y la cocina.

(17) Algunas veces, cuando (yo) estoy en la cocina, o en el comedor, o en mi habitación, (yo) tengo hambre. (18) Otras veces (yo) tengo sed. (19) Otras veces (yo) tengo sueño. (20) Otras veces (yo) tengo ganas de cantar.

(21) Cuando (yo) tengo hambre, (yo) como muchas cosas. (22) Cuando (yo) tengo mucha sed, (yo) bebo mucha agua. (23) Cuando (yo) tengo mucho sueño, (yo) duermo muchas horas. (24) Cuando (yo) tengo ganas de cantar, (yo) canto. (25) Yo canto, generalmente, canciones populares.

(26) También canta canciones populares y trozos de ópera, un comerciante muy rico. (27) Este comerciante es exportador e importador. (28) Este comerciante almacena, algunas veces, en el sótano del edificio donde tiene la oficina, las mercaderías que importa. (29) Este comerciante exporta muchos artículos a Europa, al Asia y al África.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Dónde vive su familia? (2) ¿Está la casa en que su familia vive en una calle muy tranquila? (3) ¿Pasan tranvías eléctricos por la calle en que ustedes viven? (4) ¿Qué pasa, de cuando en cuando, por la calle en que ustedes viven que disturba la paz de la vecindad? (5) ¿Cuántas habitaciones tiene la casa en que su familia vive? (6) ¿Tiene usted una habitación, para usted solo, en la casa en que ustedes viven? (7) ¿Duerme (usted), estudia (usted), y sueña usted en esa habitación? (8) ¿Está su habitación en el último piso de la casa, cerca del tejado? (9) ¿Da su habitación a un patio muy hermoso, en donde hay pájaros, hierba, árboles, fuentes y flores? (10) ¿Es el techo de su habitación blanco? (11) ¿De qué color son las paredes de su habitación? (12) ¿Es de madera el suelo de su habitación? (13) ¿Tiene el suelo de su habitación el color del roble? (14) ¿Cuántas ventanas y cuántas puertas tiene su habitación? (15) ¿Abre usted, algunas veces, las puertas y las ventanas de su habitación? (16) ¿Cierra usted, otras veces, las ventanas y las puertas de su habitación? (17) ¿Hay en su habitación moscas? (18) ¿Hay mosquitos en su habitación? (19) ¿Hay en su habitación espacio, luz y alegría? (20) ¿Hay también espacio, luz y alegría, en el comedor de su casa? (21) ¿Es muy grande y muy hermoso el comedor de su casa? (22) ¿Son también muy grandes y muy hermosos los dormitorios, la sala, los cuartos de baño, la despensa, la bodega y la cocina? (23) ¿Tiene usted hambre, algunas veces, cuando usted está en la cocina, en el comedor, o en su habitación? (24) ¿Tiene usted sed y sueño otras veces? (25) ¿Tiene usted, otras veces, ganas de cantar? (26) ¿Qué come usted cuando (usted) tiene hambre, y qué bebe (usted) cuando (usted) tiene mucha sed? (27) ¿Duerme usted muchas horas cuando (usted) tiene mucho sueño? (28) ¿Qué canciones canta usted cuando (usted) tiene ganas de cantar? (29) ¿Qué canta un comerciante muy rico que es importador y exportador? (30) ¿A dónde exporta muchos artículos este comerciante que, algunas veces, (él) almacena,

en el sótano del edificio donde tiene la oficina, las mercaderías que importa?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We live in a very pretty house which has twenty rooms. (2) I have a room for myself alone in which (*en la cual*) I sleep, study and sing. (3) My room, the walls of which (*de la cual*) are white, has four windows and three doors. (4) There is space and light in all the rooms of our house. (5) In the beautiful courtyard, which my room faces, (*al cual da mi habitación*) there are birds, trees, grass and fountains. (6) Sometimes you (familiar form singular) open the doors and the windows of my room; at other times (*otras veces*) you close the windows and the doors. (7) The sleeping rooms, the parlor and the kitchen of our house are large and beautiful. (8) Now you (familiar form plural) are hungry and thirsty, but they are only sleepy. (9) When they are hungry they eat many things, and when they are thirsty they drink much water. (10) When we feel like singing, we sing popular songs and operatic pieces (*trozos de ópera*). (11) If I am sleepy and I can sleep, I sleep. (12) When you (polite form plural) are hungry, you eat what they (fem.) give you, but when you are thirsty you drink what the merchant imports from Asia or from Africa.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *cerrar*, model 1, page 367; *dormir*, model 21, page 372; *soñar* in model 5, page 367, and the past participle of *abrir*, model 56, page 387.

2. Notice that expressions like *tener hambre*, etc., are represented in English by the verb *to be*, plus an *adjective*, and in Spanish by the equivalent of the verb *to have*, plus a *noun*. Bear in mind that the literal translation of *tener ganas de* is *to have wishes of*, and that *pieza de baño* is used in Argentina for *bathroom*.

3. In sentence 2, *Theme*, *por* must be rendered in English by *through*.

4. In sentence 8, *Theme*, the adjective *rosa*, *pink*, agrees with the implied word *color*; and not with *paredes*. In the same sentence *tiene el color del roble* which literally means *has the color of the oak*, may be translated by *has the color of oak*.

5. *Trozos de ópera*, in sentence 26, *Theme*, must be rendered by *operatic* pieces or selections. In the same sentence *e*, instead of *y*, precedes *importador* for euphonic reasons.

6. Notice that *Asia* and *África* are preceded by the definite article in sentence 29, *Theme*.

LECCIÓN DIECINUEVE—LESSON NINETEEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a crédito , on credit.	Irlanda , Ireland.
a menudo , often.	Italia , Italy.
al contado , for cash.	Japón , <i>m.</i> , Japan.
Alemania , Germany.	lavarse , to wash oneself.
artículos de tocador , toilet articles.	levantarse , to get up.
asignada , assigned.	limpia , clean, cleanly.
Australia , Australia.	limpiar , to clean.
Bélgica , Belgium.	no hace ni frío ni calor , it is neither cold nor warm.
caliente , hot, warm.	no tengo ni frío ni calor , I am neither cold nor warm.
Canadá , <i>m.</i> , Canada.	Noruega , Norway.
cepillo de dientes , tooth-brush.	nunca , never.
cinematógrafo , moving pictures (also cine).	pasta dentífrica , tooth-paste.
China , China.	peinarse , to comb one's hair.
Dinamarca , Denmark.	peine , <i>m.</i> , comb.
en seguida de , immediately after.	perfumado , perfumed.
Escocia , Scotland.	polvos de dientes , tooth-powder (polvos, powder; polvo, dust).
feliz , happy.	Portugal , <i>m.</i> , Portugal.
fría , cold.	rara vez , seldom, rarely.
Grecia , Greece.	Rusia , Russia.
hace buen tiempo , it is good weather.	saber , <i>irr.</i> , to know.
hace calor , it is warm.	secarse , to dry oneself.
hace frío , it is cold.	Suecia , Sweden.
hace mal tiempo , it is bad weather.	Suiza , Switzerland.
hace sol , it is sunny.	teatro , theatre.
hace un día muy bueno , it is a very fine day.	temperatura , temperature.
hace viento , it is windy.	tener miedo , to be afraid.
hirviendo , boiling hot.	tengo calor , I am warm.
Holanda , Holland.	tengo frío , I am cold.
	tibia , tepid, lukewarm.
	toalla , towel.
	Turquía , Turkey.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo me limpio los dientes, todos los días, en seguida de levantarme. (2) Yo me limpio los dientes con un cepillo de dientes, con polvos de dientes o pasta dentífrica, y con agua

caliente, fría o tibia. (3) También (yo) me lavo, todos los días, en seguida de levantarme, con agua caliente, fría o tibia. (4) Nunca (yo) me lavo con agua hirviendo. (5) Después de lavarme con agua de esta o de la otra temperatura y con jabón perfumado, (yo) me seco con una toalla muy limpia. (6) Después de secarme con una toalla muy limpia, (yo) me peino. (7) (Yo) me peino con el peine.

(8) También se peina con el peine una señorita que ha estado en Irlanda, en Escocia, en Australia y en el Canadá. (9) También ha estado esta misma señorita en Rusia, en Italia, en Grecia, en Turquía, en Alemania, en Portugal, en Bélgica, en Holanda, en Suiza, en Dinamarca, en Suecia, en Noruega, en China y en el Japón.

(10) Esta señorita compra los peines que (ella) necesita, y otros artículos de tocador, en una de las tiendas de la ciudad en que (yo) vivo. (11) En estas tiendas no venden a crédito. (12) En estas tiendas venden al contado. (13) Mi madre va a estas tiendas muy a menudo.

(14) Yo voy a menudo al teatro. (15) También (yo) voy a menudo al cinematógrafo. (16) A la ópera (yo) voy de cuando en cuando. (17) Yo voy a la ópera en el invierno.

(18) En el invierno hace, generalmente, frío. (19) Cuando hace mucho frío, (yo) tengo frío. (20) En el verano hace calor. (21) Cuando hace mucho calor, (yo) tengo calor. (22) En la primavera y en el otoño hace, generalmente, buen tiempo. (23) Muy rara vez hace mal tiempo en estas estaciones. (24) Cuando hace buen tiempo, (yo) no tengo ni frío ni calor.

(25) Yo no tengo hoy ni frío ni calor, porque hoy no hace ni frío ni calor. (26) Hoy hace un día muy bueno porque hace sol y no hace viento. (27) Hoy (yo) no tengo miedo de hablar español, porque (yo) sé muy bien el vocabulario de la lección asignada. (28) Por esta razón, (yo) tengo el corazón lleno de alegría y soy feliz.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Se limpia usted los dientes, todos los días, en seguida de levantarse? (2) ¿Con qué se limpia usted los dientes?

(3) ¿Se lava usted también, todos los días, con agua caliente, fría o tibia en seguida de levantarse? (4) ¿Se lava usted alguna vez con agua hirviendo? (5) ¿Se seca usted con una toalla muy limpia después de lavarse con agua de esta o de la otra temperatura y con jabón perfumado? (6) ¿Qué hace usted después de secarse con una toalla muy limpia? (7) ¿Con qué se peina usted? (8) ¿Se peina también, con el peine, una señorita que ha estado en Irlanda, en Escocia, en Australia y en el Canadá? (9) ¿En qué otras partes del mundo ha estado también esta señorita? (10) ¿Dónde compra esta señorita los peines que (ella) necesita, y otros artículos de tocador? (11) ¿Venden en estas tiendas a crédito? (12) ¿Venden al contado en estas tiendas? (13) ¿Va su señora madre, muy a menudo, a estas tiendas? (14) ¿Va usted a menudo al teatro? (15) ¿Va usted también, a menudo, al cinematógrafo? (16) ¿Cuándo va usted a la ópera? (17) ¿Va usted a la ópera en el invierno? (18) ¿Hace frío en el invierno? (19) ¿Tiene usted frío cuando hace mucho frío? (20) ¿Hace calor en el verano? (21) ¿Tiene usted calor cuando hace mucho calor? (22) ¿Hace, generalmente, buen tiempo en la primavera y en el otoño? (23) ¿Cuándo hace mal tiempo en estas estaciones? (24) ¿Tiene usted frío o tiene (usted) calor cuando hace buen tiempo? (25) ¿Por qué no tiene usted hoy ni frío ni calor? (26) ¿Por qué hace hoy un día muy bueno? (27) ¿Por qué no tiene usted miedo de hablar hoy español? (28) ¿Tiene usted el corazón lleno de alegría y es usted feliz por esta razón?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) After getting up I wash myself with cold or hot water. (2) The storekeeper who sells for cash and on credit, also washes himself with cold or hot water after getting up. (3) The storekeeper's daughter who washes herself with lukewarm water and with perfumed soap, in the morning, cleans her teeth with a toothbrush and with toothpowder or toothpaste. (4) This young lady says: "You (familiar form singular) comb your hair with the comb that I sold you last week."

(5) In the stores which are in the city where we live, you (familiar form plural) buy the toilet articles that she needs. (6) I often go to the moving pictures, but to the opera I only go now and then. (7) In the winter it is generally cold, but in the summer it is generally warm. (8) It is generally fine weather in the spring and in the fall. (9) When it is fine weather we are neither hot nor cold. (10) To-day it is neither cold nor warm. (11) Your heart is full of joy, because you (polite form sing.) are happy. (12) You (polite form sing.) are happy because you are not afraid of speaking Spanish with the gentleman who has been in Ireland, Canada, Australia, Scotland, Belgium and Greece.

NOTES

1. Study under *Reflexive Verbs* everything given as far as the notes. See the conjugation of the present indicative of *lavarse*, page 356. Study the irregularities in the present indicative of *saber*, model 42, page 382.
2. Study rule 1, under *Impersonal Use of Hacer*, page 315.
3. *Tener miedo*, *tengo calor*, and *tengo frío* are expressions which are rendered in English by the verb *to be* plus an *adjective*.
4. The words *mosca* and *mosquito* belong to the epicene gender. See what is given under *The Epicene Gender*, page 229.
5. Sentence 7, *Theme*, *Yo me peino con el peine*, is translated into English so: *I comb my hair with a comb*.

LECCIÓN VEINTE—LESSON TWENTY

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a la perfección , perfectly, to perfection.	guitarra , guitar.
aburrirse , to be (or get) bored.	harpa , harp (also arpa).
aires populares , popular airs (aire, <i>m.</i> , air).	horriblemente , horribly.
amapola , poppy.	instrumento , instrument.
anoche , last night.	jardín , <i>m.</i> , garden.
antiguo , old, ancient.	mal , badly (as a noun, mal is damage, harm, evil).
artística , artistic.	margarita , daisy.
así, así , so, so.	música , music.
azucena , white lily.	musical , musical.
bailar , to dance.	músico , musician.
banda municipal , municipal band.	nadie , nobody.
bandolín , <i>m.</i> , mandolin.	niños , children.
banjo , banjo.	nomeolvides , <i>f.</i> , forget-me-not.
bombo y platillos , bass-drum and cymbals.	oír , <i>irr.</i> , to hear.
caballo , horse.	órgano , organ.
cansada , tired.	orquesta , orchestra.
centro , center.	país , <i>m.</i> , country, nation.
clavel , <i>m.</i> , carnation.	palacio , palace.
compañía , company.	pensamiento , pansy (also, thought).
concierto , concert.	persona mayor , grown-up person.
concurrencia , gathering.	perro , dog.
conocido , acquaintance.	piano , piano.
corneta , cornet.	plaza , square, plaza.
del mismo modo , in the same way.	predilecto , favorite.
delicia , delight.	principal , principal, main.
director , <i>m.</i> , director, principal of a school.	profesor , <i>m.</i> , professor (<i>profesora</i> , <i>f.</i>)
divertirse , <i>irr.</i> , to amuse oneself.	retirarse , to retire.
divinamente , divinely, heavenly, admirably, very well.	saxófono , saxophone.
estatua de mármol , marble statue.	sufrir , to suffer.
extranjero , foreigner, alien, abroad.	tocar , to play (musical instruments), to touch.
famosa , famous.	todo el mundo , everybody (lit. all the world).
flauta , flute.	trombón , <i>m.</i> , trombone.
gato , cat.	tulipán , <i>m.</i> , tulip.
	violeta , violet (as a color, it is masc.).
	violín , <i>m.</i> , violin.
	violoncelo , cello.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un conocido mío que habla siete idiomas a la perfección vive en un palacio muy hermoso. (2) Este palacio está en la plaza en que la banda municipal toca los jueves y los domingos. (3) En la plaza hay un jardín con flores, muchas estatuas de mármol blanco, y fuentes muy artísticas. (4) En el palacio hay mucha gente. (5) También hay en el palacio muchos gatos, muchos perros, y muchos caballos. (6) En el jardín de la plaza hay rosas, claveles, violetas, margaritas, azucenas, pensamientos tulipanes, amapolas y nomeolvides.

(7) Yo no me olvido de ir a la plaza los días en que la banda municipal toca. (8) Esta banda municipal, que en la plaza toca los jueves y los domingos, es la delicia de los niños y de las personas mayores. (9) Todo el mundo se divierte y nadie se aburre en la plaza. (10) Casi todo el mundo canta o baila en la plaza. (11) Los aires populares son los predilectos de la concurrencia. (12) La concurrencia se retira de la plaza, los jueves y los domingos, a las once de la noche, cansada pero feliz.

(13) Anoche (yo) me retiré de la plaza a las once y cuarto en compañía de un amigo que es un gran músico. (14) Este amigo, que es un gran músico, toca, entre otros, estos instrumentos musicales: el piano, la flauta, el órgano, la corneta, el harpa, el saxófono, el trombón, el bombo y los platillos, el violín, el violoncelo, el bandolín, el banjo y la guitarra.

(15) Yo toco la guitarra así, así. (16) Mi tío toca el piano muy mal. (17) Mi prima toca el piano divinamente. (18) Cuando mi prima toca el piano (yo) nunca sufro. (19) Cuando mi tío toca el piano (yo) sufro horribilmente.

(20) Cuando este pariente mío toca el piano, también sufre del mismo modo, o más que yo, un profesor de música. (21) Este profesor de música es un antiguo amigo de la familia. (22) Este antiguo amigo de la familia es director de una orquesta muy famosa. (23) Esta orquesta famosa da conciertos en los principales centros musicales del país y del extranjero.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Dónde vive un conocido suyo que habla siete idiomas a la perfección? (2) ¿Está este palacio en la plaza en que la banda municipal toca los jueves y los domingos? (3) ¿Hay en la plaza un jardín con flores, muchas estatuas de mármol blanco, y fuentes muy artísticas? (4) ¿Hay en el palacio mucha gente? (5) ¿Hay también, en el palacio, muchos gatos, muchos perros, y muchos caballos? (6) ¿Qué flores hay en el jardín de la plaza? (7) ¿Se olvida usted de ir a la plaza los días en que la banda municipal toca? (8) ¿Es la delicia de los niños y de las personas mayores esta banda municipal que en la plaza toca los jueves y los domingos? (9) ¿Quién se divierte y quién se aburre en la plaza? (10) ¿Canta o baila casi todo el mundo en la plaza? (11) ¿Son los aires populares los predilectos de la concurrencia? (12) ¿A qué hora se retira la concurrencia de la plaza? (13) ¿Se retira la concurrencia de la plaza cansada pero feliz? (14) ¿A qué hora se retiró usted, anoche, de la plaza, en compañía de un amigo suyo que es un gran músico? (15) ¿Qué instrumentos musicales toca este amigo suyo que es un gran músico? (16) ¿Cómo toca usted la guitarra? (17) ¿Cómo toca el piano su tío? (18) ¿Cómo toca el piano su prima? (19) ¿Sufre usted cuando su prima toca el piano? (20) ¿Sufre usted cuando su tío toca el piano? (21) ¿Quién sufre del mismo modo, o más que usted, cuando su tío toca el piano? (22) ¿Es este profesor de música un antiguo amigo de la familia? (23) ¿Es este antiguo amigo de la familia director de una orquesta muy famosa? (24) ¿Dónde da conciertos esta orquesta famosa?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Three friends of mine, who speak several languages to perfection, live in a beautiful palace. (2) These friends, who live in the beautiful palace, amuse themselves much when the municipal band plays in the square. (3) In the square, where the municipal band plays, there are roses, pansies, daisies, violets, tulips and carnations. (4) Nobody goes to

the square to hear the music with more pleasure than I. (5) The municipal band is the delight of the gathering, and especially of all the members of my family. (6) My family retires from the square at about eleven o'clock. (7) Last night I retired from the square at the same time that you retired. (8) You (familiar form singular) are a great musician because you play several instruments very well. (9) An acquaintance of mine plays fairly well the organ, the flute, the harp, the banjo and the violin. (10) Our uncle plays the piano very badly, and on this account I suffer more than I can say when he plays. (11) A man who has many musical instruments amuses himself much when he hears a good musician play the saxophone. (12) The director of a famous orchestra and I suffered much yesterday when this man played the violin.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities which the following verbs have in the present indicative: *divertirse* in model 18, page 371; *oír*, model 38, page 381.

2. *Yo no me olvido de ir*, of sentence 7, *Theme*, is rendered into English by *I do not forget to go*.

3. Notice in sentence 3, that the equivalent of the English verb *to retire* is used reflexively.

4. *Del extranjero*, sentence 23, must be rendered by (*of*) *abroad*.

5. The *of* of *three friends of mine*, sentence 1, *English Exercise*, and of *an acquaintance of mine*, sentence 9, is not translated in Spanish.

LECCIÓN VEINTIUNA—LESSON TWENTY-ONE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abogado , lawyer.	institución docente , <i>f.</i> , institution of learning.
alegre , gay, lighthearted, cheerful.	inteligente , intelligent.
amarillo , yellow.	intensamente , intensely.
amor , <i>m.</i> , love.	íntimo , intimate, private (when referring to life).
arquitecto , architect.	investigación , <i>f.</i> , research work, investigation.
arquitectura , architecture.	laboratorio , laboratory.
azul , blue.	leer , to read (<i>leyendo</i> , reading).
banquero , banker.	leyes , <i>f.</i> , laws, law.
canela , cinnamon color (as a noun it is cinnamon).	maestro , teacher.
carrera , career, course of studies.	marino , seaman, sailor.
celos , jealousy (in the singular it means zeal, ardor, fervor).	medicina , medicine.
científica , scientific.	médico , physician, doctor.
civilizado , civilized.	mejor , better.
colorado , red (also <i>rojo</i>).	miles , thousands.
contabilidad , <i>f.</i> , accounting.	militar , <i>m.</i> , soldier, military man.
cultura , culture.	morado , purple.
dentista , <i>m., f.</i> , dentist.	moreno , brown (brunette when referring to a dark-complexioned person) also <i>pardo</i> and <i>castaño</i> .
ejercer , to practise (a profession).	naturalmente , naturally.
el que , the one who, he who, (<i>la que</i> , the one who, she who).	odio , hatred.
envidia , envy.	pedagogía , pedagogy (art of teaching).
escribir , <i>irr.</i> , to write.	perito mercantil , expert accountant.
escuela , school.	profesión , <i>f.</i> , profession.
esperanza , hope.	progreso , progress.
estudiante , <i>m., f.</i> , student.	respectiva , respective.
estudio , study (noun).	sabio , learned man, wise man, wise.
éxito , success.	su , his, her, your, their, etc.
experimento , experiment, test.	tener celos , to be jealous.
farmacéutico , pharmacist, druggist (also <i>boticario</i>).	tener envidia , to be envious.
gris , gray.	tener esperanza , to be hopeful.
ideales , <i>m.</i> , ideals.	trabajar , to work.
importantísima , most important.	verde , green.
ingeniería , engineering.	veterinario , veterinarian, horse doctor.
ingeniero , engineer.	visitar , to visit.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo voy a la escuela todos los días. (2) Yo estudio mucho en la escuela. (3) Yo estudio para aprender. (4) Yo aprendo para saber. (5) Yo soy estudiante. (6) Yo tengo muchos amigos estudiantes.

(7) Un amigo mío estudia medicina, otro ingeniería, otro leyes, otro pedagogía, otro arquitectura, y otro contabilidad.

(8) Naturalmente, todos mis amigos terminarán sus respectivos estudios con mucho éxito, y, por consiguiente, el más íntimo que tengo será médico, el más inteligente será ingeniero, el que mejor toca el piano será abogado, el que canta mejor será maestro, el más alegre será arquitecto, y el más elegante será perito mercantil.

(9) La institución docente, donde todos estos amigos míos estudian, es visitada por farmacéuticos, dentistas, médicos y veterinarios que ejercen su profesión. (10) También es visitada esta institución docente por banqueros, marinos, comerciantes y militares, y por miles de otras personas de casi todas las partes del mundo civilizado.

(11) En esta institución docente, en este centro de cultura y de progreso, algunos sabios hacen investigaciones científicas importantísimas. (12) Estos sabios pasan muchas horas, todos los días, escribiendo, leyendo, o haciendo experimentos en los laboratorios de esta institución. (13) Estos sabios trabajan intensamente. (14) Estos sabios no tienen odio en el corazón. (15) Tampoco tienen estos sabios envidia. (16) Tampoco tienen (ellos) celos. (17) Estos sabios solo tienen ideales, amor y esperanza.

(18) Yo tengo la esperanza de aprender, pronto y bien, los nombres de estos colores: azul, colorado, gris, amarillo, moreno, canela, morado, violeta y verde.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Va usted a la escuela todos los días? (2) ¿Estudia usted mucho en la escuela? (3) ¿Estudia usted para aprender? (4) ¿Para qué aprende usted? (5) ¿Es usted estudiante? (6) ¿Tiene usted muchos amigos estudiantes? (7)

¿Qué estudian los amigos de usted? (8) ¿Cómo terminarán todos los amigos de usted sus respectivos estudios? (9) ¿Qué será el amigo más íntimo que usted tiene? (10) ¿Qué será el amigo más inteligente que usted tiene? (11) ¿Qué será el amigo que mejor toca el piano? (12) ¿Qué será el amigo que canta mejor? (13) ¿Qué será el amigo más alegre que usted tiene? (14) ¿Qué será el amigo más elegante que usted tiene? (15) ¿Es visitada la institución docente, donde todos esos amigos de usted estudian, por farmacéuticos, dentistas, médicos y veterinarios que ejercen su profesión? (16) ¿Es visitada también, esta institución docente, por banqueros, marinos, comerciantes y militares? (17) ¿Es visitada también, esta institución docente, por miles de personas de casi todas las partes del mundo civilizado? (18) ¿Qué hacen algunos sabios en este centro de cultura y de progreso? (19) ¿Pasan estos sabios muchas horas escribiendo, leyendo o haciendo experimentos en los laboratorios de esta institución? (20) ¿Trabajan estos sabios intensamente? (21) ¿Tienen estos sabios odio en el corazón? (22) ¿Tienen estos sabios envidia? (23) ¿Tienen ellos celos? (24) ¿Qué tienen estos sabios? (25) ¿Cuáles son los nombres de los colores que usted tiene la esperanza de aprender pronto y bien?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) You (polite form plural) go to school every day because you want to learn. (2) You (polite form plural) have many student friends. (3) Some of your (pol. form pl.) friends are studying engineering and others are studying medicine, but all the friends that they have are studying architecture. (4) They often say: "The most intimate friend that we have will be an architect, the most elegant one will be a teacher, and the most light-hearted one will be a lawyer." (5) They also say: "Many physicians, many dentists, many bankers, many merchants and many sailors (*marinos* or *marineros*) know (*saben*) the Spanish language well. (6) In the institution of learning where we study, there are more than ten

thousand students. (7) Men who (*que*) have much love and much hope in their hearts do not generally know what (*lo que*) envy is. (8) These are the names of the colors that we know because we have studied them: yellow, green, blue, gray and violet. (9) Several men and several women, whom (*a quienes*) we know (*conocemos*) well, have beautiful ideals. (10) Our success is almost as great as the success of a professor who (*que*) works very intensely in the laboratories of the institution where we study. (11) The veterinarian who (*que*) practises his profession visits, twice a day, (*dos veces al día*) the horses that he has in his hospital. (12) We did not visit our aunt yesterday, but we shall visit her to-day, next week, next month or next year."

NOTES

1. See the past participle of *escribir*, model 57, page 387, and notice the orthographic changes which occur in *leer*, in model 25a, page 374.

2. Study what is under *The Relative Superlative*, page 253, and everything given under *How to Form the Relative Superlative of Adjectives*, also on page 253.

3. Study everything given under the *Passive Voice*, and follow instructions given in the note, page 310.

4. Study what is given under *The Absolute Superlative*, page 255, and rule 2 under the heading *Formation of the Absolute Superlative of Adjectives*, also on page 255.

5. In line 5 and 6, *Theme*, *el que mejor toca el piano*, and *el que canta mejor*, must be respectively rendered into English by *the one who plays the piano best* and *the one who sings best*, because adverbs form their relative superlatives just the same as adjectives.

6. In sentence 14, *Theme*, *en el corazón* must be rendered in English by *in their hearts*.

7. In sentence 15, *Theme*, *Tampoco tienen estos sabios envidia* must be rendered into English by *Neither are these wise men envious*; in sentence 16, *Tampoco tienen (ellos) celos* must be rendered by *Neither are they jealous*, and in sentence 18, *Yo tengo la esperanza de aprender*, must be rendered by *I am hopeful of learning*.

8. Do not translate the indefinite article before *architect*, *teacher* and *lawyer*, nor the word *one*, in sentence 4, of the *English Exercise*.

9. In sentence 12, *English Exercise*, the preposition *a* must precede *nuestra tía*, *our aunt*, because the object of the verb is a person, and the definite article *el* must precede the equivalent of *next*, the three times that this word is used in the last part of the sentence.

LECCIÓN VEINTIDÓS—LESSON TWENTY-TWO

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

admirador , <i>m.</i> , admirer.	holandés , <i>m.</i> , Hollander.
admirados , admired.	hondureño , Honduran.
alemán , <i>m.</i> , German (both language and nationality).	independencia , independence.
americano , American.	irlandés , <i>m.</i> , Irish, Irishman.
argentino , Argentinian.	italiano , Italian (for both language and nationality).
australiano , Australian.	japonés , <i>m.</i> , Japanese (for both language and nationality).
belga , Belgian.	libertad , <i>f.</i> , liberty.
boliviano , Bolivian.	listo , smart, clever, ready.
brasileño , Brazilian.	mejicano , Mexican (Mexicans say <i>mexicano</i>).
canadiense , <i>m.</i> , Canadian.	nicaragüense , <i>m.</i> , Nicaraguan.
célebre , celebrated, famous.	noruego , Norwegian.
coleccionista , collector.	ocasión , <i>f.</i> , occasion.
colombiano , Colombian.	pálido , pale.
contrario , contrary (lo contrario, the contrary).	panameño , Panaman, Panamanian.
coral , <i>m.</i> , coral.	paraguayo , Paraguayan.
costarricense , <i>m.</i> , Costa Rican.	perla , pearl.
creer , to believe.	peruano , Peruvian.
cubano , Cuban.	portorriqueño , Porto Rican (Porto Ricans say <i>puertorriqueño</i>).
chileno , Chilean.	portugués , <i>m.</i> , Portuguese (for both language and nationality).
chino , Chinaman, Chinese.	rubí , <i>m.</i> , ruby.
delgado , thin, slender, slim.	ruso , Russian (for both language and nationality).
dientes de perlas , pearly teeth (lit. of pearls).	salud , <i>f.</i> , health.
dinamarqués , <i>m.</i> , Dane.	salvadoreño , Salvadorian.
dominicano , Dominican.	satisfacción , <i>f.</i> , satisfaction.
ecuatoriano , Ecuadorian.	sello de correo , postage stamp (also <i>estampilla</i>).
en cambio , on the other hand.	sueco , Swede, Swedish.
enfermo , ill, sick.	suizo , Swiss.
escocés , <i>m.</i> , Scotch.	tener razón , to be right (lit. to have reason).
expresivo , expressive.	
filipino , Filipino.	
fotografía , photograph, picture, photography.	
francés , <i>m.</i> , French (for both language and nationality).	
griego , Greek (for both language and nationality).	
guatemalteco , Guatemalan.	

tonto, foolish, stupid.

triste, sad.

uruguayo, Uruguayan.

venezolano, Venezuelan.

verdaderamente, truly.

vida, life.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un amigo mío dice, a menudo, que la cosa más importante de la vida es la salud. (2) La segunda cosa más importante de la vida, según este amigo, es la libertad. (3) Este amigo dice que sólo en algunas ocasiones es el dinero verdaderamente importante. (4) El dinero es verdaderamente importante, según este amigo, cuando uno lo necesita y no lo tiene.

(5) Yo creo que mi amigo tiene razón en decir lo que (él) dice. (6) Otras personas creen lo contrario. (7) Por ejemplo: un hombre que es bajo, tonto y grueso, no cree lo que mi amigo dice. (8) En cambio, otro hombre que es delgado, alto y listo, cree lo que mi amigo dice. (9) Yo sé que un caballero rico, que es muy pobre porque está pálido, triste y enfermo, cree lo que mi amigo dice. (10) También (yo) sé que un hombre pobre, que es muy rico porque tiene buen color, salud, alegría, independencia y satisfacción, cree lo que mi amigo dice.

(11) Una señorita que es coleccionista de sellos de correo y de fotografías de hombres y mujeres célebres, también cree, como mi amigo, que la salud es la cosa más importante de la vida. (12) Esta señorita tiene los ojos negros, grandes y expresivos, los labios del color de los rubíes, y los dientes de perlas.

(13) Esta señorita es admirada por muchos americanos, ingleses, franceses, españoles, italianos, rusos y japoneses. (14) También es admirada esta señorita por muchos argentinos, chilenos, cubanos, ecuatorianos, bolivianos, peruanos, paraguayos, panameños, colombianos y venezolanos, y por muchos portorriqueños, hondureños, salvadoreños, guatemaltecos, filipinos, costarricenses, nicaragüenses, uruguayos, dominicanos y mejicanos. (15) También es admirada esta señorita por muchos irlandeses, escoceses, canadienses, australianos, belgas, suizos, holandeses y dinamarqueses, y por muchos griegos, suecos, noruegos, alemanes, brasileños, portugueses y chinos.

(16) Todos los admiradores de esta señorita creen, como mi amigo, que la vida sin salud es lo mismo que un jardín sin flores.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué dice, a menudo, un amigo suyo? (2) ¿Cuál es la cosa más importante de la vida según este amigo suyo? (3) ¿Qué dice este amigo sobre el dinero? (4) ¿Es el dinero verdaderamente importante cuando uno lo necesita y no lo tiene? (5) ¿Cree usted que su amigo tiene razón en decir lo que dice? (6) ¿Creen otras personas lo contrario? (7) ¿Cree un hombre que es bajo, tonto y grueso lo que su amigo dice? (8) ¿Qué cree, en cambio, otro hombre que es delgado, alto y listo? (9) ¿Sabe usted que un caballero rico, que es muy pobre porque está pálido, triste y enfermo, cree lo que su amigo dice? (10) Sabe usted también que un hombre pobre, que es muy rico porque tiene buen color, salud, alegría, independencia y satisfacción, cree lo que su amigo dice? (11) ¿Qué cree una señorita que es coleccionista de sellos de correo y de fotografías de hombres y mujeres célebres? (12) ¿Tiene esta señorita los ojos negros, grandes y expresivos, los labios del color de los rubíes, y los dientes de perlas? (13) ¿Es admirada esta señorita por muchos americanos, ingleses, franceses, españoles, italianos, rusos y japoneses? (14) ¿Es también admirada esta señorita por muchos argentinos, chilenos, cubanos y ecuatorianos? (15) ¿Es también admirada esta señorita por muchos bolivianos, peruanos, paraguayos, panameños, colombianos y venezolanos? (16) ¿Es también admirada esta señorita por muchos portorriqueños, hondureños, salvadoreños, guatemaltecos y filipinos? (17) ¿Es también admirada esta señorita por muchos costarricenses, nicaragüenses, uruguayos, dominicanos y mejicanos? (18) ¿Admiran muchos irlandeses, escoceses, canadienses, australianos, belgas, suizos, holandeses y dinamarqueses a esta señorita? (19) ¿Es también admirada esta señorita por muchos griegos, suecos, noruegos, alemanes, brasileños, portugueses y chinos? (20) ¿Creen todos los admiradores de esta

señorita que la vida sin salud es lo mismo que un jardín sin flores?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Health is the most important thing in (*de la*) life according to a friend of ours. (2) Liberty, according to this same friend, is much more important than money. (3) We believe what our friend says, but a man who does not know (*sabe*) how (do not translate *how*) to conjugate the past indicative of the Spanish verbs, believes the opposite. (4) Two young ladies, who have many gold watches and many pearls, say that our friend is right in saying what he says. (5) These same young ladies often say that life without health is the same as a garden without flowers. (6) Some Cubans, some Porto Ricans and some Dominicans, often speak Spanish with these intelligent young ladies. (7) These young ladies often say that when their friend (fem.) is ill she never wants to go to the theatre. (8) These same persons say that joy, health, independence and satisfaction are better things than millions. (9) These same persons also say that you (polite form plural) do not know what you are saying when you say that the Brazilians do not speak Portuguese. (10) We say that the Russians are studying the following languages: Italian, French, English and Spanish. (11) We also say that we have Argentinian, Colombian, Peruvian, Chilean, Nicaraguan and Ecuadorian friends. (12) We also say that those men who are thin and smart are studying Japanese and Chinese with a Costa Rican gentleman.

NOTES

1. See the orthographical changes which *creer*, model 25a, page 374, undergoes.

2. In sentence 12, *Theme*, the respective English equivalents of *los labios del color de los rubíes*, and *los dientes de perlas* are *ruby lips* and *pearly teeth*. See under *Cases where the ending ES is added*, page 232, why the plural of *rubí* is *rubíes*.

3. *Health* in sentence 1, *English Exercise*; *liberty* in sentence 2; *life* in sentence 5, and *joy*, *health*, *independence*, *satisfaction* and *millions* in sentence 8, must be preceded by the definite article when translated into Spanish.

LECCIÓN VEINTITRÉS—LESSON TWENTY-THREE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a pie , on foot, afoot.	embudo , funnel.
acera , sidewalk.	escoba , broom.
albañil , <i>m.</i> , mason, brick-layer.	espejo de cuerpo entero , full-length mirror.
alfombra , carpet.	establo , stable (also <i>caballeriza</i> and <i>cuadra</i>).
alrededores , <i>m.</i> , surroundings, environs (<i>alrededor</i> , around).	ferretería , hardware store.
amueblar , to furnish.	florero , flower vase.
automóvil , <i>m.</i> , automobile.	fonógrafo , talking machine, phonograph.
avenida , avenue.	garage , <i>m.</i> , garage.
bahía , bay.	iglesia , church.
batidor de huevos , egg-beater.	intención , <i>f.</i> , intention.
biblioteca , library.	lago , lake.
biombo , screen (also <i>mampara</i>).	lavabo , washstand.
cacerola , stewpan, saucepan.	librería , bookstore.
cafetera , coffeepot.	mar , <i>m., f.</i> , sea.
canapé , <i>m.</i> , couch (also <i>diván</i>).	mecedora , rocking-chair.
carbón , <i>m.</i> , coal.	montaña , mountain.
carbonería , coal yard.	mueble , <i>m.</i> , piece of furniture.
carbonero , coal man, coal dealer.	mueblería , furniture store.
carpintero , carpenter.	museo , museum.
casa de comercio , business house (lit. house of commerce).	norte, sur, este y oeste , north, south, east and west.
catedral , <i>f.</i> , cathedral.	parque , <i>m.</i> , park.
cocina económica , kitchen range.	percha , hat (or clothes) rack.
colador , <i>m.</i> , strainer.	pozal , <i>m.</i> , pail (<i>balde</i> in Argentina).
colegio , college.	puchero , cooking pot.
constantemente , constantly.	puntos cardinales , points of the compass.
cortina de encaje , lace curtain.	reloj de pared , <i>m.</i> , clock, wall clock (lit. watch or clock of wall).
crystalino , crystalline, crystal-like.	río , river.
desde , from, since.	sartén , <i>f.</i> , frying-pan.
disco fonográfico , phonographic record.	señalar , to point out.
efectos de escritorio , stationery.	silla , chair.
	sillón , <i>m.</i> , armchair.
	sofá , <i>m.</i> , sofa.
	tetera , teapot.

tienda de comestibles , grocery store (almacén in some places of Spanish America; tienda de ultramarinos in Spain).	tren subterráneo , subway train.
tirabuzón , <i>m.</i> , corkscrew.	universidad , <i>f.</i> , university.
torre , <i>f.</i> , tower.	utensilios de cocina , <i>m.</i> , kitchen utensils.
transparente , (noun) windowshade; transparent, <i>adj.</i>	valle , <i>m.</i> , valley.
	veleta , weather-cock or vane, a very fickle person.
	ver , <i>irr.</i> , to see.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Desde la parte más alta de la torre de la iglesia de la ciudad en que (yo) vivo, (yo) veo la ciudad y sus alrededores, y también la veleta que señala constantemente los cuatro puntos cardinales.

(2) Al norte (yo) veo el parque, la tienda de comestibles en que mi familia compra muchas cosas, la carbonería en que el carbonero vende carbón, y la universidad en que mi primo estudia. (3) Al sur (yo) veo la estación del tren subterráneo y la avenida principal de la ciudad con sus casas de comercio, anchas aceras y árboles hermosos. (4) Al este (yo) veo el colegio, la biblioteca, el museo, la catedral, y la librería donde la cuñada del carpintero vende libros y efectos de escritorio. (5) Al oeste (yo) veo el valle, el mar, el río, la bahía, la alta montaña y los lagos cristalinos.

(6) Yo no tengo la intención de ir hoy a los lagos cristalinos. (7) Hoy (yo) tengo la intención de ir a la ferretería del hermano del albañil, y a la mejor mueblería de la ciudad. (8) A estas casas de comercio (yo) iré a comprar algunos utensilios de cocina, y los muebles que necesito para amueblar bien mi casa nueva. (9) Iré a pie. (10) No iré en mi automóvil.

(11) En la ferretería (yo) compraré una sartén, tres pucheros, cuatro cacerolas, una cocina económica, una cafetera, una tetera, un batidor de huevos, un colador, un embudo, un pozal, un tirabuzón, y una escoba. (12) En la mueblería (yo) compraré un sofá, un canapé, ocho sillas, dos sillones, una mecedora, un fonógrafo, varios discos fonográficos, y un espejo de cuerpo entero. (13) También (yo) compraré en la mueblería, para mi casa nueva, un reloj de pared, cinco estatuas

de mármol, catorce transparentes, seis cortinas de encaje y dos floreros, y también perchas, biombos, alfombras y lavabos.

(14) Mi casa nueva tiene veinticinco habitaciones. (15) También tiene jardín, establo y garage.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué ve usted desde la parte más alta de la torre de la iglesia de la ciudad en que usted vive? (2) ¿Ve usted al norte el parque, la tienda de comestibles en que su familia compra muchas cosas, la carbonería en que el carbonero vende carbón, y la universidad en que su primo estudia? (3) ¿Qué ve usted al sur desde la parte más alta de la torre de la iglesia? (4) ¿Ve usted al este el colegio, la biblioteca, el museo y la catedral? (5) ¿Ve usted también, al este, la librería donde la cuñada del carpintero vende libros y efectos de escritorio? (6) ¿Qué ve usted al oeste desde la parte más alta de la torre de la iglesia de la ciudad en que (usted) vive? (7) ¿Tiene usted la intención de ir hoy a los lagos cristalinos? (8) ¿Tiene usted la intención de ir hoy a la ferretería del hermano del albañil, y a la mejor mueblería de la ciudad? (9) ¿Irá usted a estas casas de comercio a comprar algunos utensilios de cocina, y los muebles que (usted) necesita para amueblar bien su casa nueva? (10) ¿Irá usted a pie o en su automóvil a estas casas de comercio? (11) ¿Qué utensilios de cocina comprará usted en la ferretería? (12) ¿Comprará usted en la mueblería un sofá, un canapé, ocho sillas, dos sillones y una mecedora? (13) ¿Comprará usted también, en la mueblería, un fonógrafo, varios discos fonográficos y un espejo de cuerpo entero? (14) ¿Comprará usted, en la misma casa de comercio, un reloj de pared y cinco estatuas de mármol? (15) ¿Comprará usted también catorce transparentes? (16) ¿Comprará usted también seis cortinas de encaje y dos floreros? (17) ¿Comprará usted también, en la mueblería, perchas, biombos, alfombras y lavabos? (18) ¿Cuántas habitaciones tiene su casa nueva? (19) ¿Tiene jardín su casa nueva? (20) ¿Tiene también establo y garage su casa nueva?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) From the highest part of the house in which my family lives, we see the city and its surroundings. (2) To the north I see the grocery store where our cook (fem.) generally buys sugar, flour, pepper, mustard, salt and rice. (3) To the south she sees the new school, the college, the university, and the garden of her house. (4) To the east they see the river, the mountains, the valley, and the museum. (5) To the west we see the railroad station where we take the train to (*para*) go to the capital of our nation. (6) We have no intention of going to the capital of our nation this afternoon. (7) This afternoon we have the intention of going to the hardware and furniture stores. (8) In the hardware store we shall buy, for the kitchen, a frying-pan, a coffeepot, a teapot and an egg-beater. (9) In the furniture store we shall buy, for the parlor, a clock, a talking machine, three rocking-chairs, and several marble statues. (10) For the sleeping rooms, you (familiar form sing.) will buy screens, carpets and curtains. (11) For the dining room you (familiar form plural) will buy a table, a crystal pitcher, and two sugar bowls. (12) We shall go to the furniture store in our automobile, but if you (polite form sing.) wish to go to those stores, you will go on foot or in your carriage.

NOTES

1. The literal meaning of *cocina económica* is *kitchen economic*; of *efectos de escritorio*, *effects of writing desk*; of *espejo de cuerpo entero*, *looking glass* or *mirror of body entire*, and of *puntos cardinales*, *points cardinal*.

2. Study the irregularities which *ver* has in the present indicative, model 44, page 383.

3. In sentences 2, 3, 4 and 5, *al norte*, *al sur*, etc., must be respectively rendered, *to the north*, *to the south*, etc.

4. *Yo no tengo la intención de ir*, etc., in sentence 6, *Theme*, must be rendered by *I have no intention of going*, etc.

LECCIÓN VEINTICUATRO—LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

al cuidado de , under the care of (lit. to the care of).	esto salta a la vista , this is self-evident (lit. this jumps to the sight).
alarmar , to alarm.	estornudar , to sneeze.
alimento , food.	excepto , except.
bigote , <i>m.</i> , mustache.	facci3n , <i>f.</i> , feature (of the face).
cataplasma , poultice, cataplasm, a very troublesome person.	farmacia , drug store, pharmacy (also botica).
claramente , clearly.	fiel , faithful.
contigua , adjoining.	frente , <i>f.</i> , forehead.
cucharadilla , teaspoonful (also cucharadita).	fuerte , strong.
cuidado , care.	g3rgara , gargle.
curar , to cure.	gimnasio , gymnasium.
cutis , <i>m.</i> , skin.	gozar , to enjoy.
dar paseos , to take walks (lit. to give walks).	hacer ejercicio , to take exercise (lit. to make exercise).
de prisa , hurriedly, in a hurry.	horrible , horrible.
debido a , due to, owing to.	humor , <i>m.</i> , humor.
demasiado , too much.	indigesti3n , <i>f.</i> , indigestion.
desagradable , disagreeable.	indisposici3n , <i>f.</i> , indisposition, slight disorder in health.
desinfectante , <i>m.</i> , disinfectant.	indispuesto , indisposed.
despacio , slowly.	masticar , to chew, to masticate.
digesti3n , <i>f.</i> , digestion.	mentira , lie.
digna , worthy.	molestar , to trouble, to molest.
 digo la pura verdad , I say the exact truth (lit. the pure truth).	moles to , uncomfortable, annoying.
3nfasis , <i>m.</i> , emphasis.	parche , plaster; patch (on garments, etc.).
enfermera , nurse.	pensar , <i>irr.</i> , to think.
entonces , then, afterwards.	p3ldora , pill.
esencial , essential.	¡qu3 desagradable! , how disagreeable!
espaciosa , spacious, high (speaking of foreheads).	¡qu3 triste! , how sad!
estar de buen humor , to be in good humor (lit. to be of good humor).	quejarse , to complain.
estar resfriado , to have a cold (lit. to be cooled or chilled).	quinina , quinine.
	receta , prescription.
	regular , normal, regular.
	re3r , <i>irr.</i> , to laugh.

resfriado (noun), a cold (carrasco and constipado are also used).

resfriado fuerte, a severe cold.

resfriarse, to catch a cold, to take cold.

respirar, to breathe.

robusto, robust.

roncar, to snore.

sonora, sonorous (that which sounds loud and clear).

tener que, to have to.

timbre, *m.*, quality, tone, timbre, color (when speaking of voices).

tónico, tonic.

toser, to cough.

venda, bandage.

voz, *f.*, voice.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un amigo mío tiene el corazón de oro. (2) Este amigo es fuerte, alto y robusto. (3) Las facciones de este amigo son regulares, el cutis muy blanco, y el bigote muy negro. (4) La frente de este amigo es muy espaciosa. (5) La voz de este amigo es sonora y de timbre agradable. (6) Este amigo mío es médico. (7) Este amigo va al gimnasio y hace ejercicio todos los días. (8) Este amigo da grandes paseos los días que no va al gimnasio. (9) Este amigo nunca come de prisa. (10) Siempre (él) come despacio. (11) Siempre (él) mastica los alimentos muy bien. (12) Nunca (él) come demasiado. (13) Siempre (él) goza de buena digestión y nunca sufre de indigestión. (14) Siempre (él) está de buen humor. (15) Siempre (él) tiene ganas de reír y de cantar.

(16) También tiene siempre ganas de reír y de cantar otro amigo que no ronca nunca, excepto cuando (él) está resfriado. (17) Este amigo ronca entonces muchísimo y molesta a los miembros de su familia que duermen en las habitaciones contiguas. (18) Este amigo tiene un cuñado que se resfría a menudo, y que, debido a esto, (él) está, casi siempre, sufriendo y quejándose.

(19) Cuando el cuñado de este amigo tiene un resfriado muy fuerte, (él) está, naturalmente, muy molesto, tose y estornuda muchísimo, alarma a su familia, y su fiel y digna esposa compra en la farmacia lo que (él) necesita para curar su indisposición.

(20) El cuñado de este amigo dice con mucho énfasis cuando está indispuesto, al cuidado de una enfermera, y casi sin poder

respirar: “¡Qué triste es la vida cuando uno tiene que tomar cada tres horas una cucharadilla de esta horrible medicina! (21) ¡Qué desagradable es tener que pensar en recetas, tónicos, desinfectantes, quinina, vendas, parches, cataplasmas, gárgaras y píldoras! (22) Veo claramente que la salud es la cosa verdaderamente esencial de la vida. (23) Digo la pura verdad. (24) Ahora no digo mentira. (25) Esto salta a la vista.”

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Quién tiene el corazón de oro? (2) ¿Es este amigo fuerte, alto y robusto? (3) ¿Tiene este amigo las facciones regulares, el cutis muy blanco, y el bigote muy negro? (4) ¿Cómo es la frente de este amigo? (5) ¿Es la voz de este amigo sonora y de timbre agradable? (6) ¿Qué es este amigo suyo? (7) ¿Va al gimnasio y hace ejercicio todos los días este amigo suyo? (8) ¿Da grandes paseos este amigo suyo los días que no va al gimnasio? (9) ¿Come de prisa, alguna vez, este amigo suyo? (10) ¿Cómo come siempre este amigo suyo? (11) ¿Mastica él siempre, muy bien, los alimentos? (12) ¿Come él demasiado alguna vez? (13) ¿Goza siempre este amigo suyo de buena digestión, o sufre él, alguna vez, de indigestión? (14) ¿Está siempre de buen humor este amigo suyo? (15) ¿Tiene siempre ganas de reír y de cantar este amigo suyo? (16) ¿Quién tiene también ganas de reír y de cantar? (17) ¿Tiene este amigo un cuñado que se resfría a menudo, y que, debido a esto, está casi siempre sufriendo y quejándose? (18) ¿Está muy molesto el cuñado de este amigo cuando (él) tiene un resfriado muy fuerte? (19) ¿Tose y estornuda muchísimo el cuñado de este amigo cuando tiene un resfriado muy fuerte? (20) ¿Alarma este amigo a su familia cuando (él) tose y estornuda muchísimo? (21) ¿Qué hace entonces su fiel y digna esposa? (22) ¿Qué dice con mucho énfasis el cuñado de este amigo cuando está indispuesto y casi sin poder respirar?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We have a friend who has a (*el*) heart of gold. (2) This friend, who is tall and strong, has a very white skin and a very

pleasant voice. (3) He and I go to the gymnasium, almost every day, to take exercise. (4) We take long walks on the days that we do not take exercise in the gymnasium. (5) This friend, who is a physician, often says: "If you (familiar form plural) take exercise every day, if you eat slowly and if you chew well the food that you eat, you will always enjoy good health." (6) This same friend says: "People who never suffer from indigestion, generally have a mind to laugh and to sing." (7) Another friend of mine, who almost never snores when he sleeps, often says that the doctor is right (*tiene razón*) in saying what he says. (8) This same friend says that you (familiar form singular) often get a cold when it is cold. (9) He also says that when you (polite form singular) are ill, your servant (male or female) buys, in the drug store, the medicine that you need. (10) He also says that you (familiar form plural) are very uncomfortable when you have a very severe cold. (11) These two friends of mine say: "It is self-evident that we say the exact truth when we say that health is the most essential thing in life." (12) A third friend of mine says: "How sad is life when I have to take one teaspoonful of that medicine every half hour!"

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *pensar* in model 1, page 367; *reír*, model 16, page 370.

2. In sentence 11, *Theme*, *los alimentos* must be rendered by *his food*.

3. In sentence 16, *Theme*, *que no ronca nunca*, a double negative, must be rendered into English by *who never snores*.

3a. In sentence 20 of the *Theme*, third line, *uno tiene que tomar* is rendered into English by *one has to take*, because *tener que*, *to have to*, is used to express the idea of obligation or necessity.

4. Study rule 2 under *Use of QUÉ*, page 282, to clearly understand the meaning of *¡Qué triste*, etc.!, sentence 20, and of *¡Qué desagradable*, etc.!, sentence 21, of the *Theme*.

5. In sentence 6, *English Exercise*, *People who*, etc., must be rendered in Spanish by *La gente que*, etc.

6. In sentence 11, *that health is the most essential thing in life*, must be rendered in Spanish by *que la salud es la cosa más esencial de la vida*.

LECCIÓN VEINTICINCO—LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

ahijada , goddaughter.	gemelos de teatro , opera glasses (gemelos, cuff-buttons, twins).
amargura , bitterness, sorrow.	graciosa , graceful, cunning.
barrer , to sweep.	hacer las camas , to make the beds.
bella , beautiful.	ideal , adj., ideal.
bondad , <i>f.</i> , kindness.	inteligencia , intelligence.
bordar , to embroider.	joven , <i>m., f.</i> , young man, young woman, young lady (joven, adj., young).
borla de empolvarse , powder puff.	joya , jewel, gem.
botellita de extracto , small bottle of extract.	joyería , jewelry store.
camino , way, road.	lágrima , tear.
cocinar , to cook.	libro de cocina , cook book.
colección , <i>f.</i> , collection.	lo futuro , the future.
conjunto de perfecciones , ensemble (or whole) of perfections.	lucha , struggle.
conocer , <i>irr.</i> , to be acquainted. to know, to become acquainted.	madrina , godmother.
conversación , <i>f.</i> , conversation.	magnífico , magnificent, gorgeous.
conversación amena , pleasant (or delightful) conversation.	mérito extraordinario , extraordinary merit.
coser , to sew.	miseria , misery.
costurero , workbasket.	modesta , modest.
cumpleaños , <i>m.</i> , birthday.	moral , moral (morale, as a noun).
delicado , delicate.	padrino , godfather (padrinos, godparents).
distinguido , distinguished.	pena , sorrow.
dolor , <i>m.</i> , pain.	perfume raro , rare perfume.
dueño , owner.	pertenecer , <i>irr.</i> , to belong.
encontrar , <i>irr.</i> , to find, to meet, to encounter.	planchar , to iron.
estuche de terciopelo , <i>m.</i> , velvet case.	poema , poem.
fin , refined, fine, polished.	polvera , powderbox.
física , physical (physics as a noun).	polvos para la cara , face powder (also polvos para el cutis or de tocador).
fregar , <i>irr.</i> , to scrub, to scour, to rub.	ramo de flores , bouquet (also ramillete de, etc.)
fregar los platos , to wash the dishes.	recibir , to receive.
	regalo , gift, present.
	remendar , <i>irr.</i> , to mend.

risa, laughter.

sensata, sensible.

señalado, noted, marked, famous.

tantos, so many.

todavía, still, yet, as yet.

tormenta, storm.

trabajadora, industrious, laborious (trabajador, masc.)

valor artístico, artistic value.

venir, irr., to come.

zurcir, to darn.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo conozco a una señorita que vive cerca de la mejor joyería de la ciudad. (2) Esta señorita es la ahijada de los dueños de la joyería, y (ella) pertenece a una familia muy distinguida. (3) Esta señorita es bella, fina, rica, modesta, graciosa, inteligente, trabajadora y sensata. (4) El cumpleaños de esta señorita es el quince del mes que viene. (5) En ese día señalado esta señorita recibirá muchísimos regalos.

(6) De su padrino (ella) recibirá una joya de gran valor artístico, en un estuche de terciopelo azul, una colección de poemas de un mérito extraordinario, y un libro de cocina. (7) De su madrina (ella) recibirá un magnífico ramo de flores, un par de gemelos de teatro, una caja de polvos para la cara, una polvera y una borla de empolvase, una botellita de extracto de un perfume muy raro y delicado, y un costurero.

(8) Esta señorita, que de sus padrinos recibirá tantos regalos en el día de su cumpleaños, tiene una conversación muy amena, mucha inteligencia, y mucha bondad en el corazón.

(9) Esta señorita es, según su madrina, un conjunto de perfecciones físicas y morales. (10) Esta joven sabe lo que las señoritas de sociedad saben, y además esto: hacer las camas, fregar los platos y cocinar, y también barrer, bordar, planchar, coser, remendar y zurcir.

(11) La vida de esta señorita ha sido hasta ahora ideal. (12) Esta señorita no ha conocido todavía las tormentas de la vida, con sus luchas, miserias, penas, lágrimas, amarguras y dolores. (13) Solo risas y alegrías ha encontrado en su camino.

(14) Solo risas y alegrías es lo que (yo) deseo para ella en lo futuro.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Conoce usted a una señorita que vive cerca de la mejor de la ciudad? (2) ¿Es esta señorita la ahijada de los dueños de la joyería? (3) ¿Pertenece esta señorita a una familia muy distinguida? (4) ¿Es esta señorita bella, fina y rica? (5) ¿Es también, esta señorita, modesta, graciosa, inteligente, trabajadora y sensata? (6) ¿Cuándo es el cumpleaños de esta señorita? (7) ¿Recibirá esta señorita muchos regalos en ese día señalado? (8) ¿Qué recibirá ella de su padrino en el día de su cumpleaños? (9) ¿Qué recibirá ella de su madrina ese día? (10) ¿Tiene esta señorita una conversación muy amena, mucha inteligencia y mucha bondad en el corazón? (11) ¿Es esta señorita, según su madrina, un conjunto de perfecciones físicas y morales? (12) ¿Sabe esta señorita lo que las señoritas de sociedad saben? (13) ¿Qué sabe además esta señorita? (14) ¿Sabe usted hacer las cosas que esta señorita sabe? (15) ¿Cómo ha sido hasta ahora la vida de esta señorita? (16) ¿Ha conocido esta señorita las tormentas de la vida? (17) ¿Ha conocido esta señorita las luchas y miserias de la vida? (18) ¿Ha conocido esta señorita las penas, lágrimas, amarguras y dolores de la vida? (19) ¿Qué ha encontrado esta señorita en su camino? (20) ¿Qué es lo que desea usted para ella en lo futuro?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We know (*conocemos a*) a sensible young lady who (*que*) lives on (*en*) the same street where we live. (2) This young lady, who is the goddaughter of the owner of a very famous jewel, is good, beautiful and rich. (3) On her birthday, she will receive a gorgeous bouquet of flowers from her grandfather, and a pair of opera glasses from her great-grandmother. (4) This young lady, who knows (*sabe*) how (do not translate *how*) to sweep, cook, wash and make the beds, has much intelligence. (5) When this young lady comes to see us, we receive her with pleasure, and, at the same time, we say many pleasant things to her. (6) Our cousins (feminine), who know how

to wash the dishes and who wash them as often as is necessary, are learning to embroider. (7) They (fem.) have not known (*conocido*) as yet the struggles of life, but they will know them if they live long enough. (8) My little sister never darns her stockings because she has not learned to darn as yet. (9) The woman who sews and irons so well, will sew and iron, next week, for my mother. (10) This woman says to me now and then: "The tears that I see in their eyes make me suffer terribly." (11) I know (*sé*) that this good woman wishes you (polite form singular) laughter and joy on your birthday. (12) I wish you (polite form sing.) the same, and also this: much health, much liberty, much money, and not less than a hundred years of life.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *conocer*, model 10, page 368; *pertenecer* in model 10, page 368; *fregar* in model 1, page 367; *remendar* in model 1, page 367; *venir*, model 45, page 383.

2. See the orthographical changes which *zurcir*, model 25g, page 375, undergoes.

3. When using the word *future*, in connection with time, *lo* should be used, but when referring to the grammatical tense use *el*.

4. In sentence 8, *Theme*, *tiene una conversación muy amena* may be rendered by *has a very pleasant way of conversing*, and *en el corazón* must be translated by *in her heart*.

5. Sentence 10 requires *how* before *hacer las camas*, *fregar los platos*, etc., because *how* is required after the English verb *to know* in this connection.

6. *Risas y alegrías*, sentences 13 and 14, used in Spanish in the plural, are rendered into English in the singular.

7. *On her birthday*, sentence 3, *English Exercise*, must be rendered in Spanish by *en el día de su cumpleaños*.

8. *Long enough*, sentence 7, is equivalent to *bastante tiempo*.

LECCIÓN VEINTISÉIS—LESSON TWENTY-SIX

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

al amanecer , at dawn.	fuera , outside, out.
al anochecer , at nightfall.	goce intenso , <i>m.</i> , intense joy.
almohada , pillow.	había , there was, there were.
almohadón , <i>m.</i> , cushion.	harmonía , harmony (also <i>armonía</i>).
alondra , lark.	hierro , iron (<i>fierro</i> in Argentina).
allí , there.	higiene personal , personal hygiene.
aquellos , those.	huerta , vegetable garden (<i>huerto</i> , orchard).
árbol frutal , fruit tree.	imagen , <i>f.</i> , image.
asearse , to clean oneself, to make one's toilet.	incomparable , incomparable.
calentar , <i>irr.</i> , to heat.	infinito , infinite, infinitely.
cama , bed.	interrumpir , to interrupt.
campo , country, field.	jugoso , juicy.
canto del gallo , rooster's crow.	lámpara , lamp.
catre , <i>m.</i> , cot.	lana , wool.
celestial , celestial.	lleno , full.
civilización moderna , <i>f.</i> , modern civilization.	medio , means, way, half.
colcha , coverlet, quilt.	melodía , melody.
colchón , <i>m.</i> , mattress.	observar , to observe.
crear , to create.	pasearse , to promenade, to walk.
cuadro , picture.	pino , pine.
dejar , to leave, to bequeath.	poner , <i>irr.</i> , to put.
dejar de , to fail, to stop.	ponerse los zapatos , to put the shoes on (<i>lit.</i> to put oneself the shoes).
despertador , <i>m.</i> , alarm-clock (also <i>reloj despertador</i>).	por regla general , as a general rule (<i>lit.</i> by general rule).
despertarse , <i>irr.</i> , to awaken oneself, to wake up.	prenda de vestir , garment (<i>prenda</i> , jewel, is used as a term of endearment).
durante , during.	producir , <i>irr.</i> , to produce.
el despertar , the awakening.	puesta del sol , sunset.
empezar , <i>irr.</i> , to begin.	puro , pure.
en mí , within me, in me.	ropa de cama , bed clothing.
en seguida que , immediately after.	sábana , sheet (of a bed).
encender , <i>irr.</i> , to light.	
encima de , on, upon.	
facilitar , to facilitate, to make easy.	
flor silvestre , wild flower.	
frazada , blanket.	

salida del sol , sunrise.	sueño reparador , refreshing
salir , irr., to go out, to leave.	sleep.
sitio , place.	tierno , tender.
soler , irr., to be accustomed,	una vez , once, one time.
to be in the habit of.	uso , use.

Imperfecto (Indicativo)—Imperfect (Indicative).

hablar	comer	vivir
hablaba	comía	vivía
hablabas	comías	vivías
hablaba	comía	vivía
hablábamos	comíamos	vivíamos
hablabais	comíais	vivíais
hablaban	comían	vivían
I was speaking <i>or</i>	I was eating <i>or</i>	I was living <i>or</i>
I used to speak, etc.	I used to eat, etc.	I used to live, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Hoy tengo que hacer algo verdaderamente importante.

(2) Es esto: tomar en consideración el tiempo nuevo de la lección de hoy.

(3) Yo empiezo a emplear este tiempo así: Cuando yo estaba en el campo, (yo) hablaba mucho, y (yo) comía, (yo) bebía y (yo) vivía muy bien. (4) Dormía en una cama con dos colchones, dos sábanas, tres almohadas, cuatro almohadones, seis frazadas de pura lana, y una colcha. (5) Toda esta ropa de cama era necesaria, porque en aquellas montañas hacía mucho frío y no había medio de calentar mi habitación. (6) La cama en que dormía era de hierro. (7) En el sitio en que (yo) estaba no había camas de madera. (8) Tampoco había allí catres. (9) Todas las mañanas el canto del gallo era mi despertador. (10) El despertador interrumpía mi sueño tranquilo y reparador al amanecer.

(11) En seguida que (yo) me despertaba, (yo) encendía con un fósforo la lámpara que había encima de una mesa de pino. (12) Después de encender la lámpara, (yo) hacía uso de los artículos de tocador que la civilización moderna ha creado para facilitar la higiene personal. (13) Después de asearme (yo) me ponía los zapatos y otras prendas de vestir, y salía de la casa.

(14) Una vez fuera de la casa, (yo) solía observar, con placer infinito, el despertar del día con sus mil cuadros llenos de luz, armonía, imágenes y colores. (15) También solía oír, con el mismo placer, las melodías celestiales de la incomparable alondra. (16) Después de gozar viendo la salida del sol, la cual nunca dejaba de producir en mí un goce intenso y puro, me paseaba por aquellos valles que estaban llenos de huertas, flores silvestres y árboles frutales.

(17) Después (yo) almorzaba, por regla general, un bistec tierno y jugoso, (yo) hacía las cosas que tenía que hacer durante el día, (yo) veía la puesta del sol, y, al anochecer, (yo) decía esto a mi familia: “Buenas noches.”

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Tiene usted que hacer, hoy, algo verdaderamente importante? (2) ¿Qué es lo que usted tiene que hacer hoy? (3) ¿Cómo empieza usted a emplear este tiempo nuevo? (4) ¿Hablaban usted mucho, y comía, bebía y vivía (usted) muy bien cuando (usted) estaba en el campo? (5) ¿Dormía usted, cuando (usted) estaba en el campo, en una cama con dos colchones, dos sábanas, tres almohadas, cuatro almohadones, seis frazadas de pura lana, y una colcha? (6) ¿Por qué era necesaria toda esta ropa de cama? (7) ¿Era de hierro la cama en que usted dormía? (8) ¿Había camas de madera en el sitio en que usted estaba? (9) ¿Había catres en el sitio en que usted estaba? (10) ¿Era el canto del gallo su despertador todas las mañanas? (11) ¿Cuándo interrumpía el despertador su sueño tranquilo y reparador? (12) ¿Qué hacía usted en seguida que (usted) se despertaba? (13) ¿Qué hacía usted después de encender la lámpara? (14) ¿Qué hacía usted después que (usted) salía de la casa? (15) ¿Solía usted oír también, con el mismo placer, las melodías celestiales de la incomparable alondra? (16) ¿Se paseaba usted, después de la salida del sol, por aquellos valles que estaban llenos de huertas, flores silvestres y árboles frutales? (17) ¿Qué almorzaba usted, por regla general, después del paseo? (18) ¿Hacía usted las cosas que (usted) tenía que

hacer, durante el día, después que (usted) almorzaba? (19) ¿Veía usted la puesta del sol después de hacer las cosas que (usted) tenía que hacer durante el día? (20) ¿Que le decía usted a su familia al anochecer?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) The really important thing that we have to do to-day is this: to study the imperfect indicative. (2) We use this new tense thus: Last month, when I was in the country, I used to speak to them often. (3) When you (fam. form sing.) were in that place with us, you used to sleep in a bed with three mattresses and two pillows. (4) When you (familiar form plural) were in those mountains where we were, you needed much bed clothing because it was very cold. (5) When I was with you (familiar form plural) in that tranquil part of the world, the rooster's crow was the alarm clock which used to awaken us. (6) In that ideal place we used to observe, with infinite pleasure, the awakening of the day. (7) Those gorgeous sunrises and sunsets, which we used to see in those mountains, always produced in us a pure and intense pleasure. (8) We were in the habit of walking through those fields which were full of wild flowers and delicate perfumes. (9) You (familiar form plural) and I used to do many things in the country which we could not do in the city. (10) When we were in the country, we received (*past*) a letter from him in which he said to us that he was learning to speak Spanish. (11) We know that he bought (*past*) the book which he needed, at the same bookstore in which we bought (*past*) ours. (12) Yesterday afternoon, when he was near the hotel, we spoke (*past*) to him in Spanish, but he answered (*past*) us in English.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *calentar*, *despertarse* and *empezar* in model 1, page 367; *encender* in model 3, page 367; *poner*, model 40, page 381; *producir* in model 12, page 369; *soler*, model 62, page 387.

2. Study under *Formation of the Imperfect* everything given, i.e.,

suggestions 1 and 2 of *Necessary Steps for Obtaining the Different Persons of the Verbs of the First Conjugation*, page 320, and suggestions 1 and 2 of *Necessary Steps for Obtaining the Different Persons of the Verbs of the Second and Third Conjugations*, also on page 320.

3. Study rules 1, 2 and 3 under *The Imperfect—Its Uses*, page 318.

4. *Hacía frío*, of sentence 5, *Theme*, must be rendered in English by *it was cold*, and *no había medio* by *there were no means*, etc.

5. *Había*, used negatively in sentences 7 and 8, is equivalent to *there were*.

6. In sentence 17, all the verbs which appear in the *imperfect* must be rendered in English by *used to*, followed by the infinitive of the verb used.

7. In sentences 2, 3, 5, 6 and 7, *English Exercise*, when *used to* is followed by an infinitive, the Spanish equivalent may be rendered in these two ways: either by using the verb after *used to* in the *imperfect*, or by using the verb *sol(er)* in the *imperfect* followed by the infinitive of the verb used.

LECCIÓN VEINTISIETE—LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

- abeja**, bee.
acordeón, *m.*, accordion.
afeitar, to shave.
afición, *f.*, fondness.
amargo, bitter.
apenas, scarcely, hardly.
armónica, harmonica (also *harmónica*).
arriba, above, upstairs, over, up.
barbería, barber shop (also *peluquería* which means tonsorial parlor).
barbero, barber (also *peluquero*).
bosque, *m.*, forest, woods, grove.
camisería, haberdashery, shirt store.
¡caramba! the deuce! by Jove!
casa de huéspedes, boarding house (lit. house of guests; also *casa de pensión*).
coma, comma.
costurera, seamstress.
crisis política, political crisis.
¡cuánto me alegro de verle! how glad I am to see you!
dirigir, to direct, to guide, to address somebody a letter, etc.
dirigirle la palabra, to address him.
dos puntos, colon.
en fin, in short.
estrenar, to wear for the first time.
fácilmente, easily.
hablador, talkative, talker.
hablar por los codos, to talk through one's hat.
hacer un viaje, to take a trip.
hacerse afeitar, to get a shave.
hacerse cortar el pelo, to get a hair-cut.
hijo mayor, oldest (or eldest) son.
hijo menor, youngest son.
¡hola! hello!
hormiga, ant.
huelga, strike (labor).
inmensamente, immensely.
insecto, insect.
interior, *m.*, interior, inside.
larga, long.
leve, slight, light (of weight).
llegar, to arrive.
modista, dressmaker.
navaja de afeitar, razor.
notar, to notice.
opinar, to think, to opine.
papá, father (*papá* is used by children and grown-up persons).
parroquiano, customer, client.
patrona, landlady, patroness (*patrón*, *masc.*).
pausa, pause.
probable, probable.
probar, *irr.*, to taste, to try, to test.
proyecto, project.
punto, period.
punto y coma, semicolon.
¡qué buen semblante tiene usted hoy!, how well you look to-day!
¿qué cuenta usted de bueno? what is the good news?
resultado, outcome, result.
revelar, to reveal, to show.

siéntese , sit down.	talento , talent.
sobre , about, on, over, upon (as a noun it is envelope).	tropical , tropical.
suceso , event, happening.	un día sí y otro no , every other day.
suele dar , is in the habit of taking (referring to walks).	vestido , dress.
	viaje , <i>m.</i> , trip, voyage.

Pretérito Anterior (Indicativo)—Past Anterior (Indicative).

hablar	comer	vivir
hube hablado	hube comido	hube vivido
hubiste hablado	hubiste comido	hubiste vivido
hubo hablado	hubo comido	hubo vivido
hubimos hablado	hubimos comido	hubimos vivido
hubisteis hablado	hubisteis comido	hubisteis vivido
hubieron hablado	hubieron comido	hubieron vivido
I had spoken, etc.	I had eaten, etc.	I had lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) El hijo de un caballero que es inmensamente rico va a la barbería un día sí y otro no. (2) En la barbería el barbero le afeita con una navaja de afeitar que corta muchísimo. (3) Algunas veces (él) le afeita y le corta el pelo. (4) (Él) le corta el pelo con un par de tijeras muy largas.

(5) Cuando el hijo del caballero arriba mencionado llega a la barbería a hacerse afeitar, o a hacerse cortar el pelo, el barbero empieza generalmente a dirigirle la palabra así:—
“¡Hola! Buenos días. ¡Cuánto me alegro de verle! Siéntese, siéntese. ¡Caramba! ¡Qué buen semblante tiene usted hoy! ¿Qué cuenta usted de bueno? ¿Cómo está su papá?”

(6) Y sin hacer la más leve pausa, este barbero hablador empieza a hablarle de su persona y proyectos, del talento de su hijo mayor, y de la afición que por la armónica y por el acordeón revela su hijo menor.

(7) Después, este barbero hablador le habla de lo que uno de sus parroquianos más antiguos opina sobre la última crisis política. (8) También (él) le habla de los vestidos que la patrona de una de las mejores casas de huéspedes de la ciudad ha estrenado este año. (9) También (él) le habla de los paseos que el dueño de una camisería suele dar por un bosque

en que hay abejas, hormigas y otros insectos. (10) También (él) le habla del probable resultado de la huelga de costureras y modistas, y, en fin, de casi todos los sucesos que en el mundo pasan.

(11) Como fácilmente puede verse, este barbero hablador habla por los codos.

(12) También habla por los codos un hombre que tiene la intención de hacer un viaje al interior de un país tropical.

(13) Este hombre dice que un sobrino suyo ha estudiado el tiempo nuevo de la lección de hoy, en estos ejemplos: Cuando ellos hubieron hablado, yo empecé a hablar. (14) En seguida que él hubo comido, (él) puso en la carta seis dos puntos, treinta comas, un punto y coma, y ochenta puntos.

(15) Apenas hubo probado ella el café, (ella) notó que todavía estaba amargo.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Quién va a la barbería un día sí y otro no? (2) ¿Le afeita el barbero, en la barbería, con una navaja de afeitar que corta muchísimo? (3) ¿Le afeita y le corta el pelo (él) algunas veces? (4) ¿Le corta (él) el pelo con un par de tijeras muy largas? (5) ¿Cómo empieza el barbero a dirigirle la palabra, al hijo del caballero arriba mencionado, cuando éste llega a la barbería a hacerse afeitar o a hacerse cortar el pelo? (6) ¿Cómo empieza usted, algunas veces, a dirigirle la palabra a sus amigos? (7) ¿Cómo empiezan sus amigos, algunas veces, a dirigirle la palabra a usted? (8) ¿Hace este barbero hablador la más leve pausa cuando (él) empieza a hablar al hijo del caballero arriba mencionado? (9) ¿Le habla este barbero hablador, al hijo del caballero mencionado, de su persona y proyectos? (10) ¿Le habla (él), también, del talento de su hijo mayor? (11) ¿Le habla (él), también, de la afición que su hijo menor revela por la armónica y por el acordeón? (12) ¿Le habla el barbero, después, de lo que uno de sus parroquianos más antiguos opina sobre la última crisis política? (13) ¿Le habla (él) también

de los vestidos que la patrona de una de las mejores casas de huéspedes de la ciudad ha estrenado este año? (14) ¿Le habla (él) también de los paseos que el dueño de una camisería suele dar por un bosque en que hay abejas, hormigas y otros insectos? (15) ¿Le habla (él) también del probable resultado de la huelga de costureras y modistas? (16) ¿Le habla (él), en fin, de casi todos los sucesos que en el mundo pasan? (17) ¿Puede verse, fácilmente, que este barbero hablador habla por los codos? (18) ¿Quién habla, también, por los codos? (19) ¿Qué dice este hombre sobre su sobrino? (20) ¿Empezó usted a hablar cuando ellos hubieron hablado? (21) ¿Qué hizo él en seguida que (él) hubo comido? (22) ¿Notó ella que el café estaba amargo apenas (ella) lo hubo probado?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) You (familiar form sing.) go to the barber shop every other day. (2) The sons of a lady, who is immensely rich, go to the barber shop every morning. (3) When they arrive at the barber shop to have a shave or a hair cut, the barber says to them:—"Hello! How do you (pol. form pl.) do? How well you look to-day! How glad I am to see you! What is the good news?" (4) The talkative barber speaks to his customers about the talent of his elder boy and about the fondness that the younger son has for the flute and for the organ. (5) When he has the opportunity, this barber also says many things to the owner of a boarding house. (6) This barber often says that the bakers and the butchers are right in doing what they are doing. (7) This barber, who talks about almost everything, often talks through his hat. (8) Yesterday, when this barber was talking about the strikes and about other events which were happening in the world, he asked me a question. (9) When he began to speak to me I was thinking of (*en*) you (fam. form sing.) (10) I was thinking of you (fam. form sing.) and of that which happened the other day when you revealed to us your good heart and your

great talent. (11) Then we did not know (*imperf.*) so much Spanish as we know now. (12) We could not think (*imperf.*), then, in the language that we are studying with the same ease that we are able to think now, and on this account we could (*imperf.*) not say this: "We had scarcely tasted what you gave to us when we noticed that it was very sweet."

NOTES

1. See the orthographical changes undergone by *dirigir*, model 25i, page 376, and *llegar*, model 25c, page 374; and the irregularities which *probar* has in model 5, page 367.

2. Study everything given under the heading *Formation of the Past Anterior*, page 323, and everything under *The Past Anterior—Its Uses*, also on page 323. The literal meaning of *hacer un viaje* is *to make a trip*; of *hablar por los codos* is *to talk through the elbows*.

3. In sentence 2, *Theme*, *con una navaja de afeitar que corta muchísimo*, must be rendered thus: *with a very keen or sharp razor*.

4. The literal meaning of *hacerse afeitar*, in sentence 5, is *to make himself shave*; of *hacerse cortar el pelo* is *to make himself cut the hair*, and of *dirigirle la palabra* is *to direct to him the word*. *¡Cuánto me alegro de verle!* is *How much I rejoice myself of to see you!*; *¡Qué buen semblante tiene usted hoy!* is *What good countenance you have to-day!*, and *¿Qué cuenta usted de bueno?* is *what do you tell of good?*

5. *De lo que*, of sentence 7, is rendered by *of that which*, and *puede verse*, of sentence 11, by *can be seen*.

LECCIÓN VEINTIOCHO—LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

- a pesar de eso**, in spite of that.
abiertos, opened.
acabar, to end, to finish.
acabar de, to have just.
adelantado, advanced.
adoquín, *m.*, paving stone.
alumno, pupil, student.
atados, tied, fastened.
borrador, eraser, rough draft of a letter.
cesto para papeles, waste-basket.
colocar, to place.
condiscípulo, classmate, fellow student.
corto, short.
correa de cuero, leather strap.
cuchichear, to whisper.
cuero, leather, rawhide, skin (of animals).
deber, to owe, must, ought (deber, as a noun, means duty).
difícil, difficult.
en la posición que debe, in the position that he ought to.
en vez de, instead of.
escritorio, writing desk, office.
espina dorsal, spinal chord, backbone (espina, thorn, fish-bone).
estar de pie, to be standing.
estar sentado, to be seated.
estirar, to stretch.
grupo, group.
guiñar, to wink.
imitar, to imitate.
inconscientemente, unconsciously.
inocente, innocent.
junto a, close to.
llevar, to carry, to take, to wear.
muchacho, boy (muchacha, girl).
no ve más allá de sus narices, he does not see beyond his nose.
oración, *f.*, sentence (of grammar), oration, prayer.
penúltimo, next to the last, penult.
pizarra, blackboard (also encerado and pizarrón).
prestar atención, to pay attention (lit. to lend attention).
recitar, to recite.
resto, rest, remainder.
rodear, to surround.
sacar, to draw, to remove, to pull out.
sacar punta al lápiz, to sharpen the pencil (lit. to draw point to the pencil).
semicírculo, semicircle.
ser un adoquín, to be a block-head (lit. to be a paving stone).
ser un pedazo de atún, to be exceedingly stupid (lit. to be a piece of tunny fish).
solapa, lapel.
tiza, chalk.
traducción, *f.*, translation.
vecino, neighbor.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo no sé quien es el alumno más adelantado de la clase. (2) Tampoco sé quien es el segundo, y mucho menos quien es el tercero. (3) El cuarto creo que es ese muchacho que lleva pantalones cortos y que está de pie, sacando punta al lápiz, junto al cesto para papeles. (4) El quinto es ese otro que está sentado cerca de la ventana y que, de cuando en cuando, estira el cuello para ver lo que en la calle pasa. (5) El sexto es el que está escribiendo en la pizarra la traducción de una oración muy difícil, y el séptimo el que acaba de dejar encima del escritorio el borrador y un pedazo de tiza. (6) El octavo es el que, cuando recita, hace un semicírculo, casi perfecto, con la cabeza y espina dorsal, y habla a la solapa de la chaqueta en vez de hablar al grupo de condiscípulos que le rodea. (7) El noveno es ese muchacho que tiene la costumbre de estar en la sala de clase con uno o más dedos de la mano derecha en la boca. (8) El décimo es el que no presta atención a la lección, porque está cuchicheando con su vecino al mismo tiempo que guiña el ojo izquierdo. (9) El undécimo es ese muchacho que lleva pantalones largos y que tiene los libros atados con una correa de cuero negro.

(10) Del resto de los alumnos no quiero decir nada. (11) Sólo quiero decir algo del penúltimo y del último. (12) El penúltimo es ese muchacho inocente que cuando (él) lee no coloca el libro en la posición que (él) debe, e imita, inconscientemente, a los que, cuando (ellos) comen, se llevan la boca a la cuchara en vez de llevarse la cuchara a la boca. (13) El último es ese otro muchacho que tiene los ojos muy abiertos y que, a pesar de eso, (él) no ve más allá de sus narices. (14) Este muchacho es un adoquín. (15) Este mismo muchacho es, también, un pedazo de atún.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Sabe usted quién es el alumno más adelantado de la clase? (2) ¿Sabe usted quién es el segundo y quién es el tercero? (3) ¿Es el cuarto alumno de la clase ese muchacho que lleva pantalones cortos y que está, de pie, sacando punta

al lápiz? (4) ¿Está el cuarto alumno de la clase, sacando punta al lápiz, junto al cesto para papeles? (5) ¿Es el quinto alumno de la clase ese otro muchacho que está sentado cerca de la ventana? (6) ¿Estira el cuello, de cuando en cuando, el quinto alumno para ver lo que pasa en la calle? (7) ¿Es el sexto alumno de la clase el que está escribiendo en la pizarra la traducción de una oración muy difícil? (8) ¿Es el séptimo alumno de la clase el que acaba de dejar, encima del escritorio, el borrador y un pedazo de tiza? (9) ¿Es el octavo alumno de la clase el que, cuando recita, hace un semicírculo casi perfecto con la cabeza y la espina dorsal? (10) ¿Habla el octavo alumno de la clase a la solapa de la chaqueta en vez de hablar al grupo de condiscípulos que le rodea? (11) ¿Es el noveno alumno el que tiene la costumbre de estar en la sala de clase con uno o más dedos de la mano derecha en la boca? (12) ¿Es el décimo el que no presta atención a la lección? (13) ¿Por qué no presta atención a la lección el décimo alumno de la clase? (14) ¿Qué ojo guiña el décimo alumno de la clase al mismo tiempo que cuchichea? (15) ¿Es el undécimo alumno de la clase el muchacho que lleva pantalones largos? (16) ¿Tiene los libros atados con una correa de cuero negro el undécimo alumno de la clase? (17) ¿Quiere usted decir algo del resto de los alumnos de la clase? (18) ¿Quiere usted decir algo del penúltimo y del último? (19) ¿Quién es el penúltimo alumno de la clase? (20) ¿Quién es el último alumno de la clase? (21) ¿Es este muchacho, un adoquín? (22) ¿Qué es también este mismo muchacho?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) If you (fam. form plural) know who is the most advanced student in the class, you know more than I. (2) That boy who wears short trousers, is, according to an acquaintance of mine (*según un conocido mío*), the second or the third best student in the class. (3) The fourth best and the fifth best students are those boys who are standing near the (*cerca del*) wastebasket. (4) The sixth best student is the one

who is writing a very easy sentence on the blackboard. (5) The seventh best student is the one who has just left the books and two pieces of chalk on the desk. (6) The eighth best student is the one who has his index finger in his mouth. (7) The ninth best student is that boy who stretches his neck in order to see what is happening in the courtyard. (8) The tenth best student is that boy who does not pay attention to the lesson, because he is whispering to his neighbor. (9) I did not want to say (*imperfect*) anything about the last student, but, as you (pol. form pl.) want to know who he is, I am going to say something about him. (10) The last student is that boy who does not know which is his right hand. (11) This boy belongs to a distinguished family. (12) This boy and his brother are two blockheads.

NOTES

1. Study under *Remarks about VOLVER A and ACABAR DE*, page 299, everything given in section b.

2. The word *best* must follow the ordinal numbers when translating the Spanish sentences of the *Theme* into English, and it must be omitted when the sentences of the *English Exercise* are translated into Spanish.

3. *Is of foot* is the literal translation of *está de pie*, in sentence 3, and the literal translation of *cesto para papeles* is *basket for papers*.

4. *Which*, of sentence 10, *English Exercise*, must be translated by *cual*.

LECCIÓN VEINTINUEVE—LESSON TWENTY-NINE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

abrazo , embrace (noun).	mi chiquirritín , my very, very little one.
acerca de , about.	monería , cunning action (of a child), monkey-shine.
alegrarse , to gladden, to rejoice.	nacer , irr., to be born.
amante , loving, lover (noun).	noche , night, evening.
ángel , <i>m.</i> , angel.	obtener , irr., to obtain, to attain.
beso , kiss.	oficio , occupation, calling, trade.
caricia , caress.	pedir , irr., to ask, to ask for, to order, to request.
cariñosa , affectionate.	pelo rizado , curly hair.
clara , clear, bright.	por delante , in front of.
contar , irr., to count, to tell.	por teléfono , over the telephone (lit. by, etc.).
criatura , infant, child, creature.	practicar , to practise.
cuya , whose.	precioso , precious, beautiful.
chiquillo , little (or small) child.	prodigar , to lavish, to give profusely.
darse un apretón de manos to shake hands (lit. to give each other a squeeze of hands).	ratos deliciosos , delightful times (lit. whiles or little whiles).
de este modo , in this way.	retoño , offspring, sprout, sprig.
delicioso , delicious, delightful.	rubio , blond.
detalle , <i>m.</i> , detail.	saber a ciencia cierta , to know with certainty (lit. to know to certain science).
diccionario , dictionary.	salta de alegría , (he) jumps with joy (lit. of joy).
elefante , <i>m.</i> , elephant.	saltar , to jump.
encantar , to charm, to enrapture.	siempre que , whenever.
estar encantada , to be charmed or enraptured.	simpático , nice, congenial.
gritar , to shout, to scream.	simpatizar , to like, to be congenial, to sympathize.
hace dos años , two years ago.	tarjeta postal , post card.
juguete , <i>m.</i> , toy.	tunante , <i>m.</i> , rascal, little rascal.
la menor duda , the least doubt.	
linda , pretty.	
llamar , to call.	
mamá , mother (used by children and grown-up persons).	
mi cielo , my heaven.	

Pretérito Pluscuamperfecto (Indicativo)—Pluperfect
or Past Perfect (Indicative)

hablar	comer	vivir
había hablado	había comido	había vivido
habías hablado	habías comido	habías vivido
había hablado	había comido	había vivido
habíamos hablado	habíamos comido	habíamos vivido
habíais hablado	habíais comido	habíais vivido
habían hablado	habían comido	habían vivido
I had spoken, etc.	I had eaten, etc.	I had lived, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—Future Perfect.

hablar	comer	vivir
habré hablado	habré comido	habré vivido
habrás hablado	habrás comido	habrás vivido
habrá hablado	habrá comido	habrá vivido
habremos hablado	habremos comido	habremos vivido
habréis hablado	habréis comido	habréis vivido
habrán hablado	habrán comido	habrán vivido
I shall or will have spoken, etc.	I shall or will have eaten, etc.	I shall or will have lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Yo conozco a un niño precioso que nació el primero de enero de hace dos años. (2) Nació a las once de una noche clara y tranquila.

(3) La mamá de este ángel, que es rubio y que tiene ojos azules y pelo rizado, está encantada con su retoño. (4) Constantemente (ella) le dice las palabras más dulces, y le prodiga las caricias más tiernas. (5) Un día (yo) conté los besos y abrazos que el niño recibió de su cariñosa y amante madre, durante una hora, con este resultado: el niño recibió, en los sesenta minutos, cincuenta y cinco besos y catorce abrazos.

(6) Yo no sé, a ciencia cierta, cual es el oficio o profesión del padre de este chiquillo, pero de esto no tengo la menor duda: que el niño y yo simpatizamos muchísimo.

(7) Cuando esta linda criatura, cuya mamá le llama, constantemente, “mi chiquirritín,” “mi vida,” “mi alegría” y “mi cielo,” pasa por delante de la puerta de mi casa, (yo) le llamo y (él) viene. (8) Le pregunto por su salud, al mismo

tiempo que (nosotros) nos damos un apretón de manos, y, en seguida de responderme que está muy bien, (él) me dice: “Quiero dulces.” “Quiero un caballo.” “Quiero un elefante.”

(9) El chiquillo obtiene, generalmente, lo que me pide. (10) Siempre que este chiquillo recibe dulces o juguetes, (él) grita y salta de alegría y hace muchas monerías.

(11) Acerca de este simpático niño, con el cual paso a menudo ratos deliciosos, (yo) no digo nada más, porque ahora tengo que practicar los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy, de este modo: Nosotros habíamos vivido allí antes de vivir aquí. (12) Yo había comido y (yo) había hablado por teléfono antes de recibir las tarjetas postales y el diccionario. (13) Yo habré recibido los detalles de la vida íntima de ese tunante antes del martes próximo.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Conoce usted a un niño precioso que nació el primero de enero de hace dos años? (2) ¿Nació este niño a las once de una noche clara y tranquila? (3) ¿Está la mamá de este ángel encantada con su retoño? (4) ¿Es rubio este ángel? (5) ¿Tiene este ángel ojos azules y pelo rizado? (6) ¿Qué le dice su mamá constantemente? (7) ¿Qué le prodiga su mamá constantemente? (8) ¿Contó usted un día los besos y abrazos que el niño recibió de su cariñosa y amante madre? (9) ¿Cuántos besos y abrazos recibió el niño en los sesenta minutos? (10) ¿Cuál es el oficio o profesión del padre de este chiquillo? (11) ¿Simpatizan usted y el niño muchísimo? (12) ¿Cómo le llama su mamá a esta linda criatura? (13) ¿Le llama usted al niño cuando (él) pasa por delante de la puerta de su casa? (14) ¿Viene el niño cuando usted le llama? (15) ¿Le pregunta usted por su salud al mismo tiempo que ustedes se dan un apretón de manos? (16) ¿Le dice el niño, en seguida de responderle a usted que (él) está muy bien, que (él) quiere dulces, un caballo y un elefante? (17) ¿Obtiene el chiquillo, generalmente, lo que a usted le pide? (18) ¿Qué hace el chiquillo cuando (él) recibe dulces

o juguetes? (19) ¿Pasan el niño y usted, a menudo, ratos deliciosos? (20) ¿Qué tiempos tiene usted que practicar hoy? (21) ¿Habían vivido ustedes allí antes de vivir aquí? (22) ¿Había comido usted y había hablado usted por teléfono antes de recibir las tarjetas postales? (23) ¿Habrá recibido usted los detalles de la vida íntima de ese tunante antes del martes?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) I know two beautiful children who were born three years ago. (2) The mother of one of these angels tells me, now and then, what her little one says and does, and I listen to her with pleasure. (3) This child, about whom I am now speaking, constantly receives kisses, embraces and sweets from those who know him. (4) The father of this pretty infant, who is a little rascal, is a banker. (5) The child and I see each other often. (6) The child and I shake hands when we have the opportunity. (7) The child's father laughs when he hears (that) his "angel" calls him, in a very sweet voice, "papa." (8) As I do not want to say anything more about this beautiful child, I am going to give some examples of the past perfect and future perfect indicative in the next four sentences. (9) We had spoken to her over the telephone before receiving the letter. (10) They (fem.) will have bought the fur coats and the rubbers before buying the peaches and the pears. (11) You (familiar form sing.) had lived in a palace, before living in that house. (12) Before being there you (familiar form sing.) had been in a very important city of South America.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *contar* in model 5, page 367; *nacer* in model 10, page 368; *obtener* in model 27, page 377, and *pedir* in model 15, page 370. See the orthographical changes undergone by *practicar* in model 25b, page 374, and by *simpatizar* in model 25e, page 375.

2. Study everything given under the heading *Formation of the Past Perfect*, page 324, and everything under *The Past Perfect—Its Uses*, also on page 324.

3. Study everything given under the heading *Formation of the Future Perfect*, page 326, and everything under *The Future Perfect—Its Uses*, page 325.

4. Study, under *Impersonal Use of Hacer*, rule 2, page 315, to clearly understand the construction of *hace dos años*, in sentence 1 of the *Theme*.

5. (*Ella*) *le prodiga*, sentence 4 of the *Theme*, is rendered into English by (*she*) *lavishes upon him*.

6. *Hace muchas monerías*, sentence 10, is equivalent to *acts very cunningly*.

7. Do not translate the word *a* of question 1, nor the word *le* of questions 12 and 13, section *Preguntas*.

8. *From those who know him*, sentence 3, of the *English Exercise*, is equivalent to *de los que lo conocen*.

9. *A little rascal*, of sentence 4, may be rendered either by *tunante* or *pillín*, preferably by *pillín*.

10. *In a very sweet voice*, of sentence 7, is rendered by *con una voz muy dulce*.

LECCIÓN TREINTA—LESSON THIRTY

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

- a mi juicio**, according to my judgment (lit. to my judgment).
- a veces**, at times.
- actor**, *m.*, actor (*actriz*, actress).
- actor cómico**, comedian (lit. comic actor).
- actriz trágica**, tragedienne (lit. tragic actress).
- actuar**, to play (in theatres), to act.
- admiración**, *f.*, admiration.
- anciana respetable**, respectable old lady.
- antigüedad**, *f.*, olden times.
- aplaudir**, to applaud.
- aspecto**, aspect.
- bailarina**, dancer (*female*), *bailarín* (*masc.*).
- bajo profundo**, deep bass.
- barítono**, baritone.
- belleza**, beauty.
- cantante**, *m., f.*, singer.
- capítulo**, chapter.
- carácter**, *m.*, character.
- comedia**, comedy.
- contralto**, *f.*, contralto (*masc.* when applied to boys).
- creación dramática**, dramatic creation.
- cuento**, story, tale, short story.
- desempeñar**, to discharge (a duty): to play, to act; to redeem (pawn tickets).
- desempeñar un papel**, to play a rôle, to act a part.
- drama**, *m.*, drama.
- dulzura**, sweetness.
- el mundo comedia es**, the world is a farce (lit. comedy).
- eminente**, eminent.
- escriptor de nota**, noted writer (*escritora*, *f.*).
- eseultor**, *m.*, sculptor (*escultora*, *f.*).
- figurar**, to figure.
- filósofo**, philosopher.
- ganar**, to earn, to win.
- joya literaria**, literary gem.
- la caridad bien ordenada empieza por uno mismo**, charity begins at home (lit. charity well ordered begins by oneself).
- magistralmente**, masterly, in a masterly fashion.
- merecida**, deserved.
- novela**, novel.
- novelista**, *m., f.*, novelist.
- obra**, play, work.
- obra maestra**, masterpiece (lit. master work).
- orador**, *m.*, orator (*oradora*, *f.*).
- organista**, *m., f.*, organist.
- página**, page.
- periódico**, newspaper.
- pianista**, *m., f.*, pianist.
- pintor**, *m.*, painter, artist (who paints).
- poesía sublime**, sublime poetry.
- poeta**, *m.*, poet (*poetisa*, *f.*).
- popularidad inmensa**, immense popularity.
- por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunea**, procrastination is the thief of time.
- primer actor**, leading man (lit. first actor).
- productor**, *m.*, producer.
- profeta**, prophet.

prosa , prose.	sordo , deaf.
proverbio , proverb.	temporada , season (not used when speaking of the seasons of the year).
publicar , to publish.	tenor , <i>m.</i> , tenor.
querido , dear.	tiple ligera , light soprano, coloratura soprano.
reputación , <i>f.</i> , reputation, repute.	tragedia , tragedy.
ser un alma de Dios , to be exceedingly good (lit. to be a soul of God).	violinista , <i>m., f.</i> , violinist.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un amigo mío muy querido es un poco sordo, y, por consiguiente, no oye bien. (2) Este amigo, que es un alma de Dios, es un escritor de nota. (3) Este amigo escribe cuentos muy bonitos que todo el mundo lee con gusto cuando se publican en uno de los periódicos de la ciudad. (4) Este amigo se gana la vida con la pluma. (5) Este amigo es poeta y escritor en prosa.

(6) Los buenos escritores en prosa y los poetas que producen poesía sublime, de este o del otro carácter, son productores de belleza. (7) También son productores de belleza los músicos y cantantes buenos, los pintores y arquitectos, los oradores y escultores, y muchas otras personas.

(8) Entre las personas que son productoras de belleza y que mi amigo conoce, figuran las siguientes: un actor cómico, una actriz trágica, una bailarina, un violinista, un pianista y un organista. (9) También figuran en la misma lista, un tenor, una tiple ligera, un barítono, un bajo profundo, una contralto y una novelista.

(10) Esta novelista que mi amigo conoce es una anciana muy respetable cuya dulzura de carácter es grande, y cuyas novelas gozan de una popularidad inmensa.

(11) Yo estoy leyendo, ahora, la obra maestra de esta célebre escritora. (12) La gran reputación de que esta novela goza, es, a mi juicio, merecida.

(13) Después de leer las primeras páginas del último capítulo de esta joya literaria, (yo) iré al teatro a ver la obra de más éxito de la temporada. (14) En esta creación dramática, el primer actor de la compañía que actúa en el "Teatro

Municipal," desempeña su papel magistralmente y es muy aplaudido.

(15) Los dramas que se dan en el "Teatro Municipal," son, generalmente, buenos. (16) En este teatro dan a veces comedias, y a veces tragedias. (17) Hay un proverbio español que dice: "El mundo comedia es."

(18) Un filósofo muy eminente, que tiene aspecto de profeta de la antigüedad y cuya hermosa barba blanca es la admiración de todos los que le conocen, dice a menudo este proverbio. (19) Este mismo filósofo dice también, a menudo, estos otros proverbios: "La caridad bien ordenada empieza por uno mismo." "Por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunca."

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Es un amigo suyo muy querido un poco sordo? (2) ¿Oye bien este amigo? (3) ¿Qué es este amigo suyo que es un alma de Dios? (4) ¿Escribe este amigo cuentos muy bonitos que todo el mundo lee con gusto cuando se publican? (5) ¿Dónde se publican los cuentos que su amigo escribe? (6) ¿Cómo se gana la vida este amigo suyo? (7) ¿Es este amigo poeta y escritor en prosa? (8) ¿Son los buenos escritores en prosa y los buenos poetas productores de belleza? (9) ¿Son también productores de belleza los músicos y los cantantes buenos? (10) ¿Son también productores de belleza los pintores y arquitectos? (11) ¿Son también productores de belleza los oradores y escultores y muchas otras personas? (12) ¿Qué personas figuran entre las que son productoras de belleza y que su amigo conoce? (13) ¿Es la novelista que su amigo conoce una anciana muy respetable cuya dulzura de carácter es grande? (14) ¿Gozan de una popularidad inmensa las novelas de esta novelista? (15) ¿Está leyendo usted, ahora, la obra maestra de esta célebre escritora? (16) ¿Es, a su juicio, merecida la reputación de que esta novela goza? (17) ¿Irá usted al teatro después de leer las primeras páginas del último capítulo de esta joya literaria? (18) ¿Irá usted a ver la obra de más éxito de la temporada? (19)

¿Quién es muy aplaudido en esta obra? (20) ¿Por qué es muy aplaudido el primer actor de la compañía que actúa en el “Teatro Municipal”? (21) ¿Son buenos, generalmente, los dramas que se dan en el “Teatro Municipal”? (22) ¿Dan en este teatro comedias y tragedias? (23) ¿Hay un proverbio español que dice: “El mundo comedia es”? (24) ¿Quién dice a menudo este proverbio? (25) ¿Qué otros proverbios dice también, a menudo, este mismo filósofo?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) A very dear friend of ours, who is a noted writer, will come to visit us next Tuesday. (2) This friend of ours writes very pretty stories which I read with pleasure when they are published. (3) This noted writer, who knows (*que conoce a*) many good musicians and several famous singers, is a producer of beauty. (4) The following persons, whom my friend knows, are also producers of beauty: a tragedienne, a baritone, and a novelist. (5) I am reading now the best novel of this celebrated writer whom my friend knows. (6) After reading this literary gem, I shall go to the theatre to see a very good comedy. (7) At the theatre and on the street we sometimes hear this proverb: “The world is a farce.” (8) A young man who earns his living by the pen, knows this other proverb: “Charity begins at home.” (9) “Procrastination is the thief of time” is another proverb which some of us know. (10) Some philosophers, some prose writers and some poets often use proverbs. (11) The gentlemen who speak and write several languages, also use many proverbs. (12) Last year I became acquainted with an old lady who knows (*sabe*) as many proverbs as a very intelligent old man.

NOTES

1. Words in the vocabulary which are followed by *m.*, *f.*, belong to the common gender. See what is said under *The Common Gender*, page 228.

2. The literal meaning of the proverb *Por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunca*, is *Through the street of Afterwards one goes to the house of Never*.

3. To clearly understand why the indefinite article is omitted in Spanish before the words *poeta* and *escritor*, sentence 5 of the *Theme*, study rule 1 under *Cases Where the Indefinite Article is Omitted in Spanish but not in English*, page 225.

4. The word *of*, which precedes *our*, in sentences 1 and 2, *English Exercise*, is not translated in Spanish.

5. *At* and *on*, sentence 7, are rendered in Spanish by *en*.

6. *By*, of sentence 8, is rendered in Spanish by *con*.

7. *Another*, of sentence 9, is translated in Spanish by *otro*. See what is said under the heading *Use of OTRO*, page 290.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y UNA—LESSON THIRTY-ONE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

apetito voraz , ravenous or voracious appetite.	escribir taquigráficamente , to write in shorthand.
aproximadamente , approximately, nearly.	excelente , excellent.
arañar , to scratch.	fábrica , factory.
aspiración , <i>f.</i> , aspiration.	fabricante , <i>m.</i> , manufacturer.
bastante grande , fairly large.	guapo , good-looking, bold, courageous.
bizca , cross-eyed, squint-eyed.	hacer las facturas , to make out the invoices.
burro , donkey, a very stupid person.	inseparable , inseparable.
cajero , cashier.	intérprete , <i>m., f.</i> , interpreter.
calvo , bald.	jorobado , hunchback (also corcovado).
carta , letter.	ladrar , to bark.
casado , married.	llevar los libros , to keep the books.
ciego , blind.	manco , without one arm or hand, armless, handless.
cojo , lame (rengoin Argentina and other places of South America).	maullar , to mew.
conocimiento de embarque , bill of lading.	mecanógrafo de primera , first class typist (also dactilógrafo).
consecuencia , consequence.	morder , <i>irr.</i> , to bite.
correctamente , correctly.	mudo , dumb.
corresponsal , <i>m., f.</i> , correspondent.	operario , operator, workman.
departamento de exportación , export department.	partir , to depart, to break.
dependiente , <i>m.</i> , clerk.	picar , to sting, to itch, to peck (birds), to burn (peppers).
dictar , to dictate.	primo carnal , first cousin.
edad , <i>f.</i> , age.	rebuznar , to bray.
el otro , the other one.	salario , salary.
el uno tiene veinticuatro años , one is twenty-four years old.	secretario particular , private secretary.
empleado , employee.	soltero , bachelor, unmarried.
en seguida , immediately.	taquigrafía , shorthand, stenography.
entusiasmo , enthusiasm.	
escribir a máquina , to type-write.	

tartamudear, to stammer.
tenedor de libros, *m.*, book-keeper.
tener la misma edad, to be of the same age.

traducir, *irr.*, to translate.
traductor, *m.*, translator.
tuerto, blind in one eye.
viuda, widow.
zumbar, to buzz.

Imperativo—Imperative.

hablar	comer	vivir
habla tú	come tú	vive tú
hable usted	coma usted	viva usted
hablemos nosotros	comamos nosotros	vivamos nosotros
hablad vosotros	comed vosotros	vivid vosotros
hablen ustedes	coman ustedes	vivan ustedes
Speak, etc.	Eat, etc.	Live, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) En la casa de comercio de mi tío hay un dependiente que tiene un sobrino que es ciego, otro que es cojo, otro que es manco, otro que es tuerto, otro que es mudo, y otro que es jorobado. (2) Este dependiente tiene, también, una sobrina bizca que tartamudea cuando (ella) habla. (3) Este dependiente es un empleado muy antiguo de la casa, y un mecanógrafo de primera que escribe a máquina muy bien. (4) Este dependiente es un muchacho excelente y el corresponsal, intérprete y traductor del departamento de exportación. (5) Este joven, que es muy guapo, es soltero. (6) Este joven gana un salario bastante grande. (7) Este joven habla, escribe y traduce, correctamente, varios idiomas.

(8) También hay, en la oficina de mi tío, otro empleado muy antiguo que lleva los libros y que es casado. (9) Este empleado es el tenedor de libros. (10) Este tenedor de libros, que es calvo, tiene una hermana que es viuda.

(11) En la oficina de mi tío trabajan ciento veinte personas, además de la hermana del tenedor de libros, y en su fábrica miles de operarios. (12) Mi tío es fabricante de automóviles.

(13) El secretario particular de mi tío, que sabe taquigrafía y que escribe taquigráficamente las cartas que mi tío le dicta, es primo carnal del dependiente que hace las facturas y los conocimientos de embarque.

(14) El dependiente que hace las facturas y los conocimien-

tos de embarque, es un amigo inseparable del cajero de la casa.

(15) Los amigos inseparables tienen, aproximadamente, la misma edad, pues el uno tiene veinticuatro años y siete meses, y el otro veinticinco años y siete días. (16) También tienen los dos amigos las mismas aspiraciones y el mismo entusiasmo por el idioma español.

(17) Hoy (ellos) tienen que estudiar las siguientes oraciones de imperativo: Hable usted en seguida. (18) Come tú, porque salta a la vista que tienes un apetito voraz. (19) Estudie usted, amigo, si (usted) no quiere sufrir las consecuencias. (20) Vivid tranquilos amigos míos. (21) Beba usted agua si (usted) tiene sed. (22) Partamos sin decirle adiós. (23) Escriba usted esto inmediatamente: los perros ladran y muerden, los mosquitos zumban y pican, los gatos maullan y arañan, y el burro de mi vecino come hierba y rebuzna.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿ Hay en la oficina de su tío un dependiente que tiene un sobrino que es ciego, otro que es cojo, otro que es manco, otro que es tuerto, otro que es mudo, y otro que es jorobado ? (2) ¿ Tiene este dependiente, también, una sobrina bizca que tartamudea cuando (ella) habla ? (3) ¿ Es este dependiente un empleado muy antiguo de la casa de su tío ? (4) ¿ Es este dependiente un mecanógrafo de primera que escribe a máquina muy bien ? (5) ¿ Es este dependiente un muchacho excelente ? (6) ¿ Es este dependiente el corresponsal, intérprete y traductor del departamento de exportación ? (7) ¿ Es este joven, que es muy guapo, soltero ? (8) ¿ Gana este joven un salario bastante grande ? (9) ¿ Habla, escribe y traduce, correctamente, varios idiomas, este joven ? (10) ¿ Hay también, en la oficina de su tío, otro empleado muy antiguo que lleva los libros y que es casado ? (11) ¿ Es este empleado el tenedor de libros ? (12) ¿ Tiene este tenedor de libros una hermana que es viuda ? (13) ¿ Cuántas personas trabajan en la oficina de su tío ? (14) ¿ Cuántos operarios trabajan en la fábrica de su tío ? (15) ¿ Es su tío fabricante de automóviles ?

(16) ¿ Es el secretario particular de su tío primo carnal del dependiente que hace las facturas y los conocimientos de embarque? (17) ¿ Sabe taquigrafía el secretario particular de su tío? (18) ¿ Escribe, taquigráficamente, el secretario particular de su tío, las cartas que su tío le dicta? (19) ¿ De quién es primo carnal el secretario particular de su tío? (20) ¿ Es el dependiente que hace las facturas y los conocimientos de embarque un amigo inseparable del cajero de la casa? (21) ¿ Tienen los amigos inseparables, aproximadamente, la misma edad? (22) ¿ Qué edad tiene el uno? (23) ¿ Cuántos años tiene el otro? (24) ¿ Tienen también, los dos amigos, las mismas aspiraciones y el mismo entusiasmo por el idioma español? (25) ¿Cuál es la primera oración de imperativo que (ellos) tienen que estudiar? (26) ¿Cuál es la segunda? (27) ¿Cuáles son la tercera, la cuarta y la quinta? (28) ¿Cuál es la última oración de la lección?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) There are clerks who have dumb relatives. (2) In our uncle's office there is one clerk who has lame first cousins (masc.), armless nephews, cross-eyed nieces, and a brother-in-law who stammers. (3) My uncle, who is a match manufacturer, has, in his office, clerks who write in shorthand, who typewrite, and who keep books. (4) My uncle's private secretary and the cashier of his factory are very intimate friends. (5) My uncle's private secretary is twenty-six years old, and the cashier is twenty-seven. (6) The cashier and my uncle's private secretary have the same aspirations and the same enthusiasm for (*por*) the language that they are studying, and on this account they have learned the following imperative sentences: Speak (fam. form sing.) because I want to hear you. (7) Study (familiar form plural) if you want to learn. (8) Drink (polite form sing.) water or another beverage if you are thirsty. (9) Enjoy (polite form plur.) life with the money that I have given you. (10) Let us eat the apple pie immediately. (11) Typewrite (polite form sing.) this

letter and give it to me. (12) Write (polite form sing.) in shorthand what I am going to dictate to you: "My dog barks and your cat mews."

NOTES

1. Literal meaning of the expressions which follow and which are in the *Vocabulary*: *conocimiento de embarque*, knowledge of shipment; *departamento de exportación*, department of exportation; *el uno tiene veinticuatro años*, the one has twenty-four years; *tenedor de libros*, holder of books; *tener la misma edad*, to have the same age.

2. The words *corresponsal* and *intérprete* belong to the common gender.

3. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *morder* in model 7, page 368; *traducir* in model 12, page 369.

4. Study what is said under the *Imperative Mood—Its Uses*, page 331, and everything given under the heading *Formation of the Imperative*, also on page 331.

5. Notice the absence of the indefinite article before *viuda*, sentence 10, *Theme*.

6. The literal meaning of question 22 is *What age has the one?*

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y DOS—LESSON THIRTY-TWO

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

amor con amor se paga , love repays (or begets) love.	hacer votos fervientes , to sincerely hope.
aquí , here.	honda impresión , <i>f.</i> , deep impression.
arañazo , scratch.	imaginarse , to imagine.
bajo los ojos , under (or below) the eyes.	indudablemente , undoubtedly.
bicicleta , bicycle.	jardín zoológico , zoölogical garden.
boca del estómago , pit of the stomach.	jugar , <i>irr.</i> , to play.
bofetada , slap.	memoria , memory.
buscar , to look for, to seek.	misericordioso , merciful.
buscar camorra , to look for trouble.	mordisco , bite.
cabezazo , knock (or blow) with the head.	ordenar , to order.
camello , camel.	paloma , pigeon, dove.
camorrista , <i>m., f.</i> , quarrelsome, bully (both noun and adj.).	pasar por alto , to overlook.
canario , canary bird.	patada , kick.
caritativo , charitable.	patines , <i>m.</i> , skates.
ciertas ideas , certain ideas.	pavo real , peacock.
cisne , <i>m.</i> , swan.	pedrada , blow with a thrown stone.
completamente , completely.	perdiz , (<i>f.</i>), partridge.
conejo , rabbit.	prohibir , to forbid.
contestar , to answer.	puntapié , <i>m.</i> , kick with the tip of the shoe.
correr , to run.	puñetazo en las muclas , punch on the jaw.
costado izquierdo , left side.	rana , frog.
de esos , of the kind (lit. of those).	raqueta , racket (for tennis).
dudar , to doubt.	recobrar , to recover, to recuperate.
equivocación , <i>f.</i> , mistake.	refrán , <i>m.</i> , saying (noun).
error , <i>m.</i> , error.	riña , quarrel, fray.
expresar , to express (by means of speech).	sentir , <i>irr.</i> , to feel, to be sorry.
felicidad , <i>f.</i> , happiness.	siento infinito , I am very sorry.
firme creyente , firm believer (<i>creyente, m., f.</i>).	sudar , to perspire.
ganso , goose.	suplicar , to beseech, to beg.
golpe , <i>m.</i> , blow.	temer , to fear.
gorrión , <i>m.</i> , sparrow.	tenis , <i>m.</i> , tennis.
	verdadero , veritable, true, real.

Presente de Subjuntivo—Present Subjunctive.

hablar	comer	vivir
hable	coma	viva
hables	comas	vivas
hable	coma	viva
hablemos	comamos	vivamos
habléis	comáis	viváis
hablen	coman	vivan
I may speak, etc.	I may eat, etc.	I may live, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un muchacho le ha dado a otro un puñetazo en las muelas, una bofetada en la cara, y una patada en la boca del estómago.

(2) El que ha dado un puñetazo en las muelas, una bofetada en la cara y una patada en la boca del estómago, ha recibido una pedrada en la barba, un mordisco en la mano derecha, siete arañazos bajo los ojos, un cabezazo en el costado izquierdo, cinco puntapiés en los tobillos, y veinticinco golpes de esos que hacen honda impresión en la memoria y en el cuerpo de quien los recibe.

(3) La riña empezó de esta manera: uno de los muchachos principió a buscar camorra expresando ciertas ideas con palabras que, naturalmente, tengo que pasar por alto, y el otro muchacho que, indudablemente, es un firme creyente en el refrán que dice “Amor con amor se paga,” contestó al camorrista en la forma que fácilmente podemos imaginarnos.

(4) Yo me imagino muchas cosas. (5) También se imagina muchas cosas el hijo de un hombre que suda mucho cuando (él) corre mucho. (6) Este hombre tiene en su casa camellos, cisnes, canarios, gorriones, gansos, pavos reales, palomas, perdices, ranas y conejos. (7) El hijo de este hombre, cuya casa es un verdadero jardín zoológico, se imagina un mundo mucho mejor que el mundo en que vivimos.

(8) Con su imaginación (él) ve más felicidad entre los hombres, menos riñas y menos miseria, y también el presente de subjuntivo español en los siguientes ejemplos: Deseo que usted aprenda español. (9) Dudo que ellos hagan el error

o la equivocación que usted ha hecho. (10) Le ordenaré a él que le escriba a su papá pidiéndole dinero para comprar los patines, y la raqueta que (él) necesita para jugar al tenis. (11) Le suplico a usted que (usted) me preste el caballo o la bicicleta. (12) Temo que él no venga con el helado. (13) Le he prohibido a él que cuchichee con su vecino en la sala de clase. (14) Me alegro mucho que usted esté aquí con los emparedados. (15) Siento infinito que él esté enfermo. (16) Hago votos fervientes por que ese misericordioso y caritativo caballero recobre su salud pronto y completamente.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué le ha dado un muchacho a otro? (2) ¿Qué ha recibido el muchacho que ha dado un puñetazo en las muelas, una bofetada en la cara, y una patada en la boca del estómago? (3) ¿Cómo empezó la riña? (4) ¿Es el muchacho que contestó al camorrista, en la forma que facilmente podemos imaginarnos, un firme creyente en el refrán que dice “Amor con amor se paga”? (5) ¿Se imagina usted muchas cosas? (6) ¿Qué cosas se imagina usted? (7) ¿Se imagina también muchas cosas el hijo de un hombre que suda mucho cuando corre mucho? (8) ¿Qué animales tiene en su casa este hombre? (9) ¿Es la casa de este hombre, cuyo hijo se imagina muchas cosas, un verdadero jardín zoológico? (10) ¿Ve con su imaginación, el hijo de este hombre, un mundo mucho mejor que el mundo en que vivimos? (11) ¿Ve él también más felicidad entre los hombres, menos riñas y menos miseria? (12) ¿Ve él también, con su imaginación, el presente de subjuntivo? (13) ¿Desea usted que yo aprenda español? (14) ¿Qué duda usted? (15) ¿Qué le ordenará usted a él? (16) ¿Me suplica usted a mí que (yo) le preste el caballo o la bicicleta? (17) ¿Teme usted que él no venga con el helado? (18) ¿Qué le ha prohibido usted a él? (19) ¿Se alegra usted mucho que yo esté aquí con los patines? (20) ¿Siente usted infinito que él esté enfermo? (21) ¿Hace usted votos fervientes por que ese misericordioso y caritativo caballero se mejore?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) A boy who has a bicycle and a dictionary imagines many things. (2) This boy who imagines many things says, now and then, that slaps, kicks and punches on the jaw often make a deep impression on the body of the person who receives them. (3) This same boy uses, as much as you (polite form sing.) do, this proverb: "Love begets love." (4) This same boy does not know how many pigeons, peacocks and rabbits his father has in his house. (5) This boy perspired much yesterday when he was studying the following examples of the present subjunctive: We want you (pol. form sing.) to learn shorthand and the new tense of to-day's lesson. (6) They doubt that he speaks Spanish as well as his brother. (7) You (polite form plural) order me to write, to jump and to run. (8) They beseech us to lend him everything that he may need. (9) I forbid you (familiar form plural) to stretch your neck to see the fight. (10) I am glad that you (familiar form singular) are here. (11) I am sorry that he does not overlook that. (12) I sincerely hope that you (pol. form plur.) will soon recover your health and your millions.

NOTES

1. *Cisne, gorrión, perdiz* and *rana* are names of animals which belong to the epicene gender. See what is said under *The Epicene Gender*, page 229. The gender given in the *Vocabulary*, and which follows the general rule, is the one used before the names of these animals.

2. Literal meaning of the expressions which follow and which are in the *Vocabulary*: *pasar por alto*, to pass through high; *puñetazo en las muelas*, blow with the closed fist in the molar teeth; *siento infinito*, I feel infinite.

3. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *jugar*, model 19, page 372; *sentir*, model 18, page 371.

4. Study everything given under *Formation of the Present Subjunctive*, page 339, and under *The Present Subjunctive—Its Uses*, page 338.

5. *Le*, which precedes *ha dado*, in the first sentence of the *Theme*, and the second *le* of sentence 10, is not translated in English. See what is said under the *Dative of Interest*, page 269.

6. Notice at the end of sentence 3, and at the beginning of sentences 4 and 5 of the *Theme*, that the equivalent of the English verb *to imagine* is used reflexively.

7. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present subjunctive: *hacer*, model 31, page 378; *venir*, model 45, page 383; *estar*, model 29, page 377. Do not translate *lo* in sentence 3, Eng. Ex.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y TRES—LESSON THIRTY-THREE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

- ajuar de novia**, *m.*, trousseau.
amar, to love.
amarse, to love oneself, to love each other or one another.
amarse con delirio, to be desperately in love with each other (lit. to love each other with delirium).
anillo de compromiso, engagement ring.
aprender de memoria, to learn by heart (lit. to learn of memory).
aristocrática, aristocratic.
bastante largas, fairly long.
beldad, *f.*, beauty.
boda, wedding.
brazalete, *m.*, bracelet.
brisa marina, sea breeze.
casamiento, marriage, wedding.
casarse, to get married, to marry.
cola, train (of a dress), tail, glue.
collar, *m.*, necklace.
concisión, *f.*, conciseness.
de la más alta novedad, of the latest fashion.
dentro de pocos días, in a few days.
diamante, *m.*, diamond.
diminuto, diminute, diminutive, little, small.
dólar, *m.*, dollar (duro in Spain; peso in Spanish America).
don, Mr. (with dignity; used only before the given (or first) name of a person).
dote, *m., f.*, dowry.
efectuarse, to take place.
el elegido de su corazón, the chosen one of (his or) her heart.
elegancia, elegance.
ellegantísimo, most elegant.
facilidad pasmosa, wonderful ease.
Fulano de Tal, So and So (Mr.).
golondrina, swallow.
grillo, cricket.
hace ya varios meses, since several months ago.
hacerse comprender, to make oneself understood.
hispanoamericano, Spanish-American.
invitación, *f.*, invitation.
lazo, bow, loop, trap.
lugar, *m.*, place (noun).
luna de miel, *f.*, honeymoon (lit. moon of honey).
mariposa, butterfly.
matrimonio, marriage, matrimony, married couple.
memorable acontecimiento, memorable event or happening.
mil y pico, a thousand and some odd, a thousand and one.
naranjo, orange tree.
novia, bride, sweetheart (novio, *m.*).
palmera, palm tree.
Perico de los Palotes, John Doe.

piedra preciosa , precious stone.	saltamontes , <i>m.</i> , grasshopper.
platino , platinum.	santo lazo del matrimonio , holy bonds of matrimony (lit. holy loop, etc.).
por medio de , by means of.	sostener , irr., to sustain, to support, to carry on.
prendedor , <i>m.</i> , breastpin.	suave , soft.
prometida , fiancée, betrothed.	única , only, unique.
rebaño de ovejas , flock of sheep.	unir , to unite.
recién casados , newly wedded couple.	vale un dineral , it is worth a large sum of money.
repartidas , distributed, sent out.	valer , irr., to be worth.
ruiseñor , <i>m.</i> , nightingale.	

TEMA—THEME

(1) La primera cosa que yo digo en esta lección es que, ahora, (yo) puedo hacerme comprender, bastante bien, en español. (2) Digo esto porque, con las mil y pico de palabras que he estudiado y aprendido, (yo) puedo expresar sin dificultad, y con elegancia y concisión, algunas ideas y pensamientos míos.

(3) La segunda cosa que (yo) digo es que un condiscípulo mío ha aprendido de memoria, con facilidad pasmosa, las lecciones que ha estudiado, y que ya sostiene conversaciones, bastante largas, con los varios amigos españoles e hispano-americanos que (él) tiene.

(4) La tercera cosa que yo digo en esta lección es que, dentro de pocos días, se casará la hija única de don Perico de los Palotes con el hijo del señor Fulano de Tal.

(5) El memorable acontecimiento de unir, por medio del santo lazo del matrimonio, a estos dos seres que se aman con delirio, se efectuará en una de las iglesias más aristocráticas de la ciudad. (6) El ajuar de novia de la hija de don Perico de los Palotes está listo. (7) Vale un dineral. (8) Las invitaciones están repartidas.

(9) La prometida del hijo del Señor Fulano de Tal, que es una beldad, y que lleva, en uno de los diminutos dedos de la mano izquierda, el anillo de compromiso que el elegido de su corazón le dió, llevará el día de la boda un traje blanco elegantísimo, de la más alta novedad, con una cola muy larga.

(10) La novia recibirá el día del casamiento un dote de medio millón de dólares, y los siguientes regalos: un collar de perlas y diamantes, tres brazaletes de oro con treinta y dos rubíes, un prendedor de platino con cuarenta piedras preciosas, y miles de otras cosas.

(11) Los recién casados pasarán la luna de miel en un lugar ideal, en el cual las palmeras y los naranjos reciben, constantemente, las suaves caricias de las brisas marinas.

(12) En ese lugar ideal hay una infinidad de mariposas y golondrinas, inmensos rebaños de ovejas, y también grillos, saltamontes y ruiseñores.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué es la primera cosa que usted dice en esta lección? (2) ¿Por qué dice usted esto? (3) ¿Cuál es la segunda cosa que usted dice en esta lección? (4) ¿Ha aprendido un discípulo de usted las lecciones que (él) ha estudiado con facilidad pasmosa? (5) ¿Sostiene este discípulo conversaciones, bastante largas, con los amigos españoles e hispano-americanos que ya tiene? (6) ¿Sostiene usted conversaciones, bastante largas, en español? (7) ¿Quién se casará dentro de pocos días? (8) ¿Con quién se casará la hija de don Perico de los Palotes? (9) ¿Dónde se efectuará el memorable acontecimiento de unir, por medio del santo lazo del matrimonio, a estos dos seres que se aman con delirio? (10) ¿Está ya listo el ajuar de novia de la hija de don Perico de los Palotes? (11) ¿Vale un dineral este ajuar de novia? (12) ¿Están repartidas las invitaciones para la boda? (13) ¿Es una beldad la prometida del hijo del señor Fulano de Tal? (14) ¿Hace varios meses que esta simpática señorita lleva, en uno de los diminutos dedos de la mano izquierda, el anillo de compromiso? (15) ¿Quién le dió (a ella) el anillo de compromiso? (16) ¿Qué traje llevará el día de la boda esta señorita? (17) ¿Recibirá la novia, el día del casamiento, un dote de medio millón de dólares? (18) ¿Recibirá ella, también, un collar de perlas y diamantes, tres brazaletes de oro con treinta y dos rubíes, y un prendedor de platino con

cuarenta piedras preciosas? (19) ¿Recibirá ella, también, miles de otras cosas el día del memorable acontecimiento? (20) ¿Dónde pasarán los recién casados la luna de miel? (21) ¿Hay en ese lugar ideal, infinidad de mariposas y golondrinas? (22) ¿Hay allí también inmensos rebaños de ovejas? (23) ¿Hay allí también grillos, saltamontes y ruiseñores?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Two friends of hers have said to me to-day: "We learn our lessons with wonderful ease. (2) We can make ourselves understood in Spanish fairly well. (3) In the language that we are studying, we can express with elegance many ideas and thoughts. (4) The wedding day of Mr. So and So's son and Mr. John Doe's daughter will be memorable. (5) The trousseau of the bride is worth five thousand dollars. (6) The bride, who is a beauty, wears the engagement ring on a finger of her (*la*) left hand. (7) The bride will receive hundreds of presents on her wedding day. (8) Soon we expect to receive an invitation to that most important event. (9) In the valley where the newly wedded couple will spend their honeymoon, there are many sheep and a great many butterflies. (10) This beautiful valley belongs to a friend of ours who is a millionaire. (11) When we see (pres. subj.) this millionaire friend of ours, at the newly wedded couple's home, we shall tell him that we are able to carry on long conversations in Spanish. (12) He will undoubtedly tell us that he is glad to hear that."

NOTES

1. The literal meaning of the expressions which follow is: *anillo de compromiso*, ring of compromise; *hacerse comprender*, to make oneself to understand; *santo lazo del matrimonio*, holy loop of the matrimony.

2. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *sostener* in model 27, page 377; *valer*, model 24, page 373.

3. The *e* precedes *hispanoamericano* at the end of sentence 3, *Theme*, instead of the *y*, for euphonic reasons.

4. *Se casará . . . con*, sentence 4, is rendered by . . . *will be married to*.

5. In sentence 10, *el día del casamiento* is rendered by *on the day of the wedding*.

6. *Many sheep and a great many butterflies*, of sentence 9, *English Exercise*, must respectively be translated by *muchas ovejas* and *muchísimas mariposas*.

7. *That he is glad to hear that*, sentence 12, is equivalent to *que él se alegra de oírlo*.

8. The *a* of *a millionaire*, sentence 11, must not be translated.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y CUATRO—LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a mi vez , in my turn.	mono , monkey (cute, adj.).
águila , eagle.	murciélago , bat.
animal , <i>m.</i> , animal.	Navidad , <i>f.</i> , Christmas.
araña , spider.	necesidad , <i>f.</i> , need (noun)
asegurar , to assure, to insure.	necessity.
aunque , though, even though.	oficialmente , officially.
avestruz , <i>m.</i> , ostrich.	oso , bear.
cabra , she-goat.	pagar , to pay.
centavo , cent.	pantera , panther.
ciervo , deer.	rata , rat.
cigüeña , stork, crane.	ratón , <i>m.</i> , mouse.
colector , <i>m.</i> , conductor, collector (mayoral in several places of South America).	recreo , recreation, amusement.
cocodrilo , crocodile.	regresar , to return.
cuervo , raven, crow.	rinoceronte , <i>m.</i> , rhinoceros.
culebra , snake.	sastre , <i>m.</i> , tailor.
diferente , different.	seguramente , surely.
Dios mediante , God willing.	sentar , <i>irr.</i> , to fit, to sit down (el que mejor me sienta, the one which fits me best).
dromedario , dromedary.	serpiente , <i>f.</i> , serpent.
favorito , favorite, pet.	tigre , <i>m.</i> , tiger.
girafa , giraffe.	toro , bull.
hipopótamo , hippopotamus.	vehículo , vehicle, conveyance.
interés , <i>m.</i> , interest.	vestir , <i>irr.</i> , to dress.
jabalí , <i>m.</i> , wild boar.	vestir con lo mejor del baúl , to dress in one's Sunday best (lit. to dress with the best of the trunk).
lechuza , owl.	zorro , fox, an astute person.
león , <i>m.</i> , lion.	
lobo , wolf.	
llama , llama (animal), flame.	

Condicional—Conditional.

hablar	comer	vivir
hablaría	comería	viviría
hablarías	comerías	vivirías
hablaría	comería	viviría
hablaríamos	comeríamos	viviríamos
hablaríais	comeríais	viviríais
hablarían	comerían	vivirían
I should speak, etc.	I should eat, etc.	I should live, etc.

Imperfecto de Subjuntivo—Imperfect Subjunctive.**hablar****comer****vivir****Primera Forma**—First Form.

hablara	comiera	viviera
hablaras	comieras	vivieras
hablara	comiera	viviera
habláramos	comiéramos	viviéramos
hablarais	comierais	vivierais
hablaran	comieran	vivieran

Segunda Forma—Second Form.

hablase	comiese	viviese
hablases	comieses	vivieses
hablase	comiese	viviese
hablásemos	comiésemos	viviésemos
hablaseis	comieseis	vivieseis
hablasen	comiesen	viviesen

If I spoke, or

If I ate, or

If I live, or

If I should speak, etc.

If I should eat, etc.

If I should live, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) El domingo próximo, Dios mediante, (yo) llevaré a mi sobrino favorito a ver los animales del jardín zoológico. (2) Iré en el tranvía eléctrico, y pagaré al cobrador del vehículo veinte centavos por el viaje de mi pariente y por el mío.

(3) Este sobrino favorito mío, que es muy mono, se vestirá con lo mejor del baúl para ir a ver los monos y muchos otros animales. (4) Yo, a mi vez, me pondré el traje que el sastre me hizo siete u ocho días antes de Navidad, porque es el que mejor me sienta.

(5) En el jardín zoológico, mi sobrino y yo veremos primero los monos, los tigres, los leones, las panteras, los osos, los elefantes, los jabalíes, las culebras, las serpientes, los ciervos, las llamas y los dromedarios. (6) Después (nosotros) veremos los lobos, los zorros, las girafas, los rinocerontes, los hipopótamos, los cuervos, las águilas, las cabras, los toros, las lechuzas, las cigüeñas, los avestruces y los cocodrilos.

(7) Como mi sobrino y yo no tendremos interés en ver las ratas, los ratones, los murciélagos y las arañas que hay, aunque no oficialmente, en el jardín zoológico, (nosotros) dejaremos este centro de recreo después de ver los cocodrilos, y regresaremos a casa a las cinco.

(8) En casa (nosotros) estudiaremos los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy en los siguientes ejemplos: Si usted hablara español conmigo, yo hablaría español con usted. (9) Si usted comiera manzanas asadas, yo comería lo mismo o algo diferente. (10) Si ellos no viviesen donde viven, ellos vivirían, seguramente, en otra parte. (11) Si (yo) tuviera necesidad de estudiar las lecciones de español dos o tres horas, le aseguro a usted que no las estudiaría veinte o veinticinco minutos.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Cuándo llevará usted a su sobrino favorito a ver los animales del jardín zoológico? (2) ¿Cómo irán usted y su sobrino al jardín zoológico? (3) ¿Cuánto dinero pagará usted al cobrador del vehículo por el viaje de los dos? (4) ¿Cómo se vestirá este sobrino favorito suyo, que es muy mono, para ir a ver los monos y muchos otros animales? (5) ¿Se pondrá usted, a su vez, el traje que el sastre le hizo siete u ocho días antes de Navidad? (6) ¿Se pondrá usted este traje porque es el que mejor le sienta? (7) ¿Qué animales verán primero, usted y su sobrino, en el jardín zoológico? (8) ¿Verán ustedes después los lobos, los zorros, las girafas, los rinocerontes y los hipopótamos? (9) ¿Verán ustedes también los cuervos, las águilas, las cabras, los toros y las lechuzas? (10) ¿Verán ustedes también las cigüeñas, los avestruces y los cocodrilos? (11) ¿Tendrán, usted y su sobrino, interés en ver las ratas, los ratones, los murciélagos y las arañas que hay en el jardín zoológico? (12) ¿Dejarán ustedes este centro de recreo después de ver los cocodrilos? (13) ¿A qué hora regresarán ustedes a casa? (14) ¿Qué tiempos estudiarán ustedes en casa? (15) ¿En cuánto tiempo estudiarán ustedes los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy? (16) ¿Cuánto tiempo ha estudiado usted la lección de hoy? (17) ¿Haría usted español conmigo, si yo hablara español con usted? (18) ¿Comería usted lo mismo que yo, o algo diferente, si yo comiera manzanas asadas? (19) ¿Vivirían ellos en otra parte, si (ellos) no viviesen en donde

(ellos) viven? (20) ¿Estudiaría usted las lecciones de español dos o tres horas, si (usted) no las aprendiera en veinte o veinticinco minutos?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Next Sunday, God willing, we shall go to the zoölogical garden. (2) In the zoölogical garden we shall see tigers, panthers, lions, deer and monkeys. (3) In the zoölogical garden we shall also see wild boars, the hippopotamus, the serpents, the eagles and the giraffes. (4) In the zoölogical garden we shall see neither chickens nor roosters, because there are no animals of this kind there. (5) At about five o'clock we shall be at home studying the imperfect subjunctive and the conditional, in the following examples: If you (familiar form singular) spoke (*or should speak*) Spanish with me, I would speak Spanish with you. (6) If you (familiar form plural) had (*or should have*) in your house as many animals as our neighbor has, you would be rich. (7) If you (polite form sing.) did not study (*or should not study*) so much as you study, you would not learn (cond.) so much as you learn. (8) If you (polite form plural) knew (*or should know*) what I know about him, you would never give him money again. (9) If they did (*or should do*) what you (pol. form pl.) have done, they would also suffer the consequences. (10) If he did not live here, he would live in Spain, in Mexico or in South America. (11) We thought that he would arrive (cond.) soon, but we see that he has not arrived as yet. (12) I begged him to study (imperfect subjunctive) the new tenses of to-day's lesson, but he has not studied them as yet.

NOTES

1. All the names of animals given in the *Vocabulary*, with the exception of *cabra*, *ciervo*, *jabalí*, *león*, *lobo*, *mono*, *oso*, *toro* and *zorro*, belong to the epicene gender. The gender given in the *Vocabulary*, and which follows the general rule, is the one used before the names of these animals.

2. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *sentar* in model 1, page 367; *vestir* in model 15, page 370.

3. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the future indicative: *poner*, model 40, page 381; *tener*, model 27, page 377.

4. Study the irregularities of *hacer*, model 31, page 378, in the past.

5. Study the formation of the conditional under *How to Obtain the Conditional*, page 329, and rules 1, 2 and 3, under *Uses of the Conditional*, page 327.

6. Study everything given under *Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive*, page 341; everything given under *The Imperfect Subjunctive—Its Uses*, page 340, and everything given under *Deviations from the Rule Above Given for the Use of the Imperfect Subjunctive*, page 340.

7. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the imperfect subjunctive: *tener*, model 27, page 377; *saber*, model 42, page 382; *hacer*, model 31, page 378.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y CINCO—LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

almanaque , <i>m.</i> , almanac.	hielo , ice.
anunciar , to advertise, to announce.	letra gorda , large letter, heavy type (of letters), (lit. fat letter).
anuncio , advertisement, sign, announcement (aviso in Argentina).	llover , irr., to rain.
aparición , appearance.	llover a cántaros , to rain in torrents, bucketfuls or cats and dogs.
arco iris , <i>m.</i> , rainbow.	lluvia , rain.
arreglarse , to manage, to arrange oneself.	maíz , <i>m.</i> , corn.
ascensor , <i>m.</i> , elevator.	marfil , <i>m.</i> , ivory.
avena , oats.	mojarse , to get wet.
cacer , irr., to fall.	nácar , <i>m.</i> , mother-of-pearl.
calendario , calendar.	nevar , irr., to snow.
carey , <i>m.</i> , tortoise-shell.	nevar copiosamente , to snow hard or abundantly.
cartel , <i>m.</i> , poster, placard.	nieve , <i>f.</i> , snow.
cartera de bolsillo , wallet.	papel secante , <i>m.</i> , blotter, blotting paper.
catálogo , catalogue.	pechera de la camisa , shirt-bosom.
cebada , barley.	pequeñito , very small.
centeno , rye.	pisapapeles , <i>m.</i> , paperweight.
circular , <i>f.</i> , circular (noun).	portaplumas , <i>m.</i> , penholder.
comercial , commercial.	profecía , prophecy.
conseguir , irr., to get, to obtain (with effort).	programa , <i>m.</i> , program.
cortaplumas , <i>m.</i> , penknife, pocket-knife.	que yo sepa , as far as I know, so far as I know.
cumplir , to fulfil, to discharge (a duty).	rayo , thunderbolt, beam or ray of light.
de alguna manera , in some way.	regla , ruler, rule, precept.
de regalo , as a gift or present.	relámpago , flash of lightning.
enviar , to send.	revista , magazine, review.
es increíble , it is incredible.	trigo , wheat.
espejo redondo , round looking-glass.	tronar , irr., to thunder.
establecimiento , establishment.	trueno , thunder.
evitar , to avoid, to evade.	verdadera obra de arte , real work of art (lit. true work of art).
fabricación , <i>f.</i> , make, construction.	y así me arreglo , and so I manage.
folleto , pamphlet, booklet.	yo soy así , I am this way (lit. I am so).
goma de borrar , eraser (for pencil or ink).	

Perfecto de Subjuntivo—Perfect Subjunctive.

hablar	comer	vivir
haya hablado	haya comido	haya vivido
hayas hablado	hayas comido	hayas vivido
haya hablado	haya comido	haya vivido
hayamos hablado	hayamos comido	hayamos vivido
hayáis hablado	hayáis comido	hayáis vivido
hayan hablado	hayan comido	hayan vivido
I may have spoken, etc.	I may have eaten, etc.	I may have lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Hoy (yo) he recibido de regalo un calendario. (2) Este calendario es un anuncio del establecimiento comercial que me lo ha enviado.

(3) De otras casas de comercio (yo) espero recibir pronto estos otros regalos: un portaplumas, una regla, una goma de borrar, un papel secante, un cortaplumas, un espejo redondo pequeñito, un pisapapeles, una cartera de bolsillo, y un escarbadientes muy bonito de nácar, carey y marfil. (4) El escarbadientes de nácar, carey y marfil, es un anuncio de la casa de mi tío.

(5) Mi tío anuncia los automóviles de su fabricación en periódicos y revistas, en trenes y en tranvías, en catálogos, circulares y folletos, en los programas de los teatros, y en la pechera de la camisa de unos hombres que tienen la apariencia de caballeros. (6) También anuncia mi tío sus automóviles en grandes carteles, con letras muy gordas, y en grandes anuncios eléctricos que son colocados en los tejados de las casas.

(7) En los tejados de las casas de la ciudad en que (yo) vivo, hay anuncios eléctricos que son verdaderas obras de arte. (8) En mi casa hay un almanaque que anuncia lo siguiente: “El veinticinco de abril del año que viene, nevará copiosamente, tronará mucho, lloverá a cántaros, y caerán muchos rayos.”

(9) Yo no sé si esta profecía se cumplirá, pero lo que sé es que, cuando llueve, no salgo de casa, si puedo evitarlo, porque (yo) no deseo mojarme. (10) Si (yo) necesito algo, lo

pido, generalmente, por teléfono, o envío a alguien a buscarlo.

(11) Y así (yo) me arreglo.

(12) Hoy (yo) he conseguido, de una de las dos maneras arriba mencionadas, trigo, cebada, avena, centeno y maíz.

(13) Si (yo) necesitara mañana alguna otra cosa (yo) la conseguiría de alguna manera aunque lloviese a cántaros.

(14) Yo soy así, y por esto (yo) digo que muchas personas tienen miedo a los truenos, a los relámpagos, a la lluvia, a la nieve y al hielo. (15) Que yo sepa, nadie tiene miedo al arco iris.

(16) Yo veo siempre con placer el arco iris, y también los siguientes ejemplos del tiempo nuevo: Yo no creo que ella haya hablado con él. (17) Es imposible que él haya comido tanto como (él) dice. (18) Es increíble que (él) haya vivido tantos años en ese hotel que no tiene ni luz eléctrica ni ascensores.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué ha recibido usted, hoy, de regalo? (2) ¿Es este calendario un anuncio del establecimiento comercial que se lo envía? (3) ¿Qué otros regalos espera usted recibir pronto de otras casas de comercio? (4) ¿Es el escarbadiantes de nácar, carey y marfil, un anuncio de la casa de su tío? (5) ¿Anuncia su tío los automóviles de su fabricación en periódicos y revistas? (6) ¿Los anuncia (él) también en catálogos, circulares y folletos? (7) ¿Los anuncia (él) también en los programas de los teatros, y en la pechera de la camisa de unos hombres que tienen la apariencia de caballeros? (8) ¿Los anuncia (él) también en grandes carteles con letras muy gordas? (9) ¿Los anuncia (él) también en grandes anuncios eléctricos que son colocados en los tejados de las casas? (10) ¿Hay anuncios eléctricos que son verdaderas obras de arte, en la ciudad en que usted vive? (11) ¿Qué anuncia un almanaque que hay en su casa? (12) ¿Sabe usted si esta profecía se cumplirá o no? (13) ¿Sabe usted que cuando llueve, si (usted) puede evitarlo, (usted) no sale de casa porque (usted) no desea mojarse? (14) ¿Pide usted lo que (usted) necesita,

por teléfono, cuando llueve? (15) ¿Envía usted a alguien a buscar lo que (usted) necesita, si (usted) no lo pide por teléfono? (16) ¿Se arregla usted así? (17) ¿Qué ha conseguido usted, hoy, de una de las dos maneras arriba mencionadas? (18) ¿Conseguiría usted alguna otra cosa, de alguna manera, aunque lloviese a cántaros? (19) ¿Dice usted, ahora, que muchas personas tienen miedo a los relámpagos? (20) ¿Quién tiene miedo a la lluvia, a la nieve y al hielo? (21) ¿Quién tiene miedo al arco iris? (22) ¿Qué ve usted, con placer, siempre? (23) ¿Ve usted también, con placer, los ejemplos de los tiempos nuevos? (24) ¿Por qué no cree usted que ella haya hablado español con él? (25) ¿Cree usted que es imposible que él haya comido tanto como (él) dice? (26) ¿Qué es increíble?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Commercial houses send, as presents, calendars, wallets, blotters, and other things. (2) These presents are advertisements of the commercial houses which send them. (3) My uncle advertises the automobiles of his make, in newspapers, in circulars, and in the shirt-bosoms of some men who look like gentlemen. (4) On the roof of a house of the city in which we live, there is an electrical advertisement which is a real work of art. (5) This electrical advertisement advertises phonographic records and talking machines. (6) We go to see this electrical advertisement when there is ice on the lake and when we can see the white snow on the roofs of the houses. (7) Yesterday, when it was raining in torrents, we did not go to the square to see this electrical advertisement because we did not want (imperf. ind.) to get wet. (8) The rainbow that we saw (past) yesterday, after it had rained in torrents, was large and beautiful. (9) When it rains and thunders they are not afraid of going out into the street, because they fear neither rain nor thunder. (10) Yesterday it rained and thundered much, but, while it rained and thundered, they went to the store to buy writing paper and pens. (11) My mother often says to me: "Put

on your (familiar form singular) rubbers and your raincoat so that you may not get wet.” (12) I answer her (so): “Mother, I will do what you (polite form singular) want me to do, because, if I should not do it, I would suffer terribly and I would not be able to sleep for (*por*) several days.”

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs: *caer*, model 46, page 383; *conseguir* in model 15, page 370; *llover*, in model 7, page 368; *nevar* in model 1, page 367; *tronar* in model 5, page 367.

2. Study everything given under *Formation of the Perfect Subjunctive*, page 340, and everything under *The Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses*, page 339.

3. *Del año que viene*, sentence 8 of the *Theme*, is rendered thus: *of the coming year*.

4. *De unos hombres que tienen la apariencia de caballeros*, sentence 5, is equivalent to *of some men who look like gentlemen*. (*These men who look like gentlemen wear evening-dress. The advertisements which appear on their shirt-bosoms are electric.*)

5. *Por teléfono*, of sentence 10, is equivalent to *over the phone*, and *envío a alguien a buscarlo*, of the same sentence, to *I send some one to get it*; literally *to look for it*.

6. *Tantos años*, of sentence 18, is rendered by *so many years*.

7. Study the past indicative of *ver*, model 44, page 383; also the past of *ir*, model 37, page 380, because the past of these verbs is used in the *English Exercise*.

8. *They fear neither rain nor thunder*, sentence 9 of the *English Exercise*, is the equivalent of *ellos no temen ni a la lluvia ni a los truenos*.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y SEIS—LESSON THIRTY-SIX

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

- a gritos**, at the top of one's voice (grito, shout, howl).
acostarse, irr., to go to bed, to lie down.
administración general de correos, *f.*, main post-office.
alargar, to stretch out, to lengthen.
alarma, alarm (noun).
apagar, to put out.
bajar, to come (or go) down, to come (or go) downstairs, to descend.
bata, dressing-gown, bath robe.
bomba de incendio, fire-engine.
bombero, fireman.
campana, bell.
catástrofe, *f.*, catastrophe, conflagration.
contenido, contents, context.
de nuevo, again.
de un modo nervioso, in a nervous way.
desmayo, swoon, fainting fit.
después de haberme quedado dormido, after having fallen asleep.
destrucción, *f.*, destruction.
en un santiamén, in the twinkling of an eye.
enormes llamas, huge flames.
enterarse, to note, to take notice, to become aware.
entregar, to deliver, to hand over.
escalera, ladder, staircase.
explosión formidable, terrific explosion.
heroísmo, heroism.
humo, smoke.
incendio, fire, conflagration.
luchar, to struggle, to fight.
luchar con las llamas, to fight the flames.
llave, *f.*, key.
manguera, hose (fire hose).
mensajero, messenger.
nervioso, nervous.
oficina central de telégrafos, main telegraph office.
policía, police (policía is policeman when masc.).
quedarse, to remain.
quedarse dormido, to fall asleep.
¿quién es? who is it? (lit. who is?)
reanudar, to resume.
restregar, irr., to rub.
reunir, to gather.
romper, irr., to break.
ronca, adj., hoarse.
salvar, to save.
semejante, similar, adj. (as a noun, fellow creature, *m.*).
sonar, irr., to sound, to ring.
sonar el timbre, to ring or sound the bell.
subir, to go up, to come up, to go or to come upstairs, to ascend.
telegrama, *m.*, telegram.
tocar a fuego, to announce a fire.
total, total, whole (masc. as a noun).
traer, irr., to bring.
transeunte, *m.*, passer-by.
vela, candle.
vestíbulo, vestibule, lobby, hall.
vidrio de ventana, window-pane.
violentamente, violently.
vocerío, clamor, hallooing.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Anoche principió a sonar el timbre de la puerta de mi casa a las tres y media. (2) Me desperté. (3) Me restregué los ojos, salté de la cama, me puse en un santiamén una bata o algo semejante, abrí la ventana y pregunté:—“¿Quién es?” (4) Una voz muy ronca me contestó así:—“Un mensajero de la oficina central de telégrafos que trae un telegrama para usted.”

(5) Bajé al vestíbulo en seguida con la vela que con un fósforo había encendido, abrí la puerta de la calle, alargué la mano derecha, y el mensajero me entregó el telegrama. (6) Lo tomé, lo abrí, me enteré de su contenido, cerré con llave la puerta de la calle, subí a mi habitación, me acosté de nuevo, apagué la vela, y reanudé mi interrumpido sueño.

(7) Media hora después de haberme quedado dormido por segunda vez, (yo) fuí despertado violentamente por la alarma de las campanas que tocaban a fuego, y por el vocerío de la gente que se había reunido en la calle.

(8) Yo oí que un vecino mío preguntaba a gritos a un transeunte:—“¿Dónde, dónde es el fuego?” (9) El transeunte, de un modo nervioso, contestó:—“En la administración general de correos.”

(10) Pocos segundos después (yo) fuí al lugar de la catástrofe. (11) Cuando (yo) llegué allí, ya estaban los bomberos luchando con las llamas con las bombas de incendio, escaleras y mangueras, y cumpliendo con su deber.

(12) Éste fué el resultado del incendio: mucho humo, dos explosiones formidables, enormes llamas, desmayo de un portero que se salvó debido al heroísmo de dos bomberos y un policía, muchos vidrios de ventana rotos, y destrucción casi total del edificio.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿A qué hora principió a sonar, anoche, el timbre de la puerta de su casa? (2) ¿Se despertó usted cuando el timbre principió a sonar? (3) ¿Se restregó usted los ojos en seguida que usted se despertó? (4) ¿Saltó usted de la cama en se-

guida de restregarse los ojos? (5) ¿Qué se puso usted en un santiamén? (6) ¿Qué preguntó (usted) después de abrir la ventana? (7) ¿Qué le contestó a usted una voz muy ronca? (8) ¿Bajó usted, en seguida, al vestíbulo con la vela que (usted) había encendido? (9) ¿Abrió usted la puerta y alargó la mano derecha? (10) ¿Qué le entregó a usted el mensajero? (11) ¿Tomó usted el telegrama cuando el mensajero se lo entregó? (12) ¿Lo abrió usted? (13) ¿Se enteró usted de su contenido? (14) ¿Cerró usted con llave la puerta de la calle después de enterarse del contenido del telegrama? (15) ¿Subió usted después a su habitación? (16) ¿Se acostó usted de nuevo? (17) ¿Qué apagó usted después de acostarse? (18) ¿Reanudó usted su interrumpido sueño después de apagar la vela? (19) ¿Qué pasó media hora después de haberse quedado dormido (usted) por segunda vez? (20) ¿Quién preguntó, a gritos, a un transeunte, “¿Dónde, dónde es el fuego?” (21) ¿Qué le contestó el transeunte, a su vecino, de un modo nervioso? (22) ¿A dónde fué usted pocos segundos después? (23) ¿Estaban ya los bomberos en el sitio de la catástrofe? (24) ¿Qué hacían los bomberos en el sitio de la catástrofe? (25) ¿Cuál fué el resultado del incendio?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) When our bell rings, the cook's (fem.) son or our maid opens the street door. (2) Last night, when the bell began to ring, I opened the door because neither the maid nor the cook's son was at (*en*) home. (3) Before going down to the vestibule to open the door, I asked from a window which I had opened:—"Who is it?" and a voice answered me:—"A messenger." (4) After having come down to the vestibule and after having opened the street door, the messenger handed me a telegram. (5) Half an hour after having noted the contents of the telegram, I fell asleep. (6) Immediately after having fallen asleep, I was awakened by the alarm of the fire bells. (7) We heard a neighbor of ours ask a passer-by:—"Where, where is the fire?" (8) The man answered in a very nervous

way:—"In the main post-office." (9) A few minutes afterwards we were near (*cerca de*) the fire engines. (10) In the place of the conflagration we saw two porters who were saved by three firemen and two policemen. (11) The firemen put out (past indicative) the fire in the twinkling of an eye. (12) In the square where the catastrophe took place (use *past* of *ser* or *ocurrir*) we did not hear any (*ninguna*) explosion, but we saw much smoke, huge flames and many broken windowpanes.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *acostarse*, in model 5, page 367; *restregar* in model 1, page 367; *sonar* in model 5, page 367; *traer*, model 43, page 382. See also the irregularities which *ver*, model 44, page 383, *oír*, model 38, page 381, and *ser*, model 28, page 377, have in the past, and the irregularities of *romper*, model 61, page 387. Notice also the orthographical changes which *alargar*, *pagar* and *entregar*, in model 25c, page 374, undergo.

2. In sentence 1, *Theme, a las tres y media* is translated into English by *at half past three*. In sentence 2, the verb *to wake up*, is used reflexively, and in sentence 3, *salté de la cama* is the equivalent of *I jumped out of bed*.

3. *Cerré con llave la puerta de la calle*, sentence 6, is equivalent to *I locked the front or street door with a key*, and *me acosté de nuevo* to *I went to bed again*.

4. *Segunda vez*, sentence 7, is *second time*.

5. *Before going down*, sentence 3 of the *English Exercise*, is rendered by *antes de bajar*; and *I asked from a window*, of the same sentence, is rendered by *pregunté desde una ventana*.

6. *After having come down*, and *after having opened*, of sentence 4, as well as *after having noted* and *after having fallen asleep* of the next two sentences, are respectively rendered by *después de haber bajado*, *después de haber abierto*, *después de haberme enterado* and *después de haberme quedado dormido*.

7. Study the past of *ir*, model 37, page 380; and of *ver*, model 44, page 383.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y SIETE—LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

ante un notario público , before a notary public.	heredero , heir.
ataque cerebral , <i>m.</i> , stroke of apoplexy (lit. cerebral attack).	honrado , honest.
cadena de reloj , watch chain.	interminable , endless.
calidad , <i>f.</i> , quality.	justicia , justice.
cigarrillo turco , Turkish cigarette.	juzgado municipal , municipal court.
cigarro habano , Havana cigar.	ley , <i>f.</i> , law.
continuamente , continually.	loco , crazy.
cuna , cradle.	lunática , lunatic.
chimenea , chimney.	morirse , <i>irr.</i> , to die.
desengaño , disappointment.	motivo , motive.
disgusto , trouble, shock, sorrow, disgust.	partir a mundos mejores , to depart to a better world.
enciclopedia , encyclopedia.	pelota , ball.
esperar , to expect, to wait, to hope.	pipa , pipe (for smoking).
estando en su sano juicio , being of sound mind (lit. being in his sane judgment).	pleito , lawsuit.
estos , these.	por esta causa , on this account.
exigir , to demand, to exact, to require.	por este motivo , on this account.
expedienteo , red tape.	pulverizador , <i>m.</i> , atomizer, spray.
fallo del jurado , jury's decision.	revólver , <i>m.</i> , revolver.
filtro , filter.	rivalidad , <i>f.</i> , rivalry.
fricción , <i>f.</i> , friction.	seguro , sure, certain.
fumador empedernido , <i>m.</i> , inveterate smoker.	sentencia del juez , judge's sentence.
fumar , to smoke.	si él llegase a heredar , if he succeeded in inheriting (lit. if he reached, etc.).
fusil , <i>m.</i> , gun.	tabaco , tobacco.
habrá complicaciones , there will be complications.	testamentaria , execution of the will (also testamentería).
heredar , to inherit.	testamento , last will, will, testament.
	testigo , <i>m., f.</i> , witness.
	tribunales superiores , higher courts.
	visita , visit.

Pluscuamperfecto de Subjuntivo—Past Perfect Subjunctive.

hablar**comer****vivir**

Primera Forma—First Form

hubiera hablado	hubiera comido	hubiera vivido
hubieras hablado	hubieras comido	hubieras vivido
hubiera hablado	hubiera comido	hubiera vivido
hubiéramos	hubiéramos	hubiéramos
hablado	comido	vivido
hubierais hablado	hubierais comido	hubierais vivido
hubieran hablado	hubieran comido	hubieran vivido

Segunda Forma—Second Form

hubiese hablado	hubiese comido	hubiese vivido
hubieses hablado	hubieses comido	hubieses vivido
hubiese hablado	hubiese comido	hubiese vivido
hubiésemos	hubiésemos	hubiésemos
hablado	comido	vivido
hubieseis hablado	hubieseis comido	hubieseis vivido
hubiesen hablado	hubiesen comido	hubiesen vivido

If I had spoken or

If I had eaten or

If I had lived or

If I should have spoken,
etc.If I should have eaten,
etc.If I should have
lived, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—Past Conditional

hablar**comer****vivir**

habría hablado	habría comido	habría vivido
habrías hablado	habrías comido	habrías vivido
habría hablado	habría comido	habría vivido
habríamos	habríamos	habríamos
hablado	comido	vivido
habríaís hablado	habríaís comido	habríaís vivido
habrían hablado	habrían comido	habrían vivido

I should have spoken,
etc.I should have eaten,
etc.I should have
lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Un amigo mío ha heredado cincuenta y ocho mil dólares. (2) Un tío suyo se los ha dejado. (3) El tío partió a mundos mejores el mes pasado. (4) (Él) se murió de un ataque cerebral.

(5) En la testamentaría no habrá complicaciones porque su tío, estando en su sano juicio, hizo el testamento ante un

notario público muy honrado con el número de testigos que la ley exige. (6) Por este motivo no habra fricción entre los herederos. (7) Por esta misma causa éstos se evitarán las siguientes cosas desagradables: pleitos, disgustos, desengaños, rivalidades, expedienteos, fallos del jurado, sentencias del juez, necesidad de pedir justicia, y visitas al juzgado municipal o a los tribunales superiores.

(8) Yo no espero heredar nada nunca. (9) Si yo heredase los cincuenta y ocho mil dólares que mi amigo ha heredado, (yo) compraría una lista interminable de cosas, además de las siguientes: un pulverizador, una pelota, un revólver, un fusil, un filtro, una cadena de reloj, y una enciclopedia.

(10) Yo estoy seguro que otro amigo mío, que es un fumador empedernido, compraría lo siguiente si (él) llegase a heredar algo de alguien: muchos cigarros habanos, muchos cigarrillos turcos, mucho tabaco de la mejor calidad, y muchas pipas.

(11) Este amigo fuma continuamente. (12) Este amigo es una chimenea. (13) Este amigo es un poco loco. (14) Este amigo tiene una cuñada que es lunática.

(15) Este amigo no desea estudiar nada absolutamente, pero yo deseo estudiar los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy, en estos ejemplos: Yo habría hablado con el hombre que acaba de comprar una cuna, si él hubiera hablado conmigo. (16) Si él hubiese comido en casa, (él) no habría sufrido tanto como (él) sufrió. (17) Si ustedes no hubieran vivido en el hotel en que vivían, (ustedes) habrían vivido en un palacio de mármol blanco muy hermoso.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿ Cuántos miles de dólares ha heredado un amigo suyo ?
(2) ¿ Quién se los ha dejado ? (3) ¿ Cuándo partió el tío a mundos mejores ? (4) ¿ De qué se murió el tío ? (5) ¿ Habrá complicaciones en la testamentaría ? (6) ¿ Por qué no habrá complicaciones en la testamentaría ? (7) ¿ Qué no habrá, por esta razón, entre los herederos ? (8) ¿ Qué cosas desagradables se evitarán éstos por esta misma causa ? (9)

¿ Espera usted heredar, alguna vez, algo ? (10) ¿ Compraría usted una lista interminable de cosas, si usted heredase los cincuenta y ocho mil dólares que su amigo ha heredado ? (11) ¿ Compraría usted, también, un pulverizador, una pelota, un revólver, un fusil, un filtro, una cadena de reloj y una enciclopedia ? (12) ¿ Qué compraría otro amigo suyo, que es un fumador empedernido, si llegase a heredar algo de alguien ? (13) ¿ Fuma este amigo continuamente ? (14) ¿ Es este amigo una chimenea ? (15) ¿ Es este amigo un poco loco ? (16) ¿ Tiene este amigo una cuñada que es lunática ? (17) ¿ Desea estudiar algo este amigo que es un poco loco y que tiene una cuñada que es lunática ? (18) ¿ En qué ejemplos desea usted estudiar los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy ? (19) ¿ Habría usted hablado con el hombre que acaba de comprar una cuna, si él hubiera hablado con usted ? (20) ¿ Habría sufrido él tanto como (él) sufrió, si (él) hubiese comido en casa ? (21) ¿ Habrían vivido ustedes en un palacio de mármol blanco muy hermoso, si (ustedes) no hubiesen vivido en el hotel en que vivían ?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) When I inherit (present subjunctive) a half a million dollars, I will do many things which I cannot do now. (2) I do not know who will bequeath this money to me, but there is hope in my heart that somebody will do it. (3) A friend of mine often says to me: "If I inherited (*or should inherit*) (imperfect subjunctive) what I expect to inherit, I would travel much and I would buy many artistic things." (4) This same friend also says: "If a rich uncle dies and bequeaths to his relatives a few thousand dollars, they usually say: Poor uncle! How good he was! (5) But if the rich relative does not bequeath to them what they expected (imperfect ind.), they generally use words which express the opposite." (6) Another friend of mine, who is an inveterate smoker and who has a crazy sister-in-law, cannot get immediately, on account of red tape, a hundred thousand dollars that a relative of his has bequeathed to him. (7) A

friend of this friend is studying the new tenses of to-day's lesson, in the following examples: If you (polite form singular) had spoken (*or* should have spoken) with me, I should (*or* would) have spoken with you. (8) If he had given me the money, he would have done something good. (9) If they had not lived in the house where they are living, they would have lived in a good hotel. (10) If you (familiar form sing.) had demanded a decision, the judge would have given it. (11) If you (familiar form plural) had not done that, I would have done it. (12) If you (familiar form singular) had not bought the pipe and the ball, you would have had money to (*para*) buy the atomizer and the alarm clock.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of *morir*, model 22, page 373, in the present and past indicative. Notice the orthographical changes which *exigir*, in model 25i, page 376, undergoes.

2. Study everything given under *Formation of the Past Perfect Subjunctive*, page 342, and everything under the heading *The Past Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses*, page 341.

3. Study everything given under *Formation of the Past Conditional*, page 330, and rule 1 under *The Past Conditional*, page 329.

4. *Se los ha dejado*, which refers to dollars, in sentence 2 of the *Theme*, is translated into English by *has left it to him*.

5. *A mundos mejores*, sentence 3, is rendered into English by *to a better world*.

6. See the irregular past participle of *hacer*, model 31, page 378.

7. The *a* which precedes *half* and *million*, in sentence 1 of the English Exercise, is not translated into Spanish. *Million*, of the same sentence, when translated into Spanish, must be followed by *de*.

8. *Turkish cigarette* may also be rendered by *cigarrillo egipcio*, literally *Egyptian cigarette*. *Pitillo* is a popular name for *cigarette* in Spain and *puro* for *cigar*. *Tabaco* is used in Cuba for *cigar* and for *tobacco*.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y OCHO—LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

a juzgar por , judging by.	cubierta , covered (as a noun it means deck of a ship and cover).
acercarse , to approach.	dando ayes de angustia , uttering cries of anguish (lit. giving, etc.).
acompañar , to accompany.	dar un grito agudo , to utter a sharp cry.
agradecimiento , gratefulness, gratitude.	débil ataque , weak attack.
al sentirse mordido , upon feeling himself bitten.	despedirse , irr., to take leave, to say good-bye.
amenazando , threatening.	echar , to cast, to throw.
andén de la estación , <i>m.</i> , platform of the railroad station.	echarse hacia atrás , to throw oneself backwards (lit. towards behind).
asiento , seat.	ejecución , <i>f.</i> , execution.
asomarse , to begin to appear.	en lugar de , instead of, in place of.
asomarse a la ventanilla , to look out of the window.	enloquecido , maddened.
asustarse , to be frightened.	ensordecedor , deafening.
bebé , <i>m.</i> , baby (also nene).	esquina , edge, corner.
bizcocho , biscuit, lady-finger.	fatal momento , fatal moment.
calma , calmness, composure, calm.	funda , case, covering.
¡cataplún! crash! bang!	gota , drop (of a liquid), gout.
cesta , basket.	haciendo añicos , breaking into a thousand pieces (lit. making bits).
como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras , as if he were being skinned alive.	horizonte , <i>m.</i> , horizon.
compartimiento , compartment (also compartimento).	inapetente , without appetite.
confusión , <i>f.</i> , confusion.	jaula , cage.
conmover , irr., to move one's feelings, to move to pity.	loro , parrot.
conmover el corazón , to move one's heart.	llorar , to cry, to weep.
contener , irr., to contain, to hold.	matar , to kill.
corre en auxilio de , runs to the help of (lit. in help of).	mostrar , irr., to show.
	ocupar , to occupy.
	ojeada , glance.
	parecerse , irr., to resemble.

pegar, to strike, to stick.

pegarse con la cabeza contra, to strike one's head against.

perder, irr., to lose.

plan, *m.*, plan, design.

ponerse a, to begin to.

profundamente, deeply.

quitar, to remove, to take off.

recuerdo, recollection, remembrance, souvenir, memory (recuerdos, regards, recollections).

repisa, mantelpiece, rack.

ruido, noise.

silbar, to whistle.

socorro (noun), help, aid, assistance.

tan amargamente, so bitterly.

terrible, terrible.

ventanilla, little window.

violencia, violence.

vistoso, showy, flaring.

vomitando humo, ejecting smoke.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Salgo de la ciudad en que (yo) vivo en el tren de las cuatro y veinte, después de despedirme de mi familia en el andén de la estación.

(2) En el compartimiento del coche que ocupo, hay una señora muy elegante que lleva un loro en una jaula cubierta con una funda blanca. (3) Esta señora elegante llama a su loro "bebé."

(4) Además de la señora que va acompañada de su "bebé," en el compartimiento en que estoy hay un niño que está inapetente a juzgar por los débiles ataques que dirige a un bizcocho que tiene en la mano derecha. (5) También hay, en el mismo compartimiento, un caballero que se parece al niño como una gota de agua se parece a otra, y dos personas más.

(6) Mientras el tren corre por su camino de hierro silbando y vomitando humo, (yo) me asomo a la ventanilla para echar una ojeada por el horizonte. (7) La señora del loro se pone a quitar la funda a la jaula para que su vistoso "bebé" pueda respirar con más libertad, y el niño se acerca a la jaula para dar al pájaro el último pedazo de su bizcocho.

(8) El loro, en lugar de mostrar agradecimiento, muerde al niño al darle éste los restos de su bizcocho. (9) El niño, al sentirse mordido, se asusta, da un grito muy agudo, se echa hacia atrás con violencia, se pega con la cabeza contra la esquina de un asiento, y empieza a llorar como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras.

(10) El papá del niño, al oír a su heredero quejarse tan amargamente, pierde la calma y la cabeza y quiere matar el loro. (11) El loro comprende la idea del enloquecido papá y empieza a pedir socorro dando ayes de angustia que conmueven profundamente el tierno y amante corazón de su “mamá.” (12) La “mamá” corre en auxilio de su “bebé” amenazando arañar al papá del niño, y casi al mismo tiempo en que la “mamá” va a poner en ejecución su plan ¡cataplún! una cesta que hay en una de las repisas del coche y que contiene platos, vasos, tazas, cuchillos, tenedores y botellas, se cae al suelo produciendo un ruido terrible y ensordecedor.

(13) Desde el fatal momento en que la cesta se cayó al suelo, haciendo añicos todos los platos, todos los vasos, todas las tazas y todas las botellas que contenía, yo no sé lo que allí pasó, porque mis recuerdos se pierden en un mar de confusiones.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿A qué hora sale usted de la ciudad en que (usted) vive? (2) ¿Sale usted en el tren de las cuatro y veinte, después de despedirse de su familia? (3) ¿Hay, en el compartimiento del coche que usted ocupa, una señora que lleva un loro en una jaula? (4) ¿Con qué está cubierta la jaula en que va el loro? (5) ¿Cómo llama esta señora elegante a su loro? (6) ¿Qué personas hay en el compartimiento en que usted está, además de la señora que va acompañada de su “bebé”? (7) ¿Que hace usted mientras el tren corre por su camino de hierro, si bando y vomitando humo? (8) ¿Qué hace la señora? (9) ¿Qué hace el niño? (10) ¿Qué hace el loro al darle el niño los restos de su bizcocho? (11) ¿Se asusta el niño al sentirse mordido? (12) ¿Da el niño un grito muy agudo cuando el loro le muerde? (13) ¿Se echa el niño hacia atrás, con violencia, cuando (él) se asusta? (14) ¿Se pega el niño con la cabeza contra la esquina de un asiento al echarse hacia atrás con violencia? (15) ¿Qué empieza a hacer el niño cuando (él) se pega con la cabeza contra la esquina del asiento? (16) ¿Qué pierde el papá del niño al oír a

su heredero quejarse tan amargamente? (17) ¿Qué quiere hacer el papá del niño? (18) ¿Comprende el loro la idea del enloquecido papá? (19) ¿Empieza el loro a pedir socorro? (20) ¿Quién corre en auxilio del loro? (21) ¿Qué amenaza hacer la “mamá” del loro? (22) ¿Qué pasa casi al mismo tiempo en que la “mamá” va a poner en ejecución su plan? (23) ¿Sabe usted lo que en el compartimiento pasó, desde el momento en que la cesta se cayó al suelo, haciendo añicos todos los platos, vasos, tazas y botellas que contenía? (24) ¿Por qué no lo sabe usted?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) We leave the station on the nine o'clock train. (2) In the compartment of the coach that we occupy there are several persons of different ages and appearances. (3) In this compartment there is a great-grandfather with two granddaughters and three great-grandsons, and a lady with a very small white dog. (4) While the train runs through valleys and mountains, we talk about different things. (5) Now and then we stop talking in order to cast a glance at the horizon. (6) While we are casting a glance at the horizon, the youngest great-grandson of the good great-grandfather comes near the place where we are seated. (7) Then he goes to the place where the lady with the very small white dog is seated, and he begins to play with the pretty animal. (8) The lady with the dog wants the child to give (present subjunctive) her a kiss, but the child answers that he does not want to give it to her. (9) Then the child goes away and we hear him asking his great-grandfather for a cracker. (10) The great-grandfather says to his great-grandson the following: “I do not want to give you (familiar form sing.) what you are asking for, because if I gave (imperfect subjunctive) you (*or* should give you) what you wish now, you would lose (conditional) your appetite for the noon meal.” (11) The child begins to cry. (12) While the child is crying, I take leave of my friends because the train has arrived at (a) the station where my trip ends.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *conmover*, in model 7, page 368; *contener*, in model 27, page 377; *despedirse*, in model 15, page 370; *mostrar*, in model 5, page 367; *parecerse*, in model 10, page 368; *perder*, model 3, page 367. See the orthographical changes which *acercarse*, in model 25*b*, page 374, undergoes, as well as *pegar* in model 25*c*, page 374.

2. *Como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras*, *Vocabulary*, literally translated, is *as if they were tearing him off the skin in strips*.

3. *Después de despedirme*, sentence 1 of the *Theme*, is rendered by *after taking leave*, and *que lleva*, sentence 2, by *which carries*.

4. *Que se parece al niño como una gota de agua se parece a otra*, may be rendered into English by *who is as much like the child as two peas in a pod*.

5. In sentence 7, *se pone a*, is rendered by *begins to*; *para que* by *so that*. *Al oír*, sentence 10, is rendered by *upon hearing*.

6. Notice in sentences 12 and 13, that the equivalent of the English verb *to fall*, *caer*, is used reflexively in Spanish. Also see the orthographical change of the third person *past*, of this verb, in model 46, page 383.

7. *Of different ages and appearances*, sentence 2, *English Exercise*, may be rendered by *de diferente edad y aspecto* (lit. *aspect*).

8. The word *then* which begins sentence 7, *English Exercise*, must be rendered into Spanish by *después*.

9. *For the noon meal*, at the end of sentence 10, must be rendered into Spanish by *para la comida del mediodía*.

LECCIÓN TREINTA Y NUEVE—LESSON THIRTY-NINE

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

al andar , while going, on going or walking.	himno , hymn.
ala , wing, brim of a hat.	histórico , historical.
aliviado , relieved.	iluminar , to illuminate, to light.
alta mar , high sea.	instante , <i>m.</i> , instant.
arreglar , to arrange, to settle, to adjust.	litera , berth.
arreglar el equipaje , to get the baggage ready (lit. to arrange the baggage).	luces fosforescentes , phosphorescent lights.
¡ay, hija mía! woe is me, my daughter!	maleta , valise, suitcase (also <i>valija</i>).
ballena , whale.	marearse , to get seasick.
bandada de gaviotas , flock of seagulls.	mareo , seasickness.
buque , <i>m.</i> , ship.	mecer , to rock, to swing.
camarote , <i>m.</i> , stateroom.	muelle , <i>m.</i> , wharf, pier.
certificar , (to register (letters), to certify.	océano , ocean.
construir , to construct, to build.	ola , wave.
correo , post-office, mail.	peso , weight (peso is also dollar in Spanish America).
cruzar , to cross.	pez volador , <i>m.</i> , flying fish.
deleite , <i>m.</i> , delight.	popa , stern (noun).
delfín , <i>m.</i> , dolphin.	por favor , if you please (lit. by favor).
despedida , farewell.	preocupaciones , <i>f.</i> , worries, preoccupations.
embarcarse , to go on board, to board (ships).	primo segundo , second cousin.
en lontananza , in the distance.	proa , bow (of a ship).
ensueño , dream.	que son tan ricas , which are so rich.
equipaje , <i>m.</i> , baggage.	que va a llevarlo , which is going to take it (lit. which goes, etc.).
espuma , foam.	salto , jump, leap, bound.
expreso , express (also <i>expres</i>).	saludar , to greet, to salute.
fondo , bottom, depth, background.	tararear , to hum.
frasco , flask.	tierra lejana , far away or distant land.
grato recuerdo , pleasant recollection or memory.	vuelo , flight (of birds).
	ya , already.

Futuro de Subjuntivo—Future Subjunctive.

hablar	comer	vivir
hablare	comiere	viviere
hablares	comieres	vivieres
hablare	comiere	viviere
habláremos	comiéremos	viviéremos
hablareis	comiereis	viviereis
hablaren	comieren	vivieren
If I shall speak, etc.	If I shall eat, etc.	If I shall live, etc.

Futuro Perfecto de Subjuntivo—Future Perfect Subjunctive.

hablar	comer	vivir
hubiere hablado	hubiere comido	hubiere vivido
hubieres hablado	hubieres comido	hubieres vivido
hubiere hablado	hubiere comido	hubiere vivido
hubiéremos	hubiéremos	hubiéremos
hablado	comido	vivido
hubiereis hablado	hubiereis comido	hubiereis vivido
hubieren hablado	hubieren comido	hubieren vivido
If I shall have spoken, etc.	If I shall have eaten, etc.	If I shall have lived, etc.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Mañana por la mañana, antes de embarcarme en el hermoso vapor en que (yo) voy a cruzar el océano, (yo) haré tres cosas muy importantes.

(2) Una de ellas es almorzar. (3) La segunda es arreglar el equipaje, para que el expreso que va a llevarlo al muelle pueda venir a buscarlo antes de las once. (4) La tercera es certificar, en el correo, la carta de despedida que (yo) tengo la intención de enviarle a un primo segundo mío.

(5) Una vez en el vapor (yo) iré a mi camarote a dejar allí algunas cosas, y a ver, al mismo tiempo, la litera en que seré mecido por las olas. (6) Una vez en el camarote y aliviado de preocupaciones y del peso de las cajas y paquetes, (yo) empezaré a tararear algún himno a la libertad y a la independencia.

(7) Después (yo) empezaré a soñar y a ver con deleite las bandadas de blancas gaviotas que, generalmente, acompañan al vapor. (8) También veré en mi ensueño las miles de luces

fosforescentes que a veces salen del fondo del océano para iluminar el camino de blanca espuma que el buque hace al andar. (9) También (yo) veré, con placer infinito, los peces voladores que alegran la vista con sus alas de plata y cortos vuelos, los delfines que de cuando en cuando vienen a saludar al vapor dando saltos de alegría, y las ballenas que en lontananza construyen torres de agua que duran un instante.

(10) Después de soñar y de ver, con los gratos recuerdos del pasado, lo arriba mencionado, ya estaremos en alta mar. (11) Y antes de subir a cubierta, (yo) oiré a alguien empezar a quejarse del mareo y a decir: “¡Ay, hija mía!, toma esa llave, abre esa maleta, y dame, por favor, un limón y la medicina que está en el frasco verde.”

(12) Esta buena señora y su bella hija estudiarán los tiempos nuevos, en los siguientes ejemplos, los días que (ellas) no se mareen: Si él me hablare, yo le hablaré. (13) Si ella no comiere esto, sírvele eso. (14) Si él hubiere vivido en esas tierras lejanas que son tan ricas en recuerdos históricos, le haré infinidad de preguntas cuando vayamos a ver la proa o la popa del buque.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Qué hará usted, mañana por la mañana, antes de embarcarse en el hermoso vapor en que (usted) va a cruzar el océano? (2) ¿Es almorzar, la primera de las tres cosas que hará usted, mañana por la mañana, antes de ir al vapor? (3) ¿Cuál es la segunda? (4) ¿Cuál es la tercera? (5) ¿Irá usted a su camarote, una vez en el vapor, a dejar allí algunas cosas? (6) ¿Verá usted, en el camarote, la litera en que usted será mecido por las olas? (7) ¿Qué empezará usted a hacer, en el camarote, una vez que (usted) se vea aliviado de preocupaciones, y del peso de las cajas y paquetes? (8) ¿Empezará usted a soñar después de tararear un himno a la libertad y a la independencia? (9) ¿Qué verá usted en su ensueño? (10) ¿Verá usted también las miles de luces fosforescentes que, a veces, salen del fondo del océano para iluminar el camino de blanca espuma que el buque hace al andar?

(11) ¿Verá usted también los peces voladores que alegran la vista con sus alas de plata y cortos vuelos? (12) ¿Verá usted también los delfines que, de cuando en cuando, vienen a saludar al vapor dando saltos de alegría? (13) ¿Verá usted también las torres de agua que las ballenas construyen en lontananza? (14) ¿Cuánto tiempo duran las torres de agua que la ballenas construyen? (15) ¿Dónde estará usted después de soñar, con los gratos recuerdos del pasado, lo arriba mencionado? (16) ¿A quién oirá usted empezar a quejarse del mareo? (17) ¿Qué dirá esta buena señora? (18) ¿Qué personas estudiarán los tiempos nuevos de la lección de hoy, los días que (ellas) no se mareen? (19) ¿Le hablará usted, si él le hablare? (20) ¿Le dirá usted a él, “Sírvele eso si ella no comiere esto?” (21) ¿Le hará usted a él infinidad de preguntas, si él hubiere vivido en estas tierras lejanas que son tan ricas en recuerdos históricos? (22) ¿Cuándo le hará usted a él esa infinidad de preguntas?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) Next month we expect to cross the ocean in a very beautiful steamer. (2) Before going to the steamer, we shall have to get our baggage ready. (3) After the baggage is ready (present subjunctive), the express will take it to the pier. (4) Before the steamer leaves (present subjunctive), we shall write and register several important letters. (5) Once on the steamer, we shall leave all the boxes and all the packages in our stateroom. (6) During the days that our voyage may last, we shall undoubtedly see big waves, seagulls, flying fishes, dolphins and whales. (7) The far-away lands that we shall see when our voyage (*viaje por mar*) ends (present subjunctive), are rich in poetry and in historical remembrances. (8) If we should get (imperfect subjunctive) seasick on this sea voyage (*viaje por mar*) which we soon expect to take, we would do what a good physician told (past indicative) us to do (imperf. subjunctive). (9) Seasickness is something that we do not fear on a sea voyage when we have lemons and medicine in our suitcases. (10) When we

arrive (pres. subj.) at (a) those beautiful far-away lands, we shall send you (familiar form sing.) postcards, letters and presents. (11) In the letter that we have just received from him, he says: "If I had known (past perfect subjunctive) that you (familiar form plural) were going to Spain and to the other Spanish-speaking countries, I would have accompanied you." (12) He also says in his letter: (a) "If next summer be (future subj.) as warm as this one has been, we shall also travel by sea." (b) "When we shall have seen everything (future perfect sub.) we shall return."

NOTES

1. Study everything given under the heading *Formation of the Future Subjunctive*, page 343, and everything under *The Future Subjunctive—Its Uses*, also on page 343.

2. Study everything given under the heading *Formation of the Future Perfect Subjunctive*, page 344, and everything under the *Future Perfect Subjunctive—Its Uses*, also on page 344.

3. Study the future of *hacer*, model 31, page 378.

4. *Pueda venir a buscarlo* of sentence 3, *Theme*, is rendered into English by *may come to get it*.

5. *We shall have to get our baggage ready*, of sentence 2, *English Exercise*, is rendered into Spanish by *tendremos que arreglar nuestro equipaje*.

6. *Will take*, of sentence 3, must be rendered by *llevará*; and *to take*, of sentence 8, by *hacer*.

7. *If we should get seasick*, sentence 8, is rendered into Spanish by *si nosotros nos mareáramos* or *mareásemos*.

8. *Were going to Spain and to the other Spanish-speaking countries*, of sentence 11, is rendered into Spanish by *iban a España y a los otros países de habla española* or *castellana*.

9. See the irregular past participle of *ver*, model 44, page 383; also the future subjunctive of *ser*, model 28, page 377; also the orthographical changes which these verbs undergo: *certificar*, in model 25b, page 374; *construir* in model 25, page 373; *embarcarse* in model 25b, page 374; *mecer* in model 25f, page 375.

LECCIÓN CUARENTA—LESSON FORTY

VOCABULARIO—VOCABULARY

aborto de la naturaleza , freak of nature.	final examination (lit. ex- amination of end of course).
acróbata , <i>m., f.</i> , acrobat.	felicitaciones , <i>f.</i> , congratula- tions.
alfiler de corbata , <i>m.</i> , scarf- pin.	geografía , geography.
álgebra , algebra.	geometría , geometry.
aplicación , <i>f.</i> , scholarship, industriousness, application.	gimnasia , gymnastics.
aprobar , <i>irr.</i> , to approve.	grabadas , engraved.
aprobar la asignatura , to pass in the subject.	haciendo el vago , loafing.
aritmética , arithmetic.	historia , history.
asignatura , subject (course of study).	iniciales , <i>f.</i> , initials.
bandido , bandit.	intelectual , intellectual.
barómetro , barometer.	jinete maravilloso , wonder- ful rider.
batalla , battle.	lujoso , luxurious.
casa de campo , country home.	máquina fotográfica , cam- era (lit. photographic ma- chine).
cima , summit.	materia , matter, subject (course of study).
circo , circus.	microscopio , microscope.
clavo , nail.	moda , fashion (de moda, fashionable).
conciencia , conscience.	ni por el forro , not even through the cover.
curso , course.	payaso , clown.
descanso , rest.	pésame , <i>m.</i> , condolence.
desternillarse , to break one's cartilage.	playa , seashore, seashore re- sort.
desternillarse de risa , to split one's sides with laughter.	pluma estilográfica , foun- tain-pen (also pluma-fuente).
dibujo , drawing.	ponerse nervioso , to get ner- vous.
docena , dozen.	por supuesto , of course.
en unas cuantas horas , in a few hours.	premio , reward.
época de los exámenes , ex- amination time (lit. epoch, etc.).	presentación , <i>f.</i> , presentation.
espectáculo , show, pageant, spectacle.	princesa , princess.
examen de fin de curso ,	príncipe , prince.

reina , queen.	temo lo peor , I fear the worst.
reprobar , irr., to rebuke, to reject.	termómetro , thermometer.
reprobar la asignatura , to fail to pass in the subject.	trigonometría , trigonometry.
rey , king.	trono , throne.
seria , serious.	vacación , vacation, recess.
sufrir el último examen , to take the last examination.	veranear , to spend the summer.
tapa , cover, lid.	vidrio de aumento , magnifying glass.

TEMA—THEME

(1) Dentro de unos días serán los exámenes de fin de curso, y, dentro de algunos días, algunos estudiantes que yo conozco, empezarán a ponerse nerviosos y a decir en su interior: "Temo lo peor."

(2) Hay estudiantes que no comen, ni viven, ni duermen, ni se afeitan, ni tienen tiempo de respirar en la época de los exámenes. (3) Estos son los que han estado haciendo el vago durante el año, y quieren aprender, en unas cuantas horas, lo que (ellos) debieran haber aprendido en unos cuantos meses.

(4) Un estudiante que no ha visto los libros ni por el forro, en todo el año, por causas que no es difícil imaginarse, será reprobado en varias asignaturas. (5) Este estudiante ha recibido ya el pésame de algunos de sus condiscípulos, y una carta muy seria de su padre.

(6) En cambio, otro estudiante aprobará todas las asignaturas del curso. (7) Este estudiante recibirá felicitaciones de sus amigos, y de su familia un alfiler de corbata y un reloj de oro, con sus iniciales grabadas en la tapa, como premio a su aplicación.

(8) Este estudiante irá al circo después de sufrir el último examen. (9) Allí verá payasos, acróbatas, tronos, reyes, reinas, príncipes, princesas, batallas, bandidos, abortos de la naturaleza, y jinetes maravillosos. (10) Este estudiante se desternillará de risa en el circo. (11) Este estudiante beberá mucha limonada y comerá muchos cacahuets durante la presentación del espectáculo. (12) Este estudiante verá

hacer, lo mismo que él hace, a un muchacho alto y moreno que tiene en su casa un barómetro, un termómetro, un microscopio, un vidrio de aumento, una máquina fotográfica, una pluma estilográfica, y una docena de clavos.

(13) Este muchacho alto y moreno ha aprobado ya las siguientes materias: aritmética, historia, geografía, geometría, dibujo, álgebra, trigonometría y gimnasia. (14) Este estudiante irá, con su conciencia tranquila, a pasar una vacación feliz a una playa de moda. (15) El otro estudiante irá a veranear a un hotel muy lujoso que está en la cima de una montaña muy alta. (16) Yo, por supuesto, iré a gozar de la vida, en los meses de descanso intelectual a nuestra casa de campo.

PREGUNTAS—QUESTIONS

(1) ¿Serán los exámenes de fin de curso dentro de unos días? (2) ¿Empezarán a ponerse nerviosos algunos estudiantes que usted conoce? (3) ¿Qué empezarán a decir en su interior estos estudiantes? (4) ¿Comen, viven, duermen y se afeitan estos estudiantes en la época de los exámenes? (5) ¿Tienen tiempo de respirar estos estudiantes en la época de los exámenes? (6) ¿Qué estudiantes son los que hacen esto? (7) ¿Qué estudiante será reprobado en varias asignaturas? (8) ¿Ha recibido ya el pésame, este estudiante, de algunos de sus condiscípulos? (9) ¿Qué ha recibido este estudiante de su señor padre? (10) ¿Aprobará otro estudiante todas las asignaturas del curso? (11) ¿Recibirá este estudiante felicitaciones de sus amigos? (12) ¿Qué recibirá de su familia este estudiante? (13) ¿A donde irá este estudiante después de sufrir el último examen? (14) ¿Qué verá este estudiante en el circo? (15) ¿Se desternillará de risa este estudiante en el circo? (16) ¿Se desternilla usted de risa algunas veces? (17) ¿Qué beberá y qué comerá este estudiante, en el circo, durante la presentación del espectáculo? (18) ¿A quién verá hacer este estudiante lo mismo que él hace? (19) ¿Qué cosas tiene en su casa este muchacho alto y moreno? (20) ¿Qué materias ha aprobado ya el muchacho alto y moreno?

(21) ¿Pasará este estudiante una vacación feliz en una playa de moda? (22) ¿A dónde irá a veranear el otro estudiante? (23) ¿A dónde irá usted a gozar de la vida durante los meses de descanso intelectual?

ENGLISH EXERCISE

(1) The final examinations are approaching. (2) If I did not have (imperfect subjunctive) to take the final examinations, I would be (cond.) a very happy man (woman or girl, etc.). (3) We have not been loafing this year so much as last year, and on this account we are better prepared to pass in the subjects that we are studying. (4) A friend of mine, who is studying engineering, wants to learn in a few hours what he should have learned in a few months. (5) Of course, this engineering student will easily fail in three or four subjects. (6) If I should have (imperfect subjunctive) success in passing in all my subjects, I should undoubtedly receive (cond.) several presents from my family. (7) Last year, if we had not had (past perfect subj.) success in passing in all our subjects, we should not have gone (past cond.) to the country to spend a happy vacation. (8) When I know (pres. subj.) the result of my examinations, I will write you (polite form sing.) a long letter. (9) The day after we take (use present subjunctive of *sufrir*) our last examination, we shall go to the circus to see the clowns and the freaks of nature. (10) At the circus we shall think neither about school nor about examinations, and, if the show is as good this year as it was last year, we shall split our sides with laughter. (11) In the place where we shall spend our vacation, we shall become acquainted with a student who has passed in the following subjects: geography, geometry, accounting, algebra and history. (12) This student is writing the history of his life.

NOTES

1. Study the irregularities of the following verbs in the present indicative: *aprobar* and *reprobar*, in model 5, page 367.

2. *A decir en su interior*, of sentence 1, *Theme*, is rendered into English by *to say inwardly*.

3. *Engineering student*, sentence 5, *English Exercise*, is rendered by *estudiante de ingeniería*.

4. In sentence 10, *English Exercise*, *we shall think neither about school nor about examinations*, may be rendered by *no pensaremos ni acerca de la escuela ni acerca de los exámenes*, and *as it was last year* is rendered by *como lo fué el año pasado*. Study the past of *ser*, model 28, page 377.

5. *Who has passed in the following subjects*, of sentence 11, *English Exercise*, may be rendered by *que ha aprobado las asignaturas siguientes*, or *que ha salido bien en las asignaturas siguientes*. *Vacation*, also in sentence 11, is almost always used in the plural in Spanish.

GRAMMAR

SUGGESTIONS TO INSTRUCTORS AS TO THE BEST WAY TO USE THE MATERIAL WHICH FOLLOWS

Once that the foregoing forty lessons have been assimilated, the study of the "GRAMMAR," as a whole, should begin.

In connection with this part of the book, the material given under the heading "REFERENCE MATERIAL" may also be considered this way:

1. Assign that part of the "GRAMMAR" which has to be studied, and, in addition, from ten to fifteen words or expressions in one of these sections: "Idiomatic Expressions," "Commercial Expressions," "Proverbs," or "Names of Men and Women."

2. Require of the students to use, when possible, the extra assigned words in the sentences which they may form to illustrate the rules of grammar considered, or require of them to translate, into Spanish, the English sentences that you may wish to make up with these words.

NOTE.—If the instructor wishes to take into consideration the "GRAMMAR" without combining it with the "REFERENCE MATERIAL," he may take up each part separately, but, when considering the "REFERENCE MATERIAL," it is suggested that the students be given English sentences, with the assigned words, to be translated into Spanish, orally or in writing, during the class period.

CHAPTER I

ARTICLES

In Spanish, as in English, there are two articles, which, in the majority of cases, are used in the same way in both languages. They are *the definite* and *the indefinite*, and they agree with the word that they modify both in gender and number.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

These are its forms:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	
Singular	el	la	lo	} the
Plural	los	las	(the neuter has no plural)	

Examples:

el alfabeto, *the alphabet*

los alfabetos, *the alphabets*

el continente, *the continent*

los continentes, *the continents*

la sílaba, *the syllable*

las sílabas, *the syllables*

la capital, *the capital*

las capitales, *the capitals*

lo correcto, *that which is correct*

lo escrito, *that which is written*

(Used almost invariably with
adjectives and past participles.)

CONTRACTIONS OF THE ARTICLE WITH THE PREPOSITIONS *de* and *a*

When the singular form *el* of the definite article is preceded by the prepositions *de* or *a*, respectively *of*, *from* and *to*, etc., it loses the vowel *e*, and the contractions or amalgamations which follow are formed: *del*, *of the*, *from the*; *al*, *to the*, etc.

Examples:

Lima es la capital *del* Perú. *Lima is the capital of Peru.*

Yo hablo *al* español. *I speak to the Spaniard.*

SUBSTITUTION OF ONE FORM OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE FOR ANOTHER

El is used instead of *la* before feminine singular nouns which begin with *a* or *ha*, if the stress of the pronunciation or the vocal accent falls on the first syllable. This is done for euphonic reasons. The principal exceptions are the names of the letters of the alphabet *a* (*a*) and *hache* (*h*) and the names of women like *Ana*, *Anna*, when they need the article.

Examples:

el agua, *the water*

el hacha, *the axe*

el águila, *the eagle*

el harpa, *the harp*

But notice that the feminine form of the article is retained in the plural:

las aguas, *the waters*

las hachas, *the axes*

las águilas, *the eagles*

las harpas, *the harps*

PRINCIPLE CASES WHERE THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN SPANISH,
BUT NOT IN ENGLISH

1. Before titles, when persons are spoken of, but not when they are directly addressed.

Examples:

El señor es el presidente de los Estados Unidos de América.

Mr. is the president of the United States of America.

La señora B y *la* señorita C hablan español.

Mrs. B and Miss C speak Spanish.

2. Before general or abstract nouns used before verbs, days of the week, unless they are used in dating letters, and before the seasons of the year, except in certain cases when they are preceded by a preposition.

Examples:

Las mujeres tienen más intuición que *los* hombres.

Women have more intuition than men.

Los pájaros vuelan y *los* peces nadan.

Birds fly and fishes swim.

Las rosas tienen color y perfume.

Roses have color and perfume.

{ Here the nouns preceded by the articles are used in a general sense, because they are representative of the entire class to which they belong.

La caridad y el amor son factores de progreso. } The nouns preceded
Charity and love are factors of progress. } by the articles in the
La curiosidad es más activa que la pereza. } first two sentences, are
Curiosity is more active than laziness. } used abstractly. The
El articular distintamente y el producir la voz } same is true of the in-
sin aspereza, son pruebas de refinamiento. } finitives in the next
To articulate distinctly and to produce the voice } two sentences because
without harshness, are proofs of refinement. } they express action in
El andar es beneficioso. Walking is beneficial. } the abstract.

El lunes es un buen día para verle. { Notice the use of the
Monday is a good day to see him. { article before *lunes*,
La primavera empieza cuando el invierno ter- { *primavera* and *invierno*
mina. Spring begins when winter ends. { in the first two senten-
Deseo comprar un traje de verano. { ces, and its absence be-
I wish to buy a summer suit. { fore *verano* in the last.

3. Before proper names of persons, animals and months of the year, and likewise before names of countries and cities when they are preceded by an adjective.

Examples:

La bella María y la encantadora } Here the article is used before the
Mariana son buenas amigas. } proper names of persons, because
Beautiful Mary and charming } the proper name is preceded by an
Marian are good friends. } adjective.

El sensato Rocinante meditaba } As *Rocinante*, the name of a horse
hondamente sobre la locura de } in the novel "Don Quixote" is pre-
su amo. Sensible Rozinante } ceded by an adjective, the article is
deeply pondered on the madness } used before it in this second ex-
of his master. } ample.

El hermoso junio es el mes favorito para } Notice the definite ar-
casarse, en algunas partes del mundo. } ticle before *hermoso* in this
Beautiful June is the favorite month in } third example.
which to be married, in some parts of the }
world. }

La pintoresca España y la poderosa Inglaterra son } Here the
naciones independientes. Picturesque Spain and } names of coun-
powerful England are independent nations. } tries and cities
El hermoso Chile y la culta Costa Rica hablan el mis- } are modified by
mo idioma. Beautiful Chile and cultured Costa Rica } adjectives, and
speak the same language. } on this account
El opulento y alegre Buenos Aires es el orgullo de los } they are pre-
argentinos. Opulent and gay Buenos Aires is the } ceded by the def-
pride of the Argentinians. } inite article.
La romántica Sevilla pronto será visitada por mí. }
Romantic Seville will soon be visited by me. }

NOTE.—The following names of countries and cities always require the definite article: Los Estados Unidos, *The United States*, La República Argentina, *The Argentine Republic*, El Perú, *Peru*, El Paraguay, *Paraguay*, El Canadá, *Canada*, El Brasil, *Brazil*, El Japón, *Japan*, La Habana, *Havana*, La Coruña, *Corunna* (city of Spain).

4. Before nouns formed of adjectives of nationality used to name languages if the noun is the subject of the sentence, or if it is after the verb *hablar*, to *speak*, when the verb *hablar* is modified by an adverb.

Examples:

<i>El español es útil. Spanish is useful.</i>	} Notice, in the first two examples, that the article is before the word <i>español</i> , and that it is omitted in the last, because the verb <i>hablar</i> is unmodified by an adverb.
<i>Ella habla bien el español. She speaks Spanish well.</i>	
<i>Yo hablo español. I speak Spanish.</i>	

5. Before nouns which follow the prepositions which are generally after verbs.

Examples:

<i>Él va a la iglesia todos los domingos.</i>	} Notice that the article is here used before the nouns which follow a preposition.
<i>He goes to church every Sunday.</i>	
<i>Ella viene ahora de la escuela.</i>	
<i>She is now coming from school.</i>	
<i>Ellos están ahora en el Congreso.</i>	
<i>They are now in Congress.</i>	

CASES WHERE THE ARTICLE IS USUALLY OMITTED IN SPANISH, BUT NOT IN ENGLISH

Before nouns in apposition, i.e., explaining or describing other nouns, unless these explanatory nouns serve to identify persons, and before the ordinal numbers used after the names of kings, etc.

<i>Nueva York, centro principal del coloso</i>	} In this example, the noun <i>centro</i> which describes the noun <i>Nueva York</i> is used without the article in Spanish.
<i>Tío Sam, es un emporio de riqueza.</i>	
<i>New York, the principal center of the colossal Uncle Sam, is an emporium of wealth.</i>	

<i>Mi tío, el abogado, debe dinero a mi primo el arquitecto.</i>	} The nouns <i>abogado</i> and <i>arquitecto</i> , are preceded by the article because they respectively serve to identify <i>tío</i> and <i>primo</i> .
<i>My uncle, the lawyer, owes money to my cousin the architect.</i>	

<i>Felipe Segundo y Enrique Cuarto son personalidades históricas importantes.</i>	} Notice in Spanish the omission of the article before the ordinal numbers.
<i>Philip the Second and Henry the Fourth are important historical personalities.</i>	

NOTE.—Nouns in apposition with the personal pronouns *nosotros*, *we*, *vosotros*, *you* (fam. form pl.) and *ustedes*, *you* (pol. form pl.), require the article in Spanish but not in English.

Example: *Nosotros los americanos somos progresistas. We Americans are progressive.*

CASES WHEN THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS REPEATED IN SPANISH BUT NOT IN ENGLISH

The definite article is generally repeated in the Spanish sentence before each of the nouns, if their number or gender differ, and if they stand separately as individual entities.

Examples:

<i>El abuelo y la abuela tienen el dinero y los bonos. The grandfather and grandmother have the money and bonds.</i>	} The article is used before each of the nouns of these two sentences, because their number or gender differ and they stand separately as individual entities.
<i>Usted tiene el cortaplumas, la pelota y el lápiz de mi amigo. You have the pen-knife, ball and pencil of my friend.</i>	

CASES WHERE THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN SPANISH WHEN THE DEMONSTRATIVE, THE POSSESSIVE AND *he who*, ETC., ARE USED IN ENGLISH

Before relative clauses introduced by *que*, *that*, *which*, and before clauses introduced by *de*, *of*.

Examples:

<i>Los que cantan son amigos míos. Those who sing are friends of mine.</i>	} The definite article is used in Spanish and the demonstrative in English.

<i>El que dice eso es mi hermano. He who (or the one who) says that is my brother.</i>	} <i>He who</i> takes the place of the article in this example.

<i>El automóvil de María y el de Mariana son bonitos. Mary's automobile and Marian's are pretty.</i>	} The definite article takes the place of the possessive in this instance.

CASES WHERE THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS USED IN SPANISH AND THE INDEFINITE IN ENGLISH

Before nouns which describe persons, animals or things, when these nouns are used after verbs which express the idea of possession.

Examples:

Esa joven tiene *la* nariz perfecta, *la* boca muy pequeña y el cutis muy blanco. *That young woman has a perfect nose, a very small mouth and a very white skin.*

El perro mío tiene *la* lengua muy larga y *el* olfato muy bueno. *My dog has a very long tongue and a very good sense of smell.*

Ese árbol tiene *la* corteza blanca y *el* tronco grueso. *That tree has a white bark and a thick trunk.*

Notice in these examples that when the definite article is used in Spanish, the indefinite is required in English.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

Its forms are:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE
Singular	un, <i>a</i> , <i>an</i>	una, <i>a</i> , <i>an</i>
Plural	unos, <i>some</i> , <i>a few</i>	unas, <i>some</i> , <i>a few</i>

As the indefinite article has no plural in English, it is sometimes translated either by *some* or *a few*, or left untranslated if the context so requires it.

Examples:

Deseo *un* melocotón o *una* pera.

I wish a peach or a pear.

Tengo *unos* melocotones muy grandes y *unas* peras muy dulces. *I have some (a few) very large peaches and some (a few) very sweet pears.*

Voy a comprar *unos* zapatos y *unas* medias. *I am going to buy shoes or some shoes, and stockings or some stockings.*

Esa señorita tiene *unos* ojos que parecen soles. *That young lady has eyes which look like stars (suns).*

Notice how the different forms of the indefinite articles agree both in gender and number with the words that they qualify. Notice also, in the next to the last example, that *unos* and *unas* may be left untranslated, and that *unos* is untranslated in the last sentence.

REPETITION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

The indefinite article is repeated before each of the nouns which form important entities of the sentence.

Examples:

Él tiene en su casa *un* gallo, *una* gallina y *un* pollo. *He has a rooster, a hen and a chicken in his house.*

Él es *un* hombre honrado y *un* amigo fiel y verdadero. *He is an honest man and a faithful and true friend.*

Notice the repetition of the article before the separate important entities in both sentences.

OPTIONAL SUBSTITUTION OF ONE FORM OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE FOR ANOTHER

Un is sometimes used instead of *una*, for euphonious reasons, before feminine singular nouns which begin with *a* or *ha*, unless they be names of letters, if the stress of the pronunciation or vocal accent is on their first syllable and if they are not preceded by an adjective.

Example:

Ese hombre ha matado *un* águila con *un* hacha. } Custom permits this
That man has killed an eagle with an axe. } usage.

CASES WHERE THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS OMITTED IN SPANISH BUT NOT IN ENGLISH

1. Before unmodified nouns which are used as adjectives after the verb *ser*, *to be*, when they denote nationality, trades, occupation, profession, titles or rank, membership in organizations of any character, and human characteristics.

Examples:

Mi tío es español. <i>My uncle is a Spaniard.</i>	} Notice in these eight examples that the indefinite article is omitted before nouns used as adjectives after the verb <i>ser</i> , <i>to be</i> .
Ese gigante es herrero. <i>That giant is a blacksmith.</i>	
Ese joven es criado. <i>That young man is a servant.</i>	
Tu primo es médico. <i>Your cousin is a physician.</i>	
Su primo es duque. <i>His cousin is a duke.</i>	
Nuestro padre es general. <i>Our father is a general.</i>	
Soy miembro de esa institución. <i>I am a member of that institution.</i>	
No sé si la persona que habla es hombre o mujer. <i>I do not know whether the person who speaks is a man or a woman.</i>	

Él es *un* general famoso.
He is a famous general.

{ But in this sentence and in other similar ones, the indefinite article is used before the word which is after the verb *to be* although it expresses rank, because it is accompanied by an adjective.

2. Before nouns in apposition, i.e., explaining other nouns, and, in some cases, before nouns which are after verbs in negative sentences.

Examples:

De la leche, sustancia líquida que algunos animales producen, se hace el queso. <i>From milk, a liquid substance that some animals produce, cheese is made.</i>	} Notice that the indefinite article is omitted before the word <i>sustancia</i> .

Todavía no he recibido respuesta a mi carta. <i>I have not received as yet an answer to my letter.</i>	} Notice the omission of the indefinite article before <i>respuesta</i> .

OTHER CASES WHERE THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IS OMITTED IN SPANISH,
BUT NOT IN ENGLISH

Before the words *tal* or *semejante*, *such*; *otro* or *otra*, *other*, *another*; *cien* or *ciento*, *a hundred*; *mil*, *a thousand*, and *cien mil*, *one hundred thousand*. Also after the words which follow *medio*, *media*, *half*, and before singular nouns which denote measures of time, weight, etc., if they are accompanied by fractions. Also after *como* when it has the meaning of *like* and is not followed by an object pronoun, and in exclamatory sentences introduced by *que*.

Examples:

Nunca he visto *tal* o *semejante* cosa.

I have never seen such a thing.

El otro día le di *otro* lápiz y *otra* pluma para *otro* amigo. *The other day I gave him another pencil and another pen for another friend.*

Présteme *cien*, *mil* o *cien mil* dólares. *Lend me a hundred, a thousand or a hundred thousand dollars.*

En *medio* día (él) ha andado *media* milla y ha gastado *medio* dólar. *In half a day he has walked half a mile and has spent half a dollar.*

Después de andar *hora y cuarto*, nos comimos *libra y media* de bombones y nos bebimos *pinta y media* de limonada. *After walking an hour and a quarter, we ate a pound and a half of bonbons and we drank a pint and a half of lemonade.*

Él es un niño todavía, pero obra *como* hombre.

He is still a child, but he acts like a man.

¡Qué tonto es él! *What a fool he is!*

Notice the respective omission of the indefinite article before the italicized words in the Spanish sentences, and its use either before or after the italicized words in the English sentence.

USE OF THE PLURAL FORMS OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE TO INDICATE
APPROXIMATION

Unos and *unas* are used before cardinal numbers to indicate approximation. The English word *about* is their equivalent in cases like these.

Example:

En el teatro hay *unas* diez mil personas mayores, y en el parque *unos* diez mil niños. *In the theatre there are about ten thousand grown persons, and in the park about ten thousand children.*

CHAPTER II

NOUNS

GENDER

Almost all Spanish nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*.

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING

Nouns which designate males and their commonly assigned titles, professions, etc., are almost invariably masculine, while nouns which denote females and their commonly assigned titles, professions, etc., are almost invariably feminine, irrespective of their endings.

Examples: el hombre, *the man* la mujer, *the woman*
el albañil, *the mason* la bordadora, *the embroiderer.*

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR ENDINGS

1. Nearly all nouns ending in *o* are masculine, and those ending in *a* are as a rule feminine.

Examples: el alfabeto, *the alphabet* la letra, *the letter (of the alphabet)*
 el ejercicio, *the exercise* la sílaba, *the syllable*
 (Mano, *hand*, is feminine)

Exceptions, to above rule, of words ending in *a* which are masculine: idioma, *language*, tema, *theme*, día, *day*, poema, *poem*, telegrama, *telegram*, programa, *program*, clima, *climate*, mapa, *map*, planeta, *planet*, sistema, *system*, diploma, *diploma*, drama, *drama*, problema, *problem*, síntoma, *symptom*, cablegrama, *cablegram*, enigma, *enigma*, lema, *motto*, axioma, *axiom*, panorama, *panorama*, diafragma, *diaphragm*, dilema, *dilemma*, etc.

2. The names of the letters of the alphabet are feminine, and likewise almost every noun ending in *ión*, *dad*, *tad*, *tud*, *umbre* and *ie*.

Examples: la *be*, la *ce*, or la *de*, the *b*, the *c*, or the *d*.
la nación, *the nation*, la cantidad, *the quantity*, la libertad,
the liberty, la virtud, *the virtue*, la legumbre, *the vegetable*,
la especie, *the species* or *kind*.

3. The names of days, months, mountains, rivers and oceans, as well as infinitives and indeclinable parts of speech used as nouns, are masculine in almost every case.

Examples:

<p>El segundo <i>martes</i> del próximo <i>abril</i> no veremos los <i>Alpes</i>, pero veremos el <i>Amazonas</i> y el <i>Atlántico</i>. <i>On the second Tuesday of next April we shall not see the Alps, but we shall see the Amazon and the Atlantic.</i></p> <p>El <i>comer</i> es necesario para vivir. <i>Eating is necessary to live.</i></p> <p>El <i>porqué</i> de eso y el <i>pero</i> de esto no me preocupan. <i>The why of that and the but of this do not worry me.</i></p>	}	<p>Notice that the masculine article precedes the nouns in the first sentence, the infinitive <i>comer</i> in the second, and <i>porqué</i> and <i>pero</i> used as nouns, in the third.</p>
---	---	--

4. Compound words are masculine when they are made up of a verb and a noun, but, if their first element is not a verb, they are of the gender to which the second part of the combination belongs.

Examples:

<p>el paraguas, <i>the umbrella</i> el cortaplumas, <i>the penknife</i> el portamonedas, <i>the coin-purse</i> el salvavidas, <i>the life-preserver</i> el mediodía, <i>noon, the mid-day</i> la madreselva, <i>the honeysuckle</i> la bocacalle, <i>the mouth of the street</i></p>	{	<p>The first four examples are compound words made up of a verb and a noun, and on this account they are masculine. The first element of the other three examples is not a verb, and consequently these compound words are of the gender of the second element.</p>
--	---	---

FURTHER EXPLANATION OF THE GENDERS

These are the six genders which exist in Spanish and which were not all taken into consideration before, for the sake of simplicity: *masculino*, masculine, *femenino*, feminine, *neutro*, neuter, *común*, common, *epiceno*, epicene, and *ambiguo*, ambiguous.

As only adjectives and words or phrases used as such belong to the neuter gender, and as the gender of the masculine and feminine nouns has already been sufficiently considered to meet the needs of beginners, let the kind of nouns which pertain to the common, epicene and ambiguous genders be here expounded.

THE COMMON GENDER

Common is the gender of those nouns which designate persons and which have only one form of ending to represent both sexes.

Examples:

el estudiante, <i>the student (male)</i>	el mártir, <i>the martyr (male)</i>
la estudiante, <i>the student (female)</i>	la mártir, <i>the martyr (female)</i>
el joven, <i>the young man</i>	el compatriota, <i>the compatriot (m.)</i>
la joven, <i>the young woman</i>	la compatriota, <i>the compatriot (f.)</i>
el cómplice, <i>the accomplice (male)</i>	el espía, <i>the spy (male)</i>
la cómplice, <i>the accomplice (female)</i>	la espía, <i>the spy (female)</i>
el testigo, <i>the witness (male)</i>	el hereje, <i>the heretic (male)</i>
la testigo, <i>the witness (female)</i>	la hereje, <i>the heretic (female)</i>
el idiota, <i>the idiot (male)</i>	el reo, <i>the culprit (male)</i>
la idiota, <i>the idiot (female)</i>	la reo, <i>the culprit (female)</i>
el modista, <i>the ladies' tailor</i>	el artista, <i>the artist (male)</i>
la modista, <i>the dressmaker</i>	la artista, <i>the artist (female)</i>

THE EPICENE GENDER

Epicene is the gender of those nouns which designate animals and which have one form of ending to represent both sexes. The word *macho*, *male*, or *hembra*, *female*, is added to the Spanish nouns of the epicene gender.

Examples:

el tigre macho, <i>the tiger (male)</i>	el águila macho, <i>the eagle (male)</i>
el tigre hembra, <i>the tiger (female)</i>	el águila hembra, <i>the eagle (female)</i>
la rata macho, <i>the rat (male)</i>	la perdiz macho, <i>the partridge (male)</i>
la rata hembra, <i>the rat (female)</i>	la perdiz hembra, <i>the partridge (f.)</i>

NOTE.—The names of a great many animals belong in Spanish to the epicene gender.

THE AMBIGUOUS GENDER

Ambiguous is the gender of those nouns which designate things and which can be used indiscriminately either as masculine or feminine.

Examples:

el mar, <i>the sea</i>	el énfasis, <i>the emphasis</i>
la mar, <i>the sea</i>	la énfasis, <i>the emphasis</i>
el calor, <i>the heat</i>	el margen, <i>the margin, the edge</i>
la calor, <i>the heat</i>	la margen, <i>the margin, the edge</i>
el azúcar, <i>the sugar</i>	el aroma, <i>the aroma</i>
la azúcar, <i>the sugar</i>	la aroma, <i>the aroma</i>
el análisis, <i>the analysis</i>	el tilde, <i>the tilde</i>
la análisis, <i>the analysis</i>	la tilde, <i>the tilde</i>

NOTE.—Students are recommended to use these ambiguous nouns in the masculine. It is, as a rule, the more elegant form.

IMPORTANT NOUNS WITH THE SAME FORM WHICH HAVE ONE MEANING
WHEN THEY ARE MASCULINE AND ANOTHER WHEN THEY ARE
FEMININE

el ayuda de cámara, <i>the valet</i>	la guardia, <i>the guard (corps)</i>
la ayuda, <i>the help, the aid</i>	el guía, <i>the guide, the cicerone</i>
el capital, <i>the capital (money)</i>	la guía, <i>the guidebook, the directory</i>
la capital, <i>the capital (city)</i>	el moral, <i>the mulberry-tree</i>
el calavera, <i>the madcap, the wild individual</i>	la moral, <i>the moral</i>
la calavera, <i>the skull</i>	el orden, <i>the order, method</i>
el cólera, <i>the cholera</i>	la orden, <i>the command</i>
la cólera, <i>the anger</i>	el ordenanza, <i>the orderly</i>
el cometa, <i>the comet</i>	la ordenanza, <i>the ordinance</i>
la cometa, <i>the kite</i>	el parte, <i>the official communication</i>
el cura, <i>the priest</i>	la parte, <i>the part</i>
la cura, <i>the cure</i>	el pendiente, <i>the earring</i>
el espada, <i>the swordsman, the matador</i>	la pendiente, <i>the slope</i>
la espada, <i>the sword</i>	el pez, <i>the fish (alive)</i>
el frente, <i>the front (battlefield)</i>	la pez, <i>the tar, the pitch</i>
la frente, <i>the forehead</i>	el trompeta, <i>the trumpeter</i>
el guardia, <i>the guardsman</i>	la trompeta, <i>the trumpet</i>
	el vista, <i>the custom house inspector</i>
	la vista, <i>the view, the sight</i>

HOW TO OBTAIN FEMININE FORMS FROM MASCULINE NOUNS

1. The majority of the masculine nouns which designate living beings and which end either in *o* or *e*, change the *o* or *e* into *a* to form the feminine.

Examples:

amigo, <i>friend (masc.)</i>	gato, <i>tomcat</i>
amiga, <i>friend (fem.)</i>	gata, <i>female cat</i>
pariente, <i>relative (masc.)</i>	elefante, <i>elephant (masc.)</i>
parienta, <i>relative (fem.)</i>	elefanta, <i>elephant (fem.)</i>

2. The majority of the masculine nouns which designate living beings and which end in the consonants *d, l, n, r, s* or *z*, add the letter *a* to form the feminine.

Examples:

huésped, <i>guest (masc.)</i>	león, <i>lion (masc.)</i>	marqués, <i>marquis</i>
huéspeda, <i>guest (fem.)</i>	leona, <i>lioness (fem.)</i>	marquesa, <i>marchioness</i>
el chaval, <i>the lad</i>	señor, <i>Mr.</i>	aprendiz, <i>apprentice (masc.)</i>
la chavala, <i>the lass</i>	señora, <i>Mrs.</i>	aprendiza, <i>apprentice (fem.)</i>

3. Some masculine nouns which designate living beings and which end in *e* require the addition of *sa* to form the feminine; others affix

different endings to the stems of their masculine forms, while others have a word to denote the masculine and another to denote the feminine.

<i>Nouns which add sa to the masculine to form the feminine</i>	<i>Nouns with one ending for the masculine and another for the feminine</i>	<i>Nouns which have one word to denote the masculine and another to denote the feminine</i>
el alcalde, <i>the mayor</i>	el emperador, <i>the emperor</i>	el caballero, <i>the gentleman</i>
la alcadesa, <i>the mayor's wife</i>	la emperatriz, <i>the empress</i>	la dama, <i>the lady, the dame</i>
el conde, <i>the count</i>	el héroe, <i>the hero</i>	el caballo, <i>the horse</i>
la condesa, <i>the countess</i>	la heroína, <i>the heroine</i>	la yegua, <i>the mare</i>
el duque, <i>the duke</i>	el poeta, <i>the poet</i>	el carnero, <i>the ram</i>
la duquesa, <i>the duchess</i>	la poetisa, <i>the poetess</i>	la oveja, <i>the ewe (sheep)</i>

NUMBER

The numbers which Spanish nouns have are the singular and the plural.

HOW TO OBTAIN THE PLURAL OF SINGULAR NOUNS

The plural of Spanish nouns is obtained by adding either *s* or *es* to the singular.

CASES IN WHICH THE LETTER *s* IS ADDED

1. Singular nouns of more than one syllable which end in one or more vowels, and which do not have the stress of the pronunciation on their last syllable, add *s* to form the plural.

Examples:	mesa, <i>table</i>	zanahoria, <i>carrot</i>	rábano, <i>radish</i>
	mesas, <i>tables</i>	zanahorias, <i>carrots</i>	rábanos, <i>radishes</i>
	agua, <i>water</i>	sardina, <i>sardine</i>	líquido, <i>liquid</i>
	aguas, <i>waters</i>	sardinas, <i>sardines</i>	líquidos, <i>liquids</i>

NOTE.—The letter *y*, although it sometimes has the sound of the Spanish vowel *i*, is always considered a consonant.

2. Monosyllabic nouns which end in one or more vowels, except the names of the vowels of the alphabet, and nouns of more than one syllable which end in a stressed *e*, also add *s* to form the plural.

Examples:	el te, <i>the tea</i>	la fe, <i>the faith</i>	el mi, <i>the mi (music)</i>
	los tes, <i>the teas</i>	las fes, <i>the faiths</i>	los mis, <i>the mi's</i>
	la t, <i>the t</i>	el pie, <i>the foot</i>	el café, <i>the coffee</i>
	las tes, <i>the t's</i>	los pies, <i>the feet</i>	los cafés, <i>the coffees</i>
	la b, <i>the b</i>	el fa, <i>the fa (music)</i>	el corsé, <i>the corset</i>
	las bes, <i>the b's</i>	los fas, <i>the fa's</i>	los corsés, <i>the corsets</i>

CASES IN WHICH THE ENDING *es* IS ADDED

Nouns ending in a stressed vowel, the *e* being excepted, the names of the vowels of the alphabet, and every noun which ends in a consonant add *es* to form the plural.

Examples:

el rubí, <i>the ruby</i>	el bajá, <i>the pasha</i>	el rey, <i>the king</i>
los rubíes, <i>the rubies</i>	los bajaes, <i>the pashas</i>	los reyes, <i>the kings</i>
el bambú, <i>the bamboo</i>	la a, <i>the a</i>	el jardín, <i>the garden</i>
los bambúes, <i>the bamboos</i>	las aes, <i>the a's</i>	los jardines, <i>the gardens</i>
el tisú, <i>the gold or silver</i>	la i, <i>the i</i>	el papel, <i>the paper</i>
tissue	las íes, <i>the i's</i>	los papeles, <i>the papers</i>
los tisúes, <i>the gold or silver tissues</i>		

NOTE.—The names of musical notes, the names of the consonants of the alphabet, and the words *papá*, *papa*, *mamá*, *mama*, *sofá*, *sofa*, *menú*, *menu* are exceptions to this rule because they add an *s* to form the plural.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS ENDING IN EITHER *c* OR *z*

Nouns ending in *c* change this letter into *qu*, and those which end in *z* change the *z* into *c* so as to preserve respectively the English *k* and *th* sounds.

Examples:	el frac, <i>the dress-coat</i>	el arroz, <i>the rice</i>
	los fraques, <i>the dress-coats</i>	los arroces, <i>the rices</i>
	el clac, <i>the opera hat (collapsible)</i>	la cruz, <i>the cross</i>
	los claques, <i>the opera hats</i>	las cruces, <i>the crosses</i>

CASES WHERE THE NOUN IS THE SAME FOR BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL

Nouns which end in *s* do not change their structure to form the plural, if their last syllable is not stressed.

Examples:	El martes, <i>Tuesday</i>	la dosis, <i>the dose (medicine)</i>
	los martes, <i>Tuesdays</i>	las dosis, <i>the doses (medicine)</i>
	el análisis, <i>the analysis</i>	el éxtasis, <i>the ecstasy</i>
	los análisis, <i>the analyses</i>	los éxtasis, <i>the ecstasies</i>

NOTE.—Family names ending in *z*, and the words *déficit*, *deficit*, and *ultimatum*, *ultimatum*, follow the above rule, but the word *álbum*, *album*, adds *es* to form the plural.

HOW THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS IS FORMED

Compound nouns form their plurals, almost invariably, as the simple ones.

Examples:

el correveidile, <i>the tattler, the tale-bearer</i>	el hazmerreír, <i>the laughing-stock</i>
los correveidiles, <i>the tattlers, the tale-bearers</i>	los hazmerreíres, <i>the laughing-stocks</i>
la enhorabuena, <i>the congratulation</i>	el matasiete, <i>the bully, the fire-eater</i>
las enhorabuenas, <i>the congratulations</i>	los matasietes, <i>the bullies, the fire-eaters</i>

Exceptions:

	la ricahembra, <i>the nobleman's wife or daughter</i>
el gentilhombre, <i>the nobleman</i>	las ricashembras, <i>the noblemen's wives or daughters</i>
los gentileshombres, <i>the noblemen</i>	

NOUNS WHICH ARE ALWAYS (OR USUALLY) USED IN THE PLURAL

Enaguas, *petticoat*, pantalones, *trousers*, calzoncillos, *drawers*, are used more frequently in the plural than in the singular, and las gafas, *the spectacles*, las señas, *the address*, las afueras, *the suburbs*, and los víveres, *the provisions*, are always used in the plural.

PLURAL NOUNS WHICH INCLUDE PERSONS OF BOTH SEXES

Some nouns which denote rank or relationship are used in their plural masculine forms to denote persons of both sexes, besides retaining their regular meaning.

Examples:

los padres, *the father and mother*, and, of course, *the fathers*.
 los novios, *the sweethearts* or *the bride and groom*, as well as *the grooms*.
 los esposos, *the husband and wife* as well as *the husbands*.
 los niños, *the children*, meaning both boys and girls, or only *boys*.
 los reyes, *the king and queen* or *the kings*.

THE POSSESSIVE CASE

HOW THE POSSESSIVE CASE OF NOUNS IS EXPRESSED IN SPANISH

Possession is expressed in Spanish by placing the preposition *de* after the nouns which represent the thing possessed or after nouns which denote relationship, and before the nouns which represent their possessor. It is also expressed by *the definite article* followed by *de* in sentences where the thing possessed is not repeated.

Examples:

El automóvil de mi tío. <i>My uncle's automobile.</i>	{	Here the preposition <i>de</i> follows the noun which represents the thing possessed, i.e., <i>automóvil</i> , and precedes the noun which represents its possessor, i.e., <i>tío</i> .

El abuelo de mi amigo. { In this example *de* follows the noun which
My friend's grandfather. { expresses relationship and precedes its pos-
 sessor.

El automóvil de Maria y *el de* Ma- { The singular form of the definite
 riana son grandes. *Mary's auto-* { article *el* is followed by *de* in this
mobile and Marian's are big. { sentence because the thing pos-
 sessed is not repeated.

NOTE.—The other Spanish cases are also obtained by means of prepositions.

HOW THE PREPOSITIONS *de* AND *para* SERVE TO COMBINE SPANISH NOUNS

Combinations of nouns are obtained in Spanish by placing the preposition *de* or *para* after the more important noun and before the less important. *Para* is used only when the noun, which has a lesser degree of importance in the combination, expresses the purpose or use for which the thing represented by the first noun is meant.

Examples:

el zumo de limón, <i>the lemon juice</i>	la máquina de coser, <i>the sewing</i>
los zapatos de cabritilla, <i>the kid</i>	<i>machine</i>
<i>leather shoes</i>	la tinta de copiar, <i>the copying-ink</i>
el anillo de oro, <i>the gold ring</i>	el cajón de la mesa, <i>the table drawer</i>
la taza de plata, <i>the silver cup</i>	el estante para libros, <i>the bookcase</i>
el vaso de leche, <i>the glass of milk</i>	los polvos para la cara, <i>the face</i>
el vaso para la leche, <i>the milk-glass</i>	<i>powder</i>

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

Many Spanish nouns and adjectives and a few gerunds, participles and adverbs admit augmentative and diminutive endings, to increase or to diminish the extent of their meaning or to express the idea of coarseness, homeliness, frivolity, contempt, mockery, and affection and compassion; affection and compassion belonging only to the diminutives.

Augmentatives and diminutives are used a great deal in colloquial language, but rarely in grave styles of writing.

AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE SUFFIXES

The following augmentative and diminutive suffixes are those most commonly used:

AUGMENTATIVE SUFFIXES

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
on	ona
ote	ota
azo	aza
acho	acha

DIMINUTIVE SUFFIXES

<i>Masculine</i>					<i>Feminine</i>
ito	illo	ico	uelo	ete	The same as the masculine except that the last vowel should be <i>a</i> in every case.
cito	cillo	cico	zuelo	cete	
ecito	ecillo	ecico	ezuelo	ecete	
ececito	ececillo	ececico	ecezuelo	ucho	

NOTE.—The endings *ote*, *azo* and *acho* of the augmentatives, and *uelo*, *ete* and *ucho* of the diminutives, have, as a rule, a depreciative value. *Ito* is the diminutive suffix which best expresses delicacy, affection, compassion, etc.

FORMATION OF THE AUGMENTATIVES

When the word whose extent of meaning is to be increased ends in a consonant, the augmentative is obtained by simply adding to it one of the above given suffixes or compounds which are made of these suffixes; and if the word ends in a vowel or more, the last vowel is dropped before the suffix is added.

Examples:

<i>Positives</i>	<i>Augmentatives</i>
hombre, <i>man</i>	hombrón, <i>big man</i> (increase in size)
mujer, <i>woman</i>	mujerona, <i>big woman</i> (increase in size)
hombre, <i>man</i>	hornbrazo, <i>big man</i> (increase in size plus coarseness)
mujer, <i>woman</i>	mujeraza, <i>big woman</i> (increase in size plus coarseness)
feo, <i>homely</i>	feote, <i>very homely</i> (person or animal, masc.)
fea, <i>homely</i>	feota, <i>very homely</i> (person or animal, fem.)
vivo, <i>lively, smart</i>	vivaracho, <i>very lively or smart</i> (person or animal, masc.)
viva, <i>lively, smart</i>	vivaracha, <i>very lively or smart</i> (person or animal, fem.)
rico, <i>rich</i>	ricacho, <i>vulgarly rich</i> (masc.)
rica, <i>rich</i>	ricacha, <i>vulgarly rich</i> (fem.)
palabra, <i>word</i>	palabrota, <i>coarse expression</i> (coarseness)
soltero, <i>bachelor</i>	solterón, <i>old bachelor</i>
soltera, <i>unmarried woman</i>	solterona, <i>old maid</i>
bobo, <i>fool, dunce</i>	bobalicón, <i>big fool or dunce</i> (masc.)
boba, <i>fool, dunce</i>	bobalicona, <i>big fool or dunce</i> (fem.)
	(Notice <i>alicón</i> ending)
gordo, <i>fat</i>	gordinflón, <i>very fat but flabby</i> (persons or animals, masc.)
gorda, <i>fat</i>	gordinflona, <i>very fat but flabby</i> (persons or animals, fem.)

pobre, <i>poor</i>	pobretón, <i>very poor</i> (increase in meaning plus contempt)
viento, <i>wind</i>	ventarrón, <i>a very strong wind</i> (increase in strength)
sol, <i>sun</i>	solazo, <i>scorching sun</i> (increase in heating power)
voz, <i>voice</i>	vozarrón, <i>a very voluminous voice</i> (increase in volume)

FEMININE NOUNS WHICH ARE MASCULINE WHEN THEY BECOME
AUGMENTATIVES

Some feminine nouns become masculine when they take augmentative endings.

	<i>Feminine Positive</i>	<i>Augmentative Masculine</i>
	silla, <i>chair</i>	sillón, <i>armchair, easy chair</i>
Examples:	sala, <i>parlor</i>	salón, <i>large hall, salon</i>
	puerta, <i>door</i>	portón, <i>big door or court door of a house</i>

NOTE a.—The following words, *carretón, push-cart, camarote, state-room, callejón, alley, narrow passage between walls, mountains, etc., and islote, small island* (barren) are diminutives although they end in *on* and *ote*.

NOTE b.—When the suffixes *azo* and *ada* are added to certain nouns, they often indicate a blow, an explosion, a thrust or an injury due to the things which is named.

	puño, <i>fist</i>	puñetazo, <i>blow with the fist</i>
Examples:	látigo, <i>whip</i>	latigazo, <i>blow with the whip</i>
	cañon, <i>cannon</i>	cañonazo, <i>cannon shot</i> (explosion)
	cuchillo, <i>knife</i>	cuchillada, <i>stab, thrust with a knife</i>

COMBINATION OF TWO AUGMENTATIVE ENDINGS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Augmentative</i>
hombre, <i>man</i>	hombronazo, <i>huge, coarse man</i>
borracho, <i>drunkard</i>	borrachonazo, <i>inveterate drunkard</i>

FORMATION OF THE DIMINUTIVES

1. When monosyllabic words whose extent of meaning is to be decreased end in a consonant, they require the addition of the following suffixes, in their proper gender and number, to form their diminutives: *cito, ecito, ececito; cillo, ecillo, ececillo; cico, ecico, ececico*; and *ezuelo* and *ecezueto*. If they end in one or more vowels, the last vowel is dropped before the suffixes are added.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>
flor, <i>flower</i>	florcita
	florecita
	florequilla
	} <i>little flower</i> (idea of delicacy)

pez, <i>fish</i> (alive)	pececito, <i>little fish</i> (nice) pececillo, <i>little fish</i> (nice) pecezuelo, <i>little fish</i> (despicable little fish)
pan, <i>bread, loaf of bread</i>	panecillo, <i>roll</i> (diminishing of extent of meaning) pancito, <i>nice small loaf of bread or nice kind of bread</i>
pie, <i>foot</i>	piececito, <i>small foot</i> (idea of prettiness) piececico, <i>small foot</i> (idea of prettiness) piecezuelo, <i>small foot</i> (contempt)
sol, <i>sun</i>	solecito, <i>nice sun</i> solecillo, <i>nice sun</i>
rey, <i>king</i>	reyecito, <i>little king</i> (affection) reyecico, <i>little king</i> (affection) reyecillo, <i>insignificant king</i> (disrespectful) reyezuelo, <i>petty or worthless king</i> (contempt)
voz, <i>voice</i>	vocecita, <i>little voice</i> (pleasant)
luz, <i>light</i>	lucecita, <i>little light</i>
cruz, <i>cross</i>	crucecita, <i>little cross</i>
ruin, <i>mean</i>	ruincillo, <i>somewhat mean</i>

Note.—Some proper names of persons may or may not be exceptions to the above rule.

Examples:

Juan, <i>John</i>	Juanito, <i>Johnny</i> (exception) Juanico, <i>Johnny</i> (exception) Juancico, <i>Johnny</i> (no exception) Juancito, <i>Johnny</i> (no exception)
Luis, <i>Louis</i>	Luisillo, <i>Louie</i> (exception) Luisico, <i>Louie</i> (exception)

NOTE.—There are many words of one syllable like *bien, well, miel, honey, te, tea, sal, salt, mar, sea, gas, gas, paz, peace, tren, train*, etc., which are not converted into diminutives. The same thing is true with words of two or more syllables like *virtud, virtue, desdén, disdain, honor, honor, aprecio, appreciation, ternura, tenderness, valentía, courage*, etc.

2. Words of two syllables form their diminutives just like the monosyllables and may admit the same suffixes or different ones.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>	
ave, <i>bird</i>	avecita, <i>little bird</i>	} (all express the idea of smallness of size and affection)
	avecilla, <i>little bird</i>	
	avecica, <i>little bird</i>	
auto, <i>author</i>	autorcito, <i>nice little author</i>	
	autorcillo, <i>insignificant author</i>	
	autorzuelo, <i>despicable and insignificant author</i>	

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>
jardín, <i>garden</i>	jardinito, <i>little garden</i> jardinillo, <i>little garden</i> jardincito, <i>little garden</i> jardincillo, <i>little garden</i> } (all express the idea of prettiness)
lejos, <i>far or distant</i>	lejitos, <i>rather far or distant</i> (Notice that the <i>s</i> of this adverb is kept after the diminutive ending)
cerca, <i>near</i>	cerquita, <i>quite near, at a short distance</i>
junto, <i>close (to)</i>	juntito, <i>quite close (to)</i>
baile, <i>dance</i>	bailecito, <i>little dance</i> bailecillo, <i>little dance</i> bailecico, <i>little dance</i> bailete, <i>little dance</i> (somewhat contemptuous)
libro, <i>book</i>	librito, <i>little book</i> librico, <i>little book</i> librejo, <i>little book</i> (contempt). (Notice <i>ejo</i> ending.)
mano, <i>hand</i>	manita, <i>little hand</i> (pretty) manecita, <i>little hand</i> (pretty) manecica, <i>little hand</i> (pretty) manecilla, <i>little hand</i> (may be of a person or of a watch)
dolor, <i>pain</i>	dolorcito, <i>little or slight pain</i> dolorcillo, <i>little or slight pain</i> dolorcico, <i>little or slight pain</i> } (affection or diminishing of extent of meaning)
viejo, <i>old man</i>	viejecito, <i>nice old man</i> viejecico, <i>nice old man</i> viejecillo, <i>nice old man</i> vejete, <i>despicable old man</i>
abuelo, <i>grandfather</i>	abuelito, <i>grandfather</i> (affection or compassion) abuelico, <i>grandfather</i> (affection or compassion)
todo, <i>all, whole</i>	todito, <i>all, whole</i> (familiar)
nada, <i>nothing</i>	nadita, <i>nothing</i> (familiar)
niño, <i>child</i>	niñito, <i>little child</i> (affection)
cama, <i>bed</i>	camita, <i>nice little bed</i> camica, <i>nice little bed</i>
papá, <i>papa</i>	papaíto, <i>daddy, dear papa</i> (affection). (Notice that the suffix is added without dropping the last vowel of the positive.)
mamá, <i>mamma</i>	mamita, <i>dear mamma</i> (affection)
puerta, <i>door</i>	portezuela, <i>little door, carriage door</i> (diminishing of extent of meaning).
en seguida, <i>immediately</i>	en seguidita, <i>immediately</i> (familiar)
luego, <i>by-and-bye</i>	lueguito, <i>right away</i> (familiar)
pronto, <i>soon</i>	prontito, <i>quite or very soon</i> (familiar)
poco, <i>little</i>	poquito, <i>very little, a bit</i> (diminishing of extent of meaning)
poquito a poco,	<i>little by little</i> (familiar)

huevo, <i>egg</i>	huevo, <i>egg</i> and <i>little egg</i> } (familiar or diminishing of extent of meaning) huevecillo, <i>egg</i> and <i>little egg</i> }
diente, <i>tooth</i>	dientecito, <i>little tooth</i> } (familiar or diminishing of extent of meaning) dentecito, <i>little tooth</i> }
frío, <i>cold</i>	friito, <i>cold</i> (familiar) friillo, <i>cold</i> (familiar) friico, <i>cold</i> (familiar)
fresco, <i>cool, fresh</i>	fresquito, <i>cool or fresh</i> (familiar) fresquillo, <i>cool or fresh</i> (familiar) fresquico, <i>cool or fresh</i> (familiar)
rubia, <i>blonde</i>	rubita, <i>little blonde</i> rubiecita, <i>little blonde</i> rubiecica, <i>little blonde</i>
río, <i>river</i>	riachuelo, <i>rivulet</i> (diminishing of the extent of meaning) (Notice the <i>achuelo</i> ending)
agua, <i>water</i>	agüita, <i>water</i> (familiar)
agua fresca, <i>cool water</i>	agua fresquita, <i>nice, cool water</i> (familiar)
pobre, <i>poor</i>	pobrecito, <i>poor little thing</i> (compassion) pobrecillo, <i>poor little thing</i> (compassion) pobrecico, <i>poor little thing</i> (compassion) pobrete, <i>poor</i> (contempt)
hombre, <i>man</i>	hombrecito, <i>little man</i> (familiar or affection) hombrecico, <i>little man</i> (familiar or affection) hombrecillo, <i>little man</i> (slightly contemptuous)
mujer, <i>woman</i>	mujercita, <i>little woman</i> mujercilla, <i>little woman</i> (insignificant or slightly contemptuous) mujercica, <i>little woman</i> mujerzuela, <i>little woman</i> (contempt)
ladrón, <i>thief</i>	ladronzuelo, <i>petty thief</i> (contempt)
casa, <i>house</i>	casita, <i>little house</i> (prettiness) casica, <i>little house</i> (prettiness) casucha, <i>little house</i> (contempt)
fea, <i>homely</i>	feíta, <i>homely</i> } (diminishing of the extent of meaning plus affection or compassion) feílla, <i>homely</i> } feíca, <i>homely</i> } fehuela, <i>homely</i> }

NOTE.—Notice the new ending with the *h* before the diphthong in the last word.

3. Words of more than two syllables form their diminutives just like the monosyllables and may admit the same suffixes or different ones.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>
ahora, <i>now</i>	ahorita, <i>right now</i> (familiar)
ahora mismo, <i>this very minute</i>	ahora mismito, <i>this very minute</i> (familiar)

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>
hermano, <i>brother</i>	hermanito, <i>little brother</i> (affection) hermanillo, <i>little brother</i> (affection) hermanico, <i>little brother</i> (affection) hermanuco, contemptible term for <i>brother in a religious order</i> . (Notice <i>uco</i> ending)
pájaro, <i>bird</i>	pajarito, <i>little bird</i> pajarillo, <i>little bird</i> pajarico, <i>little bird</i>
caliente, <i>warm, hot</i>	calentito, <i>nice and warm</i> calentico, <i>nice and warm</i>
callando, <i>in a quiet or silent way</i>	callandito, <i>in a nice quiet way</i>
vino callandito, <i>he came in a nice quiet way</i>	
inocente, <i>innocent</i>	inocentito, <i>innocent</i> inocentillo, <i>innocent</i> inocentico, <i>innocent</i> inocentuelo, <i>innocent</i> { (diminishing of the extent of meaning plus affection or compassion)
coqueta, <i>coquette</i>	coquetita, <i>nice little coquette</i> coquetuela, <i>vain little coquette</i>

COMBINATIONS OF AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS AND VICE-
VERSA

<i>Augmentatives</i>	<i>Diminutives</i>
salón, <i>big hall, salon</i>	saloncillo, <i>greenroom (theatre), small hall</i>
gordinflón, <i>very fat, but flabby</i> (persons or animals)	gordinfloncillo, <i>little fellow who is very fat but flabby</i>
bobalicón, <i>big fool or dunce</i>	bobaliconcillo, <i>little fellow who is a big fool or dunce</i>
picarón, <i>great rascal</i> (pícaro, <i>rascal</i>)	picaroncillo, <i>big fellow who is a little rascal</i>
<i>Diminutive</i>	<i>Augmentative</i>
guapete, <i>fairly brave or good-looking</i>	guapetón, <i>very brave or very good-looking</i>
mocete, <i>lad</i>	mocetón, <i>corpulent, overgrown lad</i>

COMBINATION OF DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS

The positive *chico* which means either *boy*, or *little and small*, gives, besides the depreciative diminutive *chicuelo*, *little boy*, these forms which express affection: *chiquito* and *chiquillo*, *little boy*; *chiquitito*, *chiquitillo*

and *chiquitín*, *very little boy*, and *chiquirritito*, *chiquirritillo*, and *chiquirritín*, *very, very little boy*.

Poquito, *very little, a little bit*, diminutive of *poco*, *little*, gives the diminutive *poquitito* which means *very, very little* or *a tiny little bit*.

DEPRECIATIVE WORDS WITH DIFFERENT ENDINGS

populacho, <i>populace, rabble, mob</i>	calducho, <i>broth with little substance</i>
gentuza, <i>very low people</i>	<i>or poorly seasoned</i>
espantajo, <i>scarecrow, a sight, a</i>	pajarraco, <i>ugly or hideous bird, con-</i>
<i>fright</i>	<i>temptible individual</i>
monigote, <i>bumpkin, brother in a re-</i>	trastada, <i>inconsiderate act</i>
<i>ligious order</i>	barrabasada, <i>serious mischief</i>
mamarracho, <i>grotesque figure</i>	pegote, <i>sponger (one who eats at</i>
papelucho, <i>contemptible paper or</i>	<i>the expense of friends), a patch</i>
<i>writing</i>	madrastra, <i>stepmother</i>
animalucho, <i>ugly, hideous little</i>	bodorrio, <i>a bad match or wedding</i>
<i>animal</i>	

CHAPTER III

ADJECTIVES

THE GENDER OF ADJECTIVES

Spanish qualifying adjectives which end in *o* are either masculine or neuter; the ones which end in *a* are feminine, and those ending in any other letter than *o* or *a* generally have the same form for the three genders.

Examples:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
agrio, <i>sour</i>	agria, <i>sour</i>	lo agrio, <i>the sour or that which is sour</i>
útil, <i>useful</i>	útil, <i>useful</i>	lo útil, <i>the useful or that which is useful</i>

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE FROM MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

Masculine adjectives ending in *o* change the *o* to *a* to form the feminine, and those which do not end in *o* or *a* generally have the same ending for both genders. Examples: *hermoso*, *hermosa*, *beautiful*, *sonoro*, *sonora*, *sonorous*, *prudente*, for both masc. and fem., *prudent*, *capaz*, for both masc. and fem., *capable*, *obediente*, for both masc. and fem., *obedient*.

ADJECTIVES ENDING IN OTHER LETTERS THAN *o* WHICH ADD *a* TO FORM THE FEMININE

Adjectives ending in *an* and *on*, like *haragán*, *lazy*, *dormilón*, *sleepy-head*, and *preguntón*, *inquisitive*; those which are indicators of nationality ending in a consonant like *español*, *Spanish*, and *inglés*, *English*; those which end in *or*, not having a comparative value, like *emprendedor*, *enterprising*, and *traidor*, *treacherous*, and those which end in *ote* or *ete* like *francote*, *frank*, *plain spoken*, *regordete*, *chubby*, *plump*, and *pebete*, *small boy (in Argentina)*, also add *a* or change the last vowel into *a* to form the feminine.

NOTE.—*Mejor*, *better*, and *peor*, *worse*, etc., because of their having a comparative value, have the same form in the masculine and feminine.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

The plural of adjectives is obtained, in the masculine and feminine genders, in the same way as the plural of nouns of similar endings.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

An adjective which qualifies two or more nouns or pronouns of the same gender, is put in the plural in the same gender which the nouns or pronouns have, but if the nouns or pronouns are of different gender, the adjective is put in the masculine plural.

Example: La madre, la hija y las sobrinas son buenas, pero él, la suegra, las cuñadas y el tío son malos. *The mother, daughter and nieces are good, but he, the mother-in-law, sisters-in-law and uncle are bad.*

SPECIAL CASES OF AGREEMENT

1. When two or more singular nouns have a very closely related meaning or are synonymous, the adjective which qualifies them is put in the singular, and it only agrees in gender and number with the last noun.

Examples:

Su juventud fué una vacación, un descanso continuo.

His youth was a continuous vacation, a continuous rest.

Su vejez no ha sido más que un trabajo, una lucha, un esfuerzo incesante.

His old age has been nothing but an uninterrupted hardship, an uninterrupted struggle, an uninterrupted effort.

2. When two or more nouns are united by the conjunction *o*, the adjective agrees in gender and number with the last.

Examples:

Un valor o una modestia extraordinaria. *An extraordinary courage or an extraordinary modesty.*

Un alma o un rostro perfecto. *A perfect soul or a perfect face.*

CONDENSATION OF EXPRESSIONS WHERE TWO ADJECTIVES OCCUR

Expressions like *el teatro antiguo y el moderno*, the ancient theatre and the modern, *el piso tercero y el cuarto*, the third floor and the fourth, etc., are respectively condensed thus: *los teatros antiguo y moderno*, *los pisos tercero y cuarto*.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

Spanish adjectives usually follow the nouns they qualify, but most writers place them in accordance with their own ideas of harmony, emphasis or elegance.

CASES WHERE THE ADJECTIVE FOLLOWS THE NOUN

When the adjective expresses a distinguishing or specifying attribute and not an inherent quality or characteristic of the modified noun; also when it denotes nationality or is much longer than the noun it accompanies, and also when it is preceded by a modifying adverb.

Examples:

el agua caliente, *the hot water*
 el muchacho dormilón, *the sleepy-head boy*
 el muchacho regordete, *the chubby boy*
 el hombre traidor, *the treacherous man*
 el hombre emprendedor, *the enterprising man*
 la mujer enferma, *the sick woman*
 la pintura blanca, *the white paint*
 la mesa cuadrada, *the square table*
 el pollo grande, *the big or large chicken*

The adjectives in these examples specify or express the quality or characteristic which serves to distinguish the qualified nouns from those of their own kind, because not all waters are cold, not all boys are sleepy-heads or chubby, etc.

el vino español, *the Spanish wine*
 el idioma inglés, *the English language*
 un discurso interminable, *an endless speech*
 una joven sumamente buena, *an exceedingly good young lady*

Nationality is expressed by the adjective in the first two examples; in the third the adjective is much longer than the noun, and in the fourth *buena* is preceded by the adverb *sumamente*.

CASES WHERE THE ADJECTIVE PRECEDES THE NOUN

1. When the adjective expresses an inherent quality or only serves as a mere epithet to characterize the accompanying noun; also when it is much shorter than the noun it accompanies, and when it is considered necessary for oratorical, figurative or poetical purposes.

Examples:

la blanca nieve, *the white snow*
 la dulce miel, *the sweet honey*
 el desgraciado hombre, *the unfortunate man*
 la afortunada mujer, *the fortunate woman*
 la linda criatura, *the pretty infant or creature*
 el hondo sentimiento, *the deep feeling or sentiment*
 la vivaracha ardilla, *the lively squirrel*
 la dulce or suave brisa, *the soft breeze*

In the first two examples the adjective expresses an inherent quality of the nouns which follow; in the others the adjective is used principally because it serves to characterize the accompanying nouns, besides fulfilling some of the requisites mentioned in the last part of the rule.

2. When determining adjectives like *otro*, *other*, *another*, *mucho*, *much*, the invariable *cada*, *each*, *every*, and all the cardinal numbers are used to determine the extent of the noun without qualifying it.

Examples:

otro árbol, *another tree*
 otra planta, *another plant*
 ótros pájaros, *other birds*
 otras flores, *other flowers*
 mucho poder, *much power*
 mucha ambición, *much ambition*

cada paso, *each step*
 cada dos o tres pasos, *every two or three steps*
 las cinco personas, *the five persons*
 las ochenta torres, *the eighty towers*

NOTE.—When *cada* is used as a pronoun it is followed by *uno*, *una* or *cual*.

POSITION OF TWO ADJECTIVES

1. When two adjectives are joined by a conjunction and have the same degree of importance with regard to the noun they modify, *i.e.*, when they are used as distinguishing attributes, they are placed after it; but if the adjectives only express inherent qualities of the noun that they accompany or are only used as epithets, then they are put before it.

Examples:

el río grande y hermoso, <i>the big beautiful river</i>	} In the first two examples the adjectives follow the noun because they express its distinguishing characteristics; in the third they precede because they express inherent qualities, and in the fourth because they are only used as epithets to characterize it.
los espíritus libres e independientes, <i>the free and independent spirits</i>	
la blanca y fría nieve, <i>the cold white snow</i>	
las espantosas e invisibles caricias de la muerte, <i>the frightful and invisible caresses of death</i>	

2. When two adjectives can not be joined by a conjunction because if they are united the result is lack of sense in the sentence, the one which in English is nearer the noun is the one which in Spanish follows it, and the one which in English is farther away from the noun is the one which in Spanish precedes it.

Examples:

el inteligente muchacho neoyorquino, <i>the intelligent New York boy</i>	} Notice that the adjective which in Spanish follows the noun is the one which in English is nearer to it, and that the one which in Spanish precedes the noun is in English the one which is farther away from it.
el valiente torero español, <i>the bold Spanish bullfighter</i>	
el hermoso lago cristalino, <i>the beautiful crystalline lake</i>	
la juguetona ternera negra, <i>the playful black heifer calf</i>	

IMPORTANT ADJECTIVES WHICH HAVE ONE MEANING WHEN PLACED BEFORE THE NOUN AND ANOTHER WHEN PLACED AFTER IT

Examples:

el pobre hombre, *the unfortunate or pitiable man*
 el hombre pobre, *the poor or indigent man*
 ciertas personas, *certain persons*
 noticias ciertas, *reliable news*
 un grande or gran hombre, *a great man*
 um hombre grande, *a big man*
 un sombrero nuevo, *a new hat*
 un nuevo sombrero, *another or a different hat*

APOCOPATION OR SHORTENING OF IMPORTANT ADJECTIVES

The following adjectives lose their final *o* when they are placed immediately before a masculine singular noun.

Examples:

bueno, *good*
malo, *bad, ill*
uno, *one*
alguno, *some*

ninguno, *no, none, not any*
primero, *first*
tercero, *third*
veintiuno, *twenty-one*

Examples:

el buen hombre, *the good man*
hace mal tiempo, *it is bad weather*
me ha sacado un diente, *he has*
pulled out one of my teeth
algún día, *some day*

ningún insecto, *no insect*
el primer párrafo del tercer capítulo, *the first paragraph of the third chapter*
los veintiún pollos, *the twenty-one chickens*

NOTE.—If the above adjectives are placed after the nouns their full forms are used.

APOCOPATION OF OTHER ADJECTIVES

Grande, great, big, large, grand, loses its last syllable when placed before a singular noun of either gender.

Gran, great, is principally used to indicate eminence, but for very emphatic expressions of the same nature the full form *grande* is used. When *grande* refers to size it is placed after the noun it modifies.

Examples:

<p>Ese <i>grande</i> hombre no es hombre <i>grande</i>. <i>That great man is not a big man.</i> Esa <i>gran</i> mujer hace las cosas con <i>gran</i> rapidez. <i>That great woman does things</i> <i>with great rapidity.</i></p>	{	<p>In the first example <i>grande</i> indicates respectively greatness or eminence and size; in the second example <i>gran</i> has the meaning of great in both cases.</p>
---	---	--

Santo, saint, holy, blessed, also loses its last syllable when it is placed before the masculine name of a saint except in the cases of *Santo Domingo, San Domingo, Santo Tomás, St. Thomas*, etc.

Examples: *San Pablo, St. Paul, San Juan, St. John*.

Ciento, hundred, unless it is used with numbers above a hundred, except when placed immediately before *mil*, also loses its last syllable before the noun which follows, even if one or more adjectives are placed between them.

Examples:

cien manzanas, <i>a hundred apples</i>	ciento ochenta millones de cuerpos
cien mil mariposas, <i>a hundred thousand butterflies</i>	inanimados, <i>a hundred and eighty millions of inanimate bodies.</i>
mil ciento cuarenta ramos de flores, <i>a thousand one hundred and forty bouquets.</i>	cien ilustres escritores, <i>a hundred illustrious writers.</i>
ciento diez, ciento treinta o ciento ochenta buques de guerra, <i>a hundred and ten, a hundred and thirty or a hundred and eighty men-of-war.</i>	cien valerosos y arrojados capitanes, <i>a hundred brave and daring captains.</i>

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

Frequently, when nouns are *implied* in the sentence, i.e., when they are not expressed, adjectives are used substantively and are accompanied by the appropriate form of the definite article.

Examples:

Él tiene la cuchara grande y yo la pequeña. *He has the large spoon and I have the small one.*

La gente buena sufre y la mala también. *Good people suffer and the bad also.*

THE COMPARATIVE

The comparative has the forms of superiority, inferiority and equality.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY

The comparative of superiority is obtained by placing the adverb *más, more*, before the word compared, and the particle *que, than*, after it.

Examples:

Él es *más* estudioso *que* yo. *He is more studious than I.*

Tenemos *más* dinero *que* él. *We have more money than he.*

Ella habla *más* elocuentemente *que* ustedes. *She speaks more eloquently than you (pol. form pl.).*

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY

The comparative of inferiority is obtained by placing the adverb *menos, less, fewer*, before the word compared, and the particle *que, than*, after it.

Examples:

Él es *menos* estudioso *que* yo. *He is less studious than I.*

Tenemos *menos* dinero *que* él. *We have less money than he.*

Usted tiene *menos* perlas *que* mi tía. *You have fewer pearls than my aunt.*

Ella habla *menos* elocuentemente *que* ustedes. *She speaks less eloquently than you (pol. form pl.).*

NOTE.—Adjectives as well as nouns and adverbs can be compared.

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES

The following adjectives have an irregular comparative besides the regular forms:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
bueno, <i>good</i>	mejor, <i>better</i>	seldom más bueno
malo, <i>bad</i>	peor, <i>worse</i>	seldom más malo
grande, <i>large</i>	mayor, <i>larger, older</i>	or más grande
pequeño, <i>small, little</i>	menor, <i>smaller, younger</i>	or más pequeño

NOTE.—*Mayor* and *menor* may be used to express size, but they are generally employed to denote age. *Grande* and *pequeño* are used, as a rule, to express size. *Superior*, *superior*, and *inferior*, *inferior*, respectively comparatives of the adjectives *alto*, *high*, and *bajo*, *short*, are used in both languages with the same meanings and in the same way.

Examples:

Mi hermano menor es *peor que yo y mejor que mi hermano mayor*.

My younger brother is worse than I and better than my older brother.

Esa bicicleta es *más grande que ésta y más pequeña que aquélla*.

That bicycle is larger than this and smaller than that one (yonder).

Esta cerveza es *superior a ésta e inferior a aquélla*.

That beer is superior (better) to this and inferior (worse) to that (yonder).

NOTE.—The following adverbs also have an irregular comparative:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>
mucho, <i>much</i>	más, <i>more</i>	bien, <i>well</i>	mejor, <i>better</i>
poco, <i>little</i>	menos, <i>less</i>	mal, <i>ill, badly</i>	peor, <i>worse</i>

CASES WHERE THE EQUIVALENT OF *than* IS *de*, *de lo que*, ETC.

1. *De* is the equivalent of the English *than* when it precedes a numeral or a numerical expression and follows the adverb *más*, *more*, in affirmative sentences.

Examples:

Él tiene *más de veinte* cajas de fósforos y yo tengo *más de cuarenta*.

He has more than twenty boxes of matches and I have more than forty.

Ha perdido *más de la mitad* de su fortuna.

He has lost more than half of his fortune.

Yo no tengo *más que cincuenta mil dólares* en el banco.

I have no more than fifty thousand dollars in the bank.

NOTE.—In negative sentences *que* is as a rule used after the adverb *más*, *more*, before a numeral or a numerical expression, as in the last example.

2. *De lo que* is the equivalent of *than* when each part of the comparison contains a different verb and the second part admits the repetition

of the verb which is used with the first, and when the verb *ser*, *to be*, is used in the second part of the comparison accompanied by an adjective.

(The first part of the comparison includes everything which precedes the equivalent of the English *than*; the second begins with the equivalent of the English *than* and all the elements which follow.)

Examples:

Gana menos *de lo que* necesita.

He earns less than he needs (to earn).

Él es más rico *de lo que* se supone.

He is richer than it is supposed (he is).

La tormenta hizo menos daño *de lo que* creíamos que haría.

The storm did less damage than we thought it would do.

Trabaja menos *de lo que* es necesario para su bienestar.

He works less than it is necessary for his welfare.

3. *De*, followed by the definite article and by *que*, is also the equivalent of *than* when a noun is the object of the verb in the first part of the comparison and this noun is not repeated in the second part.

Examples:

Me ha entregado menos dinero *del que* usted le dió.

He has delivered me less money than you gave him.

Ha empleado menos tiempo *del que* necesitaba.

He has used less time than he needed.

Ha consumido más harina *de la que* era necesaria.

He has consumed more flour than was necessary.

Encontraron mayores obstáculos *de los que* se habían imaginado.

They found greater obstacles than they had imagined.

Recibieron mejores noticias *de las que* esperaban.

They received better news than they were expecting.

NOTE.—*Que lo que*, *que la que*, *que los que* and *que las que* may be used instead of *de lo que*, *de los que*, etc., in the examples given to illustrate rules 2 and 3, but *de lo que*, etc., is preferred because it is more euphonious, unless the idea expressed is ambiguous as can be seen in the example which follows: *Él tiene más libros de los que hay en la biblioteca*, which may mean *He has more of the books which are in the library* or *He has more books than there are in the library*.

CASES IN WHICH *que* IS USED FOLLOWED BY ANY OF THE FORMS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE PLUS ANOTHER *que*

When the meaning of *lo que* is *what* or *that which*, and the English equivalents of *el que*, *la que* and *los que*, *las que*, are respectively *that which*, *the one who* and *the ones who*, *que* must precede all these forms in the second part of the comparison.

Lo que yo digo es más claro que lo que usted dice.

What I say is clearer than that which you say.

Yo digo eso mejor que el que habla.

I say that better than the one who (masc. sing.) speaks.

Yo digo eso mejor que la que habla.

I say that better than the one who (fem. sing.) speaks.

Yo digo eso mejor que los que hablan.

I say that better than the ones who (masc. pl.) speak.

Yo digo eso mejor que las que hablan.

I say that better than the ones who (fem. pl.) speak.

HOW TO FORM THE COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY

The comparative of equality is formed in this way:

If an adjective or adverb is the object of the comparison, *tan*, *as*, *so*, is placed before, and *como*, *as*, after it; but if a noun is the word compared, either *tanto* or *tanta*, *as*, *as much*, *so much as*, *so*, or one of their plural forms, i.e., *tantos* or *tantas*, *as*, *as many*, *so many as*, *so*, precedes the noun, agreeing with it both in gender and number, and *como* follows it.

Examples:

Soy tan ágil como él. I am as agile as he is.

Ella no es hoy tan amable como ayer.

To-day she is not so amiable as yesterday.

Vienen a verme tan a menudo como desean.

They come to see me as often as they wish.

Mi caballo come tanto heno como el de usted.

My horse eats as much hay as yours.

Tengo tanta sidra como ellos. I have as much cider as they have.

No gasto tanto dinero como antes.

I do not spend so much money as before.

No tiene tanta ambición como el año pasado.

He does not have so much ambition as last year.

Tendré tantos clavos y tantas cerraduras como el herrero.

I shall have as many nails and as many locks as the blacksmith.

No tengo tantos arañazos ni tantas ampollas como mi sobrino.

I have not so many scratches nor so many blisters as my nephew.

Nunca he visto una carta tan mal escrita como la que acabo de recibir.

I have never seen in my life a letter so poorly written as the one I have just received.

CASES WHEN *tan*, *as*, MAY BE OMITTED IN THE COMPARISONS

In Spanish, as in English, *tan*, *as*, may be omitted before the adjective which is compared.

Examples:

blanco como la nieve, white as snow

negro como una traición, black as treason

claro como una noche sin luna, clear as a moonless night

COMPARATIVES FORMED WITH THE SPANISH EQUIVALENTS OF THE CORRELATIVES *the more* . . . *the more*, ETC.

These are the Spanish comparative expressions which are equivalent to the English correlatives *the more* . . . *the more*, and *all the more* . . . *because*.

cuanto más . . . tanto más, menos, etc., *the more* . . . *the more*, *the less*, etc.

cuanto menos . . . tanto menos, más, etc., *the less* . . . *the less*, *the more*, etc.

tanto más . . . cuanto que, *all the more* . . . *because*

tanto menos . . . cuanto que, *all the less* . . . *because*

Examples:

Cuanto más estudio tanto más aprendo.

The more I study the more I learn.

Cuanto más habla tanto menos dice.

The more he speaks the less he says.

Cuanto más leo tanto más me gusta leer.

The more I read the more I like to read.

Cuanto más leo tanto peor es para mi vista.

The more I read the worse it is for my eyes (sense of sight).

Cuanto menos estudio tanto menos aprendo.

The less I study the less I learn.

Cuanto menos duermo tanto más necesito dormir.

The less I sleep the more I need to sleep.

El castigo fué tanto más necesario cuanto que él había jurado no pagar la multa. The punishment was all the more necessary because he had sworn not to pay the fine.

Su crimen era tanto menos de esperar cuanto que su educación había sido excelente. His crime was all the less to be expected because his education had been excellent.

NOTE.—*Mientras más* or *mientras menos* may be used instead of *cuanto más* or *cuanto menos* in the first six examples.

SPECIAL FORMS OF COMPARISON

The comparisons which in English are expressed by the correlatives *rather* . . . *than*, *better* . . . *than*, are expressed in Spanish by *antes* . . . *que*, *más bien* . . . *que*, *mejor* . . . *que*, etc.

Examples:

Antes la muerte que el deshonor. Rather death than dishonor.

Más bien pobre y honrado que rico y ladrón.

Better poor and honest than rich and a thief.

Mejor solo que mal acompañado. Better alone than in bad company.
(Lit. badly accompanied.)

CASES WHERE *tanto* AND *tan* ARE USED WITH *que* AND NOT WITH *como* AS
THEIR CORRELATIVE

The correlative of *tanto* and *tan* is *que* and not *como* in exaggerated or high-flown expressions.

Examples:

Tiene *tanto* dinero *que* no sabe *que* hacer con él.

He has so much money that he does not know what to do with it.

Voy a comprarte un vestido *tan* bonito, *tan* bonito, *tan* bonito, *que* hasta las más elegantes se quedarán con la boca abierta.

I am going to buy you such a pretty, pretty, pretty dress, that even the most elegant will stand agape.

CASES WHERE THE COMPARATIVES OF *superiority*, *inferiority* AND *equality*
NEED DIFFERENT ELEMENTS IN THE TWO LANGUAGES

When the adverbs *más*, *menos* and *tan* immediately precede a noun, their English equivalents need the particles *of a* to connect them in any kind of comparison. This connection is unnecessary in Spanish.

Examples:

Él es *más* caballero *que* su cuñado.

He is more of a gentleman than his brother-in-law.

Es *menos* hombre *de lo que* creí. *He is less of a man than I thought.*

No es *tan* hombre *como* creí. *He is not so much of a man as I thought.*

Él es *tan* niño *como* su hermano.

He is just as much of a child as his brother.

IMPORTANT IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS WITH *más*, *menos* AND *tanto*

a lo más, *at the most, at the utmost*

a lo menos, por lo menos, or cuando menos, *at least*

a más tardar, *at the latest*

echar de menos a alguien, *to miss someone*

estar de más en alguna parte, *to be in the way or unwelcome in the place where one is*

estar al tanto de, *to be aware or informed about*

más adelante, *later on (time), or farther on (location)*

más arriba, *higher up*

más abajo, *lower down*

más acá de la fuente, *not so far as the fountain is*

más allá de la fuente, *beyond (or farther than) the fountain*

más al oeste, *farther west*

mientras tanto or entre tanto, *in the meantime*

sin más ni más, *without more ado or ceremony, hastily*

tanto mejor, *so much the better*

tanto peor, *so much the worse*

THE SUPERLATIVES

The relative and the absolute are the two kinds of superlatives which exist in Spanish.

THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE

The relative superlative is that form of the adjective or adverb which compares at the same time that it expresses the highest or lowest degree of the qualities, characteristics, etc., which are attributed to the subject considered.

HOW TO FORM THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

The relative superlative of adjectives is obtained by either placing the definite article, or a possessive adjective, before their comparative forms.

Consequently, as the comparative forms which express the degree of superiority and inferiority of adjectives like *blanco*, *white*, *útil*, *useful*, *hermosa*, *beautiful*, *querido*, *dear*, *odiado*, *hated*, are, respectively, *más* or *menos blanco*, *más* or *menos útil*, *más* or *menos querido* and *más* or *menos odiado*, the relative superlative forms of these adjectives are those which are printed in italics in the Spanish phrases below:

la más blanca de todas las palomas, *the whitest of all the doves*

el más útil de todos los libros, *the most useful of all the books*

la más hermosa esperanza, *the most beautiful hope*

mi más hermosa esperanza, *my most beautiful hope*

mi más querido amigo, *my dearest friend*

mi menos odiado enemigo, *my least hated enemy*

la paloma más blanca, *the whitest dove*

mi paloma más blanca, *my whitest dove*

el libro más útil, *the most useful book*

mi libro más útil, *my most useful book*

la esperanza más hermosa, *the most beautiful hope*

mi esperanza más hermosa, *my most beautiful hope*

NOTE.—Notice in the above last six examples that either the definite article or the possessive adjective is placed before the noun to which the relative superlative is related. The construction of the first six examples is the same in both languages.

CASES WHERE THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS OMITTED TO EXPRESS THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE FORM OF ADJECTIVES

The definite article is omitted before the relative superlative form of an adjective, when this is placed after verbs like *ser*, and *estar*, both meaning *to be*, *parecer*, *to seem*, etc., if reference is made only to the highest or lowest degree of a given quality possessed by the subject considered.

Examples:

Te fuiste cuando (yo) estaba *más afligida* y cuando tu compañía me era *más deseada*.

You went away when I was most afflicted and when your company was most desired by me.

Perdí el dinero cuando me era *más necesario*.

I lost the money when it was most necessary to me.

Este es el sistema que me parece *más práctico*.

This is the system which seems to me most practical.

DIFFERENCES IN THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS AFTER THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE, IN THE TWO LANGUAGES

In Spanish, after the relative superlative form of the adjective, the equivalent of the English preposition *in* is *de*, *of*, and the English preposition *of* sometimes corresponds to the Spanish *entre*, among.

Examples:

El mejor boxeador *del* mundo está con el hombre *más rico de* la ciudad.

The best boxer in the world is with the richest man in the city.

Yo soy el mejor estudiante *de* la clase. *I am the best student in the class.*

Él es el *más* prominente *entre* los poetas modernos.

He is the most prominent of modern poets.

HOW TO RENDER INTO SPANISH THE ENGLISH *most*, ETC.

When *most* is followed by a noun or pronoun, the Spanish equivalent is either *la mayor parte de*, *the greater part of*, or the expressions *los más de*, *las más de*, etc.

Examples:

la mayor parte de los niños, *most children*

la mayor parte de su fortuna, *most of his fortune*

la mayor parte del día, *most of the day*

En ese bosque hay muchos nidos, *los más de* ellos con pajarillos.

In that forest there are many nests, most of them with little birds.

las más de las veces, *the greater number of times*.

CASES WHERE THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE IS USED IN SPANISH AND THE COMPARATIVE IN ENGLISH

The relative superlative is used in Spanish to express the highest or lowest degree of the varying characteristics, etc., of two persons, animals or things, while the comparative is used in English.

Examples:

La mayor de las dos hermanas es *la más* bondadosa; la menor es *la más* inteligente.

The older of the two sisters is the kinder; the younger one is the more intelligent.

El más grande de los dos bueyes es *el más* obediente; el más pequeño el más desobediente.

The larger of the two oxen is the more obedient; the smaller one the more disobedient.

Mi opinión sobre los dos libros es esta: el colorado es *el más* profundo; el verde *el más* interesante.

My opinion about the two books is this: the red one is the more profound; the green the more interesting.

HOW TO FORM THE RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS

Adverbs form their relative superlative degree in essentially the same way as adjectives, but the superlative of adverbs is never preceded by either the definite article or a possessive, unless it qualifies an adjective or past participle. This means that both the comparative and the superlative are, almost invariably, the same in form, and that to distinguish them recourse may be had to a circumlocution.

Examples:

Los mejores barberos no son siempre los que *más* hablan.

The best barbers are not always the ones who talk most.

El que habla el español *más corrientemente* ha sido elegido para el puesto.

The one who speaks Spanish more or most fluently has been chosen for the position.

El que hace eso *más fácilmente* es mi tío. *The one who does that more easily, or most easily, is my uncle.*

De todas las casas que he visto, la suya es *la más artísticamente* concebida, *la más perfectamente* edificada y *la más elegantemente* amueblada.

Of all the houses that I have seen, his is the most artistically conceived, the most perfectly built and the most elegantly furnished.

THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE

The absolute superlative is that form of adjective or adverb which does not compare, but simply states the highest or lowest degree of the qualities, characteristics, etc., which are attributed to the subject considered.

FORMATION OF THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

1. One of the ways to form the superlative absolute of adjectives is to place before them the adverbs *muy*, *very*, *sumamente*, *extremely*, *excesivamente*, *exceedingly*, etc., or expressions of a similar or equal meaning like *en extremo*, *in the extreme* or *extremely*, *en grado sumo*, *in the highest degree*, etc.

Examples:

muy fresco, <i>very fresh, very cool</i>	en extremo modesta or modesta en
sumamente peligroso, <i>extremely dangerous</i>	extremo, <i>extremely modest or modest in the extreme</i>
excesivamente celosa, <i>exceedingly jealous</i>	en grado sumo interesante, <i>interesting in the highest degree.</i>

2. Another way to form the superlative absolute is by adding the suffix *ísimo* or its feminine form *ísima* to adjectives which end in a consonant, as well as to those which end in a final vowel or diphthong after the final vowel or diphthong is dropped.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative Absolute</i>
útil, <i>useful</i>	utilísimo, <i>very useful or most useful</i>
hábil, <i>skilful</i>	habilísimo, <i>very skilful or most skilful</i>
sutil, <i>subtle, subtile</i>	sutilísimo, <i>very subtle</i>
pío, <i>pious</i> (last vowel dropped)	piísimo, <i>very pious</i>
feo, <i>homely, ugly</i> (last vowel dropped)	feísimo, <i>very homely or ugly</i>
sucio, <i>dirty</i> (diphthong dropped)	sucísimo, <i>very dirty</i>
limpio, <i>clean</i> (diphthong dropped)	limpísimo, <i>very clean</i>
agrio, <i>sour</i> (diphthong dropped)	agrisísimo, <i>very sour</i>

NOTE.—The superlatives formed by the addition of a suffix to the positive adjectives are more emphatic than those which are obtained by placing adverbs before them.

CHANGES WHICH ADJECTIVES SUFFER TO FORM THE SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. Adjectives ending in *z* change this letter into *c* to form the superlative.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
feliz, <i>happy</i>	felicísimo, <i>very happy</i>
locuaz, <i>loquacious, talkative</i>	locuacísimo, <i>very loquacious or talkative</i>

2. Adjectives, which after dropping either the vowel *a* or *o* end in *c* or *g*, respectively change these consonants to *qu* and *gu* to form the superlative.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
rica, <i>rich</i>	riquísima, <i>very rich</i>
largo, <i>long</i>	larguísimo, <i>very long</i>

3. When adjectives have in their first or second syllables either the diphthong *ue* or *ie* they respectively change them into *o* and *e* when the

superlative degree is formed. This happens because these adjectives keep their Latin root in the superlative. In these cases the vocal stress is transferred from the diphthong of the positive adjectives to the first vowel of the suffix *ísimo*.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bueno, <i>good</i>	bonísimo, <i>very good</i>
nuevo, <i>new</i>	novísimo, <i>very new</i>
fuerte, <i>strong</i>	fortísimo, <i>very strong</i>
cierto, <i>certain</i>	certísimo, <i>very certain</i>
tierno, <i>tender</i>	ternísimo, <i>very tender</i>
ferviente, <i>fervent</i>	ferventísimo, <i>very fervent</i>
ardiente, <i>ardent</i>	ardentísimo, <i>very ardent</i>

NOTE *a*.—There is a very strong tendency to say in conversation, even by people who are considered well educated, *buenísimo*, *nuevísimo*, *fuertísimo*, *ciertísimo* and *tiernísimo*, but this practice is not sanctioned by any authority.

NOTE *b*.—The superlative of *viejo*, *old*, is an exception to the above rule because it is *viejísimo*, *very old*, and not *vejísimo*.

4. Adjectives ending in *ble* change this syllable into *bil* when the suffix *ísimo* is added to them to form the superlatives.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
afable, <i>affable</i>	afabilísimo, <i>very affable</i>
noble, <i>noble</i>	nobilísimo, <i>very noble</i>
notable, <i>notable</i>	notabilísimo, <i>very notable</i>
sensible, <i>sensitive</i>	sensibilísimo, <i>very sensitive</i>
terrible, <i>terrible</i>	terribilísimo, <i>very terrible</i>
voluble, <i>voluble, fickle</i>	volubilísimo, <i>very voluble or fickle</i>

ADJECTIVES WHICH HAVE EITHER AN IRREGULAR OR BOTH REGULAR AND IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVE DEGREES

The following adjectives form the superlative degree irregularly in some cases, and in others have both regular and irregular forms.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
alto, <i>high, tall</i>	altísimo, supremo and sumo, <i>very high or tall</i>
antiguo, <i>old, ancient</i>	antiquísimo, <i>very old or ancient</i>
áspero, <i>harsh, rough</i>	asperísimo and aspérrimo, <i>very harsh or rough</i>
bajo, <i>low, short</i>	bajísimo and ínfimo, <i>lowest or shortest</i>
benévolo, <i>benevolent</i>	benevolentísimo, <i>very benevolent</i>
benéfico, <i>beneficent</i>	beneficentísimo, <i>very beneficent</i>

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bueno, <i>good</i>	bonísimo and óptimo, <i>very good</i>
célebre, <i>celebrated, famous</i>	celebérrimo, <i>very celebrated or famous</i>
cercano, <i>near</i>	próximo, <i>nearest</i>
fiel, <i>faithful</i>	fidelísimo, <i>very faithful</i>
frío, <i>cold</i>	fríísimo and frigidísimo, <i>very cold</i>
grande, <i>large, great</i>	grandísimo and máximo, <i>very large or great</i>
íntegro, <i>upright, honest</i>	integérrimo, <i>very upright or honest</i>
interno, <i>internal</i>	íntimo, <i>innermost</i>
libre, <i>free</i>	libérrimo, <i>very free</i>
malo, <i>bad</i>	malísimo and pésimo, <i>very bad</i>
mísero, <i>wretched</i>	misérrimo, <i>very wretched</i>
pequeño, <i>small</i>	pequeñísimo and mínimo, <i>very small</i>
pobre, <i>poor</i>	pobrísimos and paupérrimo, <i>very poor</i>
sabio, <i>wise</i>	sapientísimo, <i>very wise</i>
sagrado, <i>sacred</i>	sacratísimo, <i>very sacred</i>

NOTE.—The irregular forms of the above superlatives are seldom used in conversation, with the exception of *antiquísimo*.

USE OF THE SUPERLATIVES *próximo*, *mínimo*, *ínfimo* AND *íntimo* AS SIMPLE ADJECTIVES

The above named superlatives are used as simple adjectives in cases equal or similar to the ones which are given in the following examples:

Iré allí el mes *próximo*.

I shall go there next month.

No quiero darte el más *mínimo* detalle.

I do not want to give you the smallest detail.

Venderé eso a un precio muy *ínfimo*.

I shall sell that at a very low price.

Aquí estoy con mi más *íntimo* amigo.

Here I am with my most intimate friend.

HOW TO FORM THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS

1. Simple adverbs form their absolute superlative in the same way as adjectives, but if they end in a consonant, this consonant is added to the suffix *ísimo* as can be seen in the last of these examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
pronto, <i>soon</i>	prontísimo, <i>very soon</i>
tarde, <i>late</i>	tardísimo, <i>very late</i>
temprano, <i>early</i>	tempranísimo, <i>very early</i>
claro, <i>clearly</i>	clarísimo, <i>very clearly</i>
cerca, <i>near</i>	cerquísima, <i>very near</i>
lejos, <i>far</i>	lejísimos, <i>very far</i> .

2. Compound adverbs which end in *mente* and which have an adjective as their first element, also form the absolute superlative in the same

way as adjectives, but the suffix *ísimo*, or its feminine form *ísima*, is placed between the adjective and its adverbial ending.

Examples:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
afablemente, <i>affably</i>	afabilísimamente, <i>very affably</i>
bondadosamente, <i>kindly</i>	bondadosísimamente, <i>very kindly</i>
desproporcionadamente, <i>disproportionately</i>	desproporcionadísimamente, <i>out of all proportion</i>
noblemente, <i>nobly</i>	nobilísimamente, <i>very nobly</i>
ricamente, <i>richly</i>	riquísimamente, <i>very richly</i>
sabiamente, <i>wisely</i>	sapientísimamente, <i>very wisely</i>

3. Adverbs also form their superlative by placing the neuter definite article *lo* before an adverb which is followed by an expression of possibility.

Examples:

Hazlo *lo mejor que puedas*. *Do it the best you can.*

Ven *lo más pronto posible*. *Come as soon as possible.*

NOTE.—Adverbs which admit the superlative are few. Numerals like *uno*, *one*, *dos*, *two*, *segundo*, *second*, and *tercero*, *third*, etc., and adjectives like *inmenso*, *immense*, and almost all those which have the stress of the pronunciation on the antepenult syllable like *lógico*, *logical*, *satírico*, *satirical*, *marítimo*, *maritime*, do not admit the superlative.

NUMBERS

ORDINAL NUMBERS

<i>12th</i> , duodécimo	<i>80th</i> , octagésimo
<i>13th</i> , décimo tercero <i>or</i> tercio	<i>90th</i> , nonagésimo
<i>14th</i> , décimo cuarto	<i>100th</i> , centésimo
<i>15th</i> , décimo quinto	<i>101st</i> , centésimo primero
<i>16th</i> , décimo sexto	<i>110th</i> , centésimo décimo
<i>17th</i> , décimo séptimo	<i>200th</i> , duocentésimo
<i>18th</i> , décimo octavo	<i>300th</i> , trecentésimo
<i>19th</i> , décimo noveno <i>or</i> nono	<i>400th</i> , cuadragésimo
<i>20th</i> , vigésimo	<i>500th</i> , quingentésimo
<i>21st</i> , vigésimo primero	<i>600th</i> , sexcentésimo
<i>22d</i> , vigésimo segundo	<i>700th</i> , septingentésimo
<i>30th</i> , trigésimo	<i>800th</i> , octogentésimo
<i>40th</i> , cuadragésimo	<i>900th</i> , nonagentésimo
<i>41st</i> , cuadragésimo primero	<i>1000th</i> , milésimo
<i>50th</i> , quincuagésimo	<i>2000th</i> , dosmilésimo
<i>60th</i> , sexagésimo	<i>10,000th</i> , diezmilésimo
<i>70th</i> , septuagésimo	<i>1,000,000th</i> , millonésimo

NOTE.—Ordinal numbers from 1st to 11th inclusive have been used in the lessons.

FRACTIONAL NUMBERS

$\frac{1}{2}$ un medio	$\frac{1}{19}$ un diecinuevavo
$\frac{1}{3}$ un tercio	$\frac{1}{20}$ un veintavo
$\frac{2}{3}$ dos tercios	$\frac{1}{21}$ un veintiunavo
$\frac{1}{4}$ un cuarto	$\frac{1}{22}$ un veintidosavo
$\frac{3}{4}$ tres cuartos	$\frac{1}{23}$ un veintitresavo
$\frac{1}{5}$ un quinto	$\frac{1}{24}$ un veinticuatravo
$\frac{4}{5}$ cuatro quintos	$\frac{1}{25}$ un veinticinavo
$\frac{1}{6}$ un sexto	$\frac{1}{26}$ un veintiseisavo
$\frac{1}{7}$ un séptimo	$\frac{1}{30}$ un treintavo
$\frac{3}{8}$ tres octavos	$\frac{1}{31}$ un treintiunavo
$\frac{1}{9}$ un noveno	$\frac{1}{32}$ un treintidosavo
$\frac{1}{10}$ un décimo	$\frac{1}{40}$ un cuarentavo
$\frac{5}{11}$ cinco undécimos	$\frac{1}{41}$ un cuarentiunavo
$\frac{1}{12}$ un dozavo	$\frac{1}{50}$ un cincuentavo
$\frac{1}{13}$ un trezavo	$\frac{1}{60}$ un sesentavo
$\frac{1}{14}$ un catorzavo	$\frac{1}{70}$ un setentavo
$\frac{7}{15}$ siete quinzavos	$\frac{1}{80}$ un ochentavo
$\frac{1}{16}$ un dieciseisavo	$\frac{1}{90}$ un noventavo
$\frac{1}{17}$ un diecisietavo	$\frac{1}{100}$ un centavo <i>or</i> centésimo
$\frac{1}{18}$ un dieciochavo	$\frac{1}{1000}$ un milésimo

COLLECTIVE NUMBERS

el par, <i>the pair</i>	la treintena, <i>the score and a half</i>
la decena, <i>the half score, the ten</i>	la cuarentena, <i>the two score</i>
la docena, <i>the dozen</i>	el ciento, la centena, <i>or</i> el centenar,
la media docena, <i>the half dozen</i>	<i>the five score</i>
la quincena, <i>the fifteen, the fortnight</i>	el mil <i>or</i> el millar, <i>the thousand</i>
la veintena, <i>the score</i>	el millón, <i>the million</i>

MULTIPLE NUMBERS

simple, <i>simple</i>	quíntuplo, <i>fivefold, five times as</i>
doble, <i>double, twofold</i>	<i>many</i>
triple, <i>triple, threefold</i>	décuplo, <i>tenfold, ten times as many</i>
cuádruplo, <i>fourfold, four times as</i>	céntuplo, <i>an hundred fold, a hun-</i>
<i>much</i>	<i>dred times as many</i>

CHAPTER IV

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns are of two kinds, namely, (1) those which serve as the subject of verbs, (2) those which serve as their object.

SUBJECT PRONOUNS

Although in Spanish subject pronouns are often omitted, unless needed to make the meaning clear, or for the sake of emphasis, their suppression is not advisable at the beginning of the study of the language, because they help the student to grasp the conjugation of the verbs better, and to use the right person at the right time.

They are the following:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
yo, <i>I</i>	nosotros, -as, <i>we</i>
tú, <i>you</i> (polite form), <i>thou</i>	vosotros, -as, <i>you</i> (familiar form)
él, <i>he</i>	ellos, <i>they</i>
ella, <i>she</i>	ellas, <i>they</i>
usted, <i>you</i> (polite form)	ustedes, <i>you</i> (polite form)

NOTE.—*Ello*, *it*, the neuter form of the personal pronoun *él*, *he*, is seldom used as the subject of a verb, but when that is the case it is generally used in the phrase *ello es que* with the meaning of *the fact, the truth of the case is that*, etc. *Ello* is used in some cases with the meaning of *that* or *that thing* as in expressions like *si ello es así, if that or that thing is so*.

REMARKS ABOUT *tú*, *vosotros*, *vos*, *nos*, ETC.

Tú, *you*, singular, and *vosotros*, *you*, plural, both familiar forms, are used to express intimacy with the members of the family and friends, and in speaking to little children, to animals, to servants, to saints, and to the Deity. *Tú* is the equivalent of *thou*, but this English pronoun is replaced by *you* because of the obsolescence of *thou*.

Vos, the older form of *vosotros*, is also used in speaking to saints and to the Deity, as well as to a single person, in a grave or elevated style. When this is the case the verb is used in the plural, but the qualifying adjectives must be singular and of the same gender which *vos* may represent.

Examples: Vos, señora, sois virtuosa. *You, madam, are virtuous.*
 Vos, caballero, sois docto. *You, sir, are learned.*

Nós, the older form of *nosotros*, is used as a subject by a single person such as a high dignitary of the Church, and *nosotros* is sometimes used by a single person such as an author, editor, etc., with the verb in the plural.

REMARKS ABOUT THE USE OF *usted*

Usted, which carries in itself the idea of respect and consideration, is the equivalent of *you* in polite speech. This pronoun, which is the remnant of the title *Vuestra Merced*, *Your Grace*, should be still considered a title for the purposes of conjugation and conjugated with the third person of the verb, i.e., as titles are conjugated.

OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The two kinds of objective personal pronouns are the prepositional and the conjunctive.

NOTE.—*Disjunctive* and *enclitic* are the names which are given to the prepositional and conjunctive pronouns respectively, by some grammarians.

THE PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUNS

The prepositional pronouns, called prepositional because they are always preceded by a preposition, are the same in form as the subject pronouns, with the exception of the first two and the reflexive *sí*, as can be seen below.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
mí, <i>me</i>	nosotros—as, <i>us</i> (masc. and fem.)
ti, <i>you</i> (fam. form), <i>thee</i>	vosotros—as, <i>you</i> (fam. form masc. and fem.)
sí (reflexive), <i>himself, herself, itself, yourself</i> (masc. and fem. polite form)	sí (reflexive), <i>themselves</i> (masc. and fem.), <i>yourselves</i> (masc. and fem.)
él, <i>him, it</i> (masc.)	ellos, <i>them</i> (masc.)
ella, <i>her, it</i> (fem.)	ellas, <i>them</i> (fem.)
ello, <i>it</i> (neuter)	ustedes, <i>you</i> (pol. form)
usted, <i>you</i> (pol. form)	

NOTE a.—The prepositions which most frequently precede the above pronouns are *a*, *to*, *para*, *to*, *for*, *in order to*, and *de*, *of*, *from*.

NOTE b.—When *mí*, *ti* and *sí* are preceded by *con*, *with*, this preposition is attached to the pronouns mentioned, together with the suffix *migo*, resulting in these forms: *conmigo*, *with me*, *contigo*, *with you* (fam. form sing.) or *with thyself*, *consigo*, *with himself*, *with herself*, *with yourself*, *with themselves*, *with yourselves*.

NOTE c.—When *ello* means *it*, it does not refer to a specific antecedent but represents a whole phrase or idea.

NOTE d.—The use of these prepositional pronouns is illustrated under “Position of the Objective Personal Pronouns,” on this page, below.

THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

Conjunctive pronouns may be either the direct object of the verb or accusative, or the indirect object of the verb or dative.

The conjunctive pronouns are:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
me, <i>me</i> , <i>to me</i>	nos, <i>us</i> , <i>to us</i>
te, <i>you</i> , <i>to you</i> (fam. form masc. and fem.) <i>thee</i> , <i>to thee</i>	os, <i>you</i> , <i>to you</i> (fam. form masc. and fem.)
se, a substitute for the objective pronoun of the third person in cases which, last rule, on page 267, indicates	se, a substitute for the objective pronoun of the third person in cases which, last rule, on page 267, indicates
le { (as a direct object) <i>him</i> , <i>it</i> (masc.), <i>you</i> (pol. form); (as indirect object) <i>to him</i> , <i>to her</i> , <i>to it</i> (masc. and fem.), <i>to you</i> (polite form masc. and fem.)	les { (indirect object only) <i>to them</i> (masc. and fem.), <i>to you</i> (polite form, masc. and fem.)
la (direct object only) <i>her</i> , <i>it</i> (fem.), <i>you</i> (pol. form fem.)	las (direct object only) <i>them</i> (fem.), <i>you</i> (pol. form fem.)
lo (direct object only) <i>him</i> , <i>it</i> (neuter), <i>it</i> (masc.), <i>you</i> (pol. form)	los (direct object only) <i>them</i> (masc.), <i>you</i> (pol. form masc.)

NOTE a.—Some grammarians, prominent writers and many well educated people sometimes use *la* as an indirect object pronoun and *les* as direct, but this usage is condemned, in unmistakable terms, by the Spanish Academy, and on this account students are requested to use the conjunctive pronouns with the meaning above given.

NOTE b.—Students are further requested to use the masculine direct object pronoun *lo* for *things*, *animals* and *persons*, and *le* only for persons.

NOTE c.—As babies and things are either masculine or feminine in Spanish, the neuter English pronoun *it* is considered as having the above named genders, because this consideration will undoubtedly help the students to properly understand and translate the masculine and feminine Spanish pronouns which in English are represented by *it*.

POSITION OF THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. A conjunctive pronoun is generally placed immediately before the verb in the Spanish sentence, unless the verb is in the *infinitive*, *imperative affirmative*, or *gerund*. In the latter cases the pronoun is attached to the verb, thereby forming with it a new word.

Examples:

Yo le hablo a usted, *I speak to you*

Yo le hablo a él, *I speak to him*

Yo le hablo a ella, *I speak to her*

Yo les hablo a ustedes, *I speak to you* (pol. form pl.)

Yo les hablo a ellos, *I speak to them* (masc.)

Yo les hablo a ellas, *I speak to them* (fem.)

Nosotros los vemos, *We see them* (masc.)

Nosotras las vemos, *We see them* (fem.)

Nosotros los ayudamos, *We help them* (masc.)

Nosotras las ayudamos, *We help them* (fem.)

No quiero llamarla, *I do not want to call her*

Lámala, *Call her* (imperative)

Estoy llamándola, *I am calling her*

NOTE *a.*—When a conjunctive pronoun occurs in a negative sentence *no* precedes it.

NOTE *b.* Study rule 1 of the “Duplication of the Objective Personal Pronouns,” page 268.

NOTE *c.*—The dative or indirect object pronoun is used to represent the person, animal or thing to which the action represented by the verb is indirectly directed, i.e., the person, animal or thing to which something is given, told, shown, etc. The preposition *a* or *para* generally precedes the dative case.

NOTE *d.*—The accusative or direct object pronoun is used to represent the person, animal or thing which directly receives the action of the verb. The preposition *a* generally precedes this case when it refers to persons or to personified things.

2. When the verb in the indicative begins a sentence, or when it is at the beginning of an independent clause, preceded by a conjunction like *y*, *and*, *o*, *or*, etc., the objective personal pronouns may be placed either before or after the verb, but the general usage in conversation and the safer for the student is to place the pronouns before the verb.

Examples:

<i>Le acompañaban varios amigos, or</i>	} <i>Several friends accompanied him.</i>
<i>Acompañábanle varios amigos</i>	

<i>Se le recibió con agrado, or</i>	} <i>He was received with pleasure.</i>
<i>Recibiósele con agrado</i>	

<i>Sorprendieron al pobre hombre y le</i>	} <i>They surprised the unfortunate man and compelled him to sign the document.</i>
<i>obligaron a firmar el documento, or</i>	
<i>Sorprendieron al pobre hombre y obligáronle a firmar el documento.</i>	

<i>Mataban a los prisioneros o los hacían</i>	} <i>They killed the prisoners or made them slaves.</i>
<i>esclavos, or</i>	
<i>Mataban a los prisioneros o hacíanlos esclavos.</i>	

3. When the tense of the verb is compound, the pronoun or pronouns generally precede the auxiliary element, but may sometimes follow the auxiliary verb and be attached to it, or to the past participle when the auxiliary verb is either implied or placed after the past participle.

Examples:

Habiendo él hablado conmigo y dádome las instrucciones necesarias, partí.

After he had spoken with me and after he had given me the necessary instructions, I departed.

Habiendo visto a mi jefe y dádole que hube el dinero, me retiré.

Having seen my chief and having given him the money, I withdrew.

Siento haberte puesto en peligro. *I regret having put you in danger.*

NOTE.—In the tenses of the progressive conjugation the pronoun or pronouns may be placed before the auxiliary element, or they may be appended to the present participle. In some cases they may be attached to the auxiliary verb.

Examples:	Lo estoy vistiendo.	} <i>I am dressing him.</i>
	Estoy vistiéndolo.	
	La nave se va alejando.	} <i>The ship is going farther away.</i>
	Vase alejando la nave.	
	La nave va alejándose.	

4. When any of several verbs which may occur together in a sentence require an objective pronoun, the objective pronoun may precede or follow the verb which requires it, its position being determined by the idea of euphony, emphasis or elegance.

Examples:

Sacó la petaca del cajón, la abrió, echó en ella el tabaco que había comprado, cerróla, me miró sonriente, y se fué silbando.

He took the tobacco pouch from the drawer, opened it, poured into it the tobacco that he had bought, closed it, looked at me smiling, and went away whistling.

5. When two conjunctive pronouns precede or follow the verb, the indirect object precedes the direct if both are of the third person, or if the direct object is of the third person and the indirect either of the first or second.

Examples:

Él me lo dijo a mí. *He said it to me.*

Ella no te lo dijo a ti. *She did not say it to you (fam. form sing.)*

Préstamela. *Lend it to me.*

Quiero prestártela, pero no me es posible porque todavía no me la ha devuelto.

I want to lend it to you, but it is not possible for me to do so because he has not yet returned it to me.

Su amiga me la presentó. *Her friend (fem.) introduced her to me.*

NOTE *a*.—For examples of two conjunctive pronouns of the third person see examples given under “Substitution of the indirect pronouns *le* or *les* by *se*,” page 267.

NOTE *b*.—*Se* whether direct or indirect always precedes the other object pronouns.

6. When the direct object of the verb is a conjunctive pronoun of the second person, and the same verb governs an indirect object pronoun of the first person, the direct precedes the indirect, provided the indirect does not take the prepositional form.

Examples:

Ellos *te me* recomendaron para ese puesto. } *They recommended you*
 Ellos *te* recomendaron *a mí* para ese puesto. } *to me for that place.*
 Ella *te me* presentó el año pasado. } *She introduced you to me last year.*
 Ella *te* presentó *a mí* el año pasado. }

NOTE *a*.—In the second and fourth sentences the indirect pronoun takes the prepositional form.

NOTE *b*.—When sentences like the above or similar to this one, *¿Quién le presentó a usted a ella?* *Who introduced you to her?* have an ambiguous meaning or lack harmony or flexibility, the passive voice is generally used, rendering the sentence given in this note and the other two given above, this way: *¿Por quién fué usted presentado a ella?* *By whom were you introduced to her?* *Tú me fuiste recomendado para ese puesto por ellos.* *You were recommended to me for that place by them.* *Tú me fuiste presentado por ella el año pasado.* *You (fam. form sing.) were introduced to me by her last year.*

7. When the direct object of a verb is a conjunctive pronoun of the first person and the same verb governs an indirect object pronoun, the indirect assumes the prepositional form and always follows the verb.

Examples:

Su amiga *me* presentó *a ella*. *Her friend (fem.) introduced me to her.*
 Nuestro padre *nos* enviará *a él*. *Our father will send us to him.*

NOTE.—If the direct object of the verb is a pronoun used reflexively, the indirect pronoun assumes the prepositional form unless the direct is the pronoun of the third person *se*. In this, as in every other case, *se* precedes the indirect pronoun.

Examples:

Se me ha ofrecido incondicionalmente.
He has offered himself to me unconditionally.
Se le presentó *a ella* en una condición lastimosa.
He presented himself to her in a pitiful condition.
Me dirijo *a usted*. *I address myself to you.*

8. Whenever an infinitive governs one or more conjunctive pronouns and is preceded by another verb, the pronoun or pronouns may be appended to the infinitive or placed before the preceding verb.

Examples:

Quiero hablarle, *or* } *I want to speak to him.*
 Le quiero hablar }
 Voy a contároslo } *I am going to tell it (or relate it) to you (fam. form pl.)*
 Os lo voy a contar }

9. When an infinitive, preceded by another verb, does not govern the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns, the pronoun or pronouns must precede the verb which is before the infinitive.

Examples:

Nos es posible salir. *It is possible for us to go out.*
 La veo saltar. *I see her jumping.*
 Los veo venir. *I see them coming.*
 Nos gusta estudiar. *We like to study.*

NOTE.—*Salir, saltar, venir* and *estudiar* do not govern the pronoun in the above four examples. If the objective pronouns which are before the verbs which precede the infinitives were attached to the latter, the sentences would be meaningless.

10. In accordance with the meaning intended, conjunctive pronouns must be either attached to the infinitive which is preceded by another verb, or must be placed before the verb which precedes the infinitive.

Examples:

Será conveniente telegrafiarle. *It will be convenient to telegraph him.*
 Le será conveniente telegrafiar. *It will be convenient for him to telegraph.*
 Fué útil escribirle. *It was useful to write to him.*
 Le fué útil escribir. *It was useful for him to write.*

SUBSTITUTION OF THE INDIRECT PRONOUNS *le* OR *les* BY *se*

When two conjunctive pronouns of the third person occur together either before or after the verb, the indirect, *le* or *les*, is replaced by the substitute *se* to avoid the concurrence of two short words which begin with the letter *l*.

Examples:

Yo *se lo* daré a usted pronto. *I shall give it to you soon.*
 Déselo a él inmediatamente. *Give it to him immediately.*
 No quiero dárselo *or* } *I do not want to give it to him.*
 No *se lo* quiero dar }
 ¿No ve usted que estoy dándoselo? *or* } *Don't you see that I am giving*
 ¿No ve usted que *se lo* estoy dando? } *it to him?*

DUPLICATION OF THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. As the so-called conjunctive pronouns are used in the Spanish sentence in preference to the prepositional ones, in order to balance the sentence better, and as the indirect objective pronouns *le* and *les* generally need explanation on account of their ambiguity, the conjunctive and the prepositional pronouns are often necessary in the construction of sentences. This repetition, which in the case of *le* and *les* is almost always of absolute necessity, has become extended to the other object pronouns, in order to express emphasis or to make the sentence smoother.

Examples:

Tú *me* hablas *a mí*. *You* (fam. form sing.) *speak to me*.
 Yo *te* hablo *a ti*. *I speak to you* (fam. form sing.).
 Yo *os* escribo *a vosotros*. *I write to you* (fam. form pl.).

2. Either the conjunctive or the prepositional pronoun may precede the verb in the sentence where they are repeated, but generally a greater degree of emphasis and smoothness is obtained when both the prepositional and the conjunctive precede it.

Examples:

A mí *me* lo has dicho tú. } *You have told it to me*.
 Tú *me* lo has dicho *a mí*. }
 A nosotros *nos* visita *a menudo*. } *He often visits us*.
 Nos visita *a menudo* *a nosotros*. }

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

Possession is frequently expressed in Spanish by means of an indirect object pronoun. This indirect object pronoun is the dative of possession.

Examples:

Yo arreglé el reloj de mi amigo. } *I repaired my friend's watch*.
 Yo *le* arreglé el reloj *a mi amigo*. }
 Yo pinté las patas de la mesa. } *I painted the legs of the table*.
 Yo *le* pinté las patas *a la mesa*. }
 Ese imbécil es el que cortó el bigote de }
 mi amigo. } *That imbecile is the one who*
 Ese imbécil es el que *le* cortó el bigote } *cut my friend's mustache*.
 a mi amigo. }

NOTE.—The dative of possession is illustrated in sentences 2, 4 and 6.

CASES WHERE *lo* IS USED

1. *Lo* is used after the verb *ser*, *to be*, to recall adjectives, nouns and whole phrases or statements. The English equivalent of *lo* is sometimes *so*, *any*, etc.; at other times it is not translated.

Examples:

Dice que no tiene dinero, pero yo no *lo* creo.

He says he has no money, but I do not believe it.

Parece vieja sin serlo. *She seems to be old without being so.*

El pedicuro, pues después supe que *lo* era, me invitó a ver una operación.

The chiropodist, for afterwards I learned that he was such, invited me to see an operation.

Le invité a que se sentara al mismo tiempo que yo *lo* hice.

I invited him to sit down at the same time that I did (so).

Compra vino si *lo* hay para vender. *Buy wine if there is any to be sold.*

2. To represent in the answers that which follows the verb *ser* in the questions.

¿Es ella huérfana? *Lo* es. *Is she an orphan? She is.*

¿Son sus ojos negros, grandes y expresivos? *Lo* son.

Are her eyes black, big and expressive? They are.

¿Es usted abuela? *Lo* soy. *Are you a grandmother? I am.*

¿Es usted el padre de ese precioso niño? *Lo* soy.

Are you the father of that lovely child? I am.

NOTE.—When a feminine noun, preceded by the article, refers to a definite person, the pronoun may take the gender of the noun; but the answers are generally given thus: ¿Es usted la mamá de esa encantadora niña? Sí señor, *para servirle a usted.* *Are you the mother of that charming child? Yes, sir, at your service.* ¿Es usted el ama de llaves de este hotel? Sí señora, *para servirle a usted.* *Are you the housekeeper of this hotel? Yes, madame, at your service.*

THE DATIVE OF INTEREST

The dative of interest, i.e., the dative which shows the interest that the person who speaks has or shows for the person to or about whom something is said, is used to give energy to the expression. This dative of interest is not translated in English.

The datives of interest are frequently confused with the reflexive pronouns because their forms and construction are identical, but it must be borne in mind that the reflexive pronouns are always direct while the datives of interest are indirect.

Examples:

Esta mañana *me* bebí seis vasos de agua.

This morning I drank six glasses of water.

Esta tarde *me* beberé otros tantos.

This afternoon I shall drink just as many.

Ayer *me* repasé las cuarenta lecciones del método.

Yesterday I reviewed the forty lessons of the method.

Ellos *se* las repasarán mañana. *They will review them to-morrow.*

NOTE *a.*—Notice in the last example the indirect object pronoun *se* precedes the direct *las*.

NOTE *b.*—The dative of interest is also called *ethical* and *passional* by some grammarians.

REMARKS ABOUT THE USE OF THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN CONNECTION WITH THE VERBS *gustar* AND *agradar*

When either the verb *gustar* or *agradar*, both of which mean *to like*, *to please*, occur in a sentence governing one objective personal pronoun or more, the construction of the sentence must be reversed so as to keep the translation of the idea correct when rendered into English; otherwise the opposite of what is meant is said. Consequently the subject of the Spanish sentence must be made the object of the English verb, and the object of the Spanish verb must become the subject of the English sentence.

In *I like him*, for instance, *I*, when translated into Spanish, becomes *me*, and *him* becomes *él*; *él*, being the subject of the Spanish sentence and *me* the object of its verb. In cases of this kind both the conjunctive and the prepositional pronouns are, as a rule, used together at the beginning of the Spanish sentence, the prepositional preceding the conjunctive form. This peculiar way of beginning sentences of this kind by what should be their end, and of ending them by that which should be their beginning, is done for the sake of euphony.

Examples:

<i>A mí me gusta usted.</i>	} <i>I like you.</i>	} The position of the objective personal pronouns as shown in the first sentence of each example is the one most generally preferred.
<i>Usted me gusta a mí.</i>		
<i>A usted le gusto yo.</i>	} <i>You like me.</i>	
<i>Yo le gusto a usted.</i>		
<i>A nosotros nos gusta ella.</i>	} <i>We like her.</i>	
<i>Ella nos gusta a nosotros.</i>		
<i>A ella le gustamos nosotros.</i>	} <i>She likes us.</i>	
<i>Nosotros le gustamos a ella</i>		
<i>A ellos les gusta la flor.</i>	<i>They (masc.) like the flower.</i>	
<i>A ellos les gustan las flores.</i>	<i>They (masc.) like the flowers.</i>	

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The reflexive object pronouns are exactly the same in form as the conjunctive pronouns of the first and second persons. *Se* is the pronoun of the third person both in the singular and plural.

Equivalents of the reflexive pronouns:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>me, myself</i>	<i>nos, ourselves</i>
<i>te, yourself (familiar form), thyself</i>	<i>os, yourselves (fam. form)</i>
<i>se, himself, herself, yourself (pol. form), itself</i>	<i>se, themselves (both masc. and fem.), yourselves (pol. form)</i>

INTENSIFICATION OF SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUNS AS WELL AS NOUNS
BY *mismo*

The reflexive pronouns *myself*, *yourself*, etc., are in English similar in form to the intensive pronouns. The intensification is obtained in English by placing these pronouns after the subject of the sentence, but, in Spanish, the intensification of the subject and prepositional pronouns, as well as nouns, is made by adding to them, or by sometimes placing before them, the word *mismo* with its appropriate variations in gender and number.

Examples:

Yo mismo lo haré. I will do it myself.

Nosotras mismas lo hicimos. We ourselves (fem.) did it.

Me lo dijo él mismo. He himself said it to me.

Nos lo dijo a nosotros mismos. He said it to us, ourselves (masc.).

Mi misma hermana me lo ha dicho. My sister herself has told it to me.

Se habla a sí mismo. He speaks to himself.

Me afeito yo mismo. I shave myself.

IDIOMATIC USAGE OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS *la* AND *las*

The conjunctive feminine forms *la* and *las* are often used in an indefinite sense.

Examples:

Él sabe como las gasto. He knows how I act or what my wiles are.

Ése se las echa de gracioso. That one pretends to be funny.

Él me la pagará, or } I will get even with him.
Él me las pagará }

¡Buena la hemos hecho! What a fine thing we have done (ironically).

POSSESSIVES

PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The possessive adjectives, which agree in gender and number with the thing possessed and not with the possessor as in English, have full and apocopated or shortened forms. The former are used after, and the latter before the nouns that they qualify.

THE FULL FORMS USED AFTER THE NOUNS

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	
mío,	mía,	míos,	mías,	<i>my, mine, of mine.</i>
tuyo,	tuya,	tuyos,	tuyas,	<i>your, yours, of yours (fam. form).</i>
suyo,	suya,	suyos,	suyas,	<i>his, of his, her, hers, of hers, your, yours, of yours (pol. form both sing. and plur.); their, theirs, of theirs.</i>

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
nuestro, nuestra, nuestros, vuestras, <i>our, ours, of ours.</i>	
vuestro, vuestra, vuestros, vuestras, <i>your, yours, of yours</i> (fam. (form sing. and plur.).	

THE SHORTENED FORMS USED BEFORE NOUNS

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
mi,	mis, <i>my</i>
tu,	tus, <i>your</i> (fam. form)
su,	sus, <i>his, her; your</i> (pol. form both sing. and plur.); <i>their.</i>

NOTE.—*Nuestro* and *nuestra*, *vuestro* and *vuestra*, *nuestros* and *nuestras*, *vuestros* and *vuestras* are used either before or after the nouns.

Examples:

El derecho mío es sagrado. } *Mío* is placed after the noun for the
My right is sacred. } sake of emphasis.

Venda mi automóvil. *Sell my automobile.*

El automóvil es mío. { When the verb *to be* is in the sentence, the
The automobile is mine. { usage in both languages is the same, provided
the subject of the sentence is a thing, and pro-
vided there is no other word than the posses-
sive after the verb.

Ese automóvil mío es grande. { An adjective follows the verb *to be*.
That automobile of mine is big. { In cases like this, the idiomatic *of*, which
in English is used before the possessive,
is omitted in Spanish.

Ese automóvil mío tiene cuatro ruedas. { When the verb of a sentence
That automobile of mine has four wheels. { indicates possession, the idio-
matic *of* is also used in English
before the possessive, but not
in Spanish.

El automóvil perteneció a un amigo } The idiomatic *of* is also used in
mío, nuestro, o vuestro. *The* } English when the indefinite ar-
automobile belonged to a friend of } ticle is placed before the noun
mine, of ours, or of yours (fam. } which is qualified by the posses-
form pl.). } sive, but not in Spanish.

Ese (or el) amigo mío lo vendió. { When the definite article or the
That friend of mine sold it. { demonstrative is before the noun
Ella es amiga mía. } which is the subject of the sentence
She is a friend of mine. } which the possessive qualifies, or
when the subject of the verb *to be* is
personal, the idiomatic *of* is also used
in English but not in Spanish.

¡Ay, madre mía!

Woe is me, mother!

¿Qué te pasa, hijo mío?

What is the matter, my son?

¿Qué hacéis, hijos míos, hijas mías?

What are you doing, my sons, my daughters?

Ordene, mi capitán.

At your service, captain. (Lit. order, my captain.)

When these possessives of the first person are used in direct address, they generally follow the noun except when army and navy officers are addressed.

Mi querida abuela, or

Querida abuela mía.

My dear grandmother.

When an adjective accompanies the noun in direct address, both forms are used, but the unapocopated or full form is more emphatic.

WAY TO OBTAIN CLEARNESS OF MEANING OF SOME AMBIGUOUS POSSESSIVES

When there is doubt as to the exact meaning of *suyo* and *suyos* or *su* and *sus*, clearness in the sentence is obtained by using *de* followed by the personal pronouns *usted*, *ustedes*, *él*, *ella*, *ellos*, *ellas*, according to the case, or by completely suppressing the possessives and using only the preposition *de* followed by the pronouns given.

Examples:

El caballo *suyo*, or *su* caballo (de él, de ellos, de usted, de ustedes, de ella, de ellas) es blanco. *His, their* (masc.), *your* (sing.), *your* (plur.), *her, their* (fem.) horse is white.

Los caballos *suyos*, or *sus* caballos (de él, de ellos, de usted, de ustedes, de ella, de ellas) son blancos. *His, their* (masc.), *your* (pol. form sing.), *your* (pol. form plur.), *her, their* (fem.) horses are white.

The preposition *de*, followed by the object pronoun needed, should be used to explain *suyo* and *suyos* and *su* and *sus* in case of doubt as to their real meaning.

El caballo de él, de ellos, de usted, de ustedes, de ella, de ellas es blanco. *His, their* (masc.), *your* (polite form sing.), *your* (polite form plural), *her, their* (fem.) horse is white.

When the Spanish sentence does not admit the above construction because of its heaviness or inelegance, the possessives are omitted and only the preposition *de*, followed by the object pronoun needed, is used.

CASES WHERE THE POSSESSIVES ARE USED IN SPANISH AND THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN ENGLISH

The unapocopated or full possessive forms are often used in Spanish when the prepositions *of*, *from*, *after*, etc., followed by a personal pronoun, are required in English.

Examples:

Pronto recibiremos noticias tuyas (de él). *We shall soon receive news from him.*

Lo hizo a despecho mío. *He did it in spite of me.*

La policía vendrá pronto en busca suya (de usted). *The police will soon come after you. (Lit. in your search.)*

REPETITION OF THE POSSESSIVES

The possessives, unless they refer to the same person or object, require repetition.

Examples:

Mi madre, mi hermana y mi suegro están en casa. *My mother, sister and father-in-law are at home.* { Notice the repetition of the possessive in the Spanish sentence.

Mi amigo y condiscípulo. } Notice the omission of the possessive before condiscípulo.
My friend and classmate.

USE OF *propio*, *own*, TO STRENGTHEN THE POSSESSIVE

The adjective *propio*, equivalent to the English *own* is used to strengthen the possessive. *Mismo* is sometimes used.

Examples:

Viven en su propia casa. *They live in their own house.*

Mi propio (or mismo) padre me lo ha dicho. *My own father has told it to me.*

USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE

When speaking of the parts of the body and of articles of apparel worn by persons, if there is no doubt as to who is the possessor, the definite article takes the place of the possessive.

Examples:

Yo abro la boca y cierro los ojos.

I open my mouth and close my eyes.

Ella tiene flores en la mano derecha y caramelos en la izquierda.

She has flowers in her right hand and caramels in her left.

Ponte los zapatos y quítate el sombrero.

Put on your shoes and take off your hat.

} Notice the article instead of the possessive before the parts of the body and articles of apparel.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

They are the same in form as the unapocopated or full possessive adjectives, but they are always preceded by the definite article.

Examples:

Tu casa y *la mía*. *Your house and mine.*

Vuestro sombrero y *el nuestro*. *Your hat and ours.*

Tu sombrero y *el mío* son negros. *Your hat and mine are black.*

Nuestros deberes y *los suyos*, de él, de ellos, de usted, de ustedes, de ella, de ellas son los mismos. *Our duties and his, theirs (masc.), yours (sing. and plur.), hers, theirs (fem.) are the same.*

The possessive forms which are accompanied by the definite article are used as pronouns.

MEANING OF *lo* WHEN PLACED BEFORE A POSSESSIVE

The meaning of *lo*, the neuter article, when it precedes the masculine possessive forms, is the following:

lo mío, *what is mine* or *that which is mine*.

lo tuyo, *what is yours* (fam. form) or *that which is yours*.

lo suyo, *what is his, theirs* (masc.), *hers, theirs* (fem.), *yours* (polite form).

lo nuestro, *what is ours* or *that which is ours*.

lo vuestro, *what is yours* (fam. form plur.) or *that which is yours*.

RELATIVES

The relative pronouns are *que*, *quien*, *cual* and *cuyo*.

Que, *which*, *that*, *who*, *whom*, is invariable, and may be preceded by any form of the definite article with the meaning of *that which*, *the one who*, etc.

Quien, *who*, *whom*, *he who*, *those who*, *the one who*, *the ones who*, etc., changes into *quienes* for the plural. This relative pronoun is never preceded by the definite article.

Cual, *who*, *whom*, *which*, changes into *cuales* for the plural. This relative may be preceded by any form of the definite article.

Cuyo, which never admits the definite article and whose English meaning is *whose*, *of which*, changes into *cuya* for the feminine, and adds *s* to form the plural.

GENERAL RULES WHICH GOVERN THE USE OF RELATIVES

1. In Spanish the relative pronoun, which should always be as close as possible to its antecedent, must never be omitted.

Example:

El pavo *que* compré pesa muchas libras.

The turkey I bought weighs many pounds.

2. If a preposition governs a relative pronoun, the governing preposition must always precede the relative, no matter what its position may be in English.

Examples:

La casa *en que* vivimos es cómoda. *The house that we live in is comfortable.*

La casa *cerca de la cual* hay tantos árboles es mía.

The house near which there are so many trees is mine.

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVES

Que, *quien* and *cual* agree with their antecedent in gender and number, but *cuyo* has the peculiarity of agreeing, in the same manner, with the noun which immediately follows it.

USE OF THE RELATIVE *que*

1. *Que*, the relative most frequently used, which is invariable and which may serve either as subject or object of the verb, refers to persons and things, but, when immediately preceded by a preposition, refers only to things.

Examples:

He visto al hombre *que* odias. *I have seen the man whom you hate.*

Las vinagreras *que* hemos encargado son de cristal tallado.

The cruets that we have ordered are of cut glass.

El día *que* lo conocí era miércoles.

The day that I became acquainted with him was Wednesday.

La mujer *que* está en la esquina me es desconocida.

The woman who is on the corner is unknown to me.

El celo *con que* cumple su misión es admirable.

The zeal with which he fulfills his mission is admirable.

El ideal *a que* dedica sus esfuerzos es digno de respecto.

The ideal to which he devotes his efforts is worthy of respect.

La obra *de que* te hablo será impresa pronto.

The work of which I am speaking to you will soon be printed.

La lancha *en que* estamos está bien construída.

The launch in which we are is well constructed.

2. *Que*, preceded by any form of the masculine or feminine definite article is equivalent to *the one who*, *the one which*, *those who*, etc.

Examples:

Quiero esas otras cosas además *de las que* me diste.

I want those other things besides those that you gave to me.

Ese molino está más allá *del que* tú conoces.

That mill is further than the one which you know.

El corresponsal de esa revista fué *el que* me hizo esa pregunta.

The correspondent of that magazine was the one who asked me that question.

El libro mío es *el que* está en el cajón.

My book is the one which is in the drawer.

Las que han llegado son parientas mías.

The ones who (fem.) or those who have arrived are relatives of mine.

3. *Que* preceded by the neuter article *lo* refers only to an idea or a statement. Its meaning is *that which, what*, etc.

Examples:

Lo que hallé ayer es valioso. That which or what I found yesterday is valuable.

Lo que me dijo no lo repetiré. What he told me I shall not repeat.

¿Es verdad *lo que* cuentan? Is what they tell true?

Con respecto a *lo que* usted me dijo, no diré nada.

Regarding what you said to me, I shall say nothing.

NOTE.—The phrase *lo quees* is equivalent to *as for, as to*, and a *lo que* to *according to, as*.

USE OF THE RELATIVE *quien*

1. *Quien* and its plural form *quienes* refer only to persons or things which are personified, but it should be borne in mind that *quien* is used a great deal, instead of *quienes*, when it refers to a plural antecedent. This relative, which takes the accent mark on the *e* when interrogative and which may be used either as subject or object of the verb, always needs a preceding preposition when used in the objective case to replace *que*.

Examples:

Este es el joven <i>a quien</i> todo el mundo admira.	} This is the young man whom every one admires.
Este es el joven <i>que</i> todo el mundo admira.	

No conoce, ni aún de vista, al hombre *de quien* (or *acerca de quien*) hablábamos.

He does not know, even by sight, the man of whom (or about whom) we were speaking.

El orgullo es *quien* or *el que* ha hecho esto. *Pride is what has done this.*

Las damas *a quien* tanto admiras fueron las primeras *con quien* topamos.

The ladies whom you admire so much were those whom we first met by chance. (*Quien* refers in this sentence to a plural antecedent.)

¿Quién es? *Who is it?*

¿Quiénes son? *Who are they?*

¿A quién le cablegrafió usted? *To whom did you cable?*

2. *Quien* is used to introduce a clause which deals with persons and which explains or supplements the thought of a previous clause which is its antecedent.

Examples:

El mónstruo marino se lanzó sobre el hombre, *quien*, evitando el ataque, se salvó de milagro.

The marine monster threw itself upon the man, who, avoiding the attack, saved himself as if by a miracle.

El secretario de esa institución, *quien*, gracias a Dios, está fuera de peligro, es mi amigo.

The secretary of that institution, who, thank God, is out of danger, is my friend.

3. In expressions of an indefinite character, and in those where *quien*, being the equivalent of *he who*, etc., is used as subject, *quien* may be said to include its antecedent.

Examples:

No tiene a *quien* hablar. (Indefinite.)

He has no one (or nobody) to whom to speak.

¿Hay *quien* sepa algo verdaderamente importante? (Indefinite.)

Is there any one who knows anything really important?

No tengo con *quien* cambiar ideas. (Indefinite.)

I have no one (or nobody) with whom to exchange ideas.

No teniendo a *quien* confiar el secreto, se lo llevó al cementerio. (Indefinite.)

Not having any one to whom to confide the secret, he took it with him to the cemetery.

Quien mucho habla mucho yerra. (Proverb.)

He who talks much errs much.

Quien mucho abarca poco aprieta. (Proverb.)

He who takes much in hand grasps little.

4. Idiomatically, *quién* . . . *quién*, and, *quiénes* . . . *quiénes*, meaning respectively, *one* . . . *another*, and, *some* . . . *others*, are sometimes used as correlatives.

Examples:

Quién aconseja el asalto, *quién* la retirada.

One advises the assault, another the retreat.

Los jugadores dormían, *quiénes* en catres, *quiénes* en el suelo.

The gamblers were sleeping, some on cots, others on the floor.

USE OF THE RELATIVE *cual*

Cual and its plural form *cuales*, frequently used to single out persons, animals or things from a given number or group, may, as the subject or object of the verb, refer both to persons and things. This relative, when interrogative, takes the accent mark on the *a*.

Examples:

No sé a *cual* de ellos dirigirme.

I do not know to which one of them to address myself, or to write.

¿*Cuál* es el primer deber del hombre? *Which is the first duty of man?*

CASES WHERE THE RELATIVE *cual* IS PRECEDED BY THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

1. *Cual* is used preceded by the definite article to replace the less precise relatives *que* or *quien* in cases of ambiguity, i.e., when the relative is at some distance from its antecedent and it may refer to any of two or more nouns. The gender and number of the relative serves to indicate the noun to which it refers, i.e., the noun which is its antecedent.

Examples:

He visto a la hermana de mi amigo, *la cual* es encantadora.

I have seen my friends' sister, who is charming.

He visto a las hermanas de mis amigos, *las cuales* son encantadoras.

I have seen my friends' sisters, who are charming.

He visto el retrato de la hermana de mi amigo, *el cual* es una verdadera obra de arte.

I have seen the portrait of my friend's sister, which is a true (or real) work of art.

He visto los retratos de las hermanas de mi amigo, *los cuales* son verdaderamente artísticos.

I have seen the portraits of my friend's sisters, which are really artistic.

2. To continue the thread of discourse after a clause having complete sense, the relative following the pause or punctuation mark which is at the end of the clause.

Examples:

Ayer compré una alhaja muy rara, *la cual* me costó un ojo de la cara.

Yesterday I bought a very rare jewel, which cost me a large sum of money (lit. an eye of the face).

Hoy he comprado un reflector eléctrico para mi automóvil, *el cual* resuelve el problema de viajar de noche.

To-day I have bought an electric search light for my automobile, which solves the problem of traveling by night.

3. Frequently after prepositions of more than three letters or more than one syllable, and after compound prepositions.

Examples:

Este es el invento *sobre el cual* deseo hablarte.

This is the invention about which I wish to speak to you.

El lago *cerca del cual* está la cruz, es el centro de recreo para miles de personas.

The lake near which is the cross, is the recreation center for thousands of persons.

El tapiz *tras el cual* nos ocultamos nos salvó.

The tapestry behind which we hid ourselves saved us.

4. *Cual* preceded by the neuter article *lo* refers only to an idea or statement.

Examples:

Dicho *lo cual*, partió con lágrimas en los ojos.

After saying which, she departed with tears in her eyes.

Hallé el dinero en la media que ella había metido en un agujero de la pared, *lo cual* me llenó el corazón de satisfacción.

I found the money in the stocking that she had put in a hole of the wall, which fact filled my heart with satisfaction.

USE OF *el cual*, *la cual*, ETC., ADJECTIVELY

El cual, *la cual*, etc., may precede a noun with the value of an adjective, just as the English *which* does.

Examples:

Trató de convencerlos, *en el cual* esfuerzo (or *esfuerzo en que*) fracasó.

He tried to convince them, in which effort (or an effort in which) he failed.

Entró al templo sin quitarse el sombrero, *la cual* conducta (or *conducta que*) sorprendió a todos.

He entered the temple without taking off his hat, which conduct (or a conduct which) surprised everybody.

USE OF *cual* AS A CORRELATIVE

Cual, used without the article, may be the correlative of *tal*, with different English equivalents.

Examples:

Dame *tal* o *cual* cosa. *Give me something or other.*

Son *tal* para *cual*. *They are just fitted for each other. (Ironically.)*

USE OF THE RELATIVE *cuyo*

Cuyo, the relative which indicates possession, which refers to persons and things, and which corresponds to the English *whose*, *of which*, agrees with the noun which immediately follows it.

Examples:

El gobernador a *cuyo* servicio está, es generoso.

The governor in whose service he is, is generous.

Estoy buscando un libro *cuyo* título no recuerdo.

I am looking for a book, the title of which I do not remember.

Ten la bondad de presentarme a la señora *cuya* hija ha ganado el premio literario.

Have the kindness to introduce me to the lady whose daughter has won the literary prize.

NOTE.—*De quien* or *de quienes* is frequently used in Spanish when *whose* is used in English.

USE OF *cuanto* AND *donde* AS RELATIVES

Cuanto, which may sometimes include its antecedent, takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers; while *donde* is often used to take the place of a relative which is preceded by a preposition.

Examples:

Le dije *cuanto* me dió la gana.

I told him all that I wanted (or I gave him a piece of my mind).

Me hizo *cuantas* preguntas quiso.

He asked me as many questions as he wanted (or all the questions he wanted).

La avenida *donde* (or *en que*) vivo es hermosa.

The avenue where (or in which) I live is beautiful.

DEMONSTRATIVES

FORMS

The demonstratives are: *este, ese, aquel* for the singular masculine; *esta, esa, aquella* for the singular feminine, and *esto, eso, aquello* for the neuter gender. Their respective plural forms are: *estos, esos, aquellos* for the masculine, and *estas, esas, aquellas* for the feminine. The neuter gender has no plural.

USE AND AGREEMENT

1. *Este, esta, esto* and their plural forms *estos* and *estas*, used to indicate what is near to, or associated with the person who speaks, mean respectively, *this* and *these*. *Ese, esa, eso* and their plural forms *esos* and *esas*, used to indicate what is near to, or associated with the person who listens, mean respectively, *that* and *those*. *Aquel, aquella* and *aquellos* and their plural forms *aquellos* and *aquellas*, used to indicate that which is remote from the persons who take part in a conversation, mean respectively, *that* and *those* (yonder).

2. All the demonstratives are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, with the exception of the neuter forms which are only used as pronouns. The demonstrative adjectives agree with their nouns in number and gender.

When the demonstratives are used as pronouns, the written accent is placed on all but the neuter forms, this way: *éste, ése, aquél; ésta, ésa, aquélla; éstos, éstos, aquéllos; éstas, ésas, aquéllas*.

Examples:

Quiero *este* disco fonográfico o *ése*. *I want this phonographic disc or that one.* (*Este* is used as adjective; *ese* as pronoun.)

Dame *esos* guantes o *aquéllos*. *Give me those gloves or those (yonder) ones.* (*Esos* is used as adjective; *aquellos* as pronoun.)

Le mandaré *esta* corbata colorada o *ésa* verde. *I shall send him this red necktie or that green one.* (*Esta* is used as adjective; *ésa* as pronoun.)

Esto es bueno. *This is good.* (Neuter.)

WAY TO TRANSLATE INTO SPANISH THE ENGLISH *of* WHEN PRECEDED BY A DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

When the demonstratives are followed by *of* in the English sentence, the definite article, agreeing with the noun they represent, should be used in Spanish.

Examples:

Esta casa y *la de* mi vecino se venderán mañana.

This house and that of my neighbor will be sold to-morrow.

Estos libros y *los de* su cuñado son publicados por la misma casa.

These books and those of your brother-in-law are published by the same house.

SPANISH EQUIVALENTS OF THE ENGLISH *the latter* AND *the former*

The demonstrative pronouns *éste* and *aquél* are used to respectively represent *the latter* and *the former*. The order of these demonstratives is in Spanish just the reverse of the English.

Example:

El señor Fulano de Tal y don Perico de los Palotes son igualmente admirados; *éste* por su generosidad, y *aquél* por su nobleza de corazón.
Mr. So-and-so and Mr. John Doe are equally admired; the former for his nobleness of heart, and the latter for his generosity.

INTERROGATIVES

Interrogative pronouns and adjectives have the same forms as the relatives. All of them, whether they be used in direct or indirect questions, take the orthographic accent.

They are as follows:

¿qué?, what?	¿cuál?, which?	¿cuánto?, how much?
¿quién?, who?	¿cuyo?, whose?	

NOTE.—*Cúyo*, *whose*, is obsolete in Spanish as an interrogative, in common speech. It is always replaced by *¿de quién?*, *of whom?*

USE OF *qué*

1. This invariable interrogative which may be used either as a neuter pronoun or as an adjective, may stand alone or may be placed before nouns representing persons, animals or things.

Examples:

¿Qué dijo? *What did he say?*
 ¿Qué quiere esa joven? *What does that young woman want?*
 ¿Qué remos desea usted? *What oars do you want?*
 ¿A qué árbol se ha subido? *Which tree has he climbed?*
 ¿De qué clase de madera es esa cómoda? *Of what kind of wood is that chest of drawers?*
 ¿Con qué ha cortado usted eso? *With what have you cut that?*

2. It is also used in exclamations with the meaning of *what . . . !*, *what a . . . !*, *how . . . !* before adjectives or adverbs. When a qualifying adjective is used after a noun in an exclamatory sentence which begins with *qué*, the adjective is preceded by either the adverb *tan* or *más*.

Examples:

¡Qué desgracia or desdicha! *What a misfortune!*
 ¡Qué triste está! *How sad she is!*
 ¡Qué luna tan (or más) hermosa! *What a beautiful moon!*
 ¡Qué cosa tan asombrosa ha dicho! *What an astonishing thing he has said!*

¡Qué corazón tan (or más) grande tienes! What a big heart you have!
¡Qué bueno eres! How good you are!
¡Qué gracioso eres, hijo de mi corazón! How cunning, (graceful or funny) you are, child of my heart!
¡Qué grosería! What coarseness!
¡Qué grosero es! How coarse he is!
¡Qué fino eres! How refined you are!
¡Qué lástima que sea tan torpe! What a pity he is so dull!

3. It is frequently used with *tal* to formulate questions regarding the quality or condition of persons, animals and things.

Examples:

¿Qué tal está or sigue el enfermo? How is the patient doing or getting along?
¿Qué tal es la yegua que compró? What kind of a mare did he buy?
¿Qué tal está la yegua que se rompió la pata? How is the mare that broke her leg?
¿Qué tal son las cerezas este año? How are the cherries this year?
¿Qué (tal) tiempo hace? What kind of weather is it?
¿Qué tal es el nuevo hotel? What kind of a hotel is the new one?
¿Qué tal? (greeting much used). How goes it? How are you?
¿Qué tal está usted? (greeting). How are you?

NOTE.—*Qué de . . .*, before a noun, is equivalent to *how many*, as in this sentence: *¡Qué de mentiras (or cuántas mentiras) me dijo! How many lies he told me!*

USE OF *quién*

Quién and its plural form *quiénes* refer only to persons.

Examples:

¿Quién es ella? Who is she?
¿Quiénes son aquellos hombres? Who are those men?
¿Sabe usted quién soy yo? Do you know who I am?

USE OF *cuál*

Cuál and its plural form *cuáles*, used almost exclusively as pronouns, serve respectively to single out one or more persons, animals or things from a given number or group. The meaning of *cuál* and *cuáles* is *what* or *which* in the sense of *which one* or *which ones*.

Examples:

¿Cuál es su nombre or gracia? Which is your name?
¿Cuál de esos es el que le gusta más? Which of these is the one you like the best?
¿Cuáles son los (nombres de los) días de la semana? What are the names of the days of the week?

- ¿Cuál es el remedio que usted sugiere? *What remedy do you suggest?*
 ¿Cuál es la fecha de esa carta (or Qué fecha tiene esa carta)? *What is the date of that letter?*
 ¿Cuál es el día más señalado del año? *Which is the most noted day of the year?*
 ¿Cuál es el mejor método para aprender idiomas extranjeros? *Which is the best method for learning foreign languages?*

USE OF *cuánto*

1. *Cuánto, cuánta, how much*, and their plural forms *cuántos, cuántas, how many*, agree in gender and number with the word modified. In exclamations their meaning, as well as the meaning of their shortened form *cuán*, which is used before adjectives and adverbs without comparative value, may be *how, how much, how many*.

Examples:

- ¿Cuánto dinero ha costado el túnel? *How much money has the tunnel cost?*
 ¿Cuánto tiempo nos ha esperado usted? *How long have you waited for us?*
 ¿Cuánta hierba ha comido el buey? *How much grass has the ox eaten?*
 ¿Cuántas ramas tiene ese árbol? *How many branches has that tree?*
 ¿Cuántas hojas tiene esa rama? *How many leaves has that branch?*
 ¿Cuántos helechos hay en ese prado? *How many ferns are there in that meadow?*
 ¡Cuánto me gusta leer sus cartas! *How I like to read her letters!*
 ¡Cuánto sabe! *How much he knows!*
 ¡Cuántos buenos ratos hemos pasado juntos! *How many good times we have spent together!*
 ¡Cuántas cosas les diría si pudiese verlos! *How many things I would tell them if I could see them!*
 ¡Cuán (or qué) dichosa es! *How happy she is!*
 ¡Cuán (or qué) afortunado soy! *How fortunate I am!*

NOTE.—*Lo que* may sometimes be used for *cuánto*, as in this sentence: ¡Si ella supiera *lo que* la quiero! *If only she knew how much I love her!*

INDEFINITES

Under this head will be included words which are sometimes used either as adjectives or as pronouns, and at times as adverbs, with meanings more or less indeterminate or indefinite in character.

The following are the more important ones:

alguien, <i>somebody, someone, anybody, anyone</i>	nadie, <i>nobody, no one</i>
algo, <i>something, anything, somewhat</i>	nada, <i>nothing</i>
alguno, <i>anyone, some, any, a few, someone</i>	ninguno, <i>none, no one, no</i>
	cada, <i>each, every</i>
	uno, <i>one</i>

todo, <i>all, the whole</i>	solo, <i>alone, single, only</i>
entero, <i>all, whole, entire</i>	único, <i>only, single, unique</i>
cierto, <i>certain</i>	cosa, <i>thing</i>
otro, <i>other</i>	cualquiera, <i>any, whichever</i>
tal, <i>such, such a</i>	quienquiera, <i>whoever</i>
mismo, <i>same, very</i>	dondequiera, <i>anywhere, wherever</i>
propio, <i>own</i>	fulano, }
ajeno, <i>foreign to, free from</i>	mengano, }
semejante, <i>such, fellow-creature</i>	zutano, }
varios, <i>several, a good many</i>	perengano, }
una porción de, <i>several, a good many</i>	perencejo, }
ambos, <i>both</i>	

So and So, X, etc.

USE OF *alguien*

Alguien, *somebody, someone, anybody, anyone*, is an invariable pronoun which refers only to persons. It is never used in negative sentences.

Examples:

Alguien llama a la puerta. *Somebody is knocking at the door.*

Alguien viene por entre la obscuridad.

Someone is coming through the darkness.

¿Ha venido *alguien* mientras estaba fuera?

Has anyone (or anybody) come while I was out?

¿Se ha encontrado usted con *alguien* en el camino?

Have you met anyone on your way (or on the road)?

USE OF *algo*

Algo, *something, anything*, an invariable pronoun which is also used adverbially before adjectives and adverbs with the meaning of *somewhat*, refers to things only. It is used exclusively in affirmative sentences.

Examples:

¿Quiere usted *algo*? *Do you want anything?*

Algo es mejor que nada. *Something is better than nothing.*

Le he dicho *algo* importante. *I have told him something important.*

La fruta es *algo* cara. *Fruit is somewhat expensive.*

Es *algo* tarde. *It is somewhat late.*

USE OF *alguno*

1. *Alguno*, *-a, -os, -as, anyone, some, any, a few, someone*, etc., which is used either as a pronoun or as an adjective for both persons and things, with the corresponding variations in gender and number, must be preceded by the preposition *a* when it is the direct object of the verb.

This indefinite, when used as a pronoun, differs from *alguien* in that it refers to someone already thought of, while *alguien* refers to a person not previously considered.

When this indefinite is used as an adjective, in the masculine singular, it loses the final *o*.

Examples:

¿Ve usted *a alguno* de sus amigos? *Do you see any one of your friends?*
Algunos de ellos vendrán a visitarme pronto. *Some of them will come to visit me soon.*

Quiero comprar *algunos* muebles. *I want to buy some pieces of furniture.*

Tengo que hacer *algunas* compras. *I have to make some purchases.*

¿Ve usted *a algún* hombre en la plaza? *Do you see any man in the square?*

Si usted no lo quiere, *alguno* lo querrá. *If you do not want it, someone else will want it.*

Esto tiene *alguna* resistencia. *This has some resistance.*

¿Ha llegado *alguno*? *Has any one come? (of those who are expected).*

He comprado *algunas*. *I have bought some.*

2. *Alguno*, *-a*, is sometimes used after the word *sin*, *without*, as well as after a noun in negative sentences or in sentences which have a negative sense.

Examples:

Sin duda *alguna* (or *ninguna*). *Without any doubt.*

No tiene derecho *alguno* en pensar mal de mí. *He has no right to think ill of me.*

Se opone a hacer concesión *alguna*. *He is opposed to making any concession.*

Ahora es imposible recibir noticia *alguna*.

It is now impossible to receive any news.

3. *Alguno que otro* is rendered into English by *occasional*, *occasionally*, *some*, *a few*, etc.

Examples:

Alguno que otro pájaro cruzaba el espacio. *An occasional bird crossed the space.*

Alguna que otra compañía teatral nos visita en el invierno. *A theatrical company occasionally visits us in winter.*

Alguno que otro. (Idiom.) *Some, a few.*

USE OF *nadie*, *nada* AND *ninguno*

1. *Nadie*, *nobody*, *no one*; *nada*, *nothing*, and *ninguno*, *none*, *no one*, *no*, are the negative forms of *alguien*, *algo* and *alguno*. These forms may be used alone, as well as either before or after the verb. In the latter case *no* must precede the verb.

When *ninguno* is used as an adjective, in the masculine singular, it loses the final *o*.

Examples:

Nadie habla sino el sacristán. *Nobody* speaks but the sexton.

Nada sé de ese asunto. *I know nothing of that affair.*

Ninguno de ellos lo sabe. *Not one of them knows it.*

A *nadie* diré *nada*.

Nada diré a *nadie*.

No diré *nada* a *nadie*.

De *ningún* modo.

De *ninguna* manera.

} *By no means.*

Lo que le dije no fué *nada* agradable.

What I told him was by no means (or not at all) agreeable. (Notice that the meaning of *nada* in this sentence is *by no means* or *not at all*.)

2. *Nadie* and *nada* are used instead of *alguien*, *algo* and *alguno* in sentences which have a negative sense.

Examples:

Habla mejor que *nadie*. *He speaks better than anyone else.*

¿Quién sabe *nada* de eso? *Who knows anything about that?*

3. *Nadie* and *nada*, and not *alguien* and *algo* are generally used after the prepositions *sin*, *without*, and *antes de*, *before*.

Examples:

Sin consideración a *nadie*.

Without consideration for anybody.

Antes de comprar *nada*.

Before buying anything.

USE OF *cada*

Cada, *each*, *every*, an invariable adjective which is never preceded by the definite article, always precedes the word it modifies.

When *cada* is followed by *uno*, *una* or *cual*, with the meaning of *each one*, *everyone*, it is a pronoun.

Examples:

Cada hora que pasa aumenta más y más mi ansiedad.

Each hour that passes increases my anxiety more and more.

Me escribe *cada* quince días.

He writes to me every fortnight.

Cada uno sabe donde le aprieta la suela del zapato. (Proverb.)

Everyone knows where the shoe pinches. (Lit. where the sole of the shoe squeezes.)

Partimos de allí llevando *cada cual* su maleta.

We left there each one carrying his suit case.

USE OF *uno*

Uno, *-a*, *-os* *-as*, is used as an indefinite pronoun with the meaning of *one*, *some*, *a few*, etc. It is often used in combination with the word *otro*, *another*.

Examples:

Uno no está siempre con ganas de bromas. *One is not always in the mood for joking.*

Uno va y *otro* viene. *One goes and another comes.*

Unos van y *otros* vienen. *Some go and others come.*

Tengo *unos* pocos. *I have a few.*

Lo veo *una* que *otra* vez. *I see him occasionally.*

Uno y *otro*. *Both.*

El *uno* por el *otro* la casa sin barrer. (Proverb.) *While one waits for the other, the house remains unswept.*

Se dieron *el uno al otro* unas cuantas trompadas. *They gave each other a few blows (with the fist).*

Amaos *los unos a los otros*. (Biblical precept.) *Love one another.*

USE OF *todo*

1. *Todo*, *-a*, *-os*, *-as*, when followed by any form of the definite article, a possessive or demonstrative adjective, comprises the whole amount or quantity of the preceding noun.

Its English meaning, in the singular, is *all*, *the whole*. In the plural it is *all*, but when it is followed by the definite article and by a noun representing a measure of time, it must be translated into English by *every* with the noun in the singular.

Examples:

Escribió *toda* la mañana. *He wrote the whole morning.*

Mañana leeré *todo* el día. *To-morrow I shall read all day.*

Viene *todas* las noches. *He comes every evening.*

Va a ese lugar *todos* los años. *He goes to that place every year.*

Toda mi esperanza está allí. *All my hope is there.*

Todos mis zapatos son cómodos. *All my shoes are comfortable.*

Todos estos estudiantes son inteligentes. *All these students are intelligent.*

2. When *todo* is not followed by any form of the definite article, a possessive or demonstrative adjective, it comprises the entire class of the noun which it precedes. Its English equivalent is usually *every*, but it may have others.

Examples:

Toda persona honrada lo respeta. *Every honest person respects him.*

Todo ladrón lo teme. *Every thief fears him.*

Toda manifestación de progreso representa esfuerzo. *Every manifestation of progress represents effort.*

Hazlo a *toda* costa. *Do it at any cost.*

En *todo* caso, díselo. *At all events, tell it to him.*

3. *Todos*, *-as*, may either precede or follow a personal subject pronoun in the plural; but to place it before the pronouns is more euphonic.

Examples:

<i>todos nosotros</i>	} <i>all of us</i>	<i>con todos ellos</i>	} <i>with all of them</i>
<i>todas nosotras</i>		<i>con todas ellas</i>	

4. When *todo* is used as a pronoun, in the singular, it is neuter and its meaning is *all, everything, everyone*. In the plural, it generally refers to persons.

Examples:

Todo se lo merece. She deserves it all.

Todo le favorece. Everything favors him.

Cuéntame un poco de todo. Tell me a little of everything.

Sobre todo, dime cómo está. Above all, tell me how he is.

Este es el parecer de todos. This is the opinion of all or everyone.

Todos admiran sus virtudes. All admire her virtues.

5. *Todos* may refer to both persons and things when taking the place of a plural noun; but if it is the object of the verb and refers to persons it must be preceded by the preposition *a*.

Examples:

Varios soldados aparecieron, todos armados. Several soldiers appeared, all armed.

Se las he enviado todas. I have sent him all (of them).

Los he despachado a todos. I have dismissed them all.

6. When *todo* precedes in Spanish any form of the definite or indefinite article, plus a noun, its English equivalent 's placed between the article and the noun.

Examples:

He pasado toda la noche en vela.

I have spent the whole night without sleeping (or watching).

Le esperé toda una noche. I waited for him a whole evening.

7. *Todo*, when used adverbially, means *entirely, all*. As a noun, its meaning is *whole, total*.

Examples:

El buque marcha a todo vapor. The ship goes at full speed.

¿Cuánto es todo? How much is the whole (everything)?

El todo es mayor que cualquiera de sus partes. (Axiom.) The whole is greater than any of its parts.

Voy a jugarme el todo por el todo. I am going to stake or risk all. (Lit. the whole for the whole.)

8. *Todo cuanto, todos cuantos*, form phrases which mean *all that*. They include their antecedent.

Examples:

Tengo *todo cuanto* necesito para ser feliz. *I have all that I need to be happy.*

Vi a *todos cuantos* estaban allí. *I saw all that were there.*

USE OF *entero*

Entero, -a, -os, -as, is in the singular the equivalent of *todo*; in the plural its meaning is *whole* and *entire*. This adjective always follows a noun.

Examples:

Me he pasado en casa el día *entero* (or *todo* el día).

I have spent the whole day at home.

Se ha comido un pan *entero*.

He has eaten a whole or an entire loaf of bread.

Ha estado noches *enteras* sin poder cerrar los ojos.

He has been entire or whole nights without being able to close his eyes.

USE OF *cierto*

Cierto, -a, -os, -as, which is never preceded by any form of the indefinite article, usually precedes the noun which it modifies, with *certain* as its English equivalent.

Examples:

Cierto amigo, cuyo nombre no hace al caso, me lo dijo.

A certain friend of mine, whose name does not matter, told it to me.

Me gustan ciertas costumbres. *I like certain (habits) customs.*

USE OF *otro*

Otro, -a, -os, -as, *other*, which is never preceded by the indefinite article, is used either as an adjective or as a pronoun.

Examples:

El *otro* par de guantes es mejor que éste. *The other pair of gloves is better than this one.*

La *otra* corbata es más bonita. *The other necktie is prettier.*

Déme *otra* media pinta. *Give me another half pint.*

Estos son malos, pero los *otros* son buenos. *These are bad, but the others are good*

USE OF *tal*

Tal (pl. *tales*), *such*, *such a*, is used both as an adjective and as a pronoun. It may be preceded by any form of the definite article, but by the indefinite article only in the phrase *un tal*, *a certain*, before the name of a person.

Examples:

Allí conocí a *un tal* (here the name or surname of the person).

There I became acquainted with one. . . .

Tal hombre no merece consideración alguna.

Such a man does not deserve any consideration.

No hicimos *tal* cosa. *We did not do such a thing.*

No concebimos *tales* maravillas. *We do not conceive of such wonders.*

El *tal* (name of person here) tenía un corazón muy noble.

This (name of person here) *had a very noble heart.*

USE OF *mismo*

1. *Mismo*, -a, -os, -as, with the meaning of *same* or *very* is used adjectively, always followed by a noun and preceded by some qualifying word such as the article, a demonstrative adjective, etc.

Examples:

Esta *misma* noche decidiremos lo que hacer. *This very night we shall decide what to do.*

Siempre me dices la *misma* cosa. *You always tell me the same thing.*

Los dos tenemos las *mismas* ideas. *Both of us have the same ideas.*

Acabo de ver al *mismo* hombre. *I have just seen the same man.*

2. *Mismo* is used as an intensifier after pronouns and adverbs, and may be placed either before or after nouns, but preferably after. Its English meaning is *self*, *very*, *even*, etc.

Examples:

Es la *misma* modestia. *She is modesty itself.*

Ella *misma* lo ha dicho. *She herself has said it.*

En este *mismo* instante la veo. *In this very instant I see her.*

Ahora *mismo* te lo voy a dar. *Just now or in this very instant I am going to give it to you.*

Hoy *mismo* se lo he mandado. *This very day I have sent it to him.*

USE OF *propio*

1. *Propio*, meaning *own*, is used after possessive pronouns.

Examples:

Me lo enseñó en su *propia* casa. *He showed it to me in his own house.*

El estado crea sus *propias* leyes. *The state creates its own laws.*

2. When *propio* is used as an adjective and is followed by the preposition *de*, its meaning is *becoming*, *proper* or *appropriate to*; and when it is followed by the preposition *para* its meaning is *suitable for*.

Examples:

Sus acciones no son *propias* de un caballero.

His actions are not becoming in (or to, or appropriate to) a gentleman.

Es un juego *propio* para niños.

It is a game suitable for children.

USE OF *ajeno*

Ajeno, -a, -os, -as, may mean *foreign to*, *free from*, etc., when used as an adjective and followed by either the preposition *de* or *a*. When it is not followed by a preposition, its meaning may be *other people's*.

Examples:

Lo hice por causas *ajenas a* mi voluntad. *I did it for reasons foreign to my wish.*

En lo presente estoy *ajeno de* cuidados. *At present I am free from cares.*

No deseo los bienes *ajenos*. *I do not wish other people's goods.*

USE OF *semejante*

1. *Semejante*, -s, with the meaning of *such*, is used either before or after nouns.

Examples:

Nunca he visto descaro *semejante*. } *I have never seen such impudence*
Nunca he visto *semejante* descaro. } *or forwardness.*

2. As a noun *semejante* means fellow-creature.

Examples:

Nuestros semejantes están en la misma ignorancia que nosotros.

Our fellow-creatures are in the same ignorance that we are (or as ourselves).

¿Por qué despreciáis a vuestros semejantes?

Why do you despise your fellow-creatures?

USE OF *varios* AND *una porción de*

Varios, and *una porción de*, are used with the meaning of *several*, *a good many*.

Examples:

Basta con los *varios* ejemplos que has dado. *It suffices with the several examples that you have given.*

Los trabajadores han formado *varias* sociedades cooperativas. *The workmen have formed several coöperative societies.*

Deseo clavos de *varios* tamaños. *I want nails of several sizes.*

Le he dicho *una porción de* tonterías.

I have told her several foolish things.

Se lo he repetido *una porción de* veces. *I have repeated it to him several times.*

USE OF *ambos*, *solo* AND *único*

a. *Ambos*, -as, is the equivalent of *both*.

Examples:

Ambos ríos se juntan cerca de la montaña. *Both rivers meet near the mountain.*

Se lo dije *a ambos* (or *a los dos*). *I told it to both.*

b. *Solo*, -a, -os, -as, means *alone*, *single*, when used as an adjective, and *only* when used as an adverb, instead of *solamente*.

Único, -a, -os, -as, *only*, *single*, *unique*, used only as an adjective to refer to things which are the only ones of their kind, must not be confused with *solo*.

Examples:

Una sola planta queda. *Only one plant remains.*

Cuando estoy sola, pienso en vosotras. *When I am alone, I think of you.*

¿Has venido solo? *Have you come alone?*

Todo era allí silencio; sólo se oía, de cuando en cuando, el zumbido de algún insecto.

Everywhere there was silence; only the buzz of some insect was, now and then, heard.

Él es el único amparo y sostén de su anciana madre.

He is the only protection and support of his old mother.

Esto es lo único que te digo. *This is the only thing that I tell you.*

Esta es la única respuesta que le di. *This is the only answer that I gave him.*

Con el único libro que tenía hice lo único que me fué posible hacer.

With the only book I had, I did the only thing that it was possible for me to do.

USE OF *cosa*

Cosa, *thing*, is frequently used as a pronoun with the meaning of *anything*, *something*, in affirmative sentences, and in the sense of *nothing* in negative ones.

Alguna cosa, *something*, is sometimes used as the equivalent of *algo*, and *cosa de* is translated by *something like* or *about*.

Examples:

Esa cosa vale muchísimo. *That thing is worth a great deal.*

Llegamos sin ver cosa interesante. *We arrived without seeing anything interesting.*

No hay cosa que le llame la atención. *There is nothing to attract his attention.*

Tengo alguna cosa (or *algo*) que contarte. *I have something to tell you.*

Tendrás que gastar cosa de un millón de dólares. *You will have to spend something like (or about) a million dollars.*

USE OF *cualquiera*, *quienquiera* AND *dondequiera*

a. *Cualquiera* is used with the meaning of *any*, *whichever*. Both *cualquiera* and its plural form *cualesquiera* may drop the final *a* when they immediately precede a noun.

Examples:

Es un modo de resolver el problema de la vida como otro *cualquiera*.

It is a way to solve the problem of life like any other.

Cualesquiera que sean sus defectos, se los disculpo.

Whatever (or whichever) may be his defects, I excuse them.

Dáselo a *cualquiera* de los dos.

Give it to either of the two (or to one of the two).

Ven a verme *cualquier* día. *Come to see me any day.*

Él es un *cualquiera* y ellas unas *cualquieras*.

He is a nobody, and they (fem.), persons of no account. (Notice that the plural of *cualquiera*, in this particular expression, is *cualquieras*, and that the meaning of *un cualquiera* is *a nobody*, and *unas cualquieras*; *persons of no account.*)

b. *Quienquiera, quienesquiera, whoever* is only used for persons.

Examples:

Quienquiera que te diga lo contrario te engaña.

Whoever tells you the opposite, deceives you.

Quienesquiera que sean, serán recibidos.

Whoever they may be, they will be received.

c. *Dondequiera, anywhere, wherever*, is used to indicate place.

Examples:

Eso pasa *dondequiera*. *That happens anywhere.*

A *dondequiera* que iba, llamaba la atención.

Wherever he went, he attracted attention.

USE OF *fulano, mengano, zutano* AND *perengano* OR *perencejo*

a. *Fulano, -a*, used alone or followed by *de Tal*, means *So-and-So*.

Examples:

Me lo acaba de decir *fulano*. *So-and-so has just said it to me.*

Esta mañana hablé con el señor *Fulano de Tal*. (*Fulano* stands for the first name and *de Tal* for the surname.)

This morning I spoke with Mr. So-and-so.

b. *Fulano, mengano, zutano* and *perengano* or *perencejo* are used to indicate persons whose names we do not remember or purposely fail to mention.

When two persons are alluded to, *fulano* and *mengano* are used; if three, *fulano, mengano* and *zutano*; if four, *fulano, mengano, zutano* and *perengano* or *perencejo*.

CHAPTER V

VERBS

In the several sections of this chapter, the important facts regarding this part of speech are collected, either to be studied or to be used as reference.

THE SPANISH CONJUGATIONS

Spanish verbs are divided into three groups or conjugations. To the first group or conjugation belong all the verbs whose infinitives end in the syllable *ar*, as *hablar*; to the second group or conjugation belong all the verbs whose infinitives end in the syllable *er*, as *comer*; to the third group or conjugation belong all the verbs whose infinitives end in *ir*, as *vivir*.

THE INFINITIVE

The infinitive, i.e., the word which expresses the idea of the verb, consists of two parts: *root* or *stem*, and *ending*.

The roots of *hablar*, *comer* and *vivir*, for instance, are what is left, after the ending, i.e., the last two letters, have been taken away. Consequently, the roots of these infinitives are respectively *habl*, *com*, and *viv*, and their endings are *ar*, *er*, and *ir*.

VERBAL FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE

The infinitive mode has these verbal forms: the *present* or *infinitive*; the *preterite* which is a compound form made up of the infinitive of the auxiliary verb *haber* and the past participle of the verb which is conjugated; the future infinitive which is made up of *haber* followed by the preposition *de* plus the infinitive of the verb which is conjugated; the *gerund*, and the *participle*.

USES OF THE INFINITIVE

1. The infinitive, which is frequently used in Spanish as a verbal noun, either as the subject or object of the verb, may be modified by an adverb or adjective, and may or may not be preceded by the masculine singular form of the definite article.

Examples:

El *mucho beber* lo mató. *Hard drinking killed him.*

Para *hablar mejor* necesitas estudiar elocución. *To speak better, you need to study elocution.*

Criticar es más fácil que crear. To criticise is easier than to create.

El andar es un ejercicio bueno. Walking is a good exercise.

Ese hablar incesante me cansa. That incessant talking tires me.

2. When the infinitive is used in Spanish after a preposition, the present participle is used in English.

Examples:

Después de comer, estudio. After eating, I study.

Se fué sin despedirse. He went away without saying good-bye (or taking leave).

NOTE.—The preposition *en* never precedes an infinitive.

3. When the Spanish infinitive is preceded by *al*, *to the*, its English equivalent is usually rendered by the present participle, preceded by *on* or *upon*, or by using the past of the verb preceded by *when*, etc.

Examples:

Al oír eso hizo una mueca. On (or upon) hearing that, he made a grimace.

Al entrar al teatro me sonrió. When she entered the theatre (or on or upon entering the theatre) she smiled at me.

4. An infinitive preceded by either the preposition *a* or *de*, may sometimes be used idiomatically instead of a conditional clause usually introduced by *si*, *if*.

Examples:

A no ser por él hubiera perecido. If it had not been for him, I would have perished.

A no ser por los bomberos, el arsenal y el astillero hubieran volado. If it had not been for the firemen, the arsenal and the shipyard would have blown up.

A no estar tan lejos, iría a ese lugar. If it were not so far, I would go to that place.

De haber sabido eso, no le habría escuchado. If I had known that, I would not have listened to him.

5. The infinitive is sometimes used instead of the imperative.

Examples:

¡Callar! Keep quiet! Hush!

¡Niños, a dormir! (In this greatly used idiomatic expression the imperative is omitted.) Children, go to sleep!

Dirigirse Apply to

6. The infinitive preceded by a preposition, by an adjective and a preposition, or simply by the governing verb, is frequently used after verbs like *ser*, *to be*, *poder*, *to be able*, *quedar*, *to remain*, *mandar*, *to order*, *hacer*, *to do*, etc., with a passive force.

Examples:

Era de esperar. *It was to be expected.*

Es de suponer que vendrá. *It is to be supposed that he will come.*

Eso es digno de ver (or de verse). *That is worthy of being seen (or it is worth seeing).*

Puedo hacerme comprender. *I can make myself understood.*

Eso queda por hacer. *That remains to be done.*

Mandé a hacer un par de zapatos. *I ordered a pair of shoes to be made.*

7. When an infinitive follows the expression *a medio*, the English equivalent is rendered by *half* and a past participle.

Examples:

Eso está todavía *a medio* hacer. *That is still only half done.*

No dejes tu tarea *a medio* acabar. *Don't leave your task half done.*

Todavía está *a medio* vestir. *He is still only half dressed.*

8. The infinitive follows *que* or *de*, in certain expressions of quantity in which the indefinites *mucho*, *poco*, *nada* or *algo*, are used.

Examples:

Tienen mucho *que* aprender. *They have much to learn.*

Tiene poco *que* decir. *He has little to say.*

No hay nada *que* hacer. *There is nothing to do (or to be done).*

Dale algo *de* comer. *Give him something to eat.*

No le des nada *de* beber. *Don't give him anything to drink.*

9. The Spanish preterite infinitive is rendered in English in different ways.

Examples:

Después de *haber dicho* lo que tenía que decir, partió. *After having said (or after saying) what he had to say, he departed.*

Después de *haber fumado* la colilla del cigarro hasta que no pudo más, la miró tristemente y la tiró. *After having smoked the stub of the cigar as far as he could, he looked at it sadly and threw it away.*

No creo *haberle faltado*. *I don't think I have offended him.*

10. When verbs like *ir* and *venir* are used in the imperative followed by the preposition *a*, plus an infinitive, the English equivalent may be rendered in some cases literally; in others by using two imperatives, or by connecting both verbs with *and*.

Examples:

Vengan ustedes *a* vernos. *Come to see us (or come and see us).*

Vaya usted *a* llamar a su hermano. *Go, call your brother (or go and call your brother).*

11. When an infinitive follows either a noun or an adjective which is preceded by another verb, the connection between the two is generally made by the preposition *de*.

Examples:

Tenga usted la amabilidad *de* sentarse. *Have the kindness (lit. amiability) to sit down.*

Tengo la costumbre *de* ir al teatro todas las noches. *I am in the habit of going to the theatre every evening.*

Me creo capaz *de* hacerlo. *I think myself capable of doing it.*

12. The expression *vamos a ver*, with the meaning of *let us see*, is often rendered, elliptically, by *a ver*.

Examples:

A ver si vienes. Let us see if you come.

A ver si arreglas eso. Let us see if you arrange that.

13. When an infinitive follows or completes the meaning of an impersonal verb or expression, the connection is made without any preposition.

Examples:

Conviene hacerlo. *It is convenient to do it.*

Es necesario verla. *It is necessary to see her.*

Es fácil equivocarse. *It is easy to make a mistake (or to be mistaken).*

REMARKS ABOUT *haber* AND *deber*

1. When *haber* expresses the idea of a mild obligation, or futurity, and *deber* that of *doubt*, *presumption* or *supposition*, both verbs govern the infinitive with the preposition *de*.

Examples:

Hemos de comprar un paraguas antes de partir. We have to buy an umbrella before leaving (lit. departing).

Hoy hemos de comer con ellos. To-day we are going to eat with them.

Debe de estar loco. He must be crazy.

Deben de estar equivocados. They must be mistaken.

Ha debido de sufrir alguna contrariedad, porque está muy triste. He must have received some disappointment, because he is very sad.

2. When the verb *deber* is not used in a doubtful sense, but with the idea of obligation, it then governs the infinitive without any preposition.

Examples:

Debe llegar pronto a hacerse cargo de la administración del periódico. He must arrive soon to take charge of the management of the newspaper.

Debemos mostrar agradecimiento a los que bien nos hacen. We must show gratitude to those who do good to us.

REMARKS ABOUT *tener*

Although *tener*, in expressions which carry the idea of obligation or necessity, may take *de* before an infinitive, the use of *que* is preferable. Its English meaning is *to have to*.

Examples:

Tengo que (or de) hacer un escarmiento. I have to inflict an exemplary punishment.

Tengo que ir allí. I have to go there.

NOTE.—*Tener*, followed by *de*, is sometimes used with the meaning of *haber de*, as in *tengo de hacerlo*, which is equivalent to *he de hacerlo*, I am to do it.

REMARKS ABOUT *volver a*, AND *acabar de*

a. Volver a, followed by an infinitive, has the idiomatic meaning of *again*, i.e., it repeats the idea expressed by the infinitive.

Examples:

No *vuelvas a* hacer eso en tu vida. *Don't do that again while you live (lit. in your life).*

Ha *vuelto a* decir lo mismo. *He has said the same thing again.*

b. Acabar de, followed by an infinitive, has the idiomatic meaning of *have just*, with the infinitive which follows *acabar de* expressing the idea to be conveyed.

This idiomatic use of *acabar* is confined to the present indicative; otherwise, the meaning of *acabar* is *to finish*, as it can be seen in the third example.

Examples:

Acabo de verla. *I have just seen her.*

Acaban de llegar. *They have just arrived.*

Pronto *acabarán de* comer: *They will soon finish eating.*

INFINITIVES PRECEDED BY *por* OR *para*

Purpose may be denoted when either the preposition *por* or *para* precede an infinitive, but *para* implies certainty of the result, and *por* intention without certainty.

Examples:

Pagan *para* entrar. *They pay to enter.*

Luchan *por* entrar. *They struggle to enter (but they may not enter).*

PARTIAL LIST OF VERBS WHICH GOVERN AN INFINITIVE WITHOUT ANY PREPOSITION

anhelar, *to long*

ansiar, *to be anxious*

asegurar, *to assure, to claim*

creer, *to believe, to think*

decidir, *to decide*

declarar, *to declare*

desear, *to desire, to wish*

dudar, *to doubt, to hesitate*

esperar, *to hope*
 evitar, *to avoid*
 figurarse, *to imagine*
 gustar, *to like, to please*
 hacer, *to make, to do*
 imaginarse, *to imagine*
 impedir, *to prevent, to hinder*
 lograr, *to succeed in*
 necesitar, *to need, to want*
 oír, *to hear*
 ordenar, *to order*

osar, *to dare*
 parecer, *to seem*
 pensar, *to think*
 permitir, *to permit*
 poder, *to be able, can, may*
 preferir, *to prefer*
 prohibir, *to forbid*
 querer, *to want*
 recomendar, *to recommend*
 saber, *to know how, to be able*
 sentir, *to feel, to be sorry*
 ver, *to see*

Examples:

Deseo estudiar. *I wish to study.* Anhela verte. *He longs to see you.*
 Debo ver a quien tanto debo. *I must see to whom I owe so much.*
 He decidido comprar la casa. *I have decided to buy the house.*

PARTIAL LIST OF VERBS WHICH TAKE THE PREPOSITION *a* TO GOVERN A FOLLOWING INFINITIVE

acercarse, <i>to approach</i>	entrar, <i>to enter</i>
acostumbrar, <i>to accustom</i>	enviar, <i>to send</i>
acudir, <i>to hasten</i>	inducir, <i>to induce</i>
alcanzar, <i>to reach, to succeed</i>	invitar, <i>to invite</i>
aplicarse, <i>to apply oneself</i>	ir, <i>to go</i>
aprender, <i>to learn</i>	llegar, <i>to succeed</i>
apresurarse, <i>to hasten</i>	negarse, <i>to refuse</i>
aspirar, <i>to aspire</i>	obligar, <i>to oblige</i>
atreverse, <i>to dare</i>	oponerse, <i>to oppose</i>
ayudar, <i>to help</i>	pararse, <i>to stop</i>
bajar, <i>to descend, to come down</i>	pasar, <i>to pass</i>
comenzar, <i>to begin</i>	ponerse, <i>to put oneself to, to begin</i>
convidar, <i>to invite</i>	prepararse, <i>to prepare</i>
correr, <i>to run</i>	principiar, <i>to begin</i>
detenerse, <i>to stop</i>	salir, <i>to go out</i>
disponerse, <i>to prepare oneself</i>	sentarse, <i>to sit</i>
empezar, <i>to begin</i>	subir, <i>to ascend, to go up</i>
enseñar, <i>to teach</i>	venir, <i>to come</i>
	volver, <i>to return, to . . . again</i>

Examples:

Voy a entrar aquí. *I am going to enter here.*
 Vengo a verte. *I come to see you.*
 Principio a ver todo con claridad. *I begin to see everything clearly.*
 Le enseño a escribir. *I teach him to write.*
 Aprende a hablar. *He is learning to speak.*

IMPORTANT VERBS WHICH TAKE THE PREPOSITION *de* TO GOVERN A
FOLLOWING INFINITIVE

abstenerse, <i>to abstain</i>	guardarse, <i>to avoid</i>
acabar, <i>to finish</i>	hablar, <i>to speak</i>
arrepentirse, <i>to repent</i>	olvidarse, <i>to forget</i>
acordarse, <i>to remember</i>	pesar, (<i>used reflexively</i>), <i>to be sorry</i>
alegrarse, <i>to be glad</i>	reírse, <i>to laugh</i>
cesar, <i>to cease</i>	sentirse, <i>to feel</i>
dejar, <i>to cease, to fail</i>	ser, <i>to be</i>
descansar, <i>to rest</i>	temblar, <i>to tremble</i>
dispensar, <i>to excuse</i>	terminar, <i>to finish</i>
tratar, <i>to try, to attempt</i>	

Examples:

Me alegro *de* verte. *I am glad to see you.*

Me río *de* oírte hablar así. *I laugh on hearing you talk like that.*

Se ha olvidado *de* decírmelo. *He has forgotten to tell it to me.*

Trataré *de* hacerlo. *I shall try to do it (or to do so).*

¿Has terminado *de* escribir? *Have you finished writing?*

IMPORTANT VERBS WHICH TAKE THE PREPOSITION *en* TO GOVERN A
FOLLOWING INFINITIVE

complacer, <i>to take pleasure</i>	molestarse, <i>to take the trouble</i>
empeñarse, <i>to insist</i>	ocuparse, <i>to busy oneself</i>
equivocarse, <i>to be mistaken</i>	pensar, <i>to think (of)</i>
fijarse, <i>to pay attention</i>	tardar, <i>to delay</i>
insistir, <i>to insist</i>	vacilar, <i>to hesitate</i>

Examples:

Me complace *en* felicitarte. *I take pleasure in congratulating you.*

Se empeña *en* venir. *He insists on coming.*

Se han equivocado *en* tomar ese camino. *They have made a mistake in taking that road.*

Tarda *en* llegar. *He is late in arriving.*

No te molestes *en* convencerme. *Do not trouble yourself about convincing me.*

EXAMPLES OF VERBS WHICH TAKE THE PREPOSITION *por* TO GOVERN A
FOLLOWING INFINITIVE

Haré *por* estar aquí a las tres. *I will try to be here at three.*

Acabarán *por* hacerse amigos. *They will end by becoming friends.*

Se muere *por* verla. *He is dying to see her.*

Nos matamos *por* darle gusto. *We try hard to please him. (Lit. We kill ourselves, etc.)*

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND

1. The present participle or gerund, in Spanish *gerundio*, which is invariable, and which may express *time, cause, manner and means*, is

formed by adding the ending *ando* to the root of the infinitives of the verbs of the first conjugation, and *iendo* to the root of those of the second and third.

Consequently, the present participle of *hablar*, *to speak*, is *hablando*, *speaking*; that of *comer*, *to eat*, is *comiendo*, *eating*, and that of *vivir*, *to live*, is *viviendo*, *living*.

Examples:

Aprendí eso *siendo* niño. (Time.) *I learned that when (or while) I was a child.*

Estando *comiendo*, nos lo dijo. (Time.) *While eating, he told it to us.*
(Lit. *Being eating*, etc.)

No *yendo* yo, estoy seguro de que él no irá. (Cause.) *If I don't go, I am sure that he will not go.* (Lit. *Not going I*, etc.)

Estudiando se aprende. (Manner.) *One learns by studying.*

Se puede conseguir eso *pagando* cierta suma. (Means.) *That can be obtained by paying a certain sum.*

NOTE.—Spanish grammars call *participio activo*, literally *active participle*, those verbal forms which are obtained by adding *ante* to the root of the infinitives of the verbs of the first conjugation, and *ente*, to the root of those of the second and third, but as they are mainly used as adjectives, the *gerundio* is here considered the equivalent of the English present participle.

Examples:

La *amante* madre. *The loving mother.* (*Amante* is the *participio activo* of *amar*.)

Es muy *condescendiente*. *He is very condescending.* (*Condescendiente* is the *participio activo* of *condescender*.)

Aquí no hay alma *viviente*. *There is not a living soul here.* (*Viviente* is the *participio activo* of *vivir*.)

2. *En*, with the meaning of *after* or *as soon as*, is the only preposition which may precede the Spanish *gerundio*.

Examples:

En terminando mi tarea, iré a ver las nubes de polvo que el viento levanta. *After finishing my task, I will go to see the clouds of dust that the wind is raising.*

En muriendo la tía, el sobrino será rico. *After (or as soon as) the aunt dies, the nephew will be rich.*

3. The gerund is used to describe the action of the verb which it accompanies, or to complete its meaning.

Examples:

Llegó *corriendo*. *He arrived running.*

Se fué *llorando*. *He went away crying.*

El lunes a estas horas estaremos *viajando*. *This time Monday we shall be traveling.*

4. When the *gerundio* is alone and it is difficult to determine the word to which it refers, this determination is obtained by using a pronoun after it.

Examples:

Los vi *volviendo* yo del colegio. *I saw them as I was returning from college.*

Nos fuimos porque, *estando* nosotros presentes, no podían hablar con libertad. *We went away because, we being present, they could not speak with freedom.*

El cazador sorprendió al oso *saliendo éste* de su guarida. *The hunter surprised the bear as the latter was emerging from its den.*

SUBSTITUTION OF THE INFINITIVE FOR THE GERUND AFTER VERBS OF PERCEPTION

After verbs of perception, such as *seeing* or *hearing*, the infinitive usually replaces the *gerundio*.

Examples:

La veo *levantar* la cabeza. *I see her raising her head.*

La oigo *vocalizar*. *I hear her vocalizing.*

THE PERFECT OF THE *gerundio*

When a past participle is governed by a *gerundio*, a tense which may be called *perfect* is formed.

If an objective personal pronoun is required in this combination, the pronoun is appended to the *gerundio*, as illustrated in the second sentence.

Examples:

Habiendo sabido que estás sin dinero, te envío cincuenta dólares. *Having heard (lit. known) that you are without money, I am sending you fifty dollars.*

Habiéndote escrito tres veces sin obtener el placer de una respuesta, te escribo de nuevo. *Having written you three times without obtaining the pleasure of an answer, I am again writing to you.*

THE PROGRESSIVE OR PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. *Estar*, *to be*, is used with the present participle of verbs to form the progressive conjugation.

Examples:

Está nevando. *It is snowing.*

Está bailando. *She is dancing.*

Está comiendo. *He is eating.*

Está estornudando. *He is sneezing.*

Ayer estuvo helando todo el día. *Yesterday it was freezing the whole day.*

NOTE a. The gerundio of verbs like *ir*, *venir*, etc., is never used with *estar*. Consequently, one never says in Spanish, *I am coming*, *he is going*, etc., but *I come*, *he goes*, etc.

NOTE b.—For the full conjugation of a verb in the progressive form, see page 362.

2. The *gerundio* is also used after the verbs *ir*, *to go*, *venir*, *to come*, *andar*, with the meaning *to go about*, *quedar*, *to remain*, *seguir*, *to continue*, *hallarse*, *to find oneself*, *estar*, *to be*, and a few others which give a progressive or increasing meaning to the idea which the *gerundio* expresses.

Examples:

El ciego *va cantando* por las calles. *The blind man goes singing through the streets.*

Me *viene amenazando* con llevarme a los tribunales. *He is threatening to take me to court.*

Anda *diciendo* lo que no debiera decir. *He goes about saying what he should not say.*

Me *quedaré esperándote* hasta que vengas. *I shall be (or remain) waiting for you, until you come.*

El niño *sigue durmiendo*. *The child continues sleeping.*

La *hallé mesándose* los cabellos. *I found her tearing her hair.*

Esta situación se me *está haciendo* insoportable. *This situation is becoming unbearable to me.*

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

1. The past participle, in Spanish *participio pasivo*, is obtained by adding *ado* to the root of the infinitives of the verbs of the first conjugation, and *ido* to the root of those of the second and third.

Consequently, the past participle of *hablar*, *to speak*, is *hablado*, *spoken*; that of *comer*, *to eat*, is *comido*, *eaten*, and that of *vivir*, *to live*, is *vivido*, *lived*.

USES OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

1. The past participle is used with the auxiliary verb *haber* to form the compound tenses of the Spanish verbs. In this case it is invariable.

Examples:

He *comprado* el palacio. *I have bought the palace.*

He *vendido* las máquinas de coser. *I have sold the sewing machines.*

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the compound tenses see “Regular Verbs,” page 347.

2. The past participle is also used to form the passive voice with the auxiliary verb *ser*, in which case it agrees with the subject both in gender and number.

Examples:

He sido amado. *I have been loved.*

Ha sido amada. *She has been loved.*

Han sido amados. *They (masc.) have been loved.*

Han sido amadas. *They (fem.) have been loved.*

Note.—For the full conjugation of a verb in the passive voice, see page 359.

3. The auxiliary verb *estar*, *to be*, and other verbs with the force of auxiliaries, such as *quedar*, *to remain*, *dejar*, *to leave*, and *llevar*, *to carry*, are used with the past participle of other verbs, usually to express the condition of the subject after the action has taken place.

The past participle agrees with the subject, in every case, both in gender and number, except in the case of *decir*, which is invariable.

Examples:

Todo *está* hecho. } *Everything is done.*
 Todo *queda* hecho. }

Todos los trajes *están* hechos. *All the suits are made.*

Dejó dicho que volvería. *He left word that he would return.*

Ya lleva tomadas veinte lecciones. *He has already taken twenty lessons.*

4. *Tener*, *to have*, as an auxiliary, is used, with past participles that take a direct object, to indicate the possession or state of the object to which the action of the past participle is directed, the past participle agreeing with the direct object both in gender and number.

Examples:

Los enemigos *tenían* situadas en el cerro varias piezas de artillería.

The enemies had located several pieces of artillery on the hill.

Tiene aprendidas todas las reglas. *He has learned all the rules.*

Tengo aprendidos todos los verbos. *I have learned all the verbs.*

Tengo pensado algo importante. *I have thought of something important.*

Lo tengo concluído. *I have finished it.*

Tiene colocado todo en orden. *He has everything placed in order.*

Lo tengo entendido. *I have understood it.*

5. When the past participle is used absolutely, it usually begins the clause alone, or is followed by *que* and an auxiliary verb.

Examples:

Concluído el trabajo, descansaré. *After the work is finished, I shall rest.*

Muerta ella, nada me interesa. *Now that she is dead, nothing interests me.*

Leído que hube la esquila, la rompí. *Once the note was read, I tore it up.*

Terminados que fueron los fuegos artificiales, me retiré. *When the fire-works were ended, I withdrew.*

6. The past participles given in the examples below are used instead of the *gerundios* to express a condition.

Examples:

El cuadro está *colgado*. *The picture is hanging.*

Está *dormido* en el banco. *He is sleeping (or asleep) on the bench.*

Está *echada* en la cama. *She is lying in bed.*

Algunos están *parados* y otros *sentados*. *Some are standing and others sitting.*

NOTE.—There is a considerable number of verbs which have two participles: one regular, the other irregular; but as the irregular forms are only used as adjectives, and as the few which are used in the formation of the compound tenses are specified in the corresponding models given in the section “Irregularities of the Most Important Irregular Verbs,” pages 365, etc., it has not been considered necessary to give a list of them here.

AUXILIARY VERBS

Auxiliary verbs are those which serve to form the *compound tenses* of other verbs, the *passive voice* of the active or transitive verbs, and the so-called *tenses of obligation*.

haber AND *tener*

Haber and *tener* are equivalent to the English verb *to have*. Although this is the case, these two verbs can not be used interchangeably, because *haber* mainly represents *to have* when *to have* is used, as an auxiliary, to form the compound tenses; and *tener*, when *to have* is principally used as an active or transitive verb, with the meaning of *to hold* or *to possess*.

Examples:

Hoy he hablado español. *I have spoken Spanish to-day.*

Tengo fruta. *I have fruit.*

He tenido dinero. *I have had money.*

NOTE a.—As the different tenses of *haber* are given when the formation of the compound tenses are taken into consideration, it is not deemed necessary to conjugate them here.

NOTE b.—*Tener* is greatly used as an auxiliary verb in the cases given in rule 4, page 305. under the heading “Uses of the Past Participle.”

haber AS AN INDEPENDENT VERB

When *haber* is used independently, something which seldom occurs, it is conjugated, like any other verb, in all the tenses and persons. Its simple tenses are the same in form as when used as an auxiliary verb, and its compound tenses are formed with the past participle *habido* and the corresponding auxiliary tense. Its imperative, not given before, is: *he tú, haya usted, hayamos nosotros, habed vosotros, hayan ustedes*.

Examples:

Tendrán que *habérselas* conmigo. *They will have to have it out with me, i.e., they will have to face me.*

Más vale saber que *haber*. (Proverb.) *Knowledge is better than riches.*
(Lit. *To know is worth more than to have.*)

Hé aquí. *Behold or This is* (pointing to what follows).

Héme aquí. *Here I am.*

THE tenses of obligation WITH THE INDEPENDENT VERB *haber*

The so-called *tenses of obligation* are formed, when they are simple, by *haber*, in its different tenses, followed by the preposition *de* and the infinitive of the verb which is being conjugated; and the compound tenses are obtained with the different tenses of the auxiliary verb *haber*, followed by the preposition *de* plus the infinitive *haber*, plus the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

Examples:

¿Qué *había* yo *de* hacer? *What was I to do?*

Hoy *hemos de* probar eso. *To-day we are to try or taste that.*

No vino, aunque *hubiera de* haber venido. *He did not come although he should have come.*

IMPERSONAL USE OF *haber*

1. *Haber*, as an impersonal verb, is, like any other impersonal verb, used only in the *third person singular* of all the tenses, in the *infinitive*, *present participle* or *gerund*, and in the *past participle*.

The third persons singular of all the tenses of this verb, used impersonally, with the exception of the third person singular indicative present, which is *hay*, *there is*, *there are*, are the same whether the verb is used as an auxiliary, or as an independent verb.

Examples:

Hay una razón. *There is a reason.*

Aquí *hay* muchas personas dignas. *There are many worthy persons here.*

Ha habido una catástrofe. *There has been a catastrophe.*

Había motivo para ello. *There was a motive for it.*

Algunos *había* en el baile que no sabían bailar. *There were some at the ball who did not know how to dance.*

Habrá números interesantes en el programa. *There will be interesting numbers in the program.*

2. When *haber* is used impersonally and refers to visible or noticeable objects which are the result of weather conditions, or to denote distance, its equivalent is, as a rule, *it is*, *it was*, etc.

Examples:

Hay humedad. *It is damp.*

Hay lodo. *It is muddy.*

Hay tempestad en el mar. *It is stormy on the sea.*

Esta mañana *había* neblina (or niebla). *This morning it was foggy.*

Anteanoche *hubo* truenos y relámpagos. *The night before last there were crashes of thunder and flashes of lightning.*

Si mañana por la noche *hubiera* luna, iríamos allí. *If there were a moon, or if the moon were shining tomorrow evening, we would go there.*

¿Cuántas millas *hay* de aquí a Boston? *Hay* cerca de cuatro millas. *How many miles is it from here to Boston? It is about four miles.*

NOTE.—*Haber*, when applied to weather conditions may be used only when followed by a noun.

CASES WHERE *haber* IS USED IMPERSONALLY, FOLLOWED BY *que*, TO DENOTE OBLIGATION OR NECESSITY

Haber, followed by *que*, is used impersonally to denote obligation or necessity.

Examples:

Hay que ir allí. *It is necessary to go there.*

Hay que hablarle. *It is necessary to speak to him.*

Hay que mejorar nuestro modo de vivir. *It is necessary to improve our way of living.*

Habrà que encerrarlo. *It will be necessary to lock him up.*

¿Qué *hay que* hacer? *What is there to be done?*

Hay que hacer lo que te digo. *It is necessary to do what I am telling you.*

Hay que tener paciencia. *It is necessary to (or one must) have patience.*

No *hay que* pensar en eso. *That must not be thought of.*

Habrà que escribirle. *It will be necessary to write him.*

CASES WHEN NOUNS GOVERNED BY *haber* MAY BE REPRESENTED BY A PERSONAL OBJECT PRONOUN

1. The object pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los* and *las* may be used in connection with the verb *haber*, as can be seen in the examples which follow, where the personal pronoun takes the place of the noun used in the question.

¿Hay postre para mí? *Lo hay.* *Is there any dessert for me? There is.*

¿Hay aquí vergüenza? *La hay.* *Is there any shame here? There is.*

Habrà actores buenos? *Los habrà.* *Will there be good actors? There will be.*

¿*Habrà* carreras de caballos? *Las habrà.* *Will there be horse races? There will be.*

¿Hubo guerra entre los dos países? *La hubo.* *Was there a war between the two countries? There was.*

2. Likewise, to avoid repetition, an expressed noun governed by *haber* may also be represented by any of the object pronouns, *lo*, *la*, *los*, and *las* in affirmative sentences.

Examples:

Hay diferentes clases de amor; *lo* hay que mata, y *lo* hay que da vida.
There are different kinds of love; there is that which kills, and there is that which gives life.

Hay flores hermosas en los jardines, pero no *las* hay menos hermosas en los campos. *There are beautiful flowers in the gardens, but there are no less beautiful ones in the fields.*

NOTE.—According to some grammars, the object pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las* are used in the examples given to illustrate rules 1 and 2 as nominatives or subjects, but the Spanish Academy considers them objects.

CASES WHERE THE INFINITIVE FORMS *haber* AND *haber habido* ARE USED IMPERSONALLY

Haber and *haber habido*, if governed by another verb in one of the different tenses of the indicative or subjunctive, are used impersonally.

Examples:

Aquí *suele haber* tormentas formidables en esta época del año. *At this time of the year there are usually terrific storms here.*

En ese lugar *debe haber habido* una mina de oro. *In that place there must have been a gold mine.*

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN *ha habido* AND *ha estado*

Ha habido, which is used impersonally and which takes an object, is used to indicate the entire existence of that object; while *ha estado*, which is not used impersonally and which takes a subject, refers only to the time when the subject was in a certain place or condition.

Examples:

Ha habido un descarrilamiento. *There has been a derailment.*

Hoy *ha habido* dos naufragios en alta mar. *There have been two wreckages on the high seas to-day.*

Ha habido un cambio de actitud hacia mí. *There has been a change of attitude towards me.*

Al frente de la casa *ha estado* un hombre muy descuidado. *A very careless man has been at the head of the house.*

En los últimos cuatro meses *han estado* cuarenta millonarios en este hotel. *During the last four months, forty millionaires have been in this hotel.*

CASES WHERE *haber* IS USED TO EXPRESS MEASURES OF TIME

Measures of time may be represented by the third person singular indicative present of *haber*, i.e., by *ha*, *ha* always following the specified measure of time.

Examples:

Cinco años ha. *Five years ago.*

Quince días ha. *Fifteen days or a fortnight ago.*

NOTE.—Some grammarians consider *ha* a shortened form of *hace*, i.e., of the third person singular of *hacer*, but the Spanish Academy says that it is a form of *haber*.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

The passive voice is obtained in Spanish, as in English, by joining the verb *ser*, *to be*, to the participle of the verb which is being conjugated; the past participle agreeing with the subject of the sentence both in gender and number.

By, which is used in English to introduce the agent, is rendered in Spanish by *por* when the action represented by the verb is of a physical or material character, and by *de* or *por* when it is one of feeling or emotion.

Examples:

El es estimado. *He is esteemed.*

Ella es estimada. *She is esteemed.*

Ellos eran estimados, pero ahora son despreciados. *They were esteemed, but they are now despised.*

Ellas eran estimadas, pero ahora son despreciadas. *They were esteemed, but they are now despised.*

El árbol fué plantado por mí. *The tree was planted by me.*

La casa será construída por los mejores arquitectos de la ciudad. *The house will be built by the best architects in the city.*

Ese buen hombre es amado de (o por) todos. *That good man is loved by all.*

Ese chismoso es odiado de (o por) todos. *That gossip is hated by all.*

NOTE.—For the conjugation of a verb in the passive voice, see page 359.

FORMATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE WITH *estar* AND OTHER VERBS

1. *Estar* is used to form a kind of passive voice which is called *accidental* or *descriptive*, to express the existence of actions which have taken place. The past participle associated with *estar* is considered as having the value of an adjective only. It agrees with the subject of the sentence both in gender and number.

Examples:

El traje está hecho. *The suit is made.*

La casa está edificada. *The house is built.*

Los zapatos están remendados. *The shoes are mended.*

Las ventanas están abiertas. *The windows are open.*

El informe está bien redactado. *The report is well written or prepared.*

2. *Quedar*, to remain, *ir*, to go, *andar*, with the meaning of to go, *hallarse* or *encontrarse*, to find oneself, *verse*, to see oneself, etc., are also used to form the same kind of passive voice, in place of *estar*. The past participles associated with these verbs are also considered as adjectives, and they agree, as in the case of *estar*, with the subject of the sentence, both in gender and in number.

Examples:

Quedaron asombrados al verle allí. They were astonished to see him there.

Iba (or andaba) vestido muy bien. He was very well dressed.

Ese camino se halla obstruído en lo presente. That road is obstructed at present.

Se encuentran fatigados. They (masc.) are fatigued.

Se ve desprovisto de todo y abandonado de todo el mundo. He is destitute of everything and abandoned (or forsaken) by everybody.

NOTE.—Notice that, in the last three examples, the passive voice is formed with the particle *se*. See “Formation of the passive voice with the particle *se*,” below.

FORMATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE WITH THE PARTICLE *se*

The passive voice is also obtained and expressed, in Spanish, by the particle *se*, and the verb which is being conjugated in its active or transitive form.

Examples:

Aquí se habla español. Spanish is spoken here.

Se hacen trajes a medida. Suits are made to measure.

Se alquilan bicicletas. Bicycles for hire.

Se desea cocinera española. Wanted, Spanish cook (f.) or Spanish cook wanted.

Se dice que está en la miseria. It is said that he is poverty-stricken.

Se sabe que estuvo en el baile. It is known that he was at the dance.

Los sombreros de este establecimiento se hacen por sombrereras francesas. The hats of this establishment are made by French milliners (f.).

ser AND *estar*

The fundamental difference between *ser* and *estar*, i.e., between the two verbs which, although both are equivalent to the English verb *to be* cannot be used interchangeably, is this:

Ser is used to express characteristics which, as a rule, are inherent or permanent, but which may also be temporary or accidental, and to express existence, possession, the origin of persons, animals or things, and the material of which a thing is made. *Ser* never expresses action, passion nor purpose, and only serves to link the subject of a sentence with the word or words which are placed after the verb and which explain, modify or qualify the subject.

Estar is used to express action, passion, purpose, the physical state of persons, animals or things which, as a rule, is of a temporary nature, and the temporary or permanent position or location of animate or inanimate objects.

Examples:

Él es blanco. *He is white.* (White is his natural color. It is something inherent.)

El plato está en la mesa. *The plate is on the table.* (Position or location is one reason for using *estar* in this sentence. The other is that the plate is performing an action, because no solid body can be in a place without exerting pressure, which, of course, is an action.)

Usted está comiendo. *You are eating.* (An action is being performed.)

Estoy para partir. *I am about to leave.* (Purpose is expressed.)

El agua del manantial es fría. *The water of the spring is cold.* (This water is always cold. The coldness is an inherent characteristic of this water.)

El agua está fría. *The water is cold.* (Temporary condition of the water.)

La cereza está agria. *The cherry is sour.* (It is unripe. Temporary condition of the cherry.)

Las cerezas son agrias. *The cherries are sour.* (They are of the sour variety. It expresses their inherent quality.)

Soy feliz. *I am happy.* (A characteristic of the individual is revealed without the touch of passion.)

Estoy triste, alegre, satisfecho o desconsolado. *I am sad, glad, satisfied or disheartened.* (Passion is present in all these expressions.)

Él es loco. *He acts in a crazy way.* (i.e., He does queer things. A characteristic is expressed.)

Él está loco. *He is crazy.* (i.e., He is out of his mind. A physical state is expressed.)

Soy bueno. *I am good.* (A characteristic of the individual is revealed.)

Estoy bueno. *I am well.* (Temporary condition of a physical nature is expressed.)

La mesa es de madera. *The table is of wood.* (The material of which a thing is made is stated.)

El reloj de oro es mío. *The gold watch is mine.* (Possession is expressed.)

NOTE a.—*Ser* is sometimes used with the meaning of *to take place* and *to exist*, as can be seen in these examples: La boda será el once. *The wedding will take place (or will be) on the eleventh.* Yo soy. *I am.*

NOTE b.—Impersonal expressions require, as a rule, the verb *ser* when the English *to be* is the equivalent of the Spanish verb.

REFLEXIVE VERBS

A reflexive verb is one which must be conjugated with one of the reflexive pronouns *me, te, se, nos, os, se*, placed after the corresponding

subject pronoun of the three persons singular and the three persons plural, and before the corresponding person of the tense considered, to indicate that the action of the verb is directed to the person or thing which is the subject of the verb.

The English meanings of the reflexive pronouns are:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
me, <i>myself</i>	nos, <i>ourselves</i>
te, <i>yourself</i> (fam. form)	os, <i>yourselves</i> (fam. form)
se, <i>himself, herself, yourself</i> (pol. form masc. or fem.), <i>itself</i>	se, <i>themselves</i> (masc. or fem.); <i>yourselves</i> (pol. form masc. or fem.)

Examples

Yo me lavo. *I wash myself.* Él se viste. *He dresses himself.*

NOTE a.—For the conjugation of a reflexive verb see pages 356, etc.

NOTE b.—When the reflexive pronouns *nos* and *os*, are respectively added to the first and second persons plural of the imperative of any verb, the final *s* of the first person, and the final *d* of the second, are dropped. An exception to this rule is *idos* the second person plural imperative of *irse*, to go away.

NOTE c.—When either the first or second person plural of a tense of any given verb receives the addition of *se* and another object pronoun, the last *s* of these persons is dropped, as can be seen in these examples:

Preguntémoselo. *Let us ask it of him.*

Explicastéiselos bien. *You explained it to him well.*

APPARENT REFLEXIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

In Spanish there are clauses which are constructed like the real reflexive ones, with this difference: the object pronoun is in the dative instead of being in the accusative.

Examples:

Ellos se elogian sus talentos. *They (themselves) praise their talents.*

Él se apropió el único asiento vacante que quedaba. *He appropriated to himself the only vacant seat which was left.*

Tú te atribuyes el éxito. *You attribute the success to yourself.*

Yo me he comprado una lancha. *I have bought myself a launch.*

NOTE.—Notice that the object pronouns in the above sentences are of the same person as the subject pronouns.

PRONOMINAL VERBS

Pronominal verbs are those which are conjugated like the reflexive ones, and which, not having any meaning without the reflexive pronouns, refer to acts which nobody can perform upon another nor upon oneself, and which, however, may occur in or within any individual. These verbs do not admit the passive form.

Important pronominal verbs:

arrepentirse de, <i>to repent of</i>	dignarse, <i>to deign to</i>
ausentarse, <i>to absent oneself</i>	jactarse, <i>to boast, to vaunt</i>
atreverse a, <i>to dare to</i>	quedarse, <i>to remain</i>
condolerse de, <i>to condole, to pity</i>	resignarse, <i>to resign oneself</i>

Examples:

Me arrepiento de todo corazón. *I repent (myself) with all my heart.*

María se ha resignado a su suerte. *Mary has resigned herself to her fate.*

IMPORTANT VERBS WHICH CHANGE THEIR MEANING IN ACCORDANCE
WITH THEIR USE

acostar, <i>to put to bed</i>	acostarse, <i>to go to bed, to lie down</i>
andar, <i>to walk, to go</i>	andarse, <i>to go about</i>
desmayar, <i>to lose courage</i>	desmayarse, <i>to faint</i>
dormir, <i>to sleep</i>	dormirse, <i>to fall asleep</i>
hacer, <i>to make, to do</i>	hacerse <i>to become</i>
ir, <i>to go</i>	irse, <i>to go away</i>
levantar, <i>to lift</i>	levantarse, <i>to get up</i>
llevar, <i>to carry</i>	llevarse, <i>to take away</i>
morir, <i>to die</i>	morirse, <i>to be dying</i>
poner, <i>to place, to put</i>	{ ponerse, <i>to become</i>
	{ ponerse a, <i>to begin to</i>
reír, <i>to laugh</i>	reírse de, <i>to laugh at</i>
salir, <i>to go out</i>	salirse, <i>to go away, to leak</i>

Examples:

Ella acuesta a los niños antes de acostarse. *She puts the children to bed before going to bed.*

“No desmayes” me dijo, al mismo tiempo que se desmayaba. *“Don’t lose your courage” he said to me, at the same time that he was fainting.*

Salió de aquí a las seis con el cubo que se salía. *He left here at six o’clock with the pail which was leaking.*

RECIPROCAL VERBS

Reflexive verbs which, in all the persons plural of every tense and in the present participle, express a mutual action between two or more persons, are called reciprocal; ambiguity being prevented by using the appropriate forms of *el uno . . . el otro*, or *uno . . . otro* after the verb.

Examples:

Nos alabamos. *We praise each other (or one another).*

Se alaban. *They praise each other (or one another).*

Se alaban el uno al otro. *They praise each other.*

Se alaban los unos a los otros. *They praise one another.*

Los dependientes, ayudándose unos a otros, concluyeron la tarea a media noche. *The clerks, helping one another, finished the task at midnight.*

IMPERSONAL USE OF *hacer*

1. *Hacer* is used, impersonally, to state climatic or weather conditions. It is used only in the third person singular, in the infinitive, in the present participle or gerund, and in the past participle, like any other impersonal verb.

Examples:

Hace frío. *It is cold.*

Hace fresco. *It is cool.*

Hace calor. *It is warm.*

Ayer hizo viento. *It was windy yesterday.*

Mañana hará sol. *It will be sunny to-morrow.*

2. *Hacer* is also used, impersonally, to express those measures of time which in English are followed by the word *ago*, or preceded by the particle *for*.

Examples:

Hace una semana. *A week ago.*

Hace mucho tiempo. *A long time ago.*

La vi hace cinco minutos or cinco minutos ha. *I saw her five minutes ago.*

Yo no he comido desde hace cuatro horas. *I have not eaten for four hours or since four hours ago.*

3. *Hacer* is also used, impersonally, to express the measure of time which is usually rendered in English by the progressive form of the verb taken into consideration, plus *for* or any other word.

Examples:

Hace dos años que vivimos en este palacio. *We have been living in this palace for two years.*

El lunes *hará* dos años que compramos todo lo que necesitamos en ese mercado. *Next Monday it will be two years that we have been buying everything that we need in that market.*

Hacía tres años que vivían en aquella casa, cuando ocurrió la explosión. *They had been living in that house for three years when the explosion occurred.*

De hoy en un mes *hará* seis años que vivimos en esta casa. *A month from to-day we shall have been living six years in this house.*

NOTE.—Notice that the tenses used in Spanish to render the idea properly, do not correspond to those used in English.

IDIOMATIC USES OF *llevar*

Llevar, to carry, is used, idiomatically, with these different meanings:

1. Instead of *hacer* to express those measures of time which are usually rendered in English by the verb *to be*.

Examples:

¿Cuánto tiempo lleva él aquí? *How long has he been here?*

Lleva tres años aquí. *He has been here three years.*

NOTE.—The *present* is used in Spanish and the *present perfect* in English in the above examples.

2. To express with a given tense, plus a noun, ideas which in English are rendered by the passive voice of the verb taken into consideration.

Examples:

Me he llevado un susto. *I have been frightened.*

Se llevará una sorpresa al verme aquí. *He will be surprised to see me here.*

NOTE.—The pronouns *me* and *se* are not used in above sentences reflexively, but as datives of interest. See “Dative of Interest,” page 269.

3. To express the different ideas illustrated in the examples which follow:

Te llevaré al teatro mañana. *I will take you to the theatre to-morrow.*

Lleva bastón, pero no lleva corbata. *He carries a cane, but he does not wear a necktie.*

Lleva en el coche los libros que mi primo el tenedor de libros lleva tan bien. *He carries in the carriage the books that my cousin the book-keeper keeps so well.*

MOODS AND TENSES

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

The indicative mood is used, in both languages, in essentially the same manner.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE—ITS USES

1. The *presente de indicativo* is used, as in English, to denote that which exists, is being done, or is actually taking place.

Examples:

Yo hablo. *I speak, I do speak, I am speaking.*

Yo como. *I eat, I do eat, I am eating.*

NOTE.—Notice that the Spanish present indicative may be rendered into English in any one of the three ways above given.

2. The *presente de indicativo* is also used in Spanish in certain idiomatic expressions involving time, to represent actions which began in the past and which still continue. These expressions are as a rule rendered in English by the *present perfect* although the *past* may sometimes be used as can be seen in the fifth example.

Examples:

¿Desde cuándo *están* los muchachos aquí? *Since when have the boys been here?*

Están aquí desde las siete. *They have been here since seven o'clock.*

¿Cuánto tiempo *lleva* él de alcalde? *How long has he been a mayor?*

Lleva dos años. *He has been mayor two years.*

Hace un siglo que no le veo. *It has been a long time (lit. a century) since I saw him.*

Hace seis años que vivimos en esta casa. *We have been living in this house two years.*

3. The *presente de indicativo* is frequently used, instead of the imperfect or past, to give more vividness to a narrative, as it is sometimes done in English; also in the place of the future to emphasize the certainty of an event or offers of a commercial nature; also after *por poco*, *a poco más*, in certain idiomatic expressions.

Examples:

Los niños estaban solos en la lancha que la corriente llevaba. Me quito en un santiamén chaqueta y zapatos, me echo al agua, nado hasta la isla, pido auxilio, lo recibo, y así los salvé. *The children were alone in the launch that the current was carrying away. I took off my coat and shoes in the twinkling of an eye, threw myself into the water, swam as far as the island, asked for help, received it, and so saved them.*

La función empieza a las ocho en punto. *The performance will begin at eight o'clock sharp.*

Se lo doy a usted por cinco pesos oro. *I will give it to you for five dollars.*

Por poco nos caemos. *We came near falling (or we almost fell).*

Por poco me mata. *He almost killed me.*

A poco más se muere. *He almost died.*

4. The *presente de indicativo* of *acabar*, to finish, when followed by the preposition *de*, is the equivalent of the English *present perfect*.

Examples:

Acaba de felicitarme por mi triunfo. *He has just congratulated me on my success.*

Acaban de publicar mi artículo. *They have just published my article.*

5. The *presente de indicativo* is used to express the result of a condition, when one wishes to give to the idea an emphasis which the future does not give.

Examples:

Si lo encuentro, lo mato. *If I find him, I will kill him.*

Si vas a la plaza, allí lo encuentras jugando con otros niños. *If you go to the square, you will find him there playing with other children.*

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

In order to avoid the learning of the conjugation of the verbs in a parrot-like fashion, take the following steps:

(1) Take the infinitive of any verb of the first conjugation, of *hablar*, for instance. Drop its last letter, i.e., the *r*, and the third person singular is thus obtained.

(2) Add an *s* to *habla*, and the second person singular is obtained.

(3) Change the last *a* of *habla* into *o*, and the first person singular is obtained.

(4) Add to *habla*, the syllable *mos* to obtain the first person plural.

(5) Add to *habla*, the syllable *is*, to obtain the second person plural.

(6) Add to *habla* the letter *n*, to obtain the third person plural.

All the persons of the present indicative of the verbs of the second conjugation, of *comer* for instance, are obtained by taking the same previous steps, to wit:

(1) Drop the *r* of *comer*, to obtain the third person singular.

(2) Add an *s* to *come*, to obtain the second person singular.

(3) Change the *e* of *come* into *o*, to obtain the first person singular.

(4) Add to *come* the syllable *mos*, to obtain the first person plural.

(5) Add to *come* the syllable *is*, to obtain the second person plural.

(6) Add to *come* the letter *n*, to obtain the third person plural.

To obtain all the persons of the verbs of the third conjugation in the present indicative, take the root of any verb, of *vivir*, for instance, and take these steps:

(1) Add to the root *viv*, the vowel *o*, to obtain the first person singular.

(2) Add to the root *viv*, the syllable *es*, to obtain the second person singular.

(3) Add to the root *viv*, the vowel *e* to obtain the third person singular.

(4) Add to the root *viv*, the ending *imos*, to obtain the first person plural.

(5) Add to the root *viv*, the syllable *is*, to obtain the second person plural.

(6) Add to the root *viv*, the syllable *en* to obtain the third person plural.

NOTE *a*.—Notice that the verbs of the third conjugation have the same endings as the verbs of the second conjugation in the present indicative, with only two exceptions: the endings of the first and second persons plural.

NOTE *b*.—For the conjugation of the present indicative of *hablar*, see page 347; of *comer*, page 350, and of *vivir*, page 353.

THE IMPERFECT—ITS USES

1. The *imperfecto* is used to indicate that an action was taking place when another action occurred.

Examples:

Usted les *hablaba* sobre el imperfecto cuando yo *entré* a la sala de clase.
You were talking to them about the imperfect, when I entered the classroom.

Cuando *miraba* al firmamento, *vi* cruzar una estrella fugaz. *When I was looking at the sky, I saw a shooting star crossing it.*

NOTE.—Notice that the action which was taking place is rendered into English by the *progressive past*, while the other action, which took place when the first was going on, is represented in English, just as in Spanish, by the *past* or *preterite*.

2. The *imperfecto* is also used to represent habitual or customary actions, i.e., the actions which we used to do or were in the habit of doing.

Examples:

Allí me *lavaba* en el arroyo y *hacía* ejercicio al aire libre. *There I used to wash myself in the brook and to take exercise in the open air.*

Ellos *andaban* a caballo todas las mañanas y *jugaban* al golfo todas las tardes. *They used to ride on horseback every morning, and to play golf every afternoon.*

Los *veía* todos los días. *I used to see them every day.*

3. It is also used to indicate the idea of the duration of an action, or a state of mind, in a past period of time, without relation to any other action, or with relation to an action which was occurring at the same time.

Examples:

En aquella época *era* yo feliz. *At that time (lit. epoch) I was happy.*

La casa *tenía* veinte habitaciones. *The house had twenty rooms.*

Nos *quería* ver, pero como no *sabía* donde *estábamos*, no pudo satisfacer su deseo. *He wanted to see us, but as he did not know where we were, he could not satisfy his wish.*

Cuando tú *hablabas*, yo te *escuchaba* con la boca abierta. *When you were talking I was listening to you with my mouth wide open.*

NOTE.—Notice that the imperfect is used in the last example to express the simultaneous occurrence of two or more actions in a past period of time.

CASES WHERE THE IMPERFECT IS THE EQUIVALENT OF THE PAST PERFECT

The *imperfecto* is the equivalent of the English *past perfect*, when the verb *hacer* is used in expressions of time having continuity of action.

Examples:

Hacía dos meses que estaba allí, cuando ocurrió lo que te digo a causa de ese lavacaras. *I had been there for three months, when that which I am telling you happened because of that bootlicker.*

Hacía tres años que estaba paralítico, cuando de repente empezó a andar y a decir: Mi parálisis ha desaparecido. ¡Bendito sea el Señor! *He had been a paralytic for three years, when he suddenly began to walk and to say: "My paralysis has disappeared. Blessed be the Lord!"*

USE OF THE IMPERFECT INSTEAD OF THE CONDITIONAL

The *imperfecto* is used instead of the *condicional* when wishing to make very emphatic that which would happen as the result of a given condition.

Examples:

Si no hiciese tanto sol, me iba a dar un paseo. *If it were not so sunny, I would go to take a walk.*

Si no fuese mi amigo no le aguantaba eso. *If he were not my friend I would not stand for that.*

Si tuviera dinero, la compraba. *If I had money, I would buy it.*

FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT

Necessary steps for obtaining the different persons of the verbs of the first conjugation.

1. Add the ending *aba* to the root of any verb of the first conjugation. Let us take *habl*, i.e., the root of *hablar*, for instance, and after adding *aba* to it, *hablaba*, which may be either the first or the third person singular of this tense, because both persons are the same in form, is obtained.

2. Repeat the same steps which were taken to obtain the different persons of the present indicative, with the exception of the first, i.e.: add, to the third person singular, which is *hablaba*, the following: (1) the letter *s* to obtain the second person singular, i.e., *hablabas*; (2) the syllable *mos* to obtain the first person plural, i.e., *hablábamos*; (3) the ending *is* to obtain the second person plural, i.e., *hablabais*; and (4) the letter *n* to obtain the third person plural, i.e., *hablaban*.

Necessary steps for obtaining the different persons of verbs of the second and third conjugations.

1. Do what is suggested above, in step number one, but instead of *aba*, add the ending *ía* to the root of the verbs *comer* and *vivir*, to obtain respectively *comía* and *vivía*, which may be either first or third person singular.

To obtain the different persons of the verbs of the second and third conjugations, do what is suggested in paragraph number two, above.

NOTE.—The grammar of the Spanish Academy calls this tense *Preterito Imperfecto*. Other grammars call it Past Descriptive, Coexisting Past, Co-preterite, etc.

THE PRESENT PERFECT—ITS USES

The *perfecto*, equivalent to the English present perfect, is used to represent actions which have taken place within a period of time not wholly elapsed or ended.

Examples:

Hoy he hablado mucho. *I have spoken much to-day.*

Hoy he comido poco. *I have eaten little to-day.*

NOTE.—To-day, the period of time taken into consideration in the above examples, is not completely ended, and consequently the actions which have taken place, within this period of time, must be represented by the equivalent of the English present perfect.

2. This tense is also used to represent actions or states which began in the past and which still continue in the present time.

Examples:

Poco a poco se *ha hecho* famoso. *Little by little he has become famous.*
(The fame began in the past and still continues.)

He vivido muchos años en Nueva York. *I have lived* (or *I have been living*)
many years in New York. (And I am still living here.)

Los precios de los artículos de primera necesidad *han encarecido* muchísimo. *The prices of the necessities* (lit. *articles of first necessity*)
of life have increased very much. (And they are still high.)

Se *han puesto* insoportables. *They have become unbearable.* (And they are still so at this instant.)

3. This tense is also used to represent actions begun and finished in the past, the effects of which are being felt in the present.

Examples:

Ha muerto. *He has died.* (The effects of his death are still being felt.)

Ha ganado la presidencia. *He has won the presidency.* (The effects of the success obtained are still being felt.)

4. This tense is also used to merely represent facts without making reference to a definite period of time, which nevertheless is implied as still going on, or not completed.

Examples:

Se lo *he dicho* muchas veces y se lo *he repetido* otras tantas. *I have often said it to him and I have repeated it to him just as often.*

¿*Ha leído* usted esa joya literaria? *Have you read that literary gem?*

España *ha producido* grandes hombres. *Spain has produced great men.*

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PERFECT

1. The *perfecto* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *present indicative* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the past participles.

The present indicative of the auxiliary verb *haber*, is:

yo he, <i>I have</i>	nosotros, —as hemos, <i>we have</i>
tú has, <i>you have</i> (fam. form)	vosotros, —as habéis, <i>you have</i> (fam. form)
él ha, <i>he has</i>	
ella ha, <i>she has</i>	ellos han, <i>they have</i>
usted ha, <i>you have</i>	ellas han, <i>they have</i>
	ustedes han, <i>you have</i>

2. Join the two elements and the equivalent of the English present perfect is thus obtained.

NOTE *a*.—For the conjugation of the present perfect of *hablar* see page 347; of *comer* see page 351, and of *vivir* see page 354.

NOTE *b*.—The grammar of the Spanish Academy calls this tense *pretérito perfecto*.

THE PAST OR PRETERITE—ITS USES

1. The tense named in this method *pretérito absoluto*, equivalent to the English *past* or *preterite*, is used to represent actions which took place within a period of time wholly elapsed or ended.

Examples:

Ayer *tomé* una taza de café con leche. *Yesterday I took a cup of coffee with milk.*

El mes pasado *estudié* muy poco. *Last month I studied very little.*

NOTE.—*Yesterday* and *last month* are periods of time wholly completed or elapsed, and consequently the equivalent of the *past* or *preterite* must be used to represent the actions which took place within those periods of time.

2. This tense is also used to represent actions which occurred and were completed at any time previous to the moment of speaking, without reference to a definite period of time, which is nevertheless implied.

Examples:

Lo *vi* y le *hablé*. *I saw him and spoke to him.*

Le *dije* lo que me *vinó* a la boca. *I told him what came to my mind.* (Lit. *mouth*.)

Escribí. *I wrote.*

Grecia *produjo* grandes filósofos. *Greece produced great philosophers.*
(It refers to ancient Greece whose existence lasted a definite period of time.)

FORMATION OF THE PAST OR PRETERITE

1. To obtain the *pretérito absoluto* of the verbs of the first conjugation, learn the endings *é, aste, ó, amos, asteis, aron*, and add them to the

root of the infinitive, to obtain respectively the three persons singular and the three persons plural.

2. To obtain the *past* or *preterite* of the verbs of the second and third conjugations learn the endings *í, iste, ío, imos, isteis, ieron*, and add them to the root of the infinitive of the verb of each conjugation, to obtain respectively the three persons singular and plural.

NOTE a.—Note that the first person plural of the verbs of the first conjugation, as well as the same person of the verbs of the third conjugation, are the same in form as the first person plural of the present indicative.

NOTE b.—For the conjugation of the *pretérito absoluto* of *hablar* see page 348; for *comer*, page 351, and for *vivir*, page 354.

NOTE c.—The grammar of the Spanish Academy calls this tense *pretérito indefinido*.

THE PAST ANTERIOR—ITS USES

The past anterior, *pretérito anterior* in Spanish, is used to indicate that an action took or had taken place immediately before another action took place.

This tense is very rarely used, unless it is preceded by expressions such as:

apenas, <i>scarcely, hardly</i>	en seguida que, <i>immediately after</i>
cuando, <i>when</i>	luego que, <i>as soon as</i>
después que, <i>after</i>	no bien, <i>no sooner</i>

Examples:

Apenas hubo pronunciado esas palabras, recibió el telegrama. *Scarcely had he pronounced those words, when he received the telegram.*

Cuando el anciano hubo terminado su relación, empecé yo a hablar. *When the old gentleman had finished his narrative, I began to speak.*

Después que hubieron discutido el asunto, se fué cada uno a su casa. *After they had discussed the affair, each one went to his home.*

En seguida que hubo recibido la cuenta, la pagó. *Immediately after receiving the bill, he paid it.*

Luego que los convidados hubieron llegado, empezó el banquete. *Soon after the guests had arrived, the banquet began.*

No bien hubo salido el vapor, volvimos al hotel. *No sooner had the steamer left, than we returned to the hotel.*

FORMATION OF THE PAST ANTERIOR

1. The *pretérito anterior* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *pretérito absoluto* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the *past participle* of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The *pretérito absoluto* of the auxiliary verb *haber* is:

yo hube, <i>I had</i>	nosotros, -as hubimos, <i>we had</i>
tú hubiste, <i>you had</i>	vosotros, -as hubisteis, <i>you had</i>
él hubo, <i>he had</i>	ellos hubieron, <i>they had</i>
ella hubo, <i>she had</i>	ellas hubieron, <i>they had</i>
usted hubo, <i>you had</i>	ustedes hubieron, <i>you had</i>

2. Join the two elements and the *pretérito anterior* is thus obtained.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the past anterior of *hablar* see page 348; of *comer* see page 351, and of *vivir* see page 354.

THE PAST PERFECT—ITS USES

The *pretérito pluscuamperfecto* is used to indicate that an action had taken place either before another action took place, or before or during some expressed or implied past period of time.

Examples:

Ya *habíamos regresado* al hotel, cuando llegasteis a la esquina donde está la casa de baños. *We had already returned to the hotel, when you arrived at the corner where the bath house is.*

Entonces ya *había yo acabado* mis estudios musicales. *Then I had already finished my musical studies.*

No tuvimos necesidad de llamarlos, porque ya se *habían levantado*. *We did not need to call them, because they had already risen.*

Ya le *había hablado* cuando me viste. *I had already spoken to him when you saw me.*

En esa remota época ya *habían descubierto* varias leyes científicas. *In that remote epoch they had already discovered several scientific laws.*

NOTE a.—Notice that the pronoun *yo* is between the auxiliary verb and the past participle in the second example. This is frequently done when this tense is used in examples like the one referred to.

NOTE b.—Many authors sometimes substitute the *imperfect subjunctive* for the *past perfect indicative*, but this substitution is not very general.

FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT

1. The *pretérito pluscuamperfecto*, i.e., the tense which is equivalent to the English *past perfect* or *pluperfect* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *imperfecto* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*; the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The *imperfecto* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, is:

yo había, <i>I had</i>	nosotros, -as habíamos, <i>we had</i>
tú habías, <i>you had</i>	vosotros, -as habíais, <i>you had</i>
él había, <i>he had</i>	ellos habían, <i>they had</i>
ella había, <i>she had</i>	ellas habían, <i>they had</i>
usted había, <i>you had</i>	ustedes habían, <i>you had</i>

2. Join the two elements, and the *past perfect* is thus obtained.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the past perfect of *hablar* see page 348; of *comer* see page 351, and of *vivir* see page 354.

THE FUTURE—ITS USES

1. The use of the *futuro* is fundamentally the same in both languages, because it principally serves to indicate actions which happen at any time after the moment of speaking.

Examples:

Hablaré, *I shall speak.*

Comeremos, *We shall eat.*

2. This tense is sometimes used, instead of the present, to indicate approximation and conjecture or probability.

Examples:

¿Qué hora es? *Serán* las once. *What time is it? It is about eleven.*

Hoy no ha venido a la oficina. *Estará* enfermo. *He has not come to the office to-day. Probably he is (or he must be) ill.*

HOW TO OBTAIN THE FUTURE

The *futuro* is obtained by adding to the infinitive of any verb of the three conjugations, the endings *é, ás, á, emos, éis, án*. The first four of these endings, as well as the sixth, respectively correspond to the three persons singular and to the first and third persons plural of the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, after the initial *h* is dropped. The fifth is the same as the ending of the second person plural of this same tense of *haber*, i.e., *éis*.

NOTE *a*.—For the conjugation of the future of *hablar* see page 348; of *comer* see page 351, and of *vivir* see page 354.

NOTE *b*.—The grammar of the Spanish Academy calls this tense *futuro imperfecto*.

THE FUTURE PERFECT—ITS USES

The *futuro perfecto* is used, as in English, to express that an action will have taken place, either before another action takes place, or before or during some expressed or implied future period of time.

Examples:

Lo *habré acabado* antes de ir a tu casa. *I shall have finished it before going to your home.*

Habré vuelto antes del martes. *I shall have returned before next Tuesday.*

Compra eso ahora, pues ya mañana lo *habrán vendido*. *Buy that now, because to-morrow they will have sold it.*

Entonces ya *habré recibido* mi diploma. *Then I shall have received my diploma.*

CASES WHERE THE FUTURE PERFECT IN SPANISH DOES NOT CORRESPOND TO THIS TENSE IN ENGLISH

When the *futuro perfecto* is used, idiomatically, to express the idea of approximation and conjecture or probability, it is rendered in English by the present perfect, or in some other way.

Examples:

Este año *habremos ganado* unos cincuenta mil dólares. *This year we have gained about fifty thousand dollars.*

Supongo que ya *habrán comido*. *I suppose that they have already eaten.*

¿Quién *habrá inventado* semejante calumnia? *Who could have invented such slander?*

NOTE.—This tense is called in some grammars *future anterior*.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

1. The *futuro perfecto* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *futuro* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*; the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The *futuro* of the auxiliary verb *haber* is:

yo <i>habré</i> , <i>I shall have</i>	nosotros, -as <i>habremos</i> , <i>we shall have</i>
tú <i>habrás</i> , <i>you will have</i>	vosotros, -as <i>habréis</i> , <i>you will have</i>
él <i>habrá</i> , <i>he will have</i>	ellos <i>habrán</i> , <i>they will have</i>
ella <i>habrá</i> , <i>she will have</i>	ellas <i>habrán</i> , <i>they will have</i>
usted <i>habrá</i> , <i>you will have</i>	ustedes <i>habrán</i> , <i>you will have</i>

2. Join the two elements and the *futuro perfecto* is thus obtained.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the future perfect of *hablar* see page 348; of *comer* see page 351, and of *vivir* see page 354.

THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

The *Modo Condicional* is equivalent to what the Spanish Academy of the Language calls *Modo Potencial*, Potential Mode. It consists of two

tenses, the simple one which is named *condicional*, *conditional*, and the compound which is called *pluscuamperfecto condicional*, equivalent to the English *past conditional*.

USES OF THE CONDITIONAL

1. The main use of the *condicional* is to represent the action which would take place, if a certain condition, which may be either expressed or implied, was fulfilled.

Examples:

Si usted hablara (or hablase) conmigo, yo *hablaría* con usted. *If you spoke with me, I would speak with you.*

Si él tuviera (or tuviese) tiempo, le *escribiría*. *If he had the time, he would write to you.*

Sería para mí un gran placer el acompañaros (i.e., si pudiera o pudiese). *It would be a great pleasure for me to accompany you (i.e., if I could).*

Estoy seguro de que no *hablaría* tanto delante de su padre (i.e., si su padre estuviese delante). *I am sure that he would not speak so much before his father (i.e., if his father were present).*

A no estar ese castillo tan lejos de aquí, lo compraría. *If that castle were not so far from here, I should (or would) buy it.*

NOTE a.—This tense is never used in the conditioning clause which is usually introduced by *si*, *if*, followed by the imperfect subjunctive, but in the conditioned clause, i.e., in the clause which expresses the result of the condition.

NOTE b.—The *condicional* may be replaced, in the clauses which express the result of the condition, by the first form of the *imperfect subjunctive*, i.e., by the form which ends in *ara*, etc., but it is advisable for the student to use always the so-called *conditional tense*, in the conditioned clause.

NOTE c.—Notice in the last example that a verb in the infinitive preceded by the preposition *a* may take the place of the conditioning clause.

2. The *condicional* is also used to express a future action which is dependent upon a past action, usually represented by a verb of understanding. In other words, this tense is used to represent the tense which would be *future*, if the verb in the principal clause were in the present indicative.

Examples:

Me dijo que *vendría* a vernos pronto. *He told me that he would come to see us soon.*

Nos aseguró que *volvería*. *He assured us that he would return.*

Él no sabía esta mañana si *podría* ir al teatro esta noche. *He did not know this morning if he could go to the theatre this evening.*

Le pregunté si *asistiría* a la función. *I asked him if he would attend the performance.*

3. The *condicional* is also used to indicate approximation and conjecture or probability, when referring to a past action.

Examples:

¿Qué hora era anoche cuando llegaste a casa? *Serían* las tres. *What time was it when you arrived home last night? It was about three o'clock.*

En aquel entonces *tendría* ella unos veinte años. *At that time, she was about (or might have been) twenty years old.*

Ayer no acudió a la cita. Supongo *estaría* enfermo. *Yesterday he did not keep his engagement. I suppose he was ill.*

NOTE *a.*—The first form of the imperfect subjunctive of *querer*, i.e., the form which ends in *ara*, etc., is generally used, instead of the *condicional* of this verb, to express a request politely. Example: Quisiera hablarle a él. *I would like to speak to him.*

NOTE *b.*—This tense is called, in some grammars, *future conditional*, and by the Spanish Academy *potencial simple* or *imperfecto*.

4. The *condicional* is also used in the main clauses to modestly express an idea in the future, usually a wish, when a relative pronoun introduces, in the subordinate clause, a verb in the present, present perfect, preterite, imperfect or past perfect indicative, or in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive. If the verb introduced by the relative pronoun refers to an action which carries the idea of certainty, one of the above named tenses of the indicative is used, but if it carries the idea of uncertainty, the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is then the tense to be used.

Examples:

Yo *desearía* leer la carta *que* tienes en la mano derecha. *I should (or would) like to read the letter that you have in your right hand.*

Yo *desearía* leer la carta *que* has recibido hoy *or* *que* recibiste ayer. *I should (or would) like to read the letter that you have received to-day or that you received yesterday.*

Yo *desearía* leer la carta *que* llevabas ayer en el bolsillo. *I should (or would) like to read the letter that you were carrying in your pocket yesterday.*

Desearía añadir *que* antes de saber eso, ya le había dado ella calabazas. *I should (or would) like to add that before knowing that, she had already given him the mitten. (Lit. pumpkins.)*

Corregiría con gusto los errores *que* hicieras (*o* *hicieses*) en la traducción. *I should (or would) correct, with pleasure, the errors that you might make in the translation.*

Yo *corregiría* con gusto los errores *que* hubieras (*o* *hubieses*) hecho. *I should (or would) gladly correct the errors that you might have made.*

5. The *condicional* is also used to modestly express an idea in the future, usually a wish, when the leading verb is in the present, present perfect or future indicative, or in the imperative.

Examples:

Dice que le *gustaría* ir allí contigo. *He says that he would like to go there with you.*

Esto es lo que *desearían* proponerte. *This is what they would like to propose to you.*

Ha escrito diciendo que *tendría* un verdadero placer en conocerte. *He has written saying that he would have a real pleasure in making your acquaintance or in meeting you.*

Le dirá que le *gustaría* estudiar arquitectura. *He will tell him that he would like to study architecture.*

Dile que *desearíamos* verla. *Tell her that we would like to see her.*

HOW TO OBTAIN THE CONDITIONAL

The *condicional* is obtained by adding to the infinitive of any verb of the three conjugations, the endings *ía, ías, ía, íamos, íais, ían*, to obtain respectively the three persons singular and the three persons plural. These endings are the same as the endings of the imperfect indicative of the second and third conjugations, or like those of the imperfect indicative of the auxiliary verb *haber, to have*.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the conditional of *hablar* see page 348; of *comer* see page 352, and of *vivir* see page 355.

THE PAST CONDITIONAL

1. The *pluscuamperfecto condicional* is used to represent the action which would have taken place, if a certain condition, which may be either expressed or implied, had been fulfilled.

Examples:

Si usted me *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) *hablado*, yo le *habría hablado* a usted. *If you had spoken to me, I would have spoken to you.*

Si él *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) *tenido* tiempo, le *habría escrito*. *If he had had the time, he would have written to you.*

NOTE.—What is said in note *a* of the conditional, page 327, also applies to this tense.

2. The *pluscuamperfecto condicional* is also used in the main clauses to modestly express an idea in the past, usually a wish, when a relative pronoun introduces in the subordinate clause a verb in the present, present perfect, imperfect preterite or past perfect indicative, or in the past perfect subjunctive. If the verb introduced by the relative pronoun refers to an action which carries the idea of certainty, one of the above named tenses of the indicative is used, but if it carries the idea of uncertainty, the past perfect subjunctive is then the tense used.

Examples:

Yo *habría deseado* leer la carta que tienes en la mano derecha. *I should (or would) have liked to read the letter that you have in your right hand.*

Yo *habría deseado* leer la carta que te ha escrito esta semana. *I should (or would) have liked to read the letter that he has written you this week.*

Yo *habría deseado* leer la carta que tenías ayer en el bolsillo. *I should (or would) have liked to read the letter that you had in your pocket yesterday.*

Yo *habría deseado* leer la carta que recibiste ayer. *I should (or would) have liked to read the letter that you received yesterday.*

Yo *habría deseado* añadir que, antes de saber eso, ya le había dado ella calabazas. *I should (or would) have liked to add that, before knowing that, she had already given him the mitten.*

Habría corregido con gusto los errores que hubieras (o hubieses) hecho en la traducción. *I would gladly have corrected the errors that you might have made in the translation.*

3. The *pluscuamperfecto condicional* is also used to modestly express an idea in the past, usually a wish, when the leading verb is in the present, present perfect, past or future indicative, or in the imperative.

Examples:

Dice que le *habría gustado* ir allí contigo. *He says that he would have liked to go there with you.*

Esto es lo que *habrían deseado* proponerte. *This is what they would have liked to propose to you.*

Ha escrito diciendo que *habría tenido* un verdadero placer en conocerte. *He has written saying that he would have had a real pleasure in making your acquaintance or in meeting you.*

Me dijo que *habría tenido* un verdadero placer en conocerte. *He told me that he would have had a real pleasure in making your acquaintance or in meeting you.*

Le dirá que le *habría gustado* estudiar arquitectura. *He will tell him that he would have liked to study architecture.*

Dile que *habríamos deseado* verla. *Tell her that we should (or would) have liked to see her.*

NOTE.—The first form of the past perfect subjunctive, i.e., the form consisting of *hubiera*, plus the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated, may be used instead of the past conditional in all the above examples.

FORMATION OF THE PAST CONDITIONAL

The *pluscuamperfecto condicional* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the conditional of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading “*The Past Participle*,” page 304, the formation of the past participles, if necessary.

The *condicional* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, is:

yo habría, <i>I should have</i>	nosotros, -as habríamos, <i>we should have</i>
tú habrías, <i>you would have</i>	vosotros, -as habríais, <i>you would have</i>
él habría, <i>he would have</i>	ellos habrían, <i>they would have</i>
ella habría, <i>she would have</i>	ellas habrían, <i>they would have</i>
usted habría, <i>you would have</i>	ustedes habrían, <i>you would have</i>

NOTE *a*.—For the conjugation of the past conditional of *hablar* see page 349; of *comer* see page 352, and of *vivir* see page 355.

NOTE *b*.—The grammar of the Spanish Academy calls this tense *potencial compuesto* or *perfecto*.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

This mood is used, in Spanish, only affirmatively, because in negative commands, requests, etc., the present subjunctive is used. It has five persons according to the Spanish Academy of the Language. It has no first person singular.

FORMATION OF THE IMPERATIVE

Necessary steps to obtain the *imperativo* of the verbs of the first conjugation:

(1) Take the third person singular of the present indicative of any verb, of *hablar* for instance, and the second person singular imperative i.e., *habla* (*tú*), *speak* (*you*) (fam. form), is obtained, because both of these persons are the same in form.

(2) Change the last vowel of *habla* into *e*, and the third person singular, i.e., *hable* (*usted*), *speak* (*you*) (pol. form), is obtained.

(3) Add the syllable *mos* and the letter *n* to the third person singular imperative to obtain respectively the first and third persons plural *hablemos* (*nosotros*), *let us speak*, and *hablen* (*ustedes*), *speak* (*you*) (pol. form).

(4) The second person plural of every verb, is invariably obtained by changing the *r* of the infinitive into *d*. Consequently, the second person plural of *hablar* is *hablad* (*vosotros*), *speak* (*you*) (fam. form).

Necessary steps to obtain the *imperativo* of the verbs of the second and third conjugations:

(1) Do what is suggested above, in step number one, to obtain the second person singular.

(2) Change the last *e* into *a* to obtain the third person plural.

(3) Do what is suggested above, in step number three, to obtain respectively the first and third persons plural.

(4) Do what is suggested above, in step number four, to obtain the second person plural.

NOTE *a*.—The imperative of the greater number of irregular verbs is obtained in the above stated manner.

NOTE *b*.—For the conjugation of the imperative of *hablar* see page 349; of *comer*, page 352, of *vivir*, page 355.

NOTE *c*.—In this method, *usted* and *ustedes* are given instead of *él* and *ellos*, to accompany respectively the third person singular and the third person plural of the imperative, because *usted* and *ustedes* are used in direct affirmative commands, requests, etc., and not *él* or *ellos*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

GENERAL RULES

The *subjuntivo*, i.e., the mood of uncertainty, is mainly used in subordinate clauses, usually preceded by the connecting conjunctive *que*, *that*.

This mood is used in subordinate clauses in the following cases:

(1) When the verb in the principal or governing clause is in the indicative and expresses *will* or *volition*.

Examples:

Quiero que usted le *hable* a ella (present sub.). *I want you to speak to her.*
Le ruego me *disculpe* (present sub.). *I beg of you to excuse me.*

NOTE *a*.—It must be borne in mind that if the subject of both verbs is the same, the second verb is used in the infinitive, as can be seen in this example: *Quiero hablar.* *I want to speak.*

Verbs and expressions of *will* or *volition* which are greatly used in the main clause, followed by *que* and a verb in the subjunctive: *desear*, to *wish*; *querer*, to *want*; *ordenar*, to *order*; *mandar*, to *command*; *prohibir*, to *forbid*; *impedir*, to *prevent*; *permitir*, to *allow*; *aprobar*, to *approve*; *desaprobar*, to *disapprove*; *conceder*, to *grant*; *exigir*, to *demand*, to *exact*; *preferir*, to *prefer*; *merecer*, to *deserve*; *pedir*, to *ask*; *rogar*, to *beg*; *suplicar*, to *beseech*, to *implore*; *conseguir*, to *succeed in*, to *get*; *aconsejar*, to *advise*; *empeñarse en*, to *be determined to*; *tener interés en*, to *have an interest in*; *obligar a*, to *compel to*; *oponerse a*, to *oppose oneself to*; *hacer votos por*, to *hope for*; *poner por condición*, to *put as a condition*; *decir*, to *tell*, when used in the sense of to *command*; *gritar*, to *shout*, when used in the sense of to *command*.

(2) When the verb in the principal or governing clause is in the indicative and expresses *feeling* or *emotion*.

Examples:

Temo que *pierda* la vista (present sub.). *I fear that he will lose his eyesight.*
Celebro *esté* bien (present sub.). *I am glad he is well.*

Verbs and expressions of *feeling* or *emotion* which are greatly used in the main clause, followed by *que* and a verb in the subjunctive: *alegrarse*

to be glad; celebrar, *to celebrate, to be glad*; temer, *to fear*; agradecer, *to be thankful for*; sentir, *to be sorry, to feel*; lamentar, *to regret, to lament*; deplorar, *to deplor*; asombrar, *to astonish*; pasmar, *to astonish, to cause a spasm*; maravillar, *to marvel, to astonish*; extrañarse, *to be surprised*; inquietar, *to make one uneasy, to trouble*; preocuparse, *to worry, to preoccupy*; encantarse, *to be charmed*; admirarse, *to be surprised, to admire oneself*; regocijarse, *to gladden, to be glad*; gustar, *to like*; consolar, *to console, to comfort*; placer, *to please*; esperar, *to expect, to hope*; Tengo miedo de que. *I fear that.* Tengo temor de que. *I fear that.*

(3) The *subjuntivo* is also used in subordinate clauses when verbs of *understanding* or *knowledge* are used negatively or interrogatively in the indicative, in the main clause, if *uncertainty* or *doubt* is implied by the verb used in the subordinate clause; otherwise the indicative is used in the verbs of the principal and subordinate clauses.

Examples:

No creo que sea rico (present sub.). *I don't believe he is rich.*

No creeré nunca que se mató (past action with certainty, indicative). *I will never believe that he killed himself.*

¿Crees tú que sea rico? (present sub.) (uncertainty). } *Do you be-*
¿Crees tú que es rico? (the fact is considered certain) } *lieve he is rich?*

Important verbs and expressions of *understanding* or *knowledge*: creer, *to believe, to think*; saber, *to know*; suponer, *to suppose*; recordar, *to remember*; asegurar, *to assure*; jurar, *to swear*; confesar, *to confess*; prometer, *to promise*; declarar, *to declare*; ver, *to see*; sospechar, *to suspect*; imaginar, *to imagine*; parecer, *to seem*; constar, *to know with certainty*; sostener, *to sustain*; predecir, *to foretell*; afirmar, *to affirm*; prever, *to foresee*; decir, *to say, to tell*, when used with the meaning of *to notify*; seguridad de que, *certainty that*; responder de que, *to answer that*; confiar en que, *to trust that*.

(4) The *subjuntivo* is also used in subordinate clauses, when *uncertainty* is implied, and a verb of *doubt* or *denial*, not preceded by an adverb of negation, is used in the main or governing clause.

Examples:

Dudo que lo haga (present sub.). *I doubt that he will do it.*

No dudo que lo hará (indicative). *I don't doubt that he will do it.*

Niego que esté aquí (present sub.). *I deny he is here.*

No niego que está aquí (indicative). *I don't deny he is here.*

NOTE.—*Dudar, to doubt*, and *negar, to deny*, when preceded by an adverb of negation, follow the rule given for verbs of *understanding*.

(5) The *subjuntivo* is also used in subordinate clauses, when, in the main clause, *ser* and *estar, to be*, followed by a noun and *que*, an adjective and *que*, or an adverb and *que*, are used impersonally.

Important impersonal expressions:

es necesario que,	} <i>it is necessary</i> <i>that</i>	es un milagro que,	<i>it is really sur- prising that</i> (lit. <i>it is a miracle</i> <i>that</i>).	
es menester que,				
es preciso que,				
es lástima que,		no está bien que,	<i>it is not proper that</i>	
es una vergüenza que,		es justo que,	<i>it is just that</i>	
<i>that</i>		es injusto que,	<i>it is unjust that</i>	
es posible que,		es sorprendente que,	<i>it is surprising</i> <i>that</i>	
es imposible que,				
<i>that</i>		es extraordinario que,	<i>it is extra- ordinary that</i>	
es muy cómodo que,	} <i>it is very con- venient</i> <i>that</i>	es la voluntad mía que,	<i>it is my will</i> <i>that</i>	
es muy conveniente				
que,				
es incómodo que,	} <i>it is inconven- ient that</i>	es probable que,	<i>it is probable that</i>	
es molesto que,			es tiempo que,	<i>it is time that</i>
		no es seguro que,	<i>it is not certain that</i>	

Examples:

Es lástima que no sea millonario (present sub.). *It is a pity that he is not a millionaire.*

Es necesario que usted lo haga (present sub.). *It is necessary that you do it.*

6. The *subjuntivo* is also used, in subordinate clauses, when verbs which express *convenience*, *feeling* or *emotion*, and *possibility*, are used impersonally in the main clause, followed by *que*.

Important impersonal expressions with verbs of convenience, feeling or emotion or possibility:

conviene que,	<i>it is convenient that</i>	importa que,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} it \text{ is important that} \\ it \text{ matters that} \end{array} \right.$	
gusta que,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} place \\ place \\ place \end{array}} \right\} it \text{ pleases that}$	no importa que,	<i>it does not matter that</i>	
agrada que,				
place que,				
disgusta que,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} place \\ place \\ place \end{array}} \right\} it \text{ displeases that}$	¿qué importa que . . . ?	<i>what difference does it make that . . . ?</i>	
desagrada que,				
pasma que,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} place \\ place \\ place \end{array}} \right\} it \text{ is astonishing that}$	basta que,	<i>it suffices that</i>	
asombra que,			me duele que,	<i>it pains me that</i>
maravilla que,			puede ser que,	<i>it may be that</i>
sorprende que,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} place \\ place \\ place \end{array}} \right\} it \text{ is surprising that}$			
extraña que,				

Examples:

Conviene que lo sepa (present sub.). *It is convenient for him to know it.*
Me duele que sea tan ingrato (present sub.). *It pains me that he is so ungrateful.*

7. The *subjuntivo* is also used in subordinate clauses, after a relative pronoun, when the verb in the main clause refers to persons entirely unknown, or to something of an indefinite or uncertain character.

Examples:

No conozco a ningún hombre *que sea* tan feliz (present sub.). *I do not know any man who is so happy.*

Todavía no he encontrado hombre *que sea* tan feliz (present sub.). *I have not found as yet a man who is so happy.*

No conozco a nadie *que esté* mejor preparado (present sub.). *I do not know anyone who is better prepared.*

No hay nadie *que haga* eso mejor que tú (present sub.). *There is no one who does that better than you.*

¿Hay quien *pueda* salvarla? (present sub.). *Is there anyone who can save her?*

Serviré a la mujer *que por esposa elijas*, como serví a tu buena madre. (present sub.). *I shall serve the woman (whoever she may be) that you may choose as your wife, as I served your good mother.*

Si hay alguien *que pueda* hacerlo, lo deseo saber (present sub.). *If there is any one who can do it, I wish to know it.*

Si encuentras un manantial *cuya agua sea* tan buena como ésta, dímelos. (present sub.). *If you find a spring the water of which is as good as this, tell me.*

Entrega el libro a *quien se te presente* con mi tarjeta (present sub.). *Deliver the book to the one who presents himself to you with my card.*

8. The *subjuntivo* is also used, in subordinate clauses, after adverbs of time, place or manner, when the verb in the principal clause is in the future indicative, and the element of indefiniteness, uncertainty or respectful concession, is present.

Examples:

Se lo daré *cuando venga* (present sub.). *I shall give it to him when he comes.*

Iré a *donde* usted me *diga* (present sub.). *I will go wherever (where) you tell me.*

La habitación se amueblará *como* usted *desea* (present subj.). *The room will be furnished as you may wish.*

9. The *subjuntivo* is also used after expressions such as *quienquiera*, *whoever*, *cualquiera* or *cualquier*, *whoever*, *whatever*, etc., when followed by *que*, and in clauses presenting alternatives or indifference.

Examples:

Quienquiera *que diga* eso, falta a la verdad (present sub.). *Whoever may say that, fails to say the truth.*

Cualquiera *que tenga* lo que ellos no tienen, ve eso sin necesidad de anteojos (present sub.). *Anyone who has what they do not have, sees that without the need of eye-glasses.*

Recibe hijo mío, sin refunfuñar, cualquier cosa que tu tía te *dé* (present sub.). *Receive, my son, without grumbling, whatever your aunt may give to you.*

Ya *vayas* allí or ya te *quedes* aquí, tendrás que pagar los cinco dólares (present sub.). *Whether you go there or whether you remain here, you will have to pay the five dollars.*

Que *llueva* o que no *llueva*, allí iré (present sub.). *Whether it rains or not, I will go there.*

Sean los que *sean* los obstáculos, realizaremos nuestro ideal (present sub.). *Whatever be the obstacles, we shall realize our ideal.*

Cueste lo que *cueste*, eso será mío (present sub.). *No matter what its cost may be, that will be mine.*

10. The *subjuntivo* is also used after expressions which begin with the word *por*, when *por* is followed by an adjective or adverb and *que*.

Examples:

Por mucho que *gane*, nunca será rico (present sub.). *No matter how or however much he earns, he will never be rich.*

Por mala que *sea* su situación, estoy seguro que la de su hermano es peor (present subj.). *However (or no matter how) bad his condition (situation) is, I am sure that his brother's is worse.*

11. The *subjuntivo* is also used in any clause introduced by an adverb of doubt.

Examples:

Tal vez <i>venga</i> la semana próxima.	} (present sub.).	<i>Perhaps he will come next week.</i>
Quizá <i>venga</i> la semana próxima.		
Acaso <i>venga</i> la semana próxima.		

12. The *subjuntivo* is also used in clauses introduced by certain conjunctive expressions, when the idea of indefinite future time, condition, purpose, possibility, uncertainty, supposition, result, denial or concession is present.

Important conjunctive expressions which serve to introduce clauses where the idea of indefinite future time, purpose, condition, possibility, etc., is present:

a condición de que, <i>on condition that</i>	hasta donde, <i>as far as</i>
a fin de que, <i>in order that</i>	hasta que, <i>until</i>
a menos que, } <i>unless</i>	hasta el momento en que, <i>until the</i>
a no ser que, }	<i>time when</i>
antes que, <i>before</i>	lejos de que, <i>so far from</i>
aun cuando, <i>even though</i>	luego que, <i>as soon as</i>
aunque, <i>although, though</i>	mientras, <i>while</i>
como, <i>as, in proportion as</i>	no sea que, <i>lest</i>
con tal que, <i>provided that</i>	ojalá, <i>would to God, God grant,</i>
dado que, <i>in case, supposing that</i>	<i>would that</i>
de manera que, }	para que, <i>in order that, so that</i>
de modo que, }	<i>que, whether, so that, in order that</i>
después que, <i>after</i>	siempre que, <i>provided that</i>
en cuanto, <i>as soon as, when</i>	sin que, <i>without</i>
en caso de que, <i>in case that</i>	suponiendo que, <i>supposing that</i>

Examples:

Te daré esto *a condición de que* tú me des eso (present sub.). *I will give you this on condition that you will give me that.*

Te lo digo *para que* no lo ignores (present sub.). *I tell it to you so that you may not be ignorant of it.*

Ojalá venga (present sub.). *Would to God that he may come.*

Se lo diré *en cuanto* lo vea (present sub.). *I shall tell it to him as soon as I see him.*

CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES

When the requirements specified in the above rules are fulfilled, i. e., when the verb in the principal clause expresses *will* or *volition*, *feeling* or *emotion*, etc., etc., and the verb in the subordinate clause is in the subjunctive, this mood must be represented by one of the four following tenses: the *present*, *perfect*, *imperfect* or the *past perfect*.

CASES WHEN THE VERB IN THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MUST BE EITHER IN THE *present* OR IN THE *perfect subjunctive*

When the verb in the principal clause is in the *present*, *present perfect*, *future*, and *future perfect indicative*, or in the *imperative*, the verb in the subordinate clause is used in the *present of the subjunctive* if it refers to a present or future action, and the *perfect* if it refers to a past action, i.e., to an action completed before the time indicated by the verb in the main clause.

Examples:

Deseo que él coma. *I want him to eat.*

Conviene que él haya comido. *It is convenient that he has eaten (lit., that he may have eaten).*

Les he prohibido que lean con luz artificial. *I have forbidden them to read by artificial light.*

Me alegro que ella esté aquí. *I am glad she is here.*

Ella se ha alegrado que hayas venido. *She is (has been) glad that you have come.*

Les rogaré que vengan. *I shall beg them to come.*

Me alegraré que hayan venido. *I shall be glad that they have come.*

Mañana, antes de las nueve, les habré aconsejado que tengan más paciencia. *To-morrow, before nine o'clock, I shall have advised them to have more patience.*

Mucho se habrá ganado cuando hayan llegado a un acuerdo. *Much will have been gained when they have reached an understanding.*

Diles que no griten. *Tell them not to shout.*

Suplícale te perdone las faltas que hayas cometido. *Beg him to forgive you the faults that you may have committed.*

CASES WHEN THE VERB IN THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MUST BE EITHER IN THE *imperfect* OR IN THE *past perfect subjunctive*

When the requirements referred to under the heading *Correspondence of Tenses* are fulfilled, and the verb in the principal clause is in

the *preterite*, *imperfect* or *past perfect indicative*, or in the *conditional* or *past conditional*, the verb in the subordinate clause must be in the *imperfect subjunctive* if it refers to a future action, and in the *past perfect subjunctive* if it refers to a past action.

Examples:

Siempre deseó que tú *estudiaras* (or *estudiases*). *He always wanted you to study.*

Lamentó que ella se *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) ido tan pronto. *He regretted that she had gone away so soon.*

El niño quería que tú le *compraras* (or *comprases*) un juguete. *The child wanted you to buy him a toy.*

El niño quería que tú le *hubieras* (or *hubieses*) comprado el juguete. *The child wanted you to have bought him the toy.*

Yo le había prohibido que *saliera* (or *saliese*). *I had forbidden him to go out.*

Ella había deseado que tú lo *hubieras* (or *hubieses*) hecho. *She had wished you to have done it or that you should have done it.*

Desearía que él *comprara* (or *comprase*) el caballo. *I would like him to buy the horse.*

Desearía que *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) comprado el caballo. *I would like him to have bought the horse or that he should have bought the horse.*

Habría deseado que ella lo *hiciera* (or *hiciese*). *I would have wished her to do it or that she should do it.*

Habría deseado que ello lo *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) hecho. *I would have wished him to have done it or that he should have done it.*

NOTE.—It must be borne in mind that the actions expressed by the tenses in the subjunctive, are, either future or past, in relation to the ideas expressed by the verbs in the main clause.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

When the requirements specified under the heading *General Rules*, page 332, are fulfilled, i.e., when the verb in the principal clause expresses *will* or *volition*, *feeling* or *emotion*, etc., etc., and this verb is in the *present*, *present perfect*, *future*, and *future perfect indicative*, or in the *imperative*, the verb in the subordinate clause must be in the *present subjunctive* if it refers to a present or future action.

Examples:

Deseo que él *coma*. *I want him to eat.*

Deseo *esté* contento. *I want him to be contented.*

Les he prohibido que *lean* con luz artificial. *I have forbidden them to read by artificial light.*

Mañana, antes de las nueve, les habré aconsejado que *tengan* más paciencia. *To-morrow, before nine o'clock, I shall have advised them to have more patience.*

Les rogaré que *vengan*. *I shall beg them to come.*

Diles que no *griten*. *Tell them not to shout.*

NOTE *a*.—It must be borne in mind that the present subjunctive must be translated by the English tense which best renders the meaning of the thought expressed in the context, irrespective of the English equivalent given in the paradigms of the “Regular Verbs” pages 347, etc.

NOTE *b*.—The conjunction, *si*, if, never precedes the present subjunctive.

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Necessary steps for obtaining the *presente de subjuntivo* of the verbs of the three conjugations:

1. Take the third person singular imperative of any verb, of *hablar*, *comer*, or *vivir*, for instance.

Once the third person singular imperative, i.e., *hable*, *coma* or *viva* is in our possession, the first and third persons singular of the present subjunctive are also obtained, because the third person imperative and the first and third persons singular of the present subjunctive are the same in form.

2. Repeat the same steps which were taken to obtain the different persons of *presente de indicativo*, i.e., add to the third person singular, which is *hable*, *coma*, or *viva*, the following: (1) the letter *s* to obtain the second person singular, i.e., *hables*; (2) the syllable *mos* to obtain the first person plural, i.e., *hablemos*; (3) the ending *is* to obtain the second person plural, i.e., *habléis*; (4) the letter *n* to obtain the third person plural, i.e., *hablen*.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the present subjunctive of *hablar*, see page 349; of *comer*, page 352; and of *vivir*, page 355.

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

When the verb in the principal clause is in the *present*, *present perfect*, *future* and *future perfect indicative*, or in the *imperative*, and the requirements specified under the heading *General Rules*, page 332, are fulfilled. the verb in the subordinate clause must be in the perfect subjunctive if it refers to a past action, i.e., to an action completed before the time indicated by the verb in the main clause.

Examples:

Conviene que él *haya comido*. *It is convenient that he has eaten* (lit., *that he may have eaten*).

Ella se ha alegrado que *hayas venido*. *She has been glad that you have come*.

Me alegraré que *hayan venido*. *I shall be glad that they have come*.

Mucho se habrá ganado cuando *hayan llegado* a un acuerdo. *Much will have been gained when they have reached an understanding*.

Suplícale te perdone las faltas que *hayas cometido*. *Beg him to forgive you for the faults that you may have committed*.

NOTE.—The conjunction, *si*, if, never precedes the *perfecto de subjuntivo*.

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. The *perfecto de subjuntivo* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *present subjunctive* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the *past participle* of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The *presente de subjuntivo* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, is:

yo haya, <i>I may have</i>	nosotros, —as hayamos, <i>we may have</i>
tú hayas, <i>you may have</i>	vosotros, —as hayáis, <i>you may have</i>
él haya, <i>he may have</i>	ellos hayan, <i>they may have</i>
ella haya, <i>she may have</i>	ellas hayan, <i>they may have</i>
usted haya, <i>you may have</i>	ustedes hayan, <i>you may have</i>

2. Join the two elements, and the *perfecto de subjuntivo* is thus obtained.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the *perfecto de subjuntivo* of *hablar*, see page 349; of *comer*, page 352, and of *vivir*, page 355.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

When the verb in the principal clause is in the *preterite*, *imperfect*, or *past perfect indicative*, or in the *conditional* or *past conditional*, and the requirements specified under the heading *General Rules*, page 332, are fulfilled, the verb in the subordinate clause must be in the imperfect subjunctive if it refers to a future action, i.e., to an action which will take place after the time indicated by the verb in the main clause.

Examples:

Siempre deseó que tú *estudiaras* (or *estudiases*). *He always wanted you to study.*

El niño quería que tú le *compraras* (or *comprases*) un juguete. *The child wanted you to buy him a toy.*

Yo le había prohibido que *saliera* (or *saliese*). *I had forbidden him to go out.*

Desearía que *comprara* (or *comprase*) el caballo. *I would like him to buy the horse.*

Habría deseado que ella lo *hiciera* (or *hiciese*). *I would have wished her to do it or that she should do it.*

DEVIATIONS FROM THE RULE ABOVE GIVEN FOR THE USE OF THE *imperfect subjunctive*

The rigidity of the above general rule is sometimes relaxed when it is desired to attend more to the conception of the thought than to the requirements of grammar. In such cases, the *imperfect subjunctive* is often used in the subordinate clauses, when the action represented by

the verb in the subjunctive is wholly *past* or *completed* for the person who speaks, even though the verb used in the main clause be in the *present*, *present perfect* or *future indicative*.

Examples:

No creo que tu tío *fuera* (instead of *fué*) tan avaro como su cuñado. *I do not believe that your uncle was so avaricious as your brother-in-law.*

Dudo que él *fuera* (instead of *haya sido*) como ella. *I doubt that he was as she (was).*

No nos ha sido posible saber lo que allí *ocurriera* (instead of *ocurrió*). *It has not been possible for us to know that which happened there.*

Algún día agradecerás a tu padre que *previese* (instead of *haya previsto*) eso. *Some day you will be thankful that your father foresaw that.*

FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Necessary steps to obtain the *imperfecto de subjuntivo* of the verbs of the first conjugation, in its two forms:

1. Add either the ending *ara* or *ase* to the root of any verb of the first conjugation. Let us take *habl*, i.e., the root of *hablar*, for instance, and after adding *ara* or *ase* to it, *hablara* or *hablase*, which may be either the *first* or the *third person singular* of this tense, is obtained.

2. Repeat the same steps which were taken to obtain the different persons of the present indicative, i.e., add to the third person singular, which is *hablara* or *hablase* the following: (1) the letter *s* to obtain the second person singular, i.e., *hablaras* or *hablases*; (2) the syllable *mos* to obtain the first person plural, i.e., *habláramos* or *hablásemos*; (3) the ending *is* to obtain the second person plural, i.e., *hablarais* or *hablaseis*; and (4) the letter *n* to obtain the third person plural, i.e., *hablaran* or *hablasen*.

Necessary steps to obtain the *imperfecto de subjuntivo* of the verbs of second and third conjugations, in its two forms:

1. Do what is suggested above, in step number one, but instead of the endings *ara* or *ase*, add to the root of any infinitive of these conjugations, of *comer* and *vivir* for instance, *iera* or *iese*.

2. Once *comiera* or *comiese*, and *viviera* or *viviese*, which may be either the first or third person singular, are obtained, do what is suggested above, in paragraph number two, to get the other persons, by adding to the third person singular the specified endings.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the *imperfecto de subjuntivo* of *hablar*, see page 349; *comer*, see page 352, and of *vivir*, page 355.

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

When the verb in the principal clause is in the *preterite*, *imperfect* or *past perfect indicative*, or in the *conditional* or *past conditional*, and the requirements specified under the heading *General Rules*, page 332, are fulfilled, the verb in the subordinate clause must be in the *past perfect*

subjunctive if it refers to a past action, i.e., to an action completed before the time indicated by the verb in the main clause.

Examples:

Lamentó que ella se *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) ido tan pronto. *He regretted that she had gone away so soon.*

El niño quería que tú le *hubieras* (or *hubieses*) comprado el juguete. *The child wanted you to have bought him the toy.*

Ella había deseado que tú lo *hubieras* (or *hubieses*) hecho. *She had wished you to have done it.*

Desearía que *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) comprado el caballo. *I would like him to have bought the horse.*

Habría deseado que él lo *hubiera* (or *hubiese*) hecho. *I would have wished him to have done it.*

FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. The *pluscuamperfecto de subjuntivo* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of them is the *imperfect subjunctive* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The two forms of the *imperfecto de subjuntivo* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, are:

FIRST FORM

yo <i>hubiera</i> , <i>I might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>I should have</i>	nosotros, <i>—as hubiéramos</i> , <i>we might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>we should have</i>
tú <i>hubieras</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should have</i>	vosotros, <i>—as hubierais</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should have</i>
él <i>hubiera</i> , <i>he might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>he should have</i>	ellos <i>hubieran</i> , <i>they might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>they should have</i>
ella <i>hubiera</i> , <i>she might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>she should have</i>	ellas <i>hubieran</i> , <i>they might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>they should have</i>
usted <i>hubiera</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should</i> <i>have</i>	ustedes <i>hubieran</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should have</i>

SECOND FORM

yo <i>hubiese</i> , <i>I might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>I should have</i>	ella <i>hubiese</i> , <i>she might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>she should have</i>
tú <i>hubieses</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should have</i>	usted <i>hubiese</i> , <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should</i> <i>have</i>
él <i>hubiese</i> , <i>he might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>he should have</i>	

nosotros, -as hubiésemos, <i>we might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>we should have</i>	ellas hubiesen, <i>they might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>they should have</i>
vosotros, -as hubieseis, <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>we should have</i>	ustedes hubiesen, <i>you might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>you should have</i>
ellos hubiesen, <i>they might have</i> and (<i>that or if</i>) <i>they should have</i>	

2. Join the two elements, and the *pluscuamperfecto de subjuntivo* is thus formed.

NOTE.—For the most common equivalents of the past perfect subjunctive and for the full conjugation of this tense of *hablar*, see page 350; of *comer*, page 353, and of *vivir*, page 356.

THE FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

The future subjunctive, i.e., the tense which is always introduced by a *conjunction*, a *relative pronoun* or *adverb*, is used to represent actions of an *eventual* character. It is generally used in connection with the *future indicative* or with the *imperative*.

Examples:

Si *viniere*, dímelo. *If he comes (or will come), tell me.*

Si lo *vieres*, dale esto. *If you see him (or will see him), give him this.*

Si este invierno *fuere* tan crudo como el pasado, te mandaré carbón. *If this winter be as raw as last, I will send you coal.*

Si *tuviere* fortuna, lo aceptará por yerno. *If he has wealth, he will accept him as his son-in-law.*

Cuando algún error se *descubiere*, te escribiré. *When any error shall have been discovered, I shall write you.*

Te daré cuanto me *dieren*. *I shall give you all they may give me.*

Estudiaré los datos que se nos *suministraren*. *I shall study the data which they may furnish us.*

Donde *fueres*, haz lo que *vieres* (proverb). *In Rome do as the Romans do, i.e., Wherever you go do what you see (people do).*

Perdonad a los que os *ofendieren*. *Forgive those who (may) offend you.*

NOTE *a*.—The present indicative may be used, instead of the future subjunctive, in the above first four examples, if the idea of *eventuality* is suppressed in the conditioning clause. Likewise the present subjunctive may be used in the last five examples, instead of the future subjunctive, if the idea of *indefiniteness* is substituted for that of *eventuality*.

NOTE *b*.—It must be borne in mind that the future subjunctive should be translated by the English tense which best renders the meaning of the thought expressed in the context, irrespective of the English equivalents given in the paradigms of the "Regular Verbs," pages 347, etc.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

The *futuro de subjuntivo* is obtained in exactly the same way as the first form of the *imperfect subjunctive*, but instead of *ara*, the ending *are*

ought to be added to the root of an infinitive when the verb is of the first conjugation, to obtain, for instance, *hablare*, etc., etc., and instead of *iera*, the ending *iere* has to be added to the root of the verbs of the second and third conjugations, to obtain, for instance, *comiere* and *viviere*, etc., etc.

NOTE.—For the most common equivalents of the *futuro de subjuntivo* and the full conjugation of this tense of *hablar*, see page 350; of *comer*, page 353; of *vivir*, page 356.

THE FUTURE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—ITS USES

The future perfect subjunctive is used after a conjunction, a relative pronoun or adverb, to represent the eventual character of actions which are to be completed before another action takes place. It is generally used with the future indicative or with the imperative.

Examples:

Perdonad a los que os *hubieren ofendido*. *Forgive those who may have offended you.*

Cuando algún error se *hubiere descubierto* te escribiré. *When any error shall have been discovered, I shall write you.*

Te comunicaré las pérdidas que *hubiéremos sufrido*. *I shall communicate to you the losses that we may have suffered.*

Los nombres de las personas que *hubieren contribuído* a esa obra benéfica serán publicados en el periódico. *The names of the persons who may have contributed to that charitable work will be published in the newspaper.*

Note a.—The perfect subjunctive may be used in the above four sentences, instead of the future perfect subjunctive, if the idea of *indefiniteness* is substituted for that of *eventuality*.

NOTE b.—It must be borne in mind that the future perfect subjunctive should be translated by the English tense which best renders the meaning of the thought expressed in the context, irrespective of the English equivalents given in the paradigms of the “Regular Verbs,” pages 347, etc.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. The *futuro perfecto de subjuntivo* is a compound tense made up of two elements. One of these is the *futuro de subjuntivo* of the auxiliary verb *haber*, *to have*, and the other is the past participle of the verb which is being conjugated.

NOTE.—Study in rule 1, under the heading *The Past Participle*, page 304, the formation of the participles, if necessary.

The *futuro de subjuntivo* of the auxiliary verb *haber* is:

yo *hubiere*, *I may or shall have* tú *hubieres*, *you may or shall have*

él hubiere, <i>he may or shall have</i>	vosotros, -as hubiereis, <i>you may or shall have</i>
ella hubiere, <i>she may or shall have</i>	ellos hubieren, <i>they may or shall have</i>
usted hubiere, <i>you may or shall have</i>	ellas hubieren, <i>they may or shall have</i>
nosotros, -as hubiéremos, <i>we may or shall have</i>	ustedes hubieren, <i>you may or shall have</i>

NOTE.—Notice that the future subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *haber* differs only in the last vowel from the first form of the imperfect subjunctive.

2. Join the two elements and the *futuro perfecto de subjuntivo* is thus obtained.

NOTE.—For the conjugation of the *futuro perfecto de subjuntivo* of *hablar*, see page 350; of *comer*, page 353, and of *vivir*, page 356.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

As a governing word or clause may easily be supplied when the subjunctive is used in expressions of an independent character, these expressions may be considered elliptical.

CASES WHERE THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED INSTEAD OF THE IMPERATIVE

The present subjunctive is always used, instead of the imperative, in negative commands, entreaties, etc.

Examples:

No seas tan tonto. *Don't be so foolish.*

No tengáis miedo. *Don't be afraid.*

No le prestes más dinero. *Don't lend him any more money.*

No te vayas tan pronto. *Don't go away so soon.*

No le ruegues más. *Don't beg him any more.*

THE USE OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER *que*, WHEN A VERB OF WILL OR VOLITION IS UNDERSTOOD

1. The present subjunctive is used after *que*, in indirect commands, when a governing verb of will or volition is implied, in an implied governing clause.

Examples:

Que aprenda. *Let him learn.*

Que sufra las consecuencias. *Let him suffer the consequences.*

Que vuelva más tarde. *Let him return later.*

Que se vaya a paseo. *Let him go to the deuce (lit. to take a walk).*

2. The present subjunctive is also used in elliptical expressions which may or may not be introduced by *que*, when they merely denote a wish or desire, not to be delivered as a message.

Examples:

Que me maten si lo hago. *May they kill me if I do it.*

Dios lo quiera. *I hope so (lit. May God wish it).*

Séale la tierra leve. *May the earth rest lightly upon him.*

¡Viva nuestro general! *Long live our general!*

3. The present subjunctive of *saber*, *to know*, is also used after *que* when it refers to a preceding question or to a negative, etc.

Examples:

¿Quién ha venido? Nadie que yo sepa. *Who has come? Nobody that I know of.*

No ha salido nadie, que yo sepa. *No one has gone out, as far as I know.*

CASES WHERE THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OR THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED

The present subjunctive or the imperfect subjunctive is used in expressions which may or may not be introduced by *que*, when they denote indifference.

Examples:

Que hagan lo que les plazca. *Let them do what they please.*

Sea como sea, el hecho es que no ha venido. *Be it as it may, the fact is that he has not come.*

Venga lo que venga. *Come what may.*

Viniese lo que viniese. *Come what might.*

Que quieras o no quieras, allí irás. *Whether you will or not, there you shall go.*

CASES WHERE THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED

The imperfect subjunctive is used in elliptical expressions after *quien*, when they denote a wish or desire.

Examples:

¡Quién pudiese verla ahora! *If I only (or I wish I) could see her now!*

¡Quién supiera escribir! *If I only (or I wish I) could write!*

¡Quién pudiera volar! *If I only (or I wish I) could fly!*

¡Quién fuera joven! *If I were only young! or I wish I were young!*

CASES WHERE THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT OR PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED

The present, imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is used in elliptical expressions after *ojalá*.

Examples:

¡Ojalá que gane el premio! *God grant that he may gain the prize!*

¡Ojalá que fuese verdad! *Would that it were true!*

¡Ojalá que mi tío hubiese estado allí! *Would that my uncle had been there!*

CONJUGATION OF MODEL REGULAR VERBS

In the paradigms which follow, *hablar, to speak, comer, to eat, and vivir, to live*, are conjugated in all their modes and tenses, and *lavar, to wash, comprar, to buy, and amar, to love*, are respectively conjugated in their reflexive, progressive and passive forms.

MODEL VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

Infinitivo—*Infinitive*

hablar, *to speak*

Gerundio—*Gerund*

hablando, *speaking*

Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*

hablado, *spoken*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo hablo, *I speak*

tú hablas, *you speak*

él habla, *he speaks*

nosotros hablamos, *we speak*

vosotros habláis, *you speak*

ellos hablan, *they speak*

NOTE.—The following subject pronouns are omitted for the sake of simplicity: *nosotras, we* (fem.), *vosotras, you* (fem. familiar form pl.), *ella, she, usted, you* (pol. form sing.), *ellas, they* (fem.), and *ustedes* (pol. form pl.).

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo hablaba

tú hablabas

él hablaba

I was speaking, etc.

nosotros hablábamos

vosotros hablabais

ellos hablaban

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo he hablado, *I have spoken*

tú has hablado, *you have spoken*

él ha hablado, *he has spoken*

nosotros hemos hablado, *we have spoken*

vosotros habéis hablado, *you have spoken*

ellos han hablado, *they have spoken*

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo hablé, *I spoke*
 tú hablaste, *you spoke*
 él habló, *he spoke*

nosotros hablamos, *we spoke*
 vosotros hablasteis, *you spoke*
 ellos hablaron, *they spoke*

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo hube hablado
 tú hubiste hablado
 él hubo hablado
I had spoken, etc.

nosotros hubimos hablado
 vosotros hubisteis hablado
 ellos hubieron hablado

It is as a rule equivalent to the English Past Perfect; sometimes to the Past.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo había hablado, *I had spoken*
 tú habías hablado, *you had spoken*
 él había hablado, *he had spoken*

nosotros habíamos hablado, *we had spoken*
 vosotros habíais hablado, *you had spoken*
 ellos habían hablado, *they had spoken*

Futuro—*Future*

yo hablaré, *I shall speak*
 tú hablarás, *you will speak*
 él hablará, *he will speak*

nosotros hablaremos, *we shall speak*
 vosotros hablaréis, *you will speak*
 ellos hablarán, *they will speak*

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo habré hablado, *I shall have spoken*
 tú habrás hablado, *you will have spoken*
 él habrá hablado, *he will have spoken*

nosotros habremos hablado, *we shall have spoken*
 vosotros habréis hablado, *you will have spoken*
 ellos habrán hablado, *they will have spoken*

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo hablaría, *I should speak*
 tú hablarías, *you would speak*
 él hablaría, *he would speak*

nosotros hablaríamos, *we should speak*
 vosotros hablaríais, *you would speak*
 ellos hablarían, *they would speak*

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo habría hablado, <i>I should have spoken</i>	nosotros habríamos hablado, <i>we should have spoken</i>
tú habrías hablado, <i>you would have spoken</i>	vosotros habríais hablado, <i>you would have spoken</i>
él habría hablado, <i>he would have spoken</i>	ellos habrían hablado, <i>they would have spoken</i>

Imperativo—*Imperative*

habla tú, <i>speaking you</i> (familiar form singular)	hablemos nosotros, <i>let us speak</i>
hable usted, <i>speaking you</i> (polite form singular)	hablad vosotros, <i>speaking you</i> (familiar form plural)
	hablen ustedes, <i>speaking you</i> (polite form plural)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo hable, <i>I may speak</i>	nosotros hablemos, <i>we may speak</i>
tú hables, <i>you may speak</i>	vosotros habléis, <i>you may speak</i>
él hable, <i>he may speak</i>	ellos hablen, <i>they may speak</i>

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo hablara	yo hablase
tú hablaras	tú hablastes
él hablara	él hablase
nosotros habláramos	nosotros hablásemos
vosotros hablarais	vosotros hablasteis
ellos hablaran	ellos hablasen

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I spoke*, etc.; also to *If* (or *that*) *I should speak*, etc.; also to *I might speak*, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo haya hablado, <i>I may have spoken</i>	nosotros hayamos hablado, <i>we may have spoken</i>
tú hayas hablado, <i>you may have spoken</i>	vosotros hayáis hablado, <i>you may have spoken</i>
él haya hablado, <i>he may have spoken</i>	ellos hayan hablado, <i>they may have spoken</i>

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)

yo hubiera hablado
 tú hubieras hablado
 él hubiera hablado
 nosotros hubiéramos hablado
 vosotros hubierais hablado
 ellos hubieran hablado

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo hubiese hablado
 tú hubieses hablado
 él hubiese hablado
 nosotros hubiésemos hablado
 vosotros hubieseis hablado
 ellos hubiesen hablado

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I had spoken*, etc.; also to *If (or that) I should have spoken*, etc.; also to *I might have spoken*, etc.

Futuro—*Future*yo hablare, *If I shall speak*nosotros habláremos, *If we shall speak*tú hablares, *If you will speak*vosotros hablareis, *If you will speak*él hablare, *If he will speak*ellos habladen, *If they will speak*

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may speak*, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*yo hubiere hablado, *If I shall have spoken*nosotros hubiéremos hablado, *If we shall have spoken*tú hubieres hablado, *If you will have spoken*vosotros hubiereis hablado, *If you will have spoken*él hubiere hablado, *If he will have spoken*ellos hubieren hablado, *If they will have spoken*

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may have spoken*, etc.

MODEL VERB OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

Infinitivo—*Infinitive*comer, *to eat*Gerundio—*Gerund*comiendo, *eating*Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*comido, *eaten*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*yo como, *I eat*nosotros comemos, *we eat*tú comes, *you eat*vosotros coméis, *you eat*él come, *he eats*ellos comen, *they eat*

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo comía	nosotros comíamos
tú comías	vosotros comíais
él comía	ellos comían
<i>I was eating, etc.</i>	

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo he comido, <i>I have eaten</i>	nosotros hemos comido, <i>we have eaten</i>
tú has comido, <i>you have eaten</i>	vosotros habéis comido, <i>you have eaten</i>
él ha comido, <i>he has eaten</i>	ellos han comido, <i>they have eaten</i>

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo comí, <i>I ate</i>	nosotros comimos, <i>we ate</i>
tú comiste, <i>you ate</i>	vosotros comisteis, <i>you ate</i>
él comió, <i>he ate</i>	ellos comieron, <i>they ate</i>

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo hube comido	nosotros hubimos comido
tú hubiste comido	vosotros hubisteis comido
él hubo comido	ellos hubieron comido
<i>I had eaten, etc.</i>	

It is equivalent as a rule to the English Past Perfect; sometimes to the Past.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo había comido, <i>I had eaten</i>	nosotros habíamos comido, <i>we had eaten</i>
tú habías comido, <i>you had eaten</i>	vosotros habíais comido, <i>you had eaten</i>
él había comido, <i>he had eaten</i>	ellos habían comido, <i>they had eaten</i>

Futuro—*Future*

yo comeré, <i>I shall eat</i>	nosotros comeremos, <i>we shall eat</i>
tú comerás, <i>you will eat</i>	vosotros comeréis, <i>you will eat</i>
él comerá, <i>he will eat</i>	ellos comerán, <i>they will eat</i>

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo habré comido, <i>I shall have eaten</i>	nosotros habremos comido, <i>we shall have eaten</i>
tú habrás comido, <i>you will have eaten</i>	vosotros habréis comido, <i>you will have eaten</i>
él habrá comido, <i>he will have eaten</i>	ellos habrán comido, <i>they will have eaten</i>

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo comería, <i>I should eat</i>	nosotros comeríamos, <i>we should eat</i>
tú comerías, <i>you would eat</i>	vosotros comeríais, <i>you would eat</i>
él comería, <i>he would eat</i>	ellos comerían, <i>they would eat</i>

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo habría comido, <i>I should have eaten</i>	nosotros habríamos comido, <i>we should have eaten</i>
tú habrías comido, <i>you would have eaten</i>	vosotros habríais comido, <i>you would have eaten</i>
él habría comido, <i>he would have eaten</i>	ellos habrían comido, <i>they would have eaten</i>

IMPERATIVO—IMPERATIVE

	comamos nosotros, <i>let us eat</i>
come tú, <i>eat you</i> (familiar form singular)	comed vosotros, <i>eat you</i> (familiar form plural)
coma usted, <i>eat you</i> (polite form singular)	coman ustedes, <i>eat you</i> (polite form plural)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo coma, <i>I may eat</i>	nosotros comamos, <i>we may eat</i>
tú comas, <i>you may eat</i>	vosotros comáis, <i>you may eat</i>
él coma, <i>he may eat</i>	ellos coman, <i>they may eat</i>

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

(Primera forma— <i>First form</i>)	(Segunda forma— <i>Second form</i>)
yo comiera	yo comiese
tú comieras	tú comieses
él comiera	él comiese
nosotros comiéramos	nosotros comiésemos
vosotros comiérais	vosotros comieseis
ellos comieran	ellos comiesen

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I ate*, etc.; also to *If* (or *that*) *I should eat*, etc.; also to *I might eat*, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo haya comido, <i>I may have eaten</i>	nosotros hayamos comido, <i>we may have eaten</i>
tú hayas comido, <i>you may have eaten</i>	vosotros hayáis comido, <i>you may have eaten</i>
él haya comido, <i>he may have eaten</i>	ellos hayan comido, <i>they may have eaten</i>

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)

yo hubiera comido
 tú hubieras comido
 él hubiera comido
 nosotros hubiéramos comido
 vosotros hubierais comido
 ellos hubieran comido

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo hubiese comido
 tú hubieses comido
 él hubiese comido
 nosotros hubiésemos comido
 vosotros hubieseis comido
 ellos hubiesen comido

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I had eaten*, etc.; also to *If (or that) I should have eaten*, etc.; also to *I might have eaten*, etc.

Futuro—*Future*yo comiere, *If I shall eat*nosotros comiéremos, *If we shall eat*tú comieres, *If you will eat*vosotros comiereis, *If you will eat*él comiere, *If he will eat*ellos comieren, *If they will eat*

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may eat*, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*yo hubiere comido, *If I shall have eaten*nosotros hubiéremos comido, *If we shall have eaten*tú hubieres comido, *If you will have eaten*vosotros hubiereis comido, *If you will have eaten*él hubiere comido, *If he will have eaten*ellos hubieren comido, *If they will have eaten*

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may have eaten*, etc.

MODEL VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Infinitivo—*Infinitive*vivir, *to live*Gerundio—*Gerund*viviendo, *living*Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*vivido, *lived*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo vivo, *I live*
 tú vives, *you live*
 él vive, *he lives*

nosotros vivimos, *we live*
 vosotros vivís, *you live*
 ellos viven, *they live*

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo vivía
tú vivías
él vivía

nosotros vivíamos
vosotros vivíais
ellos vivían

I was living, etc.

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo he vivido, *I have lived*

nosotros hemos vivido, *we have lived*

tú has vivido, *you have lived*

vosotros habéis vivido, *you have lived*

él ha vivido, *he has lived*

ellos han vivido, *they have lived*

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo viví, *I lived*

nosotros vivimos, *we lived*

tú viviste, *you lived*

vosotros vivisteis, *you lived*

él vivió, *he lived*

ellos vivieron, *they lived*

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo hube vivido

nosotros hubimos vivido

tú hubiste vivido

vosotros hubisteis vivido

él hubo vivido

ellos hubieron vivido

I had spoken, etc.

It is equivalent as a rule to the English Past Perfect; sometimes to the Past.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo había vivido, *I had lived*

nosotros habíamos vivido, *we had lived*

tú habías vivido, *you had lived*

vosotros habíais vivido, *you had lived*

él había vivido, *he had lived*

ellos habían vivido, *they had lived*

Futuro—*Future*

yo viviré, *I shall live*

nosotros viviremos, *we shall live*

tú vivirás, *you will live*

vosotros viviréis, *you will live*

él vivirá, *he will live*

ellos vivirán, *they will live*

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo habré vivido, *I shall have lived*

nosotros habremos vivido, *we shall have lived*

tú habrás vivido, *you will have lived*

vosotros habréis vivido, *you will have lived*

él habrá vivido, *he will have lived*

ellos habrán vivido, *they will have lived*

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo viviría, <i>I should live</i>	nosotros viviríamos, <i>we should live</i>
tú vivirías, <i>you would live</i>	vosotros viviríais, <i>you would live</i>
él viviría, <i>he would live</i>	ellos vivirían, <i>they would live</i>

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo habría vivido, <i>I should have lived</i>	nosotros habríamos vivido, <i>we should have lived</i>
tú habrías vivido, <i>you would have lived</i>	vosotros habríais vivido, <i>you would have lived</i>
él habría vivido, <i>he would have lived</i>	ellos habrían vivido, <i>they would have lived</i>

IMPERATIVO—IMPERATIVE

	vivamos nosotros, <i>let us live</i>
vive tú, <i>live you</i> (familiar form singular)	vivid vosotros, <i>live you</i> (familiar form plural)
viva usted, <i>live you</i> (polite form singular)	vivan ustedes, <i>live you</i> (polite form plural)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo viva, <i>I may live</i>	nosotros vivamos, <i>we may live</i>
tú vivas, <i>you may live</i>	vosotros viváis, <i>you may live</i>
él viva, <i>he may live</i>	ellos vivan, <i>they may live</i>

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

(Primera forma— <i>First form</i>)	(Segunda forma— <i>Second form</i>)
yo viviera	yo viviese
tú vivieras	tú vivieses
él viviera	él viviese
nosotros viviéramos	nosotros viviésemos
vosotros vivierais	vosotros vivieseis
ellos vivieran	ellos viviesen

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I lived*, etc.; also to *If (or that) I should live*, etc.; also to *I might live*, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo haya vivido, <i>I may have lived</i>	nosotros hayamos vivido, <i>we may have lived</i>
tú hayas vivido, <i>you may have lived</i>	vosotros hayáis vivido, <i>you may have lived</i>
él haya vivido, <i>he may have lived</i>	ellos hayan vivido, <i>they may have lived</i>

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)

yo hubiera vivido
 tú hubieras vivido
 él hubiera vivido
 nosotros hubiéramos vivido
 vosotros hubierais vivido
 ellos hubieran vivido

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo hubiese vivido
 tú hubieses vivido
 él hubiese vivido
 nosotros hubiésemos vivido
 vosotros hubieseis vivido
 ellos hubiesen vivido

Both forms are sometimes equivalent to *If I had lived*, etc.; also to
If (or that) I should have lived, etc.; also to *I might have lived*, etc.

Futuro—*Future*

yo viviere, *If I shall live*
 tú vivieres, *If you will live*
 él viviere, *If he will live*

nosotros viviéremos, *If we shall live*
 vosotros viviereis, *If you will live*
 ellos vivieren, *If they will live*.

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may live*, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo hubiere vivido, *If I shall have lived*
 tú hubieres vivido, *If you will have lived*
 él hubiere vivido, *If he will have lived*

nosotros hubiéremos vivido, *If we shall have lived*
 vosotros hubiereis vivido, *If you will have lived*
 ellos hubieren vivido, *If they will have lived*

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may have lived*, etc.

CONJUGATION OF A MODEL REFLEXIVE VERB

Infinitivo—*Infinitive*

lavarse, *to wash oneself*

Gerundio—*Gerund*

lavándose, *washing oneself*

Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*

lavádose, *washed oneself*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo me lavo
 tú te lavas
 él se lava

nosotros nos lavamos
 vosotros os laváis
 ellos se lavan

I wash myself, etc.

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo me lavaba	nosotros nos lavábamos
tú te lavabas	vosotros os lavabais
él se lavaba	ellos se lavaban

I wash washing myself, etc.

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo me he lavado	nosotros nos hemos lavado
tú te has lavado	vosotros os habéis lavado
él se ha lavado	ellos se han lavado

I have washed myself, etc.

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo me lavé	nosotros nos lavamos
tú te lavaste	vosotros os lavasteis
él se lavó	ellos se lavaron

I washed myself, etc.

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo me hube lavado	nosotros nos hubimos lavado
tú te hubiste lavado	vosotros os hubisteis lavado
él se hubo lavado	ellos se hubieron lavado

I had washed myself, as a rule; at other times, I washed myself, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo me había lavado	nosotros nos habíamos lavado
tú te habías lavado	vosotros os habíais lavado
él se había lavado	ellos se habían lavado

I had washed myself, etc.

Futuro—*Future*

yo me lavaré	nosotros nos lavaremos
tú te lavarás	vosotros os lavaréis
él se lavará	ellos se lavarán

I shall or will wash myself, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo me habré lavado	nosotros nos habremos lavado
tú te habrás lavado	vosotros os habréis lavado
él se habrá lavado	ellos se habrán lavado

I shall have washed myself, etc.

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo me lavaría	nosotros nos lavaríamos
tú te lavarías	vosotros os lavaríais
él se lavaría	ellos se lavarían

I should or would wash myself, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo me habría lavado	nosotros nos habríamos lavado
tú te habrías lavado	vosotros os habríais lavado
él se habría lavado	ellos se habrían lavado

I should or would have washed myself, etc.

IMPERATIVO—IMPERATIVE

	lavémonos nosotros, <i>let us wash ourselves</i>
lávate tú, <i>wash yourself</i> (familiar form singular)	lavaos vosotros, <i>wash yourselves</i> (familiar form, plural)
lávese usted, <i>wash yourself</i> (polite form, singular)	lávense ustedes, <i>wash yourselves</i> (polite form, plural)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo me lave	nosotros nos lavemos
tú te laves	vosotros os lavéis
él se lave	ellos se laven

I may wash myself, etc.

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

(Primera forma—*First form*)

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo me lavara	yo me lavase
tú te lavaras	tú te lavases
él se lavara	él se lavase
nosotros nos laváramos	nosotros nos lavásemos
vosotros os lavarais	vosotros os lavaseis
ellos se lavaran	ellos se lavasen

If I washed, or If (or that) I should or would wash myself, etc.; also I might wash myself, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo me haya lavado	nosotros nos hayamos lavado
tú te hayas lavado	vosotros os hayáis lavado
él se haya lavado	ellos se hayan lavado

I may have washed myself, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*

(Primera forma—*First form*)

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo me hubiera lavado

yo me hubiese lavado

tú te hubieras lavado

tú te hubieses lavado

él se hubiera lavado

él se hubiese lavado

nosotros nos hubiéramos lavado

nosotros nos hubiésemos lavado

vosotros os hubierais lavado

vosotros os hubieseis lavado

ellos se hubieran lavado

ellos se hubiesen lavado

*If I had washed, or If (or that) I should have washed myself, etc.; also
I might have washed myself, etc.*

Futuro—*Future*

yo me lavare

nosotros nos laváremos

tú te lavares

vosotros os lavareis

él se lavare

ellos se lavaren

If I shall or will wash myself, etc.

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may wash myself, etc.*

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo me hubiere lavado

nosotros nos hubiéremos lavado

tú te hubieres lavado

vosotros os hubiereis lavado

él se hubiere lavado

ellos se hubieren lavado

If I shall or will have washed myself, etc.

This tense is sometimes equivalent to *I may have washed myself, etc.*

CONJUGATION OF *Amar* IN ITS PASSIVE FORM

Infinitivo—*Infinitive*

ser amado, *to be loved*

Gerundio—*Gerund*

siendo amado, *being loved*

Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*

sido amado, *been loved*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo soy amado, *I am loved*

nosotros somos amados, *we are loved*

tú eres amado, *you are loved*

vosotros sois amados, *you are loved*

él es amado, *he is loved*

ellos son amados, *they are loved*

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo era amado	nosotros éramos amados
tú eras amado	vosotros erais amados
él era amado	ellos eran amados

I was being loved or used to be loved, etc.

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo he sido amado	nosotros hemos sido amados
tú has sido amado	vosotros habéis sido amados
él ha sido amado	ellos han sido amados

I have been loved, etc.

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo fuí amado	nosotros fuimos amados
tú fuiste amado	vosotros fuisteis amados
él fué amado	ellos fueron amados

I was loved, etc.

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo hube sido amado	nosotros hubimos sido amados
tú hubiste sido amado	vosotros hubisteis sido amados
él hubo sido amado	ellos hubieron sido amados

I had been loved, etc.

It is as a rule equivalent to the Past Perfect of the English Passive Form; sometimes to the Past.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo había sido amado	nosotros habíamos sido amados
tú habías sido amado	vosotros habíais sido amados
él había sido amado	ellos habían sido amados

I had been loved, etc.

Futuro—*Future*

yo seré amado	nosotros seremos amados
tú serás amado	vosotros seréis amados
él será amado	ellos serán amados

I shall or will be loved, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo habré sido amado	nosotros habremos sido amados
tú habrás sido amado	vosotros habréis sido amados
él habrá sido amado	ellos habrán sido amados

I shall have been loved, etc.

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo sería amado	nosotros seríamos amados
tú serías amado	vosotros seríais amados
él sería amado	ellos serían amados

I should or would be loved, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo habría sido amado	nosotros habríamos sido amados
tú habrías sido amado	vosotros habríais sido amados
él habría sido amado	ellos habrían sido amados

I should or would have been loved, etc.

IMPERATIVO—IMPERATIVE

	seamos nosotros amados, <i>let us be loved</i>
sé tú amado, <i>be you loved</i> (familiar form, singular)	sed vosotros amados, <i>be you loved</i> (familiar form, plural)
sea usted amado, <i>be you loved</i> (polite form, singular)	sean ustedes amados, <i>be you loved</i> (polite form, plural)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo sea amado	nosotros seamos amados
tú seas amado	vosotros seáis amados
él sea amado	ellos sean amados

I may be loved, etc.

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

(Primera forma— <i>First form</i>)	(Segunda forma— <i>Second form</i>)
yo fuera amado	yo fuese amado
tú fueras amado	tú fueses amado
él fuera amado	él fuese amado
nosotros fuéramos amados	nosotros fuésemos amados
vosotros fuerais amados	vosotros fueseis amados
ellos fueran amados	ellos fuesen amados

If I were loved or If (or that) I should be loved, etc.; also I might be loved, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo haya sido amado	nosotros hayamos sido amados
tú hayas sido amado	vosotros hayáis sido amados
él haya sido amado	ellos hayan sido amados

I may have been loved, etc.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)

yo hubiera sido amado
 tú hubieras sido amado
 él hubiera sido amado
 nosotros hubiéramos sido amados
 vosotros hubierais sido amados
 ellos hubieran sido amados

(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo hubiese sido amado
 tú hubieses sido amado
 él hubiese sido amado
 nosotros hubiésemos sido amados
 vosotros hubieseis sido amados
 ellos hubiesen sido amados

If (or that) I had or should have been loved, etc.; also I might have been loved, etc.

Futuro—*Future*

yo fuere amado
 tú fueres amado
 él fuere amado

nosotros fuéremos amados
 vosotros fuereis amados
 ellos fueren amados

If I shall be loved, etc.

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo hubiere sido amado
 tú hubieres sido amado
 él hubiere sido amado

nosotros hubiéremos sido amados
 vosotros hubiereis sido amados
 ellos hubieren sido amados

If I shall have been loved, etc.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *Comprar* IN ITS PROGRESSIVE FORMInfinitivo—*Infinitive*

estar comprando, *to be buying*

Gerundio—*Gerund*

estando comprando, *being buying*

Participio Pasivo—*Past Participle*

estado comprando, *been buying*

MODO INDICATIVO—INDICATIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo estoy comprando
 tú estás comprando
 él está comprando

nosotros estamos comprando
 vosotros estáis comprando
 ellos están comprando

I am buying, etc.

Imperfecto—*Imperfect*

yo estaba comprando
 tú estabas comprando
 él estaba comprando

nosotros estábamos comprando
 vosotros estabais comprando
 ellos estaban comprando

I was buying, etc.

Perfecto—*Present Perfect*

yo he estado comprando	nosotros hemos estado comprando
tú has estado comprando	vosotros habéis estado comprando
él ha estado comprando	ellos han estado comprando
<i>I have been buying, etc.</i>	

Pretérito Absoluto—*Preterit or Past*

yo estuve comprando	nosotros estuvimos comprando
tú estuviste comprando	vosotros estuvisteis comprando
él estuvo comprando	ellos estuvieron comprando
<i>I was buying, etc.</i>	

Pretérito Anterior—*Past Anterior*

yo hube estado comprando	nosotros hubimos estado com- prando
tú hubiste estado comprando	vosotros hubisteis estado com- prando
él hubo estado comprando	ellos hubieron estado comprando
<i>I had been buying, etc.</i>	

It is as a rule equivalent to the Past Perfect of the Progressive Form;
sometimes of the Past.

Pluscuamperfecto—*Pluperfect or Past Perfect*

yo había estado comprando	nosotros habíamos estado com- prando
tú habías estado comprando	vosotros habíais estado compran- do
él había estado comprando	ellos habían estado comprando
<i>I had been buying, etc.</i>	

Futuro—*Future*

yo estaré comprando	nosotros estaremos comprando
tú estarás comprando	vosotros estaréis comprando
él estará comprando	ellos estarán comprando
<i>I shall be buying, etc.</i>	

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo habré estado comprando	nosotros habremos estado com- prando
tú habrás estado comprando	vosotros habréis estado comprando
él habrá estado comprando	ellos habrán estado comprando
<i>I shall or will have been buying, etc.</i>	

MODO CONDICIONAL—CONDITIONAL MODE

Condicional (simple)—*Conditional (simple)*

yo estaría comprando

tú estarías comprando

él estaría comprando

nosotros estaríamos comprando

vosotros estaríais comprando

ellos estarían comprando

*I should be or would be buying, etc.*Pluscuamperfecto Condicional—*Past Conditional*

yo habría estado comprando

tú habrías estado comprando

él habría estado comprando

nosotros habríamos estado comprando

vosotros habríais estado comprando

ellos habrían estado comprando

I should or would have been buying, etc.

IMPERATIVO—IMPERATIVE

estemos nosotros comprando, *let us be buying*está tú comprando, *be you buying*
(familiar form, singular)estad vosotros comprando, *be you buying* (familiar form plural)esté usted comprando, *be you buying* (polite form, singular)estén ustedes comprando, *be you buying* (polite form plural)

(The imperative of this verb is used reflexively almost invariably.)

MODO SUBJUNTIVO—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Presente—*Present*

yo esté comprando

tú estés comprando

él esté comprando

nosotros estemos comprando

vosotros estéis comprando

ellos estén comprando

*I may be buying, etc.*Imperfecto—*Imperfect*(Primera forma—*First form*)(Segunda forma—*Second form*)

yo estuviera comprando

tú estuvieras comprando

él estuviera comprando

yo estuviese comprando

tú estuvieses comprando

él estuviese comprando

nosotros estuviéramos comprando

nosotros estuviésemos comprando

vosotros estuvierais comprando

vosotros estuvieseis comprando

ellos estuvieran comprando

ellos estuviesen comprando

If I were buying or If (or that) I should be buying, etc.; also I might be buying, etc.

Perfecto—*Perfect*

yo haya estado comprando	nosotros hayamos estado comprando
tú hayas estado comprando	vosotros hayáis estado comprando
él haya estado comprando	ellos hayan estado comprando
<i>I may have been buying, etc.</i>	

Pluscuamperfecto—*Past Perfect*

(Primera forma— <i>First form</i>)	(Segunda forma— <i>Second form</i>)
yo hubiera estado comprando	yo hubiese estado comprando
tú hubieras estado comprando	tú hubieses estado comprando
él hubiera estado comprando	él hubiese estado comprando
nosotros hubiéramos estado comprando	nosotros hubiésemos estado comprando
vosotros hubierais estado comprando	vosotros hubieseis estado comprando
ellos hubieran estado comprando	ellos hubiesen estado comprando
<i>If I had been or If (or that) I should have been buying, etc.; also I might have been buying, etc.</i>	

Futuro—*Future*

yo estuviere comprando	nosotros estuviéremos comprando
tú estuvieres comprando	vosotros estuviereis comprando
él estuviere comprando	ellos estuvieren comprando
<i>If I shall be buying, etc.; also I may be buying, etc.</i>	

Futuro Perfecto—*Future Perfect*

yo hubiere estado comprando	nosotros hubiéremos estado comprando
tú hubieres estado comprando	vosotros hubiereis estado comprando
él hubiere estado comprando	ellos hubieren estado comprando
<i>If I shall have been buying, etc.; also I may have been buying, etc.</i>	

IRREGULARITIES OF IMPORTANT IRREGULAR VERBS,
AND MODELS OF IMPORTANT REGULAR VERBS
WHICH EITHER SUFFER ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES
OR ARE DEFECTIVE

Students should know very well the conjugation of the tenses of the regular verbs, before studying the equivalents of the tenses of the irregular verbs which need to be studied.

Students should bear in mind that a verb is regular when the root of the infinitive and the endings of the different per-

sons which correspond to a certain given tense remain unchanged, as illustrated in the regular models given on pages 347, 350, and 353.

The tenses omitted in the models which follow are regular and must be conjugated like the corresponding tense of any regular verb, i.e., by adding to the root of the infinitive the endings which belong to the tenses considered. The persons which are represented by a line are regular, and must be obtained in the way above specified, i.e., by adding to the root of the infinitive the appropriate regular endings.

REMARKS TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF THE IRREGULARITIES OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

1. When a verb is irregular in the third person singular indicative present, it is also irregular in the imperative and in the present subjunctive. This occurs because the third person singular present indicative of every regular verb, and of almost every irregular verb, is the same in form as the second person imperative, and because, when the second person imperative is irregular, the third person singular and the first and third persons plural of the same tense are irregular. When the above mentioned persons of the imperative are irregular, the three persons singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive are also irregular. See irregularities of *cerrar*, page 367.

2. When a verb is irregular in the first person singular present indicative only, or when this first person singular has a different irregularity from the third person singular, the whole present subjunctive is irregular, and also the third person singular and first and third persons plural of the imperative. This happens because these persons of the imperative are the same in form as the corresponding persons of the present subjunctive. See irregularities of *conocer*, page 368, and of *tener*, page 377.

3. When a verb is irregular in the third person singular past or preterite indicative, it is also irregular in all the persons of the two forms of the imperfect subjunctive, and in the whole future subjunctive, because the third person singular past or preterite indicative has the same root as the two named subjunctive tenses. See irregularities of *tener*, page 377; and of *dormir*, page 372.

4. When a verb is irregular in the future, it is also irregular in the conditional. It must be borne in mind that the irregularities of these tenses are always in the root, never in the endings. See irregularities of *tener*, page 377, and *decir*, page 379.

5. When the first person plural subjunctive is irregular, the first person plural imperative is also irregular, because these two persons are always the same in form. See irregularities of *dormir*, page 372, and *servir*, page 370.

MODEL NUMBER 1

CERRAR, *to close*

The *e* of the root of this verb changes into the diphthong *ie* when the syllable where the *e* occurs is stressed.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	cierro, cierras, cierra, —, —, cierran.
<i>Imperative</i>	cierra, cierre, —, —, cierren.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	cierre, cierres, cierre, —, —, cierren.

MODEL NUMBER 2

ERRAR, *to err*

The irregularities in this verb are the same as in *cerrar*, model number 1, but the *i* of the diphthong *ie* changes into *y*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	yerro, yerras, yerra, —, —, yerran.
<i>Imperative</i>	yerra, yerre, —, —, yerren.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	yerre, yerres, yerre, —, —, yerren.

MODEL NUMBER 3

PERDER, *to lose*

This verb has the same irregularities as *cerrar*, model number 1.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	pierdo, pierdes, pierde, —, —, pierden.
<i>Imperative</i>	pierde, pierda, —, —, pierdan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	pierda, pierdas, pierda, —, —, pierdan.

MODEL NUMBER 4

DISCERNIR, *to discern*

This verb has the same irregularities as *cerrar*, model number 1.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	discierno, disciernes, discierne, —, —, disciernen.
<i>Imperative</i>	discierne, discierna, —, —, disciernan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	discierna, disciernas, discierna, —, —, disciernan.

MODEL NUMBER 5

ALMORZAR, *to breakfast*

The *o* of the root of this verb changes into the diphthong *ue* when the syllable where the *o* occurs is stressed. Notice also the change of the *z* into *c* before *e*.

<i>Pres Indic.</i>	almuerzo, almuerzas, almuerza, —, —, almuerzan.
<i>Imperative</i>	almuerza, almuerce, —, —, almuercen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	almuerce, almuerces, almuerce, —, —, almuercen.

MODEL NUMBER 6

DESOSAR, *to bone*

This verb has the same irregularities as *almorzar*, model number 5, but it takes an *h* before the diphthong *ue*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	deshueso, deshuelas, deshuesa, —, —, deshuesan.
<i>Imperative</i>	deshuesa, deshuese, —, —, deshuesen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	deshuese, deshueses, deshuese, —, —, deshuesen.

MODEL NUMBER 7

MOVER, *to move*

The irregularities of this verb are the same as in *almorzar*, model number 5.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	muevo, mueves, mueve, —, —, mueven.
<i>Imperative</i>	mueve, mueva, —, —, muevan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	mueva, muevas, mueva, —, —, muevan.

MODEL NUMBER 8

OLER, *to smell*

This verb has the same irregularities as *mover*, model number 7, but it takes an *h* before the diphthong *ue*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	huelo, hueles, huele, —, —, huelen.
<i>Imperative</i>	huele, huela, —, —, huelan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	huela, huelas, huela, —, —, huelan.

MODEL NUMBER 9

DEVOLVER, *to return*

This verb has the same irregularities as *mover*, model number 7. Its past participle is also irregular.

<i>Past Participle</i>	devuelto.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	devuelvo, devuelves, devuelve, —, —, devuelven.
<i>Imperative</i>	devuelve, devuelva, —, —, devuelvan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	devuelva, devuelvas, devuelva, —, —, devuelvan.

MODEL NUMBER 10

CONOCER, *to be acquainted*

When the letter *c* of the root of this model verb is followed by the vowels *o* or *a*, *z* is placed before the *c*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	conozco, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, conozca, conozcamos, —, conozcan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	conozca, conozcas, conozca, conozcamos, conozcáis, conozcan.

MODEL NUMBER 11

LUCIR, *to glitter*

This verb has the same irregularities as *conocer*, model number 10.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	luzco, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, luzca, luzcamos, —, luzcan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	luzca, luzcas, luzca, luzcamos, luzcáis, luzcan.

MODEL NUMBER 12

CONDUCIR, *to guide, to conduct*

This verb has the same irregularities as *lucir*, model number 11. It has also these other irregularities: the letter *j* is substituted for the letter *c* of the root in the preterit indicative, and in the imperfect and future of the subjunctive. In the preterit indicative, the regular endings *i* and *ió* of the first and third persons singular, and the ending *ieron* of the third person plural, are changed, respectively, to *e*, *o* and *eron*. In all the forms of the imperfect and future subjunctive the *i* of the endings *iera*, *iese* and *iere* is suppressed.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	conduzco, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	conduje, condujiste, condujo, condujimos, condujisteis, condujeron.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, conduzca, conduzcamos, —, conduzcan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	conduzca, conduzcas, conduzca, conduzcamos, conduzcáis, conduzcan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	condujera, condujeras, condujera, condujéramos, condujeráis, condujeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	condujese, condujeses, condujese, condujésemos, condujeseis, condujesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	condujere, condujeres, condujere, condujéremos, condujereis, condujeren.

MODEL NUMBER 13

TAÑER, *to play*

The *i* of the regular endings *ió* and *ieron* of the past indicative is lost in the third persons. In the imperfect and future subjunctive the *i* of the endings *iera*, *iese* and *iere* is lost as it happens in *conducir*, model number 12. The gerund (present participle) also loses the *i* of the regular ending *iendo*.

<i>Gerund</i>	tañendo.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, tañó, —, —, tañeron.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	tañera, tañeras, tañera, tañéramos, tañeráis, tañeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	tañese, tañeses, tañese, tañésemos, tañeseis, tañesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	tañere, tañeres, tañere, tañéremos, tañereis, tañeren.

MODEL NUMBER 14

PLAÑIR, *to bewail*

This verb has the same irregularities as *tañer*, model number 13.

<i>Gerund</i>	plañendo.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, plañó, —, —, plañeron.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	plañera, plañeras, plañera, plañéramos, plañerais, plañeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	plañese, plañeses, plañese, plañésemos, plañeseis, plañesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	plañere, plañeres, plañere, plañéremos, plañereis, plañeren.

MODEL NUMBER 15

SERVIR, *to serve*

The *e* of the root of this verb changes into *i* in the cases shown below.

<i>Gerund</i>	sirviendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	sirvo, sirves, sirve, —, —, sirven.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, sirvió, —, —, sirvieron.
<i>Imperative</i>	sirve, sirva, sirvamos, —, sirvan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	sirva, sirvas, sirva, sirvamos, sirváis, sirvan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	sirviera, sirvieras, sirviera, sirviéramos, sirvierais, sirvieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	sirviese, sirvieses, sirviese, sirviésemos, sirvieseis, sirviesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	sirviere, sirvieres, sirviere, sirviéremos, sirviereis, sirvieren.

MODEL NUMBER 16

REÍR, *to laugh*

The *e* of the root of this verb changes into *i* in the same cases as *servir*, model number 15, and the *i* of the endings is dropped in the same cases as *tañer*, model number 13.

<i>Gerund</i>	riendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	río, ríes, ríe, —, —, ríen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, rió, —, —, rieron.
<i>Imperative</i>	ríe, ría, ríamos, —, rían.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	ría, rías, ría, ríamos, riáis, rían.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	riera, rieras, riera, riéramos, rierais, rieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	riese, rieses, riese, riésemos, rieseis, riesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	riere, rieres, riere, riéremos, riereis, rieren.

MODEL NUMBER 16a

REÑIR, *to quarrel*

This verb has the same irregularities as *reír*, model number 16.

<i>Gerund</i>	riñendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	riño, riñes, riñe, —, —, riñen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, riñó, —, —, riñeron.
<i>Imperative.</i>	riñe, riña, riñamos, —, riñan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	riña, riñas, riña, riñamos, riñáis, riñan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	riñera, riñeras, riñera, riñéramos, riñeráis, riñeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	riñese, riñeses, riñese, riñésemos, riñeseis, riñesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	riñere, riñeres, riñere, riñéremos, riñereis, riñeren.

MODEL NUMBER 17

FREÍR, *to fry*

This verb has the same irregularities as *reír*, model number 16, but it has two past participles, one regular and the other irregular. The irregular past participle *frito* is used more frequently than *freído* for the formation of the compound tenses.

<i>Gerund</i>	friendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	frío, fríes, fríe, —, —, fríen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, frió, —, —, frieron.
<i>Imperative</i>	fríe, fría, friamos, —, frían.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	fría, frías, fría, friamos, friáis, frían.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	friera, frieras, friera, friéramos, frieráis, frieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	friese, frieses, friese, friésemos, frieseis, friesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	friere, frieres, friere, friéremos friereis, frieren.

MODEL NUMBER 18

SENTIR, *to feel*

The *e* of the root of this verb changes into *i* in the gerund, and into the diphthong *ie* in the same cases as *discernir*, model number 4. This same vowel *e* is changed into *i* in the third persons of the preterit indicative, in the first person plural of the imperative, in the first two persons plural of the present subjective, and in all the persons of the imperfect and future of the subjunctive.

<i>Gerund</i>	sintiendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	siento, sientes, siente, —, —, sienten.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, sintió, —, —, sintieron.
<i>Imperative</i>	siente, sienta, sintamos, —, sientan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	sienta, sientas, sienta, sintamos, sintáis, sientan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: sintiera, sintieras, sintiera, sintiéramos, sintierais, sintieran.

Second form: sintiesê, sintieses, sintiese, sintiésemos, sintieseis, sintiesen.

Future Subj. sintiere, sintieres, sintiere, sintiéremos, sintiereis, sintieren.

MODEL NUMBER 19

JUGAR, *to play*

The *u* of the root of this verb changes into *ue* in the same cases in which the *o* of the root of *almorzar*, model number 5, changes into *ue*.

Pres. Indic. juego, juegas, juega, —, —, juegan.

Imperative juega, juegue, —, —, jueguen.

Pres. Subj. juegue, juegues, juegue, —, —, jueguen.

MODEL NUMBER 20

ADQUIRIR, *to acquire*

The *i* of the root of this verb changes into *ie* in the same cases in which the *e* of *cerrar*, model number 1, changes into *ie*.

Pres. Indic. adquiero, adquieres, adquiera, —, —, adquieren.

Imperative adquiera, adquiera, —, —, adquieran.

Pres. Subj. adquiera, adquieras, adquiera, —, —, adquieran.

MODEL NUMBER 21

DORMIR, *to sleep*

The *o* of the root of this verb changes into *ue* or *u* in the same cases in which the *e* of the root of *sentir*, model number 18, changes, respectively, into *ie* or *i*.

Gerund durmiendo.

Pres. Indic. duermo, duermes, duerma, —, —, duermen.

Past —, —, durmió, —, —, durmieron.

Imperative duerma, duerma, durmamos, —, duerman.

Pres. Subj. duerma, duermas, duerma, durmamos, durmáis, duerman.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: durmiera, durmieras, durmiera, durmiéramos, durmierais, durmieran.

Second form: durmiese, durmieses, durmiese, durmiésemos, durmieseis, durmiesen.

Future Subj. durmiere, durmieres, durmiere, durmiéremos, durmiereis, durmieren.

MODEL NUMBER 22

MORIR, *to die*

This verb has the same irregularities as *dormir*, model number 21, besides having its past participle irregular.

Past participle muerto.

MODEL NUMBER 23

VALER, *to be worth*

The letter *g* is placed after the *l* of the root of this verb when this letter is followed by the vowels *o* or *a*. The *e* of *valer* changes into *d* in the future indicative and in the conditional. The second person singular imperative has two forms: *vale*, the regular, and *val*, the irregular. The latter form is used more frequently than the regular form.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	valgo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Future</i>	valdré, valdrás, valdrá, valdremos, valdréis, valdrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	valdría, valdrías, valdría, valdríamos, valdríais, valdrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	val or vale, valga, valgamos, —, valgan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	valga, valgas, valga, valgamos, valgáis, valgan.

MODEL NUMBER 24

SALIR, *to go out*

This verb takes a *g* after the *l* of the root in the same cases as *valer*, model number 23. The *i* of *salir* is changed into *d* in the future indicative and in the conditional. The second person singular of the imperative loses its final *e*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	salgo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Future</i>	saldré, saldrás, saldrá, saldremos, saldréis, saldrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	saldría, saldrías, saldría, saldríamos, saldríais, saldrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	sal, salga, salgamos, —, salgan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	salga, salgas, salga, salgamos, salgáis, salgan.

MODEL NUMBER 25

CONSTITUIR, *to constitute*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *y* for *i*, in the cases shown below, i.e., when the *i* begins a syllable and is followed by *a*, *e* or *o* does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Participle</i>	constituyendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	constituyo, constituyes, constituye, —, —, constituyen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, constituyó, —, —, constituyeron.

<i>Imperative</i>	constituye, constituya, constituyamos, —, constituyan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	constituya, constituyas, constituya, constituyamos, constituyáis, constituyan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	constituyera, constituyeras, constituyera, constituyéramos, constituyerais, constituyeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	constituyese, constituyeses, constituyese, constituyésemos, constituyeseis, constituyesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	constituyere, constituyeres, constituyere, constituyéremos, constituyereis, constituyeren.

MODEL NUMBER 25a

CREER, *to believe*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *y* for *i* in the cases shown below, i.e., when the *i* begins a syllable and is followed by *a*, *e* or *o*, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Gerund</i>	creyendo.
<i>Past Indic.</i>	—, —, creyó, —, —, creyeron.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	creyera, creyeras, creyera, creyéramos, creyerais, creyeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	creyese, creyeses, creyese, creyésemos, creyeseis, creyesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	creyere, creyeres, creyere, creyéremos, creyereis, creyeren.

MODEL NUMBER 25b

SECAR, *to dry*

This verb is regular because the substitution of *qu* for *c* in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Past</i>	sequé, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, seque, sequemos, —, sequen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	seque, seques, seque, sequemos, sequéis, sequen.

MODEL NUMBER 25c

LLEGAR, *to arrive*

This verb is regular because the substitution of *gu* for *g*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Past</i>	llegué, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, llegue, lleguemos, —, lleguen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	llegue, llegues, llegue, lleguemos, lleguéis, lleguen.

MODEL NUMBER 25d

AVERIGUAR, *to find out, to ascertain*

This verb is regular because the addition of the dieresis to the *u*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Past</i>	averigüé, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, averigüe, averigüemos, —, averigüen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	averigüe, averigües, averigüe, averigüemos, averigüéis, averigüen.

MODEL NUMBER 25e

GOZAR, *to enjoy*

This verb is regular because the substitution of *c* for the *z* before *e*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Past</i>	goce, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, goce, gocemos, —, gocen.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	goce, goces, goce, gocemos, gocéis, gocen.

MODEL NUMBER 25f

EJERCER, *to practise* (a profession)

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *z* for the *c* before *a* and *o*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	ejerzo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, ejerza, ejerzamos, —, ejerzan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	ejerza, ejerzas, ejerza, ejerzamos, ejerzáis, ejerzan.

MODEL NUMBER 25g

ZURCIR, *to darn*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *z* for the *c* before *a* and *o*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	zurzo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, zurza, zurzamos, —, zurzan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	zurza, zurzas, zurza, zurzamos, zurzáis, zurzan.

MODEL NUMBER 25h

PROTEGER, *to protect*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *j* for the *g* before *a* and *o*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	protejo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, proteja, protejamos, —, protejan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	proteja, protejas, proteja, protejamos, protejáis, protejan.

MODEL NUMBER 25i

DIRIGIR, *to direct*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *j* for the *g* before *a* and *o* in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	dirijo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, dirija, dirijamos, —, dirijan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	dirija, dirijas, dirija, dirijamos, dirijáis, dirijan.

MODEL NUMBER 25j

EXTINGUIR, *to extinguish*

This verb is regular because the substitution of *g* for *gu* before *a* and *o*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	extingo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, extinga, extingamos, —, extingan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	extinga, extingas, extinga, extingamos, extingáis, extingan.

MODEL NUMBER 25k

DELINQUIR, *to transgress*

This verb is regular because the substitution of the *c* for *qu* before *a* and *o*, in the cases shown below, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	delinco, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, delinca, delincamos, —, delincan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	delinca, delincas, delinca, delincamos, delincáis, delincan.

VERBS WITH SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES

MODEL NUMBER 26

HABER, *to have*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	he, has, ha <i>or</i> hay, hemos, —, han.
<i>Past</i>	hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron.
<i>Future</i>	habré, habrás, habrá, habremos, habréis, habrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	habría, habrías, habría, habríamos, habríais, habrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	he, haya, hayamos, —, hayan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	hubiera, hubieras, hubiera, hubiéramos, hubierais, hubieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	hubiese, hubieses, hubiese, hubiésemos, hubieseis, hubiesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	hubiere, hubieres, hubiere, hubiéremos, hubiereis, hubieren.

MODEL NUMBER 27

TENER, *to have*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	tengo, tienes, tiene, —, —, tienen.
<i>Past</i>	tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron.
<i>Future</i>	tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendréis, tendrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendríais, tendrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	ten, tenga, tengamos, —, tengan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	tenga, tengas, tenga, tengamos, tengáis, tengan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	tuviera, tuvieras, tuviera, tuviéramos, tuvierais, tuvieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	tuviese, tuvieses, tuviese, tuviésemos, tuvieseis, tuviesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	tuviere, tuvieres, tuviere, tuviéremos, tuviereis, tuvieren.

MODEL NUMBER 28

SER, *to be*

<i>Gerund</i>	siendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son.
<i>Past</i>	fuí, fuiste, fué, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron.
<i>Imperfect</i>	era, eras, era, éramos, erais, eran.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, sea, seamos, —, sean.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	fuera, fueras, fuera, fuéramos, fuerais, fueran.
<i>Second form:</i>	fuese, fueses, fuese, fuésemos, fueseis, fuesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	fuere, fueres, fuere, fuéremos, fuereis, fueren.

MODEL NUMBER 29

ESTAR, *to be*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	estoy, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	estuviera, estuvieras, estuviera, estuviéramos, estuvierais, estuvieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	estuviese, estuvieses, estuviese, estuviésemos, estuvieseis, estuviesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	estuviere, estuvieres, estuviere, estuviéremos, estuviereis, estuvieren.

MODEL NUMBER 30

ANDAR, *to walk, to go*

<i>Past Indic.</i>	anduve, anduviste, anduvo, anduvimos, anduvisteis, anduvieron.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	anduviera, anduvieras, anduviera, anduviéramos, anduvierais, anduvieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	anduviese, anduvieses, anduviese, anduviésemos, anduvieseis, anduviesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	anduviere, anduvieres, anduviere, anduviéremos, anduviereis, anduvieren.

MODEL NUMBER 31

HACER, *to do, to make*

<i>Past Participle</i>	hecho.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	hago, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron.
<i>Future</i>	haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán.
<i>Conditional</i>	haría, harías, haría, haríamos, haríais, harían.
<i>Imperative</i>	haz, haga, hagamos, —, hagan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	hiciera, hicieras, hiciera, hiciéramos, hicierais, hicieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	hiciese, hicieses, hiciese, hiciésemos, hicieseis, hiciesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	hiciere, hicieres, hiciere, hiciéremos, hiciereis, hicieren.

MODEL NUMBER 32

SATISFACER, *to satisfy*

This verb is conjugated like *hacer*, model 31, but the *h* of *hacer* is changed into *f* and *satis* must always precede the *f*.

<i>Past Participle</i>	satisfecho.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	satisfago, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	satisfice, satisficiste, satisfizo, satisficimos, satisficisteis, satisficieron.
<i>Future</i>	satisfaré, satisfarás, satisfará, satisfaremos, satisfaréis, satisfarán.
<i>Conditional</i>	satisfaría, satisfarías, satisfaría, satisfaríamos, satisfaríais, satisfarían.
<i>Imperative</i>	satisfaz, satisfaga, satisfagamos, —, satisfagan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	satisfaga, satisfagas, satisfaga, satisfagamos, satisfagáis, satisfagan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: satisfacer, satisfaceras, satisfacer, satisfaceríamos, satisfacerais, satisfaceran.

Second form: satisficiera, satisficieras, satisficiera, satisficiéramos, satisficieras, satisficieran.

Future Subj. satisfacer, satisfaceres, satisfacer, satisficiéremos, satisfaceréis, satisfaceren.

MODEL NUMBER 33

DAR, *to give*

Pres. Indic. doy, —, —, —, —, —.

Past di, diste, dió, dimos, disteis, dieron.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: diera, dieras, diera, diéramos, dierais, dieran.

Second form: diese, dieses, diese, diésemos, dieseis, diesen.

Future Subj. diere, dieres, diere, diéremos, diereis, dieren.

MODEL NUMBER 34

DECIR, *to say*

Gerund diciendo.

Past Participle dicho.

Pres. Indic. digo, dices, dice, —, —, dicen.

Past dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron.

Future diré, dirás, dirá, diremos, diréis, dirán.

Conditional diría, dirías, diría, diríamos, diríais, dirían.

Imperative di, diga, digamos, —, digan.

Pres. Subj. diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: dijera, dijeras, dijera, diéramos, dijerais, dijeran.

Second form: dijese, dijese, dijese, diésemos, dijeseis, diesen.

Future Subj. dijere, dijeres, dijere, diéremos, dijereis, dieren.

MODEL NUMBER 35

PREDECIR, *to foretell*

This verb is conjugated like *decir*, model 34, with the exception of the second person singular imperative which is *predice*.

Gerund prediciendo.

Past Participle predicho.

Pres. Indic. predigo, predices, predice, —, —, predican.

Past predije, predijiste, predijo, predijimos, predijisteis, predijeron.

Imperative predice, prediga, predigamos, —, predigan.

Pres. Subj. prediga, predigas, prediga, predigamos, predigáis, predigan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: predijera, predijeras, predijera, predijéramos, predijerais, predijeran.

Second form: predijese, predijeses, predijese, predijésemos, predijeseis, predijesen.

Future Subj. predijere, predijeres, predijere, predijéremos, predijereis, predijeren.

MODEL NUMBER 36

BENDECIR, *to bless*

This verb is conjugated like *predecir* model 35, with the exception of the past participle.

Gerund bendiciendo.

Past Participle bendito. (This verb has also a regular past participle, *bendecido*, which is used for the formation of the compound tenses.)

Pres. Indic. bendigo, bendices, bendice, —, —, bendicen.

Past bendije, bendijiste, bendijo, bendijimos, bendijisteis, bendijeron.

Imperative bendice, bendiga, bendigamos, —, bendigan.

Pres. Subj. bendiga, bendigas, bendiga, bendigamos, bendigáis, bendigan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: bendijera, bendijeras, bendijera, bendijéramos, bendijerais, bendijeran.

Second form: bendijese, bendijeses, bendijese, bendijésemos, bendijeseis, bendijesen.

Future Subj. bendijere, bendijeres, bendijere, bendijéremos, bendijereis, bendijeren.

MODEL NUMBER 37

IR, *to go*

Gerund yendo.

Past Participle ido.

Pres. Indic. voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van.

Imperfect iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban.

Past fuí, fuiste, fué, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron.

Future iré, irás, irá, iremos, iréis, irán.

Conditional iría, irías, iría, iríamos, iríais, irían.

Imperative ve, vaya, vayamos or vamos, id, vayan.

Pres. Subj. vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: fuera, fueras, fuera, fuéramos, fuerais, fueran.

Second form: fuese, fueses, fuese, fuésemos, fueseis, fuesen.

Future Subj. fuere, fueres, fuere, fuéremos, fuereis, fueren.

MODEL NUMBER 38

OÍR, *to hear*

The substitution of *y* for *i* in the *past*, in both forms of the *imperfect subjunctive* and in the *future subjunctive*, does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Gerund</i>	oyendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	oigo, oyes, oye, —, —, oyen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, oyó, —, —, oyeron.
<i>Imperative</i>	oye, oiga, oigamos, —, oigan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	oiga, oigas, oiga, oigamos, oigáis, oigan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	oyera, oyeras, oyera, oyéramos, oyeráis, oyeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	oyese, oyese, oyese, oyésemos, oyeseis, oyesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	oyere, oyeres, oyere, oyéremos, oyereis, oyeren.

MODEL NUMBER 39

PODER, *to be able*

<i>Gerund</i>	pudiendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	puedo, puedes, puede, —, —, pueden.
<i>Past</i>	pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron.
<i>Future</i>	podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podréis, podrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, podrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	puede, pueda, —, —, puedan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	pueda, puedas, pueda, —, —, puedan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	pudiera, pudieras, pudiera, pudiéramos, pudierais, pudieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	pudiese,udieses, pudiese, pudiésemos, pudieseis, pudiesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	pudiere, pudieres, pudiere, pudiéremos, pudiereis, pudieren.

MODEL NUMBER 40

PONER, *to put*

<i>Past Participle</i>	puesto.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	pongo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron.
<i>Future</i>	pondré, pondrás, pondrá, pondremos, pondréis, pondrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	pondría, pondrías, pondría, pondríamos, pondríais, pondrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	pon, ponga, pongamos, —, pongan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	ponga, pongas, ponga, pongamos, pongáis, pongan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: pusiera, pusieras, pusiera, pusiéramos, pusierais, pusieran.

Second form: pusiese, pusieses, pusiese, pusiésemos, pusieseis, pusiesen.

Future Subj. pusiere, pusieres, pusiere, pusiéremos, pusiereis, pusieren.

MODEL NUMBER 41

QUERER, *to want, to love*

Pres. Indic. quiero, quieres, quiere, —, —, quieren.

Past quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisisteis, quisieron.

Future querré, querrás, querrá, querremos, querréis, querrán.

Conditional querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querríais, querrían.

Imperative quiere, quiera, —, —, quieran.

Pres. Subj. quiera, quieras, quiera, —, —, quieran.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: quisiera, quisieras, quisiera, quisiéramos, quisierais, quisieran.

Second form: quisiese, quisieses, quisiese, quisiésemos, quisieseis, quisiesen.

Future Subj. quisiere, quisieres, quisiere, quisiéremos, quisiereis, quisieren.

MODEL NUMBER 42

SABER, *to know*

Pres. Indic. sé, —, —, —, —, —.

Past supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron.

Future sabré, sabrás, sabrá, sabremos, sabréis, sabrán.

Conditional sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabríais, sabrían.

Imperative —, sepa, sepamos, —, sepan.

Pres. Subj. sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan.

Imperfect Subj.

First form: supiera, supieras, supiera, supiéramos, supierais, supieran.

Second form: supiese, supieses, supiese, supiésemos, supieseis, supiesen.

Future Subj. supiere, supieres, supiere, supiéremos, supiereis, supieren.

MODEL NUMBER 43

TRAER, *to bring*

Gerund trayendo.

Pres. Indic. traigo, —, —, —, —, —.

Past traje, trajiste, traje, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron.

<i>Imperative</i>	—, traiga, traigamos, —, traigan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	traiga, traigas, traiga, traigamos, traigáis, traigan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	trajera, trajeras, trajera, trajéramos, trajerais, trajeran,
<i>Second form:</i>	trajese, trajeses, trajese, trajésemos, trajeseis, trajesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	trajere, trajeres, trajere, trajéremos, trajereis, trajeren.

MODEL NUMBER 44

VER, *to see*

<i>Past Participle</i>	visto.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	veo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperfect</i>	veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, vea, veamos, —, vean.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean.

MODEL NUMBER 45

VENIR, *to come*

<i>Gerund</i>	viniendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	vengo, vienes, viene,—, —, vienen.
<i>Past</i>	vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron.
<i>Future</i>	vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendréis, vendrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendrías, vendrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	ven, venga, vengamos, —, vengan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	viniera, vinieras, viniera, viniéramos, vinierais, vinieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	viniese, vinieses, viniese, viniésemos, vinieseis, viniesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	viniere, vinieres, viniere, viniéremos, viniereis, vinieren.

MODEL NUMBER 46

CAER, *to fall*

When the substitution of *y* for *i* occurs in this verb, the forms are regular.

<i>Gerund</i>	cayendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	caigo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, cayó, —, —, cayeron.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, caiga, caigamos, —, caigan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	caiga, caigas, caiga, caigamos, caigáis, caigan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	cayera, cayeras, cayera, cayéramos, cayerais, cayeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	cayese, cayeses, cayese, cayésemos, cayeseis, cayesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	cayere, cayeres, cayere, cayéremos, cayereis, cayeren.

MODEL NUMBER 47

CABER, *to be contained*

<i>Pres. Indic</i>	quepo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	cupe, cupiste, cupo, cupimos, cupisteis, cupieron.
<i>Future</i>	cabré, cabrás, cabrá, cabremos, cabréis, cabrán.
<i>Conditional</i>	cabría, cabrías, cabría, cabríamos, cabríais, cabrían.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, quepa, quepamos, —, quepan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	quepa, quepas, quepa, quepamos, quepáis, quepan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	cupiera, cupieras, cupiera, cupiéramos, cupierais, cupieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	cupiese, cupieses, cupiese, cupiésemos, cupieseis, cupiesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	cupiere, cupieres, cupiere, cupiéremos, cupiereis, cupieren.

MODEL NUMBER 48

ASIR, *to seize*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	asgo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, asga, asgamos, —, asgan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	asga, asgas, asga, asgamos, asgáis, asgan.

MODEL NUMBER 49

ERGUIR, *to erect*

<i>Gerund</i>	irguiendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	irgo <i>or</i> yergo, irgues <i>or</i> yergues, irgue <i>or</i> yergue, —, —, irguen <i>or</i> yerguen.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, irguió, —, —, irguieron.
<i>Imperative</i>	irgue <i>or</i> yergue, irga <i>or</i> yerga, irgamos <i>or</i> yergamos, —, irgan <i>or</i> yergan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	irga <i>or</i> yerga, irgas <i>or</i> yergas, irga <i>or</i> yerga, irgamos <i>or</i> yergamos, irgáis <i>or</i> yergáis, irgan <i>or</i> yergan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	irguiera, irguieras, irguiera, irguiéramos, irguierais, irguieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	irguiese, irguieses, irguiese, irguiésemos, irguieseis, irguiesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	irguiere, irguieres, irguiere, irguiéremos, irguiereis, irguieren.

MODEL NUMBER 50

PLACER, *to please*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	plazco, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, plació <i>or</i> plugo, —, —, placieron <i>or</i> pluguieron.

<i>Imperative</i>	—, plazca, plazcamos, —, plazcan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	plazca, plazcas, plazca <i>or</i> plega <i>or</i> plegue, plazcamos, plazcáis, plazcan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	—, —, placiera <i>or</i> pluguiera, —, —, —.
<i>Second form:</i>	—, —, placiese <i>or</i> pluguiese, —, —, —.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	—, —, placiere <i>or</i> pluguiere, —, —, —.

MODEL NUMBER 51

PODRIR, *to decay, to rot*

NOTE.—The verb *podrir*, which is regular and which has the same meaning as *podrir*, is seldom used. *Podrido*, the regular past participle, is always used to form the compound tenses.

<i>Gerund</i>	podriendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	podro, pudres, pudre, —, —, pudren.
<i>Imperfect</i>	podría, pudrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, pudrían.
<i>Past</i>	podrí <i>or</i> podrí, pudriste <i>or</i> podriste, pudrió, pudrimos <i>or</i> pudrimos, pudristeis <i>or</i> podristeis, pudrieron.
<i>Future</i>	podriré, pudrirás, pudrirá, pudriremos, pudriréis, pudrirán. (The future is also used in its regular forms.)
<i>Conditional</i>	podriría, pudrirías, pudriría, pudriríamos, pudriríais, pudrirían. (The conditional is also used in its regular forms.)
<i>Imperative</i>	pudre, pudra, pudramos, pudrid <i>or</i> podrid, pudran.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	pudra, pudras, pudra, pudramos, pudráis, pudran.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	pudriera, pudrieras, pudriera, pudriéramos, pudrierais, pudrieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	pudriese, pudrieses, pudriese, pudriésemos, pudrieseis, pudriesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	pudriere, pudrieres, pudriere, pudriéremos, pudriereis, pudrieren.

MODEL NUMBER 52

YACER, *to lie in the grave*

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	yazco <i>or</i> yazgo <i>or</i> yago, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Imperative</i>	yace <i>or</i> yaz, yazca <i>or</i> yazga <i>or</i> yaga, yazcamos <i>or</i> yazgamos <i>or</i> yagamos, —, yazcan <i>or</i> yazgan <i>or</i> yagan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	yazca <i>or</i> yazga <i>or</i> yaga, yazcas <i>or</i> yazgas <i>or</i> yagas, yazca <i>or</i> yazga <i>or</i> yaga, yazcamos <i>or</i> yazgamos <i>or</i> yagamos, yazcáis <i>or</i> yazgáis <i>or</i> yagáis, yazcan <i>or</i> yazgan <i>or</i> yagan.

MODEL NUMBER 53

RAER, *to fray*

Of the different forms which some persons of certain tenses of this verb have, it is preferable to use the form which resembles that of the verb *caer*, to fall.

The substitution of *y* for *i* in the *past*, in both forms of the *imperfect subjunctive* and in the *future subjunctive* does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Gerund</i>	rayendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	rao or raigo or rayo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, rayó, —, —, rayeron.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, raiga or raya, raigamos or rayamos, —, raigan or rayan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	raiga or raya, raigas or rayas, raiga or raya, raigamos or rayamos, raigáis or rayáis, raigan or rayan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	rayera, rayeras, rayera, rayéramos, rayerais, rayeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	rayese, rayeres, rayese, rayésemos, rayeréis, rayeren.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	rayere, rayeres, rayere, rayéremos, rayereis, rayeren.

MODEL NUMBER 54

ROER, *to gnaw*

Of the different forms which some persons of certain tenses of this verb have, it is always preferable to use the regular ones given.

The substitution of *y* for *i* in the *past*, in both forms of the *imperfect subjunctive* and in the *future subjunctive* does not constitute an irregularity.

<i>Gerund</i>	royendo.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	roo or roigo or royo, —, —, —, —, —.
<i>Past</i>	—, —, royó, —, —, royeron.
<i>Imperative</i>	—, roiga or roya, roigamos or royamos, —, roigan or royan.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	roiga or roya, roigas or royas, roiga or roya, roigamos or royamos, roigáis or royáis, roigan or royan.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	royera, royeras, royera, royéramos, royeráis, royeran.
<i>Second form:</i>	royese, royeses, royese, royésemos, royeséis, royesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	royere, royeres, royere, royéremos, royereis, royeren.

MODEL NUMBER 55

CUBRIR, *to cover*

<i>Past Participle</i>	cubierto.
------------------------	-----------

MODEL NUMBER 56

ABRIR, *to open**Past Participle* abierto.

MODEL NUMBER 57

ESCRIBIR, *to write**Past Participle* escrito.

MODEL NUMBER 58

IMPRIMIR, *to print**Past Participle* impreso.

MODEL NUMBER 59

PRENDER, *to arrest**Past Participle* preso.

NOTE.—This verb has also a regular past participle, *prendido*, which is used much less than the irregular.

MODEL NUMBER 60

PROVEER, *to provide**Past Participle* provisto.

NOTE.—This verb has also a regular past participle, *proveído*, which is used much less than the irregular.

MODEL NUMBER 61

ROMPER, *to break**Past Participle* roto.

NOTE.—This verb has also a regular past participle, *rompido*, the use of which is obsolete.

MODEL NUMBER 62

SOLER, *to be accustomed*

This defective verb is conjugated like *mover*, model number 7, but it is not used in the imperative, future, future perfect, past anterior, conditional, and future and future perfect subjunctive.

Pres. Indic. suelo, sueles, suele, —, —, suelen.

Pres. Subj. suela, suelas, suela, —, —, suelen.

MODEL NUMBER 63

ABOLIR, *to abolish*

This is a defective regular verb which is used in all the compound tenses and in the persons of the simple tenses shown below.

<i>Gerund</i>	aboliendo.
<i>Past Participle</i>	abolido.
<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	abolimos, abolís.
<i>Imperf.</i>	abolía, abolías, abolía, abolíamos, abolíais, abolían.
<i>Past</i>	abolí, aboliste, abolió, abolimos, abolisteis, abolieron.
<i>Future</i>	aboliré, abolirás, abolirá, aboliremos, aboliréis, abolirán.
<i>Imperative</i>	abolid.
<i>Imperfect Subj.</i>	
<i>First form:</i>	aboliera, abolieras, aboliera, aboliéramos, abolierais, abolieran.
<i>Second form:</i>	aboliese, abolieses, aboliese, aboliésemos, abolieseis, aboliesen.
<i>Future Subj.</i>	aboliere, abolieres, aboliere, aboliéremos, aboliereis, abolieren.

CHAPTER VI

ADVERBS

The principal Spanish adverbs are:

(a) Adverbs of place:

abajo, <i>down, downstairs, below</i>	aquí, <i>here</i> (near the person who speaks)
acá, <i>hither, here</i> (near the person who speaks)	arriba, <i>up, up-stairs, above</i>
adelante, <i>forward</i>	bajo, <i>low</i>
adonde, <i>whither</i> (adónde, interrogative)	cerca, <i>near</i>
afuera, <i>outside, without</i>	debajo, <i>beneath</i>
ahí, <i>there</i> (near the person spoken to)	delante, <i>ahead, in front of, forward</i>
alrededor, <i>around</i>	dentro, <i>inside, within</i>
allá, <i>thither, there</i> (far from the person who speaks)	detrás, <i>behind</i>
allí, <i>there</i> (far from the person who speaks)	donde, <i>where</i> (dónde, interrog.)
	dondequiera, <i>wherever</i>
	enfrente, <i>opposite</i>
	fuera, <i>outside, without</i>
	lejos, <i>far</i>

(b) Adverbs of time:

ahora, <i>now</i>	hoy, <i>to-day</i>
anoche, <i>last night</i>	inmediatamente, <i>immediately</i>
anteayer or antier, <i>the day before yesterday</i>	jamás, <i>never, ever</i>
anteanoche or antenoche, <i>night before last</i>	luego, <i>then, next, soon</i>
antes, <i>before, first</i>	mañana, <i>to-morrow</i>
aun (aún), <i>still, yet, even</i>	mientras, <i>in the meantime, while</i>
ayer, <i>yesterday</i>	nunca, <i>never</i>
constantemente, <i>constantly</i>	presto, <i>soon, quickly</i>
continuamente, <i>continuously</i>	pronto, <i>soon, quickly</i>
cuando, <i>when</i>	siempre, <i>always, ever</i>
después, <i>afterwards, then, since</i>	tarde, <i>late</i>
diariamente, <i>daily</i>	temprano, <i>early</i>
entonces, <i>then</i>	todavía, <i>still, yet</i>
eternamente, <i>eternally</i>	últimamente, <i>lately</i>
	ya, <i>already, now</i>

(c) Adverbs of manner:

adrede, <i>on purpose, purposely</i>	bruscamente, <i>abruptly</i>
alto, <i>aloud, loudly</i>	como, <i>how</i> (cómo, interrogative)
aprisa, <i>quickly, fast, hastily</i>	de prisa, <i>quickly, fast</i>
así, <i>thus, so</i>	despacio, <i>slowly, slow</i>
bajo, <i>low, softly</i>	mal, <i>badly, ill</i>
bien, <i>well</i>	

(d) Quantity and Degree:

algo, <i>somewhat, rather</i>	mejor, <i>better</i>
apenas, <i>scarcely, hardly</i>	menos, <i>less</i>
bastante, <i>enough, sufficiently,</i> <i>rather, quite</i>	mucho, <i>much</i>
casi, <i>almost, nearly</i>	muy, <i>very</i>
cuanto, <i>how much</i> (cuánto, interrogative)	nada, <i>nothing</i>
demasiado, <i>too much</i>	peor, <i>worse</i>
harto, <i>full, well, enough</i>	poco, <i>little, slightly</i>
más, <i>more</i>	tan, <i>so, as</i>
	tanto, <i>as much, so much</i>

(e) Affirmation and Negation:

ciertamente, <i>certainly</i>	nunca, <i>never, ever</i>
claro, <i>clearly, of course</i>	positivamente, <i>positively</i>
indudablemente, <i>undoubtedly</i>	seguramente, <i>surely</i>
jamás, <i>never, ever</i>	sí, <i>yes</i>
justamente, <i>justly</i>	también, <i>also</i>
justo, <i>just so, exactly</i>	tampoco, <i>neither</i>
nada, <i>not at all</i>	verdaderamente, <i>truly</i>
no, <i>no, not</i>	

(f) Doubt, Order and Exclusion:

acaso, <i>perhaps</i>	solamente, <i>only</i>
exclusivamente, <i>exclusively</i>	sólo, <i>only</i>
menos, <i>less</i>	sucesivamente, <i>successively</i>
ordenadamente, <i>orderly, me-</i> <i>thodically</i>	tal vez, <i>perhaps</i>
primeramente, <i>firstly</i>	únicamente, <i>only, solely</i>
quizá, } <i>perhaps</i>	últimamente, <i>lastly</i>
quizás, }	

IMPORTANT ADVERBIAL PHRASES

a buenas, <i>willingly</i>	a las claras, <i>openly, clearly</i>
a ciegas, <i>blindly</i>	a lo más, <i>at the most</i>
a escondidas, <i>secretly, in a hidden</i> <i>way</i>	a lo mejor, <i>when least expected</i>
a gatas, <i>on all fours</i>	a lo menos, <i>at least</i>
a la corta o a la larga, <i>sooner or</i> <i>later</i>	a manos llenas, <i>liberally, abun-</i> <i>dantly</i>
a la derecha, <i>to or on the right</i>	a más tardar, <i>at the latest</i>
a la izquierda, <i>to or on the left</i>	a más no poder, <i>with all one's</i> <i>might</i>
a la larga, <i>in the long run</i>	a menudo, <i>often</i>
a la ligera, <i>lightly, superficially</i>	a obscuras, <i>in the dark</i>
a la mano, <i>at hand</i>	a porfía, <i>persistently</i>
a la moda, <i>in style</i>	a sabiendas, <i>knowingly</i>
a la verdad, <i>truly, in truth</i>	a secas, <i>solely</i>
a la vista, <i>in sight, visibly</i>	a solas, <i>alone</i>

a sus anchas, <i>at one's ease</i>	de sopetón, <i>suddenly</i>
a tientas, <i>gropingly</i>	de veras, <i>really, truly</i>
a todo trance, <i>resolutely, at any risk</i>	de vez en cuando, <i>now and then</i>
a veces, <i>at times</i>	en ayunas, <i>without having eaten anything, uninformed</i>
acto continuo, <i>immediately, afterward</i>	en contra, <i>against</i>
al aire libre, <i>in the open air</i>	en cueros, <i>naked</i>
al fin, <i>at last, finally</i>	en efecto, <i>in fact, indeed</i>
al momento, <i>at once, instantly</i>	en el acto, <i>at once, instantly</i>
al raso, <i>in the open air</i>	en fin, <i>in short</i>
al revés, <i>on the contrary</i>	en lo sucesivo, <i>henceforth, in the future</i>
casi nunca, <i>hardly ever, almost never</i>	en mi vida, <i>never (lit. in my life)</i>
como de costumbre, <i>as usual</i>	en ninguna parte, <i>nowhere</i>
con cuidado, <i>carefully</i>	en otra parte, <i>elsewhere</i>
con todo, <i>notwithstanding</i>	en pro, <i>in favor of</i>
cuando más, <i>at the most</i>	en resumen, <i>in short</i>
cuando menos, <i>at least</i>	en seguida, <i>at once</i>
cuanto antes, <i>as soon as possible</i>	eso no, <i>not that</i>
cuesta abajo, <i>down-hill</i>	eso sí, <i>that of course</i>
cuesta arriba, <i>up-hill</i>	hoy día, <i>nowadays</i>
de antemano, <i>beforehand</i>	mar afuera, <i>seaward</i>
de balde, <i>gratis, free</i>	para siempre, <i>for ever</i>
de buena gana, <i>willingly</i>	paso a paso, <i>step by step</i>
de buenas a primeras, <i>all at once, suddenly</i>	por aquí, <i>this way, near here</i>
de cabeza, <i>headlong, head first</i>	por encima, <i>superficially, over</i>
de espaldas, <i>backwards</i>	por lo menos, <i>at least</i>
de golpe, <i>suddenly</i>	por lo pronto, <i>for the time being, provisionally</i>
de improviso, <i>unexpectedly</i>	por lo regular, <i>ordinarily, commonly</i>
de mala gana, <i>unwillingly</i>	por supuesto, <i>of course</i>
de ningún modo, <i>by no means</i>	sin duda,
de noche, <i>at night</i>	sin duda alguna,
de nuevo, <i>anew</i>	sin duda ninguna,
de oídas, <i>by hearsay</i>	sin embargo, <i>however, nevertheless</i>
de par en par, <i>wide open</i>	sin más acás ni más allás, <i>without if's or and's</i>
de prisa, <i>fast</i>	tal vez, <i>perhaps</i>
de pronto, <i>suddenly</i>	tierra adentro, <i>inland</i>
de puntillas, <i>on tiptoe</i>	¡ya lo creo! <i>yes, indeed!</i>
de raíz, <i>radically</i>	
de repente, <i>suddenly</i>	
de rodillas, <i>kneeling</i>	

ADVERBIAL PHRASES WHICH ARE USED ONLY WITH CERTAIN VERBS

The italicized adverbial phrases are used only with the verbs shown in the sentences which follow.

Los miró *de hito en hito* y les disparó *el revólver a quemarropa*.

He looked them through and through and fired the revolver at them point blank.

Sé eso *de buena tinta*, y por esto puedo decir que estaba gritando *a voz en cuello*.

I know that from a reliable source, and for that reason I can tell you that he was shouting at the top of his voice.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

POSITION IN REGARD TO THE VERB

Adverbs usually follow the verb, except in interrogative sentences, in which case they precede; but they may be placed wherever they render the sentence more emphatic, more flexible or more harmonious.

Examples:

Es *muy* mezquino. *He is very stingy.*

Claramente se lo he dicho. *I have plainly said it to him.*

Habla *bien*. *He speaks well.*

¿*Cómo* está usted? *How are you?*

¿*Cuándo* llegaremos? *When shall we arrive?*

¿*Cuánto* es? *How much is it?*

POSITION IN REGARD TO ADJECTIVES AND PAST PARTICIPLES

Adverbs are placed before the adjectives, and usually before the past participles that they modify whether the past participles are used alone or with the auxiliary verbs *ser* and *estar*; but they must never be placed between the parts of the compound tenses formed with *haber*.

Examples:

Ese hombre *tan* modesto ha hablado *poco*, pero ha dicho *mucho*.

That man who is so modest has spoken little, but has said much.

Ella es *sumamente* buena y caritativa.

She is exceedingly good and charitable.

Será *espléndidamente* recompensado. } *He will be splendidly rewarded.*

Será recompensado *espléndidamente*. }

Está *bien* considerado. *He is well considered.*

POSITION IN REGARD TO ADVERBIAL PHRASES

Adverbs which modify adverbial phrases precede the whole phrase.

Examples:

muy a menudo, *very often*

tan a menudo, *so often*

muy de mala gana, *very unwillingly*

tan de mala gana, *so unwillingly*

muy de repente, *very suddenly*

tan de repente, *so suddenly*

muy de prisa, *very fast*

tan de prisa, *so fast*

POSITION OF *bien*

When *bien* precedes the verb it is very emphatic, and at times must be translated by other words than *well*.

Examples:

Bien le está. That serves him right.

Bien han charlado. They have had a good talk.

NOTE.—See second note, page 255, for the comparison of adverbs.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS ENDING IN *mente*

1. Adverbs which are formed by an adjective, plus the ending *mente*, correspond to those which in English end in *ly*.

Examples:

especialmente, *especially*

comúnmente, *commonly*

2. Adverbs which are formed by a positive adjective or superlative ending in *o*, plus the ending *mente*, change the *o* into *a* to admit the ending *mente*.

Examples:

hermoso, *beautiful*

hermosísimo, *most beautiful*

hermosamente, *beautifully*

hermosísimamente, *most beautifully*

3. Adjectives which end in a consonant or in any other vowel than *o*, do not change any letter when receiving the addition of *mente*, to become adverbs.

Examples:

hermosa, *beautiful*

hábil, *skilful*.

hermosamente, *beautifully*

hábilmente, *skilfully*

hermosísima, *most beautiful*

habilísima, *most skilful*

hermosísimamente, *most beautifully* habilísimamente, *most skilfully*

NOTE *a*.—The orthographic, as well as the vocal accent, is retained by the adjectives when *mente* is added to them to form an adverb.

NOTE *b*.—*Mente* is always stressed vocally on its first syllable, no matter on what syllable the adjective which forms the adverb with *mente* is stressed. Consequently we have to say, for instance, *hermósamente*, *corréctamente* and not *hermosaménte*, *correctaménte*.

SUPPRESSION OF THE ENDING *mente* OF ADVERBS

1. If two or more adverbs ending in *mente* occur together in a sentence and modify the same word, *mente* is suppressed in all the adverbs but the last. This is done for the sake of euphony.

Habla clara, concisa y elegantemente.

He speaks clearly, concisely and elegantly.

Dijo eso *distinta y enfáticamente*.

He said that distinctly and emphatically.

La mujer más hermosa se presentó *sencilla pero graciosa y elegantemente* ataviada.

The most beautiful woman presented herself simply, but gracefully and elegantly attired.

2. If the adverbs do not modify the same word, the repetition of the ending *mente* is avoided by the use of an equivalent.

Examples:

Habla *correctamente* y lee *con rapidez*.

He speaks correctly and reads rapidly.

Habla *elocuentemente* y escribe *de un modo perfecto*.

He speaks eloquently and writes perfectly.

SUBSTITUTION OF ADVERBIAL PHRASES FOR ADVERBS ENDING IN *mente*

Adverbs of manner ending in *mente* may be and frequently are replaced by adverbial phrases, for the sake of euphony. These adverbial phrases are formed by the expressions *de una manera* and *de un modo*, both meaning *in a way or manner*, followed by an adjective. They are also formed by using an appropriate noun preceded by the preposition *con*.

Examples:

elegantemente, elegantly

de una manera elegante, in an elegant manner

de un modo elegante, in an elegant way

con elegancia, with elegance

} *elegantly*

SHORTENING OF THE ADVERB *recientemente*

Recientemente becomes *recién* when it precedes a past participle.

Examples:

El *recién* llegado tiene modales muy finos.

The newly arrived person has very refined manners.

Los *recién* casados pasarán una luna de miel deliciosa.

The newly married couple will spend a delightful honeymoon.

REMARKS ABOUT *aquí*, *allí*, AND *acá*, *allá*

1. *Aquí* and *allí* are adverbs which imply a definite spot, while *acá* and *allá* have a more general or indefinite meaning.

Aquí and *allí* are properly used to indicate either *position* or *rest in a place*, while *motion to a place* is expressed by *acá* and *allá*. This distinction, however, is not strictly observed, and *aquí* and *allí* are used interchangeably in many instances with *acá* and *allá*.

Examples:

Aquí se habla español. Spanish is spoken here.

El aguador está aquí. The water-carrier is here.

El aguador viene aquí or acá. The water-carrier is coming here.

Resido allí. I reside there.

Ven acá. Come here.

Allá va. There he goes.

NOTE.—*Ahí* may be used to indicate *position* or *rest* in a place as well as *motion* to a place. Example: *Por ahí anda, hecho un perdido. He is around somewhere, gone to the dogs.*

2. *Aquí, ahí, allí* and *acá, allá* may be preceded by prepositions and followed by other adverbs.

Examples:

De aquí en adelante. From now on, henceforward.

Vive por aquí. He lives around here.

No está allí fuera. He is not out there.

Está aquí dentro. He is in here.

REMARKS ABOUT *aun*

The monosyllable *aun*, *still, yet, even, as yet*, is made dissyllabic and written *aún* when it follows the words that it modifies.

Examples:

Aun (or todavía) está allí.

He is still there.

Aun (or todavía) no ha llegado. } He has not yet arrived.

No ha llegado aún (or todavía). }

Aun así, no me inspira confianza.

Even so, he does not inspire me with confidence.

REMARKS ABOUT *muy*

Muy, very, much, which is never used alone, is placed before adverbs, adjectives and past participles conjugated with *ser* and *estar*. It never precedes the adverbs *mucho, más, menos, tan* or *tanto*.

Examples:

Estoy muy bien. I am very well.

Es muy tímida. She is very timid.

Le estoy muy agradecido. I am much obliged to him.

¿Tiene usted mucho calor? Sí, mucho. Are you very warm? Yes, very.

NOTE.—*Very much* is rendered into Spanish by *muchísimo*; never by *muy mucho*.

REMARKS ABOUT *mucho*

Mucho is the equivalent of *very* in those idiomatic expressions which require in Spanish a noun after the verb *tener*, and in English an adjective after the verb *to be*.

Examples:

Tengo *mucha* sed. *I am very thirsty.*

Tiene *mucha* hambre. *He is very hungry.*

REMARKS ABOUT *ya*

1. The meaning of *ya*, when used in affirmative sentences, is *already*, *now*, *at some other time*, etc., and when used negatively its meaning is *no longer*, *not any more*. It is frequently used as an intensifier of statements with no equivalent in English. Its position is usually at the beginning of the sentence.

Examples:

Ya es hora de ir al sarao.

It is already time to go to the reception or entertainment (in the evening).

Ya hemos recibido la invitación para la conferencia.

We have already received the invitation for the lecture.

Ya se ha terminado la tertulia. *The social gathering or party is over.*

Ya es tarde. *It is already late, or it is late now.*

Ya no pinto. *I do not paint any longer or any more.*

Ya nos veremos. *We shall see each other later or at some other time.*

Ya comprendo. *Now I understand.*

Ya somos tres. *Now we are three.*

Dile que *ya* voy. *Tell her that I am coming.* (Notice the use of *to go* instead of *to come* in the Spanish sentence.)

Ya lo creo. *I should say so.*

Me parece que *ya* tarda. *It seems to me that he is behind time.*

Ya se ve que tiene medios. *It is evident he has means.*

REMARKS ABOUT *mismo*

Mismo is used to intensify adverbs of time and place.

Examples:

Ahí mismo sucedió la tragedia. *The tragedy happened right there.*

Lo quiero *ahora mismo*. *I want it right now.*

Ayer mismo lo vimos. *Only yesterday we saw him.*

REMARKS ABOUT *donde*

Donde, *where*, when used interrogatively, is preceded by different prepositions, according to the meaning intended.

Examples:

¿*Dónde* está el titiritero? *Where is the puppet-showman?*

¿*En dónde* está el empresario de pompas fúnebres?

Where is the funeral director?

¿Adónde or a dónde conduce este camino? *Where does this road lead to?*
 ¿De dónde vienes con esa cara de pocos amigos?
Where do you come from with that long face?
 ¿Por dónde viniste, por la carretera o por la senda?
How did you come, by the high road or by the path?

REMARKS ABOUT THE WORD *parte* WHEN USED IN ADVERBIAL PHRASES

Parte, part, is used to form adverbial phrases which are equivalent to the English *where* when preceded by and united to *no*, *some*, *every*, *any*, etc..

Examples:

Hoy no quiero ir a ninguna parte.
To-day I want to go nowhere or I do not want to go anywhere.
 Mañana iremos a alguna parte. *To-morrow we shall go somewhere.*
 Mi conciencia y mi sombra me acompañan a todas partes.
My conscience and my shadow accompany me everywhere.
 Los gérmenes de vida están en todas partes.
The germs of life are everywhere.
 Allí hay flores y alegría por todas partes.
Flowers and joy are there, everywhere.

REMARKS ABOUT *no*

1. In negative sentences *no* precedes the simple tenses of the verb, the auxiliary verb in compound tenses, and the reflexive and other objective personal pronouns.

Examples:

No vendrá hoy. *He will not come to-day.*
 No ha terminado su tarea. *He has not finished his task.*
 Hoy no se ha lavado la cara. *To-day he has not washed his face.*
 No lo lleves hoy a visitar el acuario. *Do not take him to-day to visit the aquarium.*

2. When negative words are used in the sentence after the verb, *no* precedes the verb; but if the negative words are placed before the verb, *no* is omitted.

Examples:

No veo a nadie. } *I see nobody.*
 A nadie veo. } *I don't see anybody.*
 No tengo nada. } *I have nothing.*
 Nada tengo. }

3. When adverbs and pronouns are used without a verb, *no* may be placed either before or after them, but the preferable way is to place it after.

Examples:

Ahora <i>no</i> , <i>not now</i>	yo <i>no</i> , <i>not I</i>
Todavía <i>no</i> , <i>not yet</i>	a él <i>no</i> , <i>not to him</i>

4. When a verb is followed by two nouns or adjectives in a negative clause, *no* precedes the first and *ni* the second.

Examples:

No es alto ni bajo. He is not tall nor short.

No tiene salud ni dinero. He has no health nor money.

NOTE.—If the correlative *ni* should be placed also before the adjective *alto* of the first sentence and before the noun *salud* of the second, the sentences would be more emphatic and would have to be translated into English thus: *He is neither tall nor short. He has neither health nor money.*

HOW TO RENDER IN SPANISH *long, very long, a long time, ETC.*

The adverb of time *long* is rendered in Spanish by the word *tiempo*; *very long* and *a long time*, by *mucho tiempo*.

Examples:

¿Cuánto *tiempo* dura la función? *How long does the performance last?*
Dura mucho tiempo. It lasts very long.

Dura demasiado (tiempo). It lasts too long.

¡Hace tanto *tiempo* que no me escribe! *It is so long since he has written me!*

Necesito más tiempo para hacer eso bien. I need a longer time to do that well.

Necesita mucho tiempo para hacer eso bien. He needs a long time or a very long time to do that well.

Yo no he estado aquí mucho tiempo. I have not been here long or very long.

CHAPTER VII

PREPOSITIONS

The important simple Spanish prepositions are:

a, <i>to, at, in, into, on, from, of</i>	hacia, <i>towards</i>
ante, <i>before (an authority), in the presence of</i>	hasta, <i>until, till, up to, as far as</i>
bajo, <i>under, below</i>	mediante, <i>by means of</i>
con, <i>with</i>	menos, <i>except, save</i>
contra, <i>against</i>	para, <i>for, in order to</i>
de, <i>of, from, by, about, on, with</i>	por, <i>by, for, in, from, through, along, on account</i>
desde, <i>from, since</i>	salvo, <i>except, save</i>
durante, <i>during</i>	según, <i>according to</i>
en, <i>in, into, at, on, like, of</i>	sin, <i>without</i>
entre, <i>among, between</i>	so (<i>seldom used</i>), <i>under</i>
excepto, <i>except</i>	sobre, <i>on, upon, over, above, about</i>
	tras, <i>after, behind</i>

The most commonly used compound prepositions or prepositional phrases, generally made up of an adverb or adjective, plus a preposition, are:

acerca de, <i>about, concerning, regarding</i>	dentro de, <i>within, inside of</i>
además de, <i>besides, in addition to</i>	después de, <i>after (time or order)</i>
alrededor de, <i>around</i>	detras de, <i>behind, after (place)</i>
antes de, <i>before (time or order)</i>	encima de, <i>on, over, above, on top of</i>
cerca de, <i>near, near to, about (number)</i>	enfrente de, } <i>opposite to, in front of</i>
	frente a }
concerniente a, <i>concerning</i>	fuera de, <i>outside of, without</i>
conforme a, <i>according to</i>	juntamente con, <i>together with</i>
contrario a, <i>contrary to</i>	junto a, <i>close to, near</i>
correspondiente a, <i>corresponding to</i>	lejos de, <i>far from</i>
debajo de, <i>under</i>	más allá de, <i>beyond</i>
delante de, <i>in front of (place)</i>	respecto a, <i>with regard to</i>
	tocante a, <i>in regard to</i>

Important compound prepositions, or prepositional phrases, made up of two prepositions with an intervening term.

a causa de, <i>because of</i>	a más de, <i>besides</i>
a excepción de, <i>excepting</i>	a pesar de, <i>in spite of</i>
a fin de, <i>in order that</i>	a razón de, <i>at the rate of</i>
a fuerza de, <i>by dint of</i>	al lado de, <i>by the side of</i>
a (or al) través de, <i>across, through</i>	con dirección a, <i>toward</i>

con motivo de, <i>on account of</i>	en vez de, <i>instead of</i>
de parte, <i>from, on the part of</i>	en virtud de, <i>by virtue of</i>
en contra de, <i>against</i>	en vista de, <i>in view of</i>
en cuanto a, <i>as for, as to</i>	por causa de, <i>on account of</i>
en lugar de, <i>instead of, in place of</i>	por medio de, <i>by means of</i>
en pos de, <i>in pursuit of</i>	por razón de, <i>by reason of</i>
en pro de, <i>in favor of</i>	sin embargo, <i>notwithstanding</i>

USE OF THE PREPOSITION *a*

1. The preposition *a* is used in Spanish when the direct object is a person, in which case it is not translated in English.

Examples:

Amo *a* la niña. *I love the girl (or child).*

Veo *al* niño. *I see the child.*

2. After verbs which involve the idea of depriving, asking, buying, etc., with either *of* or *from* as its English equivalent.

Examples:

Quítale el lacre *a* Victor. *Take the sealing-wax from Victor.*

Pídele el favor *a* esa señora. *Ask the favor of that lady.*

Yo no compro nunca billetes de teatro *a* los revendedores. *I never buy theatre tickets from the ticket speculators.*

3. To express position and direction.

Examples:

Estoy *a* la mesa. *I am at the table.*

Pienso marchar *a* Madrid. *I am thinking of going to Madrid.*

A mano derecha. *To the right.*

A mano izquierda. *To the left.*

Al sur. *To the south.*

A la entrada. *At the entrance.*

Voy *al* teatro. *I am going to the theatre.*

4. To indicate distribution and distance or an intervening lapse of time.

Examples:

uno *a* uno, *one by one*

gota *a* gota, *drop by drop*

poco *a* poco, *little by little*

paso *a* paso, *step by step*

De plaza *a* plaza hay media hora de camino. *From square to square there is a half hour walk.*

El almuerzo se sirve de ocho *a* diez. *Breakfast is served from eight to ten.*

5. To denote manner or means.

Examples:

al contado y al fiado, for cash and on credit.

al por mayor y al por menor, by wholesale and retail.

andar a pie o a caballo, to go on foot or on horseback.

matar a alguien a disgustos, to worry someone to death, to kill someone by worrying.

matar a palos, to kill by beating with a stick.

6. To denote price, rate and time.

Examples:

a seis dólares la docena, at six dollars per dozen.

a cinco centavos el ciento, at five cents the hundred.

a cien millas por hora, at one hundred miles an hour.

a las tres, at three o'clock.

¿A cuántos estamos (hoy)? A dieciocho. What day of the month is it? The eighteenth.

7. In some phrases which denote cause, and in idiomatic expressions.

Examples:

a instancias mías, at my instance.

a beneficio del asilo, for the benefit of the asylum.

a pesar mío, in spite of me.

a orillas del río, on the bank of the river.

a orillas del lago o del mar, on the shores of the lake or sea.

a la inglesa, in the English style.

a regaña dientes, reluctantly.

a todo correr, at full speed.

a media milla, half a mile away.

a principios del mes, at the beginning of the month.

a mediados de la semana, at the middle of the week.

a fines del año, at the end of the year.

USE OF *de*, *of*, *from*, *by*, *about*, *on*, *with*

1. The preposition *de* is used in Spanish to express the idea of possession and the material of which a thing is made.

Examples:

*el tupé de ese sinvergüenza, the nerve or cheek of that shameless one (literal meaning of *tupé* is toupée).*

los cuernos de la vaca, the cow's horns.

la mesita de mármol, the little marble table.

la sombrilla de seda, the silk parasol.

2. To denote source, origin, separation, manner, state and condition

Examples:

Es *de* esta ciudad (source). *He is from this city.*

Los seres humanos descienden, según nuestra creencia, *de* Adán y Eva (origin). *Human beings descend, according to our belief, from Adam and Eve.*

Me separo *de* ti con el corazón despedazado (separation). *I go away from you with my heart broken.*

Está *de* pie (manner). *He is standing.*

Estoy *de* viaje (state). *I am travelling.*

Está *de* mal humor (condition). *He is in an ill humor.*

3. To indicate the cause of actions or conditions, and the use for which a thing is intended.

Examples:

La madre llora *de* alegría al ver a su hijo (cause of action).

The mother weeps with joy upon seeing her son.

Está muerto *de* sed, *de* hambre o *de* cansancio (cause of the condition).

He is dying of thirst, of hunger or of fatigue.

Quiero un billete *de* entrada (use).

I want an admission ticket.

4. In phrases which indicate the contents of receptacles, and the distinguishing features or characteristics of persons, animals and things as well as the groups formed by them.

Examples:

un vaso *de* vino o *de* cerveza, *a glass of wine or beer.*

la *del* impermeable negro, *the one with a black raincoat.*

el caballo *de* carrera, *the race-horse.*

la cosecha *del* año pasado, *last year's harvest.*

un grupo *de* personas, *a group of persons.*

una bandada *de* pájaros, *a flock of birds.*

un puñado *de* rosas, *a handful of roses.*

5. In phrases which denote time, professions, occupations, etc.

Examples:

Ven *de* día o *de* noche.

Come by day or by night.

de diez a once, *from ten to eleven.*

de la noche a la mañana, *from morning to night, suddenly, unexpectedly.*

Él irá *de* cónsul a esa ciudad, y mi amigo *de* agregado naval.

He will go as consul to that city, and my friend as naval attaché.

El oficio *de* herrero y el *de* electricista son bien remunerados.

The calling of a blacksmith and that of an electrician are well remunerated.

6. Often to indicate the agent of a passive verb, when the action is not of a physical nature; also to represent *than* when followed by the neuter article *lo* plus an adjective or a past participle, and in certain idiomatic expressions.

Examples:

El general es temido *de* todos. *The general is feared by all.*

La profesora es estimada *de* sus alumnas. *The professor (fem.) is esteemed by her students.*

Él me molesta más *de* lo necesario. *He troubles me more than is necessary.*

Come más *de* lo conveniente. *He eats more than is convenient.*

Ha contado más *de* lo dicho. *He has told more than was said.*

Va *de* mal en peor. *He goes from bad to worse.*

Se pasa *de* cortés. *He is over polite.*

No te encojas *de* hombros. *Don't shrug your shoulders.*

USE OF THE PREPOSITION *en*

1. To denote location and the length of time within which an action takes place.

Examples:

Lo he puesto *en* el cajón. *I have put it in the drawer.*

Estoy *en* la sala. *I am in the parlor.*

Está *en* la cama. *He is in bed.*

La cena está *en* la mesa. *The supper is on the table.*

Estaré de vuelta *en* un par de horas. *I shall be back in a couple of hours.*

Lo terminaré *en* un momento. *I shall finish it in a moment.*

2. To indicate the manner or the result of an action.

Examples:

Gastan su fortuna *en* tonterías y su fuerza *en* calaveradas.

They spend their fortune in foolish things and their strength in wild escapades.

Estoy haciendo un progreso notable *en* el idioma que estudio.

I am making a notable progress in the language I am studying.

USE OF *encima de*, *por encima de* AND *sobre*

Encima de, *on top of* or *above*, is used to denote the location of an object which is placed upon another, but it may also indicate the position of objects above other objects.

Por encima de, when it implies motion is equivalent to *over*.

Sobre, *on*, *upon*, besides denoting location, has the meaning of *about*, *concerning* and *over*, in a figurative sense.

Examples:

Encima de (or *sobre*) la cómoda. *On or upon the chest of drawers.*

La lámpara colgante está *encima de* la mesa.

The hanging lamp is over (above) the table.

Los pájaros vuelan *por encima* de los árboles. *Birds fly over the trees.*

Estoy de pie *sobre* el taburete. *I am standing on the stool.*

Está dando una conferencia *sobre* las estrellas.

He is giving a lecture about the stars.

USE OF *detrás de*, *tras* AND *después de*

Detrás de, *behind*, principally indicates location. *Tras*, *after*, *behind*, denotes succession. *Después de*, *after*, is used in reference to time, and also to indicate that an action takes place after another.

Examples:

La escoba está *detrás de* la puerta. *The broom is behind the door.*

Los peregrinos vienen unos *tras* otros. *The pilgrims come one after another.*

Esta noche no regresaré hasta *después de* las diez.

To-night I will not return until after ten o'clock.

Después de ponerme la corbata me pondré el sombrero.

After putting on my necktie I shall put on my hat.

USE OF *desde*, *hasta*, *entre* AND *según*

a. *Desde*, which means *since* or *from*, is frequently used as a correlative with *hasta*.

Examples:

desde ahora, *from now on*.

desde allí, *from there*.

desde entonces, *since then*.

Desde Nueva York hasta Boston. *From New York to Boston*.

Cuenta desde diez hasta cincuenta. *Count from ten to fifty*.

b. *Hasta*, *until*, *till*, *up to*, *as far as*, is used to denote time and place, and is sometimes used adverbially with the meaning of *even*.

Examples:

Hasta mañana. *Until to-morrow*.

Vino conmigo *hasta* la puerta. *He came with me as far as the door*.

Está enamorado *hasta* los ojos. *He is head over heels in love* (lit., *up to the eyes*).

Hasta tú te aburres. *Even you get bored*.

Es tan simpática que *hasta* parece bonita. *She is so attractive that she even appears to be pretty*.

c. The use of *entre*, *between*, *among*, is similar in the majority of cases in both languages, but in cases where *between* is followed by the objective pronouns *him*, *her*, etc., in English, *entre* requires in Spanish the subject pronouns.

Entre is also used adverbially with the meaning of *half*, and in some idiomatic expressions.

Examples:

El monumento está *entre* los dos jardines, y la estatua *entre* los árboles.

The monument is between the two gardens, and the statue among the trees.

Entre cuatro estudiantes se comieron un cordero.

Among four students a lamb was eaten.

Nada hay *entre* él y ella. *There is nothing between him and her.*

Todo ha acabado *entre* tú y yo (or *entre* nosotros).

Everything is over between you and me (or between us).

Me lo dijo *entre* llanto y risa (used adverbially).

He told it to me half crying, half laughing.

Me tiene *entre* ojos (idiomatic). *He has a grudge against me.*

d. *Según* is generally used with the meaning of *according to*, but it may also have the meaning of *as*.

Examples:

Según lo que dicen, es verdad. *According to what they say, it is true.*

Según es su rostro, así es su alma. *As her face is, so is her soul.*

USE OF *ante de*, *delante de*, AND *antes de*

Ante, with the meaning of *before*, *in the presence of*, is used legally, and to denote reverence or preference; *delante de*, *before*, to indicate place, and *antes de*, *before*, to indicate time.

Examples:

ante el juez, *before the judge*

delante de mi padre, *before my father*

ante los hechos históricos, *before his-*
torical facts

delante del espejo, *before the mirror*

ante la realidad, *before the reality*

night

antes de media noche, *before mid-*

ante todo, *before all*

antes de casarte, *before you marry*

USES OF *bajo* AND *debajo de*

Bajo, *under* or *below* is sometimes used instead of *debajo de*, *under* or *below*, to denote location in a physical or a figurative sense.

Examples:

veinte grados *bajo* cero, *twenty degrees below zero.*

bajo otro nombre, *under another name.*

bajo esta condición, *under this condition.*

bajo los ojos, *under or below the eyes.*

debajo de la cama, *under the bed.*

USE OF *por* AND *para**Para*

Para, *for*, *to*, *in order to*, expresses the idea of purpose, destination and use.

Examples:

Él está estudiando *para* abogado. *He is studying to become a lawyer*
(purpose).

Ellos viven *para* comer. *They live to (or in order to) eat (purpose).*

Él lleva una carta *para* el ingeniero. *He carries a letter for the engineer (destination).*

Esos soldados son *para* mi regimiento. *Those soldiers are for my regiment (destination).*

Salgo *para* España. *I leave for Spain (destination).*

Ella vende cepillos *para* la cabeza y jaulas *para* loros. *She sells hair-brushes and parrot-cages (use).*

Para followed by *con* is used to express moral attitudes.

Examples:

Este hombre ha sido justo *para conmigo*.

This man has been just toward me.

Esa señora ha sido muy bondadosa *para con* nosotros.

That lady has been very kind toward us.

Por

Por, *by*, *per*, *for*, *in*, *through*, *at*, *along*, *out of*, *on account of*, etc., expresses manner or means as well as motive or cause. It also expresses the object of errands after verbs of motion, the spaces of time during which actions take place, and the places through which motions occur. It also expresses opinion and acceptance, exchange of one thing for another, that which remains to be done when followed by an infinitive, the meaning of *in behalf of*, *in favor of*, *for the sake of*, etc., and units of measure or number. *Por* is also used to emphasize expressions which have the character of oaths, and to express the agent after a passive verb.

Examples with *por* to express:

Manner or means.	{	<p>Obtuve la entrevista <i>por</i> mi amigo. <i>I obtained the interview through my friend, (i.e., by means of my friend).</i></p> <p><i>Por</i> su propia boca lo supe. <i>I heard it from (or out of) his own mouth (lit. I knew it through his own mouth).</i></p>
------------------------	---	---

Motive or cause.	{	<p><i>Por</i> esa razón la amo. <i>For that reason I love her (cause).</i></p> <p>Fué despedido <i>por</i> perezoso. <i>He was discharged for (or on account of) being lazy (motive).</i></p> <p>La premiaron <i>por</i> buena y lo encarcelaron <i>por</i> malo. <i>They rewarded her for being good, and they imprisoned him for being bad (cause).</i></p>
------------------------	---	---

Objects of errands after verbs of motion.	{	<p>La señora vendrá pronto <i>por</i> la medicina. <i>The lady will come soon for the medicine.</i></p> <p>Vete <i>por</i> el vinagre. <i>Go for the vinegar.</i></p>
--	---	---

Spaces of time during which actions take place. { Iré al campo *por* una semana. *I shall go to the country for a week.*
Por ahora nada más te digo. *At present I say nothing more to you.*
 El coche llegó *por* la tarde. *The carriage arrived in the afternoon.*

Places through which motion occurs. { Va *por* la carretera en mangas de camisa. *He goes along the highway in his shirt sleeves.*
 Entraré a la casa *por* la puerta, *por* la ventana o *por* la chimenea. *I will enter the house through the door, through the window or through the chimney.*

Opinion and acceptance. { La tengo *por* mujer discreta. *I take her to be a discreet woman (opinion).*
 Lo aceptan *por* ese precio. *They accept it for that price.*

Exchange of one thing for another. { Él desea cambiar el lápiz *por* la pelota. *He wishes to exchange the pencil for the ball.*

That which remains to be done when followed by an infinitive. { El piano está todavía *por* afinar. *The piano is yet to be tuned.*
 Eso está *por* ver. *That is to be seen.*

The meanings in behalf of, in favor of, for the sake of, etc. { He hablado *por* usted. *I have spoken in your behalf.*
 Votaré *por* el mejor candidato. *I shall vote for (or in favor of) the best candidate.*
 Hazlo *por* ella. *Do it for her sake.*

Units of measure or number. { Vendemos *al por mayor* y *al por menor*. *We sell at wholesale and retail.*
 Compramos las cerezas *por* libra y las naranjas *por* docena. *We buy the cherries by the pound and the oranges by the dozen.*
 Ofréceles un diez *por* ciento. *Offer them ten per cent.*

To emphasize expressions which have the character of oaths. { Lo juro *por* mi honor. *I swear it by my honor.*

The agent after a passive verb. { El actor ha sido aplaudido *por* el auditorio. *The actor has been applauded by the audience.*

FURTHER USES OF *por* AND *para*

When both *por* and *para* are followed by an infinitive, both may denote purpose.

Para, with the meaning of *in order to* and *with the intention to*, implies

certainty, while *por*, with the meaning *for the sake of*, expresses intention without certainty as to the result.

Examples:

Trabajan *por* elegirlo presidente. *They are working to have him elected president.* (Intention is expressed without certainty as to the result.)

Viene aquí *para* verme. *He comes here (in order) to see me.* (Intention is expressed with certainty as to the result.)

COMBINATION OF THE PREPOSITIONS *de* AND *a* TO DESIGNATE PERSONS AND TO EXPRESS RATE OR DENOMINATION

Examples:

La señorita *de al* lado ha comprado un sello (o estampilla) *de a* quince centavos.

The young lady of the next house has bought a fifteen-cent stamp.

Los cigarros *de a* duro (or *de a* peso) el ciento se venden muchísimo.

The cigars at a dollar a hundred are sold a great deal.

USE OF OTHER DOUBLE PREPOSITIONS

a. *Por debajo de*, *under*, *from under*; *por entre*, *through*, *among*; *de entre*, *from among*; *de por medio*, *between*, are used after verbs of motion.

Examples:

Lo agarró *por debajo de* los brazos y lo paralizó.

He seized him under the arms and paralyzed him.

El perro le pasó corriendo *por entre* las piernas y lo tumbó.

The dog ran between his legs and threw him down.

Fuimos *por entre* los árboles hasta el manantial que brota *de entre* las rocas.

We went through the trees as far as the spring which gushes from (among) the rocks.

Ha puesto el mar *de por medio*. *He has put the sea between us.*

b. *Para con*, as explained before, page 406, is used to express moral attitudes or ideas of conduct, and *para entre* to express confidence.

Examples:

Usted ha sido muy bueno *para con* él y *para con* migo.

You have been very good to him and to me.

Los padres tienen obligación *para con* los hijos, y los hijos *para con* los padres. *Parents owe a duty to their children and children to their parents.*

Para entre los dos. *Between us. Between you and me and the lamp-post.*

CHAPTER VIII

CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions serve to unite words, phrases, clauses and sentences.

Important Conjunctions:

y, <i>and</i>	pero, mas, sino, <i>but</i>
e, <i>and</i> (before words beginning with i or hi),	como, <i>as, like</i>
o, <i>or</i>	cuando, <i>when, whenever</i>
u, <i>or</i> (before words beginning with o or ho)	porque, <i>because, for</i>
ni, <i>neither, nor, etc.</i>	pues, <i>since, then</i>
	que, <i>that, which, than, etc.</i>
	aunque, <i>though, even though</i>
	si, <i>if, whether, etc.</i>

CONJUNCTIVE PHRASES

Conjunctive phrases are made up of prepositions or adverbs generally followed by *que*.

The following are the important ones:

a fin de que, <i>in order that</i>	dado que, { <i>in case that, assum-</i>
a medida que, <i>as</i>	dado caso que, { <i>ing that, suppos-</i>
a menos que, } <i>unless</i>	ing that
a no ser que, }	desde que, <i>since</i>
ahora que, <i>now that</i>	después que, <i>after</i>
antes (de) que, <i>before</i>	en caso que, <i>in case that</i>
así que, <i>so that, so</i>	en tanto que, } <i>while</i>
como quiera que, <i>however</i>	entre tanto que, }
con tal que, <i>provided, provided that</i>	hasta que, <i>until</i>
con todo, <i>nevertheless, notwithstanding</i>	luego que, <i>as soon as</i>
ing	mientras que, <i>while</i>
conque, <i>so, therefore, so then</i>	no obstante, <i>notwithstanding</i>
de manera que, }	para que, <i>in order that</i>
de modo que, } <i>so that</i>	puesto que, <i>since</i>
de suerte que, }	siempre que, <i>whenever</i>
	supuesto que, <i>granting that</i>
	ya que, <i>since</i>

CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

Some conjunctions are used correlatively, the second conjunction completing the meaning of the first.

The principal ones are:

apenas	cuando, <i>scarcely</i>	when
así como	así (también), <i>just as</i>	so (also)

ni	ni, <i>neither</i>	<i>nor</i>
no bien	cuando, {	<i>scarcely</i> <i>when</i> <i>no sooner</i> <i>when</i>
no solo	sino, <i>not only</i>	<i>but</i>
no solamente	sino, <i>not only</i>	<i>but</i>
no solo	sino que también, <i>not only</i>	<i>but also</i>
no solamente	sino que también, <i>not only</i>	<i>but also</i>
o	o, <i>either</i>	<i>or</i>
ora	ora, {	<i>now</i> <i>now</i> <i>sometimes</i> <i>sometimes</i>
que	o, {	<i>whether</i> <i>or</i>
que	o que, {	
sea	sea, {	<i>whether</i> <i>or</i>
sea	o, {	
sea	o sea {	
ya	ya, {	<i>whether</i> <i>or</i>
ya	o, {	

Examples:

Apenas hubo amanecido *cuando* estalló la tempestad.

Scarcely had the day dawned when the tempest broke.

Así como a ti te gusta eso, *así* me gusta a mí.

Just as you (fam. form sing.) *like that*, so do I like it.

Ni riquezas *ni* honores valen para mí tanto como la salud y la independencia.

Neither riches *nor* honors are worth to me so much as health and independence.

No bien habíamos andado unos pasos, *cuando* unos bandidos nos pararon y dijeron: "La bolsa o la vida."

Scarcely had we walked a few steps when some bandits stopped us and said: "Your money or your life."

No solo creo esto *sino* eso. *I believe not only this*, but *that*.

No solo (or *solamente*) me ha ofrecido su amistad, *sino que también* su fortuna.

Not only has he offered me his friendship, *but also* his fortune.

Ése es o estúpido o sinvergüenza. *That one is either stupid or shameless.*

Él ora todos los días de fiesta, ora por la mañana, ora por la noche.

He prays every holiday, now (sometimes) *in the morning*, now (sometimes) *in the afternoon*.

Que venga o no, yo iré. } *Whether he comes or not I shall go.*
Que venga o que no venga, yo iré. }

Sea por esta causa, { *o*
o sea { por la otra, el hecho es que no ha venido.
sea }

Whether for this reason or for the other, the fact is that he has not come.

Ya ría, ya llore, tráemelo. } *Whether he laughs or cries bring him to me.*
Ya ría o llore, tráemelo. }

USE OF *pero*, *mas* AND *sino*

Pero and *mas*, *but*, may be used interchangeably, although *mas* is used much less than *pero*. *Sino*, *but*, is used instead of *pero* after a negative clause when no verb is used after the conjunction. Its English meaning is often *nothing but*.

Examples:

Yo hablo inglés, *pero* no hablo español.

I speak English, but I do not speak Spanish.

Yo no hablo inglés, *pero* hablo español.

I do not speak English, but I speak Spanish.

Yo no hablo *sino* inglés. *I speak nothing but English.*

No es blanco *sino* negro. *It is not white but black.*

No tiene *sino* deudas. *He has nothing but debts.*

USE OF *que*

Que, which usually means *that* as a conjunction, besides being used in many conjunctive phrases, is required in the cases which follow:

1. Idiomatically, before *sí*, *yes*, and *no*, *no*, after verbs of understanding, feeling, etc., and after affirmations and exclamations.

Examples:

Ella dice *que* *sí*, *pero* yo digo *que* *no*. *She says yes, but I say no.*

Ella cree *que* *sí*, *pero* yo creo *que* *no*. *She believes so, but I don't.*

¿Vendrá? Temo *que* *no*. *Will he come? I fear not.*

Claro *que* *no*. *Of course not. Plainly no.*

¡Por Dios! no salgas, *que* te van a matar. *For heaven's sake do not go out, for they are going to kill you!*

2. In idiomatic expressions to imply progressive or continuous action.

Examples:

Mejor *que* mejor. *Better and better. So much the better.*

Allí viene, corre *que* corre. *There he comes, running faster and faster.*

Allí está, cavila *que* cavila. *There he is, thinking and thinking.*

3. To suggest the idea of daring, assurance, betting, etc.

Examples:

A *que* no lo haces. *I bet you don't do it.*

A *que* lo hago. *I bet you I will do it.*

A *que* no sabes lo que tengo en la mano. *I bet you don't know what I have in my hand.*

Te apuesto a *que* no saltas desde donde yo salte. *I bet you will not jump from the place from which I will jump.*

REMARKS ABOUT *sin* *ni* without or

When *ni* is preceded by *sin*, with one or more words occurring between them, *ni* is rendered in English by *or*.

Examples:

Una vida *sin* ideales *ni* emociones se asemeja a un día de niebla.

A life without ideals or emotions resembles a cloudy day.

Triste es la noche *sin* luna *ni* estrellas.

Sad is the evening without moon or stars.

CHAPTER IX

INTERJECTIONS

Interjections are exclamatory expressions which serve to express feelings of joy, pain, fear, admiration, etc., i.e., any of our emotions.

The most common interjections are the following:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) ¡ah! <i>ah! oh!</i>
 ¡ay! <i>ouch! ah! alas! oh!</i>
 ¡oh! <i>oh! ah!</i>
 ¡eh! <i>eh! hey!</i>
 ¡ea! (to call attention, to indicate determination or to encourage), <i>hey! come, come now.</i>
 ¡bah! (incredulity or contempt), <i>pshaw</i>
 ¡ca! } (denial or incredulity), <i>oh no! no indeed!</i>
 ¡quia! }
 ¡olé! { (encouragement or approval principally for
 ¡ole! { dancers), <i>fine! bravo!</i></p> | <p>¡chis! } (to impose silence), <i>hush!</i>
 ¡chito! }
 ¡ajá! } <i>aha!</i>
 ¡ajajá! }
 ¡ojalá! (strong desire), <i>would that! God grant!</i>
 ¡uf! (weariness or repugnance), <i>oh! ah! oh, dear.</i>
 ¡puf! (repugnance), <i>ugh!</i>
 ¡hola!, <i>hello!</i>
 ¡hurra!, <i>hurrah!</i>
 ¡ya!, <i>oh, yes!</i></p> |
|--|--|

NOTE a.—*Ay*, the most common interjection of all, is used to express pain as well as joy, surprise and admiration.

NOTE b.—*Hola, bah, ea*, etc., are used repeatedly to give a greater degree of emphasis to the sentiment that they express.

- | | | |
|--|----------|---|
| <p>¡caramba!
 ¡caray!
 ¡caracoles! (literal meaning, <i>snails</i>)
 ¡canastos! (literal meaning, <i>baskets</i>)
 ¡canario! (literal meaning, <i>canary-bird</i>)
 ¡cáspita!
 ¡córcholis!
 ¡diantre! (to avoid <i>demonio, demon, or diablo, devil</i>)</p> | <p>}</p> | <p><i>the deuce! by jingo!</i>
 <i>the dickens! great</i>
 <i>Scott! etc.</i></p> |
|--|----------|---|

- (2) ¡Dios mío! *My God!, dear me!, goodness!*
 ¡por Dios!, *for heaven's or goodness' sake!*
 ¡Ay, Dios mío!, *Oh dear me! Woe is me! Oh Lord!*
 ¡Valgame Dios! *God help me!*
 ¡Jesús! (*Jesus*), *oh, heavens!, heavens!*
 ¡Virgen Santísima! (*Most Holy Virgin*), *Mercy me!, Oh mercy!*

NOTE.—The above exclamations, which in Spanish are neither improper nor profane, are most commonly used.

(3) Used in speaking to animals.

¡arre! (*to draft animals*), *get up!*

¡so! (*to draft animals*), *whoa!*

¡miz! } (*to cats*), *puss, puss!*
¡mis! }

¡zape! (*to cats*), *scat!*

¡ox! (*to frighten fowls*), *shoo!*

NOTE.—Some of these interjections have the force of imperatives.

(4) Nouns, adjectives and imperatives which are sometimes used as interjections:

¡alto!, *halt*

¡cuidado!, *be careful, look out!*

¡diga!, *say!*

¡fuego!, *fire!*

¡quita!, *quit, get out!*

¡vaya!, ¡vamos!, *well!, I declare!, really!*

¡anda! (*incredulity, importunity or encouragement*), *pshaw! go away! come now!*

¡viva!, *hurrah!*

¡muera!, *down with him!, kill him!*

¡dale! (*expressive of displeasure at obstinacy*), *there he, etc., goes again.*

¡calla! (*command and incredulity*), *shut up!, keep still!, nonsense!*

¡socorro! *help!*

¡firme! *steady!*

¡ojo! } *attention! with care!* (*used with the meaning of open your*
¡mucho ojo! } *eyes, and on packages and shipping cases*)

CASES WHERE INTERJECTIONS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE PREPOSITION *de*

When adjectives are used as interjections, before a noun or pronoun, and when ¡ay! is likewise used.

Examples:

¡Pobre de mí! *Poor me! Alas for me!*

¡Desgraciada de ella! *Unfortunate woman that she is!*

¡Ay de mí! *Woe is me! Alas for me!*

NOUNS USED WITH INTENSIVE FORCE OR BY WAY OF REMONSTRANCE

Hombre, man, mujer, woman, hijo, son, hija, daughter, amigo, amiga, friend, chico, boy, chica, girl, señor, sir, etc., are frequently used in conversation or by way of remonstrance.

Examples:

¡Bueno!, hombre, ¡bueno!, no se lo diré. *Well, well, I shall not tell it to him.*

¿Quiere que vaya yo? Sí, hombre, ande usted. *Do you want me to go? Yes, indeed, go ahead.*

¡Pues, señor, vivimos! } *Señor, is frequently used in expressions not*
Well, sir, we live. } *directly addressed to a particular individual.*

REFERENCE MATERIAL

IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

- a cada paso, *frequently*
a consecuencia de eso, *on that account*
a costa de, *at the expense of*
a ese paso no acabarás nunca, *at that rate you will never finish*
a eso voy, *that is the point I am coming to*
a falta de pan buenas son tortas, *half a loaf is better than no bread*
a la salud de ustedes, *to your health*
a lo hecho, pecho, *one must make the best of what one has done*
a lo largo del río, *along the river side*
a los pies de usted, *at your service*
a más tardar, *at the latest*
a medida de sus deseos, *according to your wish, his, her or their wishes*
a mi alcance, *within my reach*
a nadie le amarga un dulce, *nobody finds a piece of candy bitter*
a otro perro con ese hueso, *tell it to the marines, try it on someone else, (lit. to another dog with that bone)*
a propósito, *by the way*
a que lo digo, *I bet you I can say it*
a que lo hago, *I bet you I can do it*
a que no, *I bet you it is not so*
a que sí, *I bet you it is so*
a sus anchas, *at one's ease*
acordarse de alguien, *to remember some one*
al fin dió con él, *at last he found him*
al grano, *to the point*
allá se las haya, *let him come out of the difficulty as well as he can*
ante el juez, *before the judge*
antes de ahora, *before now*
apagar la sed, *to quench the thirst*
aquí el que no corre, vuela, *here the one who does not run, flies*
bajó las orejas, *he humbled himself*
bebe como una cuba, *he drinks like a fish (cask)*
buscarle a uno la boca, *to make one say things*
cada uno sabe donde le aprieta la suela del zapato, *everyone knows where the shoe pinches*
caer de pies, de rodillas, *to fall on one's feet, on one's knees*
caer en gracia a alguno, *to get into one's good graces*
caer en una cosa, *to see the point of something*
calla el pico, *hold your tongue (beak)*
¿cómo le va? *how are you getting along?*
¡cómo no! *of course!*
¿cómo se siente? *how do you feel?*
con mil amores, *most willingly*
con que, hasta mañana, *so then, until to-morrow*
contar con una cosa, *to count upon a thing*
contar una cosa, *to relate a thing*
convenir con uno, *to agree with any one*
creo que no, *I do not think so*
creo que sí, *I think so*
cumplir con uno, *to do one's duty toward any one*
chanzas o bromas aparte, *jesting aside*
choca esos cinco, *shake hands (i.e. those five fingers)*

- chúpate ese huevo, *put that in your pipe and smoke it*
 dar a alguno con la puerta en las narices, *to shut the door in one's face*
 dar a luz, *to give birth to*
 dar calabazas, *to give the mitten, to jilt*
 dar cita, *to make an appointment*
 dar chasco, *to disappoint*
 dar diente con diente, *to shiver with cold*
 dar el pésame, *to offer one's condolence*
 dar el sí, *to consent to marry*
 dar fianza, *to give bail*
 dar la enhorabuena, *to congratulate*
 dar los buenos días, *to wish good day*
 dar los días, *to congratulate one on his birthday*
 dar parte, *to report*
 dar que decir, *to give occasion to censure*
 dar que hacer, *to give trouble*
 dar voces, *to scream*
 darle a uno una enfermedad, *to be attacked by a disease*
 de algún tiempo a esta parte, *for some time past*
 de buena fe, *in good faith*
 de buenas a primeras, *suddenly, abruptly, without ceremony*
 de día en día, *from day to day*
 de hoy en ocho días, *this day week, a week from to-day*
 de mala fe, *in bad faith*
 de oídas, *from hearsay*
 de un día para otro, *from one day to another*
 decir o echar piropos, *to pay compliments (to ladies)*
 decir por decir, *to talk for the sake of talking*
 dejar a uno en la calle, *to strip one of his property*
 dejar atrás, *to excel, to surpass*
 dejar dicho, *to leave word or orders*
 dejar el campo libre, *to abandon the field or to yield to one's competitors*
 dejar para mañana, *to delay, to leave undone, to procrastinate*
 dejarse alguna cosa, *to leave something behind*
 dejarse alguna cosa en el tintero, *to leave something unsaid*
 dejarse llevar, *to allow oneself to be led by another*
 dejarse querer, *to let oneself be petted or treated*
 dejarse ver, *to be social*
 del mal el menos, *the least of two evils; of evils the least*
 deshacerse en lágrimas, *to weep bitterly*
 día de recibo, *reception day*
 dicho y hecho, *no sooner said than done*
 dije para mi capote (cloak), *I said to myself*
 divertirse a costa de uno, *to amuse oneself at someone's expense*
 doblemos la hoja, *let us speak about something else*
 dormir a pierna suelta, *to sleep at one's ease or to be fast asleep*
 dormir la siesta, *to take a nap*
 echar a correr, *to run away*
 echar a perder algo, *to spoil something*
 echar a pique un buque, *to sink a vessel*
 echar a puntapiés or a patadas, *to kick someone out*
 echar bravatas, *to brag, to boast*
 echar con cajas destempladas, *to dismiss one roughly*
 echar chispas, *to be furious, enraged*
 echar de menos a alguien, *to miss someone*
 echar en cara, *to reproach to one's face*
 echar el guante, *to arrest one*
 echar la casa por la ventana, *to paint the town red*

echar la culpa a alguno, *to throw the blame on someone*
 echar leche al café, *to pour milk into the coffee*
 echar raíces, *to take root*
 echar suertes, *to cast lots*
 echar un remiendo a la vida, *to take a little refreshment*
 echar una carta al correo, *to mail a letter*
 echarlo todo a rodar, *to spoil utterly an affair*
 echarse a perder, *to spoil, to lose its good taste*
 echarse a reír o a llorar, *to begin to laugh or to cry*
 el día menos pensado, *when one least expects*
 él es hombre de pelo en pecho, *he is a brave, daring man*
 él no se para en pelillos, *he does not stop at trifles*
 él se mete en lo que no le va ni le viene, *he meddles in what does not concern him*
 el señor Fulano de Tal, *Mr. So-and-So*
 él tomó el rábano por las hojas, *he misconstrued*
 ella le dió a él palabra de matrimonio, *she promised to marry him*
 empeñar la palabra, *to pledge one's word*
 empeñarse en algo, *to insist on something*
 en medio de todo, *after all*
 en todas las partes se cuecen habas, *that happens everywhere*
 en un abrir y cerrar de ojos, *in the twinkling of an eye*
 en un dos por tres, *suddenly*
 en un quítame allá esas pajas, *in the twinkling of an eye*
 erró el tiro, *he missed his aim*
 es un hecho, *it is a fact*
 esa no cuela, *I do not swallow that*

esas son tortas y pan pintado, *those things are trifles*
 eso es más antiguo que el andar a pie, *that is older than walking on foot*
 eso está por las nubes, *that is sky high (in price)*
 eso no hace al caso, *that has nothing to do with the case*
 está entre cuatro paredes, *he is confined, imprisoned*
 estar a cinco o diez del mes, *this is the fifth or the tenth of the month*
 estar a la última pregunta, *to be broke or penniless*
 estar a punto de perderse, *to be on the brink of being lost*
 estar apurado, *to be hard pressed*
 estar bien en un papel, *to act well in a theatrical rôle*
 estar de buen talante, *to be in good humor*
 estar de fiesta, *to be merry*
 estar de mal talante, *to be in bad humor*
 estar desprevenido, *to be off one's guard*
 estar en ascuas, *to be on thorns (live coals)*
 estar en grande, *to live in luxury*
 estar en su sano juicio, *to be of sound mind*
 estarse muriendo, *to be in a dying condition*
 éste es mi nombre y apellido, *this is my full name*
 este traje te cae muy bien, *this suit fits you well*
 esto es más claro que el agua, *this is as clear as daylight*
 esto no me huele bien, *I am suspicious of this thing*
 estoy de mudanza, *I am moving*
 estoy en lo que usted me dice, *I understand what you tell me*
 faltar a su palabra, *to break one's word*

- Felices Pascuas de Navidad y Próspero Año Nuevo, *Happy Christmas and a Prosperous New Year*
- Felices Pascuas de Resurrección, *Joyous Easter*
- frases hechas, *set phrases*
- hablar a tontas y a locas, *to speak foolishly*
- hablar al alma, *to speak movingly* (lit. *to speak to the soul*)
- hablar al oído, *to whisper into one's ear*
- hablar claro o en plata, *to speak without ambiguity*
- hablar de, *to talk about*
- hablar disparates, *to talk nonsense*
- hablar entre dientes, *to mutter*
- hablar por alguien, *to speak in favor of somebody*
- hablar por boca de ganso, *to speak by hearsay*
- hacer caso de, *to pay attention to, to heed*
- hacer de las suyas, *to play one's own tricks*
- hacer de tripas corazón, *to pluck up courage*
- hacer el oso, *to act as a sentimental lover*
- hacer fiestas, *to fondle, to pet*
- hacer la vista gorda, *to overlook, to connive at*
- hacer las veces de otro, *to act as substitute for another*
- hacer mal, *to do wrong, to hurt*
- hacer morisquetas, *to play pranks*
- hacer perder a uno los estribos, *to make one lose his temper (stir-rups)*
- hacer por hacer, *to act to no purpose*
- hacer por la vida, *to eat something*
- hacer presente, *to remind one*
- hacer que hacemos, *to affect doing something*
- hacer su agosto, *to reap a harvest*
- hacer un papel ridículo, *to make a fool of oneself*
- hacer una plancha, *to make a break (with ridicule)*
- hacer ver, *to make it appear, to show*
- hacerse a la vela, *to set sail*
- hacerse cargo, *to realize*
- hacerse de rogar, *to like to be coaxed*
- hacerse el bobo o el sueco, *to pretend ignorance*
- hacerse el valiente, *to pretend to be a brave man*
- hacerse rico, *to become rich*
- halló la horma de su zapato, *he found his match*
- hay diferentes maneras de apagar faroles, *there are different ways to do a thing*
- hoy día, *nowadays*
- ir contra la corriente, *to go against the tide*
- irse de la memoria, *to escape one's memory*
- irse los ojos tras alguien, *to gaze admiringly*
- írsele a uno la cabeza, *to lose one's reason*
- jugarse el todo por el todo, *to play the last card*
- la mitad y otro tanto, *half and as much more*
- leer para sí, *to read to oneself*
- lo hizo sin qué ni para qué, *he did it without motive*
- lo tengo en la punta de la lengua, *I have it on the tip of my tongue*
- llegar al alma, *to touch the heart*
- llevar a cuestras, *to carry on one's shoulders or back*
- llevar o tomar a mal, *to take something amiss*
- llevar la delantera, *to lead, to be ahead*
- llevarse bien con alguien, *to be on good terms with somebody*
- llevarse chasco, *to be disappointed*
- mal de su agrado, *unwillingly*
- mal hecho, *badly done, unjust, wrong*

mal que le pese, <i>in spite of him</i>	no lo sé a punto fijo, <i>I do not know it exactly</i>
me doy por vencido, <i>I give it up</i>	no me hace caso, <i>he does not mind me</i>
me es igual, <i>it is all the same to me</i>	no me importa, <i>I do not care</i>
me la pegó, <i>he cheated me</i>	no se me da nada, <i>it gives me no concern</i>
me lo dijo de palabra, <i>he said it to me by word of mouth</i>	no se me da un bledo, <i>I do not care a straw</i>
me veo en la necesidad, <i>I find it necessary</i>	no se me da un bledo de eso, <i>I do not care a straw for that</i>
me zafé de eso, <i>I got rid of that</i>	no tener juicio, <i>to be wild, to act in a senseless manner</i>
meter cizaña, <i>to sow discord</i>	no tengo ni arte ni parte en eso, <i>I have no hand in that</i>
meterse a redentor, <i>to interfere with a good purpose in other people's business</i>	no vale lo que costó de bautizar, <i>he is not worth what it cost to baptize him</i>
meterse a sabio, <i>to affect learning and knowledge</i>	pagar el pato, <i>to suffer or pay for another's misconduct</i>
meterse en camisa de once varas, <i>to attempt what one cannot do; to interfere in other people's business</i>	para entre los dos, <i>between you and me and the lamp post</i>
meterse en todo, <i>to meddle in everything</i>	pares o nones, <i>odd or even</i>
meterse en vidas ajenas, <i>to dive into other people's affairs</i>	partida de campo, <i>picnic</i>
mirar de hito en hito, <i>to stare at</i>	partida de caza, <i>hunting-match</i>
mirar por encima, <i>to examine slightly</i>	pasar las de Caín, <i>to suffer horribly</i>
mostrar las suelas de los zapatos, <i>to take to one's heels; to show the soles of the shoes</i>	pedir la palabra, <i>to ask for the floor</i>
nacer de pies, <i>to be born to good luck</i>	pegar fuego, <i>to set fire</i>
no caber de gozo, <i>to be overjoyed</i>	perder la razón, <i>to become insane</i>
no caber de pies, <i>to have no room to stand</i>	Perico de los Palotes, <i>John Doe</i>
no caber en sí o en su pellejo (skin), <i>to be very conceited</i>	pierda usted cuidado, amigo, <i>have no fear, my friend</i>
no cayó en la cuenta, <i>he did not see the drift of what was said</i>	poner pies en polvorosa, <i>to take to one's heels</i>
no da pie con bola, <i>he does not do a thing right</i>	por el bien parecer, <i>to save appearances</i>
no deja meter baza, <i>he does not allow any one to get a word in edgewise</i>	por a or por be, or por fas o por nefas, <i>some way or other</i>
no estar en su juicio, <i>to be out of one's senses</i>	por razones de fuerza mayor, <i>for reasons beyond one's control</i>
no estar para fiestas, <i>to be in bad humor, or out of temper</i>	por varios conceptos, <i>for several reasons</i>
	¿qué hay? <i>what is new?</i>
	¿qué tal? <i>how are you?</i>
	quedarse para vestir imágenes, <i>to be left unmarried (lit. to be left to dress images)</i>
	quedarse pasmado, <i>to be dumb-founded</i>

romperse el alma, *to break one's neck*
 saber algo de carretilla, de pe a pa,
or como el padre nuestro, to know something like a, b, c
 sacar de pila, *to become sponsor at baptism*
 sacar la cara por una persona, *to defend a person, i.e., to draw the face for a person*
 salió con una pata de gallo, *he came out with a ridiculous saying*
 salirse con la suya, *to have one's way*
 salirse por la tangente, *to get away by cunning*
 se encendió en cólera, *he reddened with anger*
 sé eso de buena tinta, *I know that from good authority*
 se las echa de rico, *he pretends to be rich*
 se las echa de valiente, *he pretends to be brave*
 se le cae la cara de vergüenza, *he blushes with shame*
 se me parte el corazón, *my heart is breaking*
 se vieron y se hablaron, *they met and spoke to each other*
 ser un bribón de siete suelas, *to be a big rascal*
 sin novedad, *as usual*
 sufrir una contrariedad, *to suffer a disappointment*
 tener a mano, *to have within reach*
 tener cara de día de fiesta, *to have a beaming face*
 tener cara de pocos amigos, *to have a long face*
 tener la palabra, *to have the floor, to address the chair*

tener la sartén por el mango, *to control or to have the upper hand in a situation*
 tener malas pulgas, *to have a quick or hot temper (lit. bad fleas)*
 tengo que habérmelas con ese sin vergüenza, *I have to contend with or face that shameless individual*
 tengo un nudo en la garganta, *I have a great affliction, a lump (knot) in my throat*
 tiene pico de oro, *he is a man of great eloquence*
 todo el año, *all the year around*
 tomar a pecho or a pechos, *to take to heart*
 tomar el pelo, *to tease*
 tomar las de Villadiego, *to take to one's heels*
 trabaja como un burro, *he works like a horse*
 usted necesita tomar leche a pasto, *you need to take a great deal of milk*
 va de mal en peor cada día que pasa, *he is getting worse and worse every day*
 va vestida de oro y azul, *she is gorgeously attired*
 van cinco duros o pesos a que llevo a la confitería antes que tú, *I bet you five dollars that I arrive at the confectionery store before you do*
 venir a menos, *to decline*
 vivir al día, *to live from hand to mouth*
 ya caigo en ello, *ah! now I see, I understand*
 zurrarle a uno de lo lindo, *to give a fine beating to a person*

COMMERCIAL EXPRESSIONS

a cuenta, *on account*
 a la orden de, *to the order of*
 acarreo, *cartage*
 acción, *share*

accionista, *shareholder, stockholder*
 aceptación de una letra, *acceptance of a draft*
 aceptar una letra, *to accept a draft*

acreedor, <i>creditor</i>	calidad, <i>quality, kind</i>
activo y pasivo, <i>assets and liabilities</i>	cantidad, <i>quantity, amount</i>
acuse de recibo, <i>acknowledgment of receipt</i>	carga, <i>load, cargo</i>
adeudar, <i>to owe</i>	cargar, <i>to load</i>
administración o gerencia, <i>administration or management</i>	caro, <i>expensive, dear</i>
administrador, <i>administrator, manager</i>	carta de aviso, <i>letter of advice</i>
administrar, <i>to administer, to manage</i>	carta de crédito, <i>letter of credit</i>
administrar una casa, <i>to administer or to manage a house</i>	carta de negocios o comercial, <i>business letter</i>
aduana, <i>customhouse</i>	casa de banca, <i>banking house</i>
agencia, <i>agency</i>	casa matriz, <i>main office</i>
agente, <i>agent</i>	censo, <i>census</i>
agente de aduana, <i>customhouse agent</i>	cerrar una cuenta, <i>to close an account</i>
agente de cambio, cambista, <i>money broker</i>	clave, <i>code</i>
agente de negocios, <i>business agent</i>	cobrar, <i>to collect, to cash</i>
agente de seguros, <i>insurance agent</i>	cobrar un cuatro por ciento por la transacción, <i>to charge four per cent for the transaction</i>
almacenaje, <i>storage</i>	cobrar una cuenta, <i>to collect a bill</i>
almacenar, <i>to lay up, to store</i>	cobrar una deuda, <i>to collect a debt</i>
alza o subida de precio, <i>rise in price</i>	cobrar una factura, <i>to collect an invoice or bill</i>
asunto, <i>affair</i>	cobrar una letra, <i>to cash a draft</i>
avaluar, <i>to value, to praise</i>	código, <i>code</i>
avalúo o presupuesto, <i>estimate</i>	código de comercio, <i>commercial code</i>
avería, <i>damage</i>	compañía, <i>company</i>
baja de precio, <i>fall in price</i>	compañía de navegación, <i>steamship company</i>
balance, <i>balance</i>	compañía de seguros contra accidentes, <i>accident insurance company</i>
banco hipotecario, <i>mortgage bank</i>	compañía de seguros contra incendio, <i>fire insurance company</i>
barato, <i>cheap</i>	compañía de seguros de vida, <i>life insurance company</i>
barril, <i>barrel</i>	compañía de seguros marítimos, <i>marine insurance company</i>
billete de banco, <i>bank note</i>	compra, <i>purchase</i>
bonificación, <i>allowance</i>	comprador, <i>buyer</i>
bono, <i>bond</i>	con mucho capital, <i>with much capital</i>
bulto, <i>bundle, parcel</i>	con poco capital, <i>with little capital</i>
buzón de la esquina, <i>letter box on the corner</i>	con rumbo a, <i>bound for (destination)</i>
caja de ahorros, <i>savings bank</i>	con sentimiento manifestamos que, <i>we regret to state that</i>
caja de hierro, <i>safe</i>	
caja de seguridad, <i>safe deposit box</i>	
cajón, <i>case</i>	
calcular, <i>to calculate</i>	
cálculo, <i>calculation</i>	

- concesión, *concession*
 consignación, *consignment*
 consignatario, *consignee*
 contador, *accountant, purser, pay-master*
 contratar, *to contract, to stipulate*
 contrato, *contract*
 contrato verbal, *verbal or oral contract*
 convenio, *agreement*
 copista, *copyist*
 corredor, *broker*
 corredor de bolsa, *exchange broker*
 corretaje, *brokerage*
 coste or costo, *cost*
 costo, flete y seguro, (*cost, freight and insurance*) *C. I. F.*
 cotejar, *to compare, to confront, to check*
 crédito, *credit*
 cuenta, *account, bill*
 cuenta corriente—*current account*
 cuenta de venta, *account sale*
 cuenta detallada, *detailed account*
 cuenta englobada, *unitemized account*
 cheque, *check, cheque*
 dar crédito, *to give credit*
 dar referencias, *to give references*
 de cuenta y riesgo de, *for account and risk of*
 debe, *debit*
 declararse en quiebra, *to declare (oneself or themselves) bankrupt*
 demora, *delay*
 departamento de expedición, *shipping department*
 derechos de aduana, *custom-house duties*
 descargar, *to unload*
 descontar, *to discount*
 descuento, *discount*
 despacho, *office*
 despacho de aduana, *clearance*
 detalles, *details*
 deuda, *debt*
 deudor, *debtor*
 dictáfono, *dictaphone*
 dibujo, *design*
 dinero en caja, *cash money*
 dirección o señas, *address*
 documentos justificativos, *vouchers*
 efectos a cobrar, *bills receivable*
 el arroz está en baja, *rice is going down*
 el café está en alza, *coffee is going up*
 el cambio está hoy a, *the rate of exchange is today*
 el dador, *the bearer*
 embalar o enfardar, *to bale, to pack*
 embarque o envío, *shipment*
 empacar, *to pack*
 empaquetar, *to pack packages or parcels*
 encajonar, *to box up, to pack in a box*
 en contestación a su atenta del, *in answer to your favor of*
 en contestación a su grata fecha 6 del corriente, *in answer to your valued favor of the 6th inst*
 en el mercado hay escasez de este artículo, *there is a scarcity of this article on the market*
 en espera de que ustedes, *hoping that you*
 en espera de sus gratas órdenes queda su atento y seguro servidor, *in the hope of receiving your favored orders, I remain, etc. (lit. remains your attentive and sure servant)*
 en esta confianza quedamos de ustedes atentos y seguros servidores, *in this belief we remain, etc.*
 en mi poder su carta, *your letter at hand*
 endosar, *to endorse*
 endoso, *endorsement*
 escaparate, *show-window*
 escasez, *scarcity, lack*
 escritorio, *office, writing-desk*

esperando tener pronto noticias de usted, <i>hoping to hear from you soon</i>	hipotecar, <i>to mortgage</i>
estadística, <i>statistics</i>	horas de oficina, <i>office hours</i>
estafa, <i>swindle</i>	ilegal, <i>illegal</i>
estar quebrado, <i>to be bankrupt</i>	importación, <i>importation</i>
éste es el tipo de cambio, <i>this is the rate of exchange</i>	informe, <i>report</i>
estoy al frente de esa casa de comercio, <i>I am in charge of that business house</i>	insolvencia, <i>insolvency</i>
exportación, <i>export (noun)</i>	instrucciones, <i>instructions</i>
expedir, <i>to ship, to send</i>	interés, <i>interest</i>
fardo, <i>bale</i>	interés devengado, <i>accrued interest</i>
fecha, <i>date</i>	inventario, <i>inventory</i>
firma, <i>signature</i>	inversión, <i>investment</i>
firmar, <i>to sign</i>	jefe de un departamento, <i>head of a department</i>
flete, <i>freight</i>	jefe de una casa, <i>head of a house</i>
formar un sindicato, <i>to form a syndicate</i>	la casa ha quebrado, <i>the house is bankrupt</i>
formar una compañía, <i>to form a company</i>	la casa ha sido víctima de un estafador, <i>the house has been victim of a swindler</i>
ganancias y pérdidas, <i>profit and loss</i>	las estadísticas arrojan esta cifra, <i>the statistics show this figure</i>
gastos, <i>expenses</i>	legal, <i>legal</i>
gerente, <i>manager</i>	letra de cambio, <i>bill of exchange</i>
girado, <i>drawee</i>	letra abierta, <i>open credit</i>
girar, <i>to draw</i>	libre de gastos a bordo, <i>F. O. B. (free on board)</i>
girar a cinco días, <i>to draw at five days</i>	libreta de banco, <i>bank-book</i>
girar a la vista, <i>to draw at sight</i>	libro copiador, <i>letter and invoice (impression or copying) book</i>
giro, libranza, <i>draft</i>	libro de caja, <i>cash-book</i>
haber, <i>credit</i>	libro de compras, <i>purchase book</i>
hacer efectiva una letra, <i>to cash a draft</i>	libro de ventas, <i>sales book</i>
hacer o pasar balance, <i>to strike a balance</i>	libro diario, <i>journal</i>
hacer un contrato, <i>to draw a contract</i>	libro mayor, <i>ledger</i>
he recibido su estimada carta del 16 del corriente, y de acuerdo con ella paso a manifestarle que, <i>I am in receipt of your esteemed letter of the 16th inst., and in accordance with it I beg to state that</i>	liquidación, <i>liquidation</i>
hechura, <i>workmanship</i>	lista de correos or poste restante, <i>general delivery</i>
hipoteca, <i>mortgage, pledge</i>	lista de precios, <i>price list</i>
	llevar cuentas, <i>to keep accounts</i>
	mandadero, <i>errand-boy, messenger</i>
	máquina de calcular, <i>calculating machine</i>
	máquina de sumar, <i>adding machine</i>
	marca de fábrica, <i>trade mark</i>
	marcas y números, <i>marks and numbers</i>
	me es grato informarle, <i>it is a pleasure for me to inform you</i>

medidas, capacidad, largura, *measurements, capacity, length*
 mimeógrafo, *mimeograph*
 moneda de cobre, *copper coin*
 mucho les agradeceremos nos
 contesten a vuelta de correo,
we shall be very grateful if you
will send us a reply by return
mail
 muestra, *sample*
 muestrario, *collection of samples*
 muy reservado, *strictly private*
 Muy señor mío, *Dear Sir*
 Muy Señora mía, *Madam, Dear*
Madam
 Muy Señora nuestra, *Madam,*
Dear Madam
 Muy señores nuestros, *Dear Sirs*
 necesitamos este pedido urgente-
 mente, *we need this order ur-*
gently
 no dudando que usted se servirá
 contestarnos a vuelta de correo,
not doubting that you will be
good enough to reply by return
mail
 nombre y dirección, *name and*
address
 nos apresuramos a comunicar a
 ustedes que, *we hasten to inform*
you that
 nos es grato informarle, *we take*
pleasure in informing you
 nos tomamos la libertad de comu-
 nicar a usted que, *we take the*
liberty of informing you that
 nos tomamos la libertad de es-
 cribir a usted para participarle
 que, *we take the liberty of writ-*
ing to you to inform you that
 obra en nuestro poder su carta del
 18 del corriente, *your letter of*
the 18th instant is at hand
 pagar derechos de aduana, *to pay*
customhouse duties
 pagaré, *promissory note*
 papel moneda, *paper currency*
 pedido or orden, *order*

pedido de bastante consideración,
a fairly important order
 pedido grande, *large order*
 pedido pequeño, *small order*
 pedido regular, *fair order*
 peso bruto, *gross weight*
 peso neto, *net weight*
 plazo, *instalment*
 plazo corto, *short term*
 plazo largo, *long term*
 póliza de seguro contra accidentes,
accident insurance policy
 póliza de seguro contra incendio,
fire insurance policy
 póliza de seguro de vida, *life insur-*
ance policy
 por cuenta de, *for the account of*
 precio módico, *moderate price*
 prestar dinero, *to loan or to lend*
money
 prestar dinero con o sin garantía,
to lend money with or without
guaranty
 quedo de usted afmo. y S. S.,
I remain, very truly yours
 quedo de ustedes su afmo. y S. S.,
I remain, very truly yours
 quiebra, *bankruptcy*
 razón social, *firm name*
 recaudador de contribuciones, *tax*
collector
 recaudar, *to collect*
 recibí, *received payment*
 recibo, *receipt*
 recibo firmado, *receipted bill*
 recibo sin firmar, *unsigned bill or*
receipt
 referencias, *references*
 remesa, *remittance*
 representante, *representative*
 representar una casa, *to represent a*
house
 riesgo, *risk*
 ruta, *route*
 sacar la cuenta, *to reckon the ac-*
count
 saco, *bag*
 salario or sueldo, *salary*

saldar una cuenta, <i>to settle or balance an account</i>	tenemos a la vista, <i>we have before us</i>
seguro marítimo, <i>maritime insurance</i>	tenemos el gusto de remitir a ustedes, <i>we take pleasure in remitting you</i>
seis por ciento de interés, <i>six per cent interest</i>	tener cuenta abierta, <i>to keep an account</i>
sentimos mucho tener que informar a ustedes que, <i>we regret very much to have to inform you that</i>	tengo el gusto de informar a usted que, <i>I take pleasure in informing you that</i>
siento tener que informar a usted que, <i>I regret to have to inform you that</i>	tengo el gusto de participar a usted, <i>I have the pleasure to inform you</i>
sindicato, <i>syndicate, trust</i>	tengo el honor de comunicar a usted que, <i>I have the honor to advise you that</i>
sírvase contestarnos lo más pronto posible, <i>please answer us as soon as possible</i>	tengo el honor de informar a usted que, <i>I have the honor to inform you that</i>
sociedad anónima, <i>joint-stock company, corporation</i>	tengo el honor de participar a usted que, <i>I have the honor to inform you that</i>
sociedad colectiva, <i>general partnership, co-partnership</i>	territorio, <i>territory</i>
sociedad comercial, <i>commercial company</i>	tesorero, <i>treasurer</i>
sociedad en comandita, <i>limited partnership, limited company</i>	testigo, <i>witness</i>
socio comanditario, <i>silent partner</i>	transbordar, <i>to transfer, to transship</i>
socio de una casa, <i>partner of a house</i>	transbordo, or trasbordo, <i>transfer, transshipment</i>
socio industrial, <i>working partner</i>	traspaso, <i>transfer (legal)</i>
solicitud, <i>petition</i>	tren de carga, <i>freight train</i>
solvencia, <i>solvency</i>	utilidad o provecho, <i>profit</i>
soy de usted atento y S. S. q. b. s. m. (seguro servidor que besa sus manos), <i>yours truly</i>	vamos a cuentas, <i>let us attend to this</i>
sucesor, <i>successor</i>	vapor de carga, <i>freight steamer</i>
sucursal, <i>branch</i>	variedad, <i>variety</i>
sufrir avería la mercancía, <i>to suffer damage (the merchandise)</i>	vencido, <i>due</i>
surtido, <i>assortment</i>	vencimiento, <i>expiration</i>
talón o contraseña, <i>check</i>	vencimiento de un pagaré, <i>expiration of promissory note</i>
tamaño, <i>size</i>	vendedor, <i>seller</i>
tanto por ciento, <i>so much percentage</i>	vendedor ambulante, <i>peddler</i>
taquígrafo, <i>stenographer</i>	venta, <i>sale</i>
tara, <i>tare</i>	venta al por mayor, <i>sale at wholesale</i>
tasa (or contribución), <i>tax</i>	venta al por menor, <i>retail sale</i>
telefonista, <i>telephone operator</i>	visto bueno or conforme, O. K., <i>correct</i>
teneduría de libros, <i>bookkeeping</i>	

SPANISH PROVERBS

- A buen hambre no hay pan duro. *He who is hungry never finds the bread hard.*
- A caballo regalado no hay que mirarle el diente. *Do not look a gift horse in the mouth.*
- A donde fueres haz lo que vieres. *When in Rome, do as the Romans do.*
- Al que de ajeno se viste, en la calle lo desnudan. *He who dresses with the clothes of others, is stripped in the street.*
- Antes que te cases mira lo que haces. *Look before you leap.*
- Aunque la mona se vista de seda, mona se queda. *A monkey is still a monkey, though it be dressed in silk.*
- Buenas costumbres y dinero hacen al hombre caballero. *Good habits and money make a gentleman.*
- Con las glorias se acaban las memorias. *Out of sight, out of mind.*
- Cuando una puerta se cierra, otra se abre. *When one door closes, another opens.*
- Del árbol caído todos hacen leña. *From the fallen tree all make firewood.*
- Donde fuiste caballero no seas escudero. *Where you were a gentleman do not be a servant.*
- El amigo en la adversidad es amigo de verdad. *A friend in need is a friend indeed.*
- El ladrón cree que todos son de su condición. *The thief thinks every one is a thief.*
- El que calla otorga. *Silence means consent.*
- En boca cerrada no entran moscas. *A closed mouth catches no flies.*
- La miel no se ha hecho para la boca del asno. *Honey was not made for the mouth of the ass.*
- La mucha familiaridad es causa de menosprecio. *Familiarity breeds contempt.*
- Los niños y los locos dicen la verdad. *Children and fools tell the truth.*
- Más hace el que quiere que el que puede. *He who is willing does more than he who is able.*
- Más moscas se cogen con miel que con hiel. *More flies are caught with honey than with gall.*
- Más vale caer en gracia que ser gracioso. *It is better to please than to be pleasant.*
- Más vale pájaro en mano que ciento volando. *A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.*
- Más vale tarde que nunca. *Better late than never.*
- Más vale un "toma" que dos "te daré." *One "take this" is worth more than two "I will give you."*
- Nadie puede decir de esta agua no beberé. *One can never tell what the future will bring.*
- No firmes carta que no leas, ni bebas agua que no veas. *Never sign a paper without reading it, nor drink water without seeing it.*
- No hay mayor desprecio que no hacer aprecio. *To ignore is the greatest mark of contempt.*
- No hay peor sordo que el que no quiere oír. *None is so deaf as he who will not hear.*
- No hay rosas sin espinas. *There is no rose without a thorn.*
- Quien a buen árbol se arrima buena sombra le cobija. *He who leans against a good tree enjoys good shade.*
- Quien bien ama tarde olvida. *Who loves truly forgets slowly.*

Quien feo ama hermoso le parece.

He who loves homeliness sees beauty in it.

Quien mucho habla mucho yerra.

He who speaks much errs or blunders much.

Quien no oye consejo, no llega a viejo. *He who does not listen to advice, does not reach old age.*

Si los deseos fuesen caballos, los mendigos cabalgarían. *If wishes were horses, beggars would ride.*

Una cosa es predicar y otra dar trigo. *One thing is to preach, another to give.*

Vale más rodear que rodar. *It is better to go around than to roll.*

NAMES OF MEN AND WOMEN

Adela, *Adele*

Adelina, *Adeline*

Agustín, *Augustine*

Alberto, *Albert*

Alejandro, *Alexander*

Alfonso, *Alphonse*

Alfredo, *Alfred*

Alicia, *Alice*

Amelia, *Amelia*

Ana, *Ann*

Andrés, *Andrew*

Antonio, *Anthony*

Arturo, *Arthur*

Basilio, *Basil*

Beatriz, *Beatrice*

Benito, *Benedict*

Bernardino, *Bernardinus*

Bernardo, *Bernard*

Berta, *Bertha*

Bonifacio, *Boniface*

Camila, *Camilla*

Carlos, *Charles*

Carlota, *Charlotte*

Carolina, *Caroline*

Catalina, *Catharine*

Cecilia, *Cecelia*

Clemente, *Clement*

Conrado, *Conrad*

Constancia, *Constance*

Cornelio, *Cornelius*

Cristina, *Christina*

Cristóbal, *Christopher*

Diego o Santiago, *James*

Dionisio, *Dennis*

Dorotea, *Dorothy*

Edmundo, *Edmund*

Eduardo, *Edward*

Elena, *Ellen*

Elisa, *Eliza*

Ema, *Emma*

Emilia, *Emily*

Engracia, *Grace*

Enrique, *Henry*

Enriqueta, *Henrietta*

Ernesto, *Ernest*

Esteban, *Stephen*

Ester, *Esther*

Eugenio, *Eugene*

Federico, *Frederic*

Felipe, *Philip*

Felisa, *Felicia*

Fernando, *Ferdinand*

Florencia, *Florence*

Francisco, *Francis*

Gerardo, *Gerard*

Gertrudis, *Gertrude*

Gilberto, *Gilbert*

Gregorio, *Gregory*

Guillermo, *William*

Ignacio, *Ignatius*

Inés, *Agnes, Inez*

Isabel, *Elizabeth*

Jerónimo, *Jerome*

Joaquín, *Joachim*

Jorge, *George*

José, *Joseph*

Josefina, *Josephine*

Juan, *John*

Julia, *Julia*

Laura, *Laura*

León, <i>Leon</i>	Matilde, <i>Matilda</i>
Leonardo, <i>Leonard</i>	Maximiliano, <i>Maximilian</i>
Leonor, <i>Eleanor</i>	Miguel, <i>Michael</i>
Lucas, <i>Luke</i>	Pablo, <i>Paul</i>
Lucía, <i>Lucy</i>	Patricio, <i>Patrick</i>
Lucrecia, <i>Lucretia</i>	Pedro, <i>Peter</i>
Luis, <i>Louis</i>	Rafael, <i>Raphael</i>
Luisa, <i>Louisa</i>	Ricardo, <i>Richard</i>
Magdalena, <i>Magdalen</i>	Rosa, <i>Rose</i>
Manuel, <i>Emanuel</i>	Sara, <i>Sarah</i>
Margarita, <i>Margaret</i>	Sofía, <i>Sophie</i>
María, <i>Mary</i>	Teodoro, <i>Theodore</i>
Mariana, <i>Marian</i>	Teresa, <i>Theresa</i>
Marta, <i>Martha</i>	Valentín, <i>Valentine</i>
Mateo, <i>Matthew</i>	Vicente, <i>Vincent</i>

NOTE.--Although the Spanish Academy of the Language does not sanction the placing of the written accent over the stressed weak vowel occurring in the last syllable of words followed by a consonant and preceded by another weak vowel, the stressed weak vowel referred to has the accent mark in the infinitives given in the following lists of verbs, because of the aid that it renders the student to see the proper syllabication of a given infinitive.

LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

The verbs designated by an *r* are regular; those designated by an *r*, plus a number, are also regular but suffer either orthographical changes or are defective; those followed by *irr.* are irregular.

The verbs printed in the list in capital letters, followed by a number, are used as models.

Irregular or regular verbs, which are followed by a number and are not used as models, are conjugated like the model to which the number refers.

The orthographical changes which occur in some irregular verbs are omitted for the sake of simplicity.

All the irregular verbs which are used in the lessons are given in this list, but the regular ones are omitted unless they suffer orthographical changes.

A

abandonar, *r.* to abandon
abanicar, *r.* to fan—25b, page 374
abaratar, *r.* to cheapen
abastecer, *irr.* to supply; to purvey—10, page 368
ablandar, *r.* to soften
abofetear, *r.* to slap
ABOLIR, *r.* to abolish—63, page 388
abominar, *r.* to detest
abonar, *r.* to pay; to give credit
aborrecer, *irr.* to hate—10, page 368
abotonar, *r.* to button
abrasar, *r.* to burn
abrazar, *r.* to embrace—25e, page 375
ABRIR, *irr.* to open—56, page 387
abrochar, *r.* to fasten (with hooks and eyes)
absolver, *irr.* to absolve—9, page 368
absorber, *r.* to absorb
abstenerse, *irr.* to abstain—27, page 377
abstraer, *irr.* to abstract—43, page 382
abundar, *r.* to abound
aburrir, *r.* to bore
abusar, *r.* to abuse
acaparar, *r.* to monopolize
acariciar, *r.* to caress
acatarrarse, *r.* to catch a cold
acceder, *r.* to consent
accionar, *r.* to gesticulate
acecinar, *r.* to salt and dry meat
acentuar, *r.* to emphasize; to accentuate
aceptar, *r.* to accept

acercarse, *r.* to get near; to approach—25b, page 374
acertar, *irr.* to guess right; to hit the mark—1, page 367
acicalar, *r.* to make an elaborate toilet
aclamar, *r.* to acclaim
aclarar, *r.* to make clear; to explain
aclimatarse, *r.* to become acclimated
acobardarse, *r.* to become a coward; to be afraid
acomodar, *r.* to accommodate
aconsejar, *r.* to advise
acontecer, *irr.* to happen—10, page 368 (used only in the third persons)
acordar, *irr.* to agree—5, page 367
acostar, *irr.* to put to bed—5, page 367
acostarse, *irr.* to go to bed; to lie down—5, page 367
acostumbrar, *r.* to accustom; to be accustomed
acreditar, *r.* to credit
acudir, *r.* to run to
acumular, *r.* to accumulate
adaptar, *r.* to adapt
adeudar, *r.* to owe
adherir, *irr.* to adhere; to stick to—18, page 371
adivinar, *r.* to guess
adjuntar, *r.* to enclose
administrar, *r.* to manage
admirar, *r.* to admire
admitir, *r.* to admit
adoptar, *r.* to adopt
adoquinar, *r.* to pave

- adorar, *r.* to adore
 adormecerse, *irr.* to begin to fall asleep
 —10, page 368
 adornar, *r.* to adorn
 ADQUIRIR, *irr.* to acquire—20, page 372
 aducir, *irr.* to adduce—12, page 369
 adueñarse, *r.* to take possession
 adular, *r.* to flatter
 adulterar, *r.* to adulterate
 advertir, *irr.* to warn—18, page 371
 afear, *r.* to make look ugly
 afectar, *r.* to affect
 afianzarse, *r.* to become more secure—
 25e, page 375
 afilar, *r.* to sharpen
 afinar, *r.* to tune
 afirmar, *r.* to affirm
 afligir, *r.* to grieve—25i, page 376
 aflojar, *r.* to loosen
 afluir, *r.* to run into (streets, rivers, etc.)
 —25, page 373
 afondar, *r.* to founder
 afrentar, *r.* to affront
 afrontar, *r.* to confront
 agacharse, *r.* to stoop
 agarrar, *r.* to seize
 agarrotar, *r.* to compress bales with
 cords, etc.; to execute with garrote
 agasajar, *r.* to entertain; to fondle
 agenciar, *r.* to obtain
 agitar, *r.* to shake up; to agitate
 agonizar, *r.* to be at death's door—25e,
 page 375
 agotar, *r.* to exhaust
 agradar, *r.* to please
 agradecer, *irr.* to be thankful for—10,
 page 368
 agrandar, *r.* to enlarge
 agraviar, *r.* to wrong
 agregar, *r.* to aggregate—25c, page 374
 agriarse, *r.* to become sour
 agrietarse, *r.* to be filled with cracks
 agrupar, *r.* to group
 aguantar, *r.* to endure
 aguar, *r.* to mix water with some other
 liquid—25d, page 375
 aguardar, *r.* to wait; to expect
 agujerear, *r.* to make holes; to bore
 holes
 aguzar, *r.* to sharpen (wits)—25e, page
 375
 ahijar, *r.* to adopt (children)
 ahogar, *r.* to drown; to choke—25c,
 page 374
 ahondar, *r.* to go deep
 ahorcar, *r.* to hang—25b, page 374
 ahorrar, *r.* to save (money)
 aislar, *r.* to isolate
 ajar, *r.* to spoil (garments)
 ajustar, *r.* to adjust
 ajusticiar, *r.* to execute
 alabar, *r.* to praise
 alambrar, *r.* to fence (with wire)
 alardear, *r.* to brag
 alargar, *r.* to lengthen—25c, page 374
 albergar, *r.* to shelter—25c, page 374
 alborotar, *r.* to howl
 alcantarillar, *r.* to install a sewer system
 alcanzar, *r.* to reach—25e, page 375
 alegar, *r.* to allege—25c, page 374
 alejarse, *r.* to go to a distant place
 alelarse, *r.* to become stupid
 alentar, *irr.* to breathe—1, page 367
 aletargarse, *r.* to fall into lethargy—
 25c, page 374
 alfombrar, *r.* to carpet
 alhajar, *r.* to adorn (with jewels)
 aligerar, *r.* to lighten
 alimentar, *r.* to nourish; to feed
 alinearse, *r.* to fall in line
 aliñar, *r.* to garnish
 alisar, *r.* to smooth
 alistarse, *r.* to get ready
 aliviar, *r.* to relieve
 ALMORZAR, *irr.* to breakfast—5,
 page 367
 alojar, *r.* to lodge
 alquilar, *r.* to rent; to hire
 alterar, *r.* to alter; to change
 altercar, *r.* to dispute obstinately—25b,
 page 374
 alternar, *r.* to alternate
 alucinar, *r.* to delude
 aludir, *r.* to allude
 alumbrar, *r.* to light
 alzar, *r.* to lift up—25e, page 375
 allanar, *r.* to level
 amaestrar, *r.* to train
 amalgamar, *r.* to amalgamate
 amanecer, *irr.* to dawn—10, page 368
 amanerarse, *r.* to adopt mannerisms
 amansar, *r.* to tame
 amargar, *r.* to make bitter—25c, page 374
 amarrar, *r.* to fasten
 amasar, *r.* to knead
 ambicionar, *r.* to covet
 amedrentar, *r.* to frighten
 amenazar, *r.* to threaten—25e, page 375
 amenizar, *r.* to make pleasant—25e,
 page 375
 americanizarse, *r.* to Americanize one-
 self; to assimilate American ideals
 and customs—25e, page 375
 amoblar, *irr.* to furnish—5, page 367
 amontonar, *r.* to heap; to pile up
 amortiguar, *r.* to deaden (pain, colors,
 etc.)—25d, page 375
 amortizar, *r.* to amortize—25e, page 375
 amotinarse, *r.* to riot
 amparar, *r.* to protect

- ampliar**, *r.* to amplify
amputar, *r.* to amputate
analizar, *r.* to analyze—25e, page 375
anclar, *r.* to anchor
ANDAR, *irr.* to walk; to go—30, page 378
anexar, *r.* to annex (also **anexionar**)
angustiar, *r.* to worry; to distress
anhelar, *r.* to long for
animar, *r.* to animate
aniquilar, *r.* to annihilate
anotar, *r.* to make a note of
ansiar, *r.* to wish anxiously
anteponer, *irr.* to place before—40, page 381
anticipar, *r.* to anticipate
anudar, *r.* to knot
anular, *r.* to annul, to cancel
añadir, *r.* to add
apadrinar, *r.* to act as godfather; to protect
apagar, *r.* to put out—25c, page 374
apalabrar, *r.* to contract orally
aparecer, *irr.* to appear—10, page 368
aparentar, *r.* to pretend
apartar, *r.* to separate
apasionarse, *r.* to become passionately fond of
apedrear, *r.* to stone
apelar, *r.* to appeal
apestar, *r.* to stink
apetecer, *irr.* to have a desire for—10, page 368
apilar, *r.* to pile up
aplacar, *r.* to mitigate—25b, page 374
aplanchar, *r.* to iron
aplastar, *r.* to crush
aplazar, *r.* to postpone; to adjourn—25e, page 375
aplicar, *r.* to apply—25b, page 374
apocarse, *r.* to become timid—25b, page 374
apoderarse, *r.* to take possession
apolillarse, *r.* to be moth-eaten
apostar, *irr.* to bet—5, page 367 (regular when its meaning is to post soldiers or relays)
apoyar, *r.* to second (motions); to lean
apoyarse, *r.* to lean against (on, upon)
apreciar, *r.* to appreciate
apremiar, *r.* to urge
apresurar, *r.* to hasten
apretar, *irr.* to tighten; to squeeze—1, page 367
aprisionar, *r.* to imprison
aprobar, *irr.* to approve—5, page 367
apropiar, *r.* to appropriate
aprovechar, *r.* to make good use of; to avail oneself of
aproximarse, *r.* to approach
apuntar, *r.* to aim
apurarse, *r.* to hurry
aquietar, *r.* to calm
aquilatar, *r.* to assay
archivar, *r.* to deposit in an archive
arder, *r.* to burn
argüir, *r.* to argue—25, page 373
armar, *r.* to arm
armonizar, *r.* to harmonize—25e, page 375
arraigar, *r.* to take root—25c, page 374
arrancar, *r.* to pull out—25b, page 374
arrasar, *r.* to destroy
arrastrar, *r.* to drag along
arrebatar, *r.* to carry off
arreciar, *r.* to grow stronger (winds, etc.)
arrendar, *irr.* to rent; to hire—1, page 367
arrepentirse, *irr.* to repent—18, page 371
arrestar, *r.* to arrest
arribar, *r.* to arrive
arriesgar, *r.* to risk—25c, page 374
arrimar, *r.* to approach
arrinconar, *r.* to lay aside (in a corner)
arrojar, *r.* to fling
arrollar, *r.* to roll up; to sweep away
arrostrar, *r.* to face (dangers, etc.)
arrugar, *r.* to wrinkle—25c, page 374
arruinar, *r.* to ruin
articular, *r.* to articulate
asaltar, *r.* to assault; to assail
asar, *r.* to roast
ascender, *irr.* to ascend—3, page 367
asechar, *r.* to waylay
asemejar, *r.* to resemble
asentarse, *irr.* to settle down—1, page 367
asentir, *irr.* to acquiesce—18, page 371
asesinar, *r.* to murder
aseverar, *r.* to assert
asfaltar, *r.* to asphalt
asfixiar, *r.* to suffocate; asphyxiate
asignar, *r.* to assign
asimilar, *r.* to assimilate
ASIR, *irr.* to seize—48, page 384
asistir, *r.* to assist
asociar, *r.* to associate
asombrar, *r.* to astonish
aspirar, *r.* to aspire
asumir, *r.* to assume
asustar, *r.* to frighten
atacar, *r.* to attack—25b, page 374
atajar, *r.* to intercept; to go the shortest way
atar, *r.* to tie
atañer, *irr.* to concern—13, page 369 (used only in the third persons)
atarearse, *r.* to get busy
ataviar, *r.* to adorn
atemorizar, *r.* to frighten—25e, page 375
atender, *irr.* to attend—3, page 367

atentar, *r.* to attempt a crime (in the sense of **tentar** is irregular and is conjugated like model 1, page 367)
atenuar, *r.* to attenuate
aterirse, *r.* to grow stiff with cold (this defective verb is conjugated in the same tenses and persons as model 63, page 388)
aterrar, *r.* to terrify (in the sense of to land is irregular and is conjugated like model 1, page 367)
aterrorizar, *r.* to terrify—25e, page 375
atesorar, *r.* to treasure
atestar, *r.* to cram; to attest (also considered irregular and conjugated like model 1, page 367)
atestiguar, *r.* to attest—25d, page 375
atildar, *r.* to adorn
atinar, *r.* to guess right
atracar, *r.* to dock (steamers); to back in (vehicles)—25b, page 374
atraer, *irr.* to attract—43, page 382
atravesar, *irr.* to cross—1, page 367
atreverse, *r.* to dare
atribuir, *r.* to attribute—25, page 373
atropellar, *r.* to push through
aturdirse, *r.* to become dazed
augurar, *r.* to augur
aullar, *r.* to howl
aumentar, *r.* to increase
ausentarse, *r.* to absent oneself
autorizar, *r.* to authorize—25e, page 375
avaluar, *r.* to appraise
avanzar, *r.* to advance—25e, page 375
avergonzar, *irr.* to put one to shame—5, page 367
AVERIGUAR, *r.* to find out; to ascertain—25d, page 375
avisar, *r.* to give notice; to advise
ayudar, *r.* to help
ayunar, *r.* to fast
azotar, *r.* to whip
azucarar, *r.* to sweeten

B

bañar, *r.* to bathe
barajar, *r.* to shuffle the cards
barbarizar, *r.* to make wild statements—25e, page 375
barnizar, *r.* to varnish—25e, page 375
barrenar, *r.* to bore (holes); to drill
barruntar, *r.* to conjecture
bastar, *r.* to suffice
batirse, *r.* to fight a duel
bautizar, *r.* to baptize—25e, page 375
BENDECIR, *irr.* to bless—36, page 380
beneficiar, *r.* to benefit
besar, *r.* to kiss
besuquear, *r.* to kiss repeatedly
biografiar, *r.* to write biographies

birlar, *r.* to snatch another's employment or sweetheart
blandir, *r.* to brandish (considered defective by several grammarians and conjugated in the same persons and tenses as model 63, page 388)
blanquear, *r.* to bleach; to whitewash
blasfemar, *r.* to swear; to curse
blindar, *r.* to armour
bloquear, *r.* to blockade
bombardear, *r.* to bombard
borrar, *r.* to erase
borronear, *r.* to scribble; to sketch
bosquejar, *r.* to sketch
bostezar, *r.* to yawn; to gape—25e, page 375
botar, *r.* to throw
boycotear, *r.* to boycott
bramar, *r.* to rage; to roar
bregar, *r.* to struggle—25c, page 374
brillar, *r.* to shine
brindar, *r.* to give a toast
bromear, *r.* to joke
brotar, *r.* to bud; to come out
bruñir, *irr.* to burnish—14, page 370
bufar, *r.* to puff with anger
bullir, *irr.* to bubble—14, page 370
burlarse, *r.* to make fun of
buscar, *r.* to look for; to seek—25b, page 374

C

cabalgar, *r.* to ride on horseback—25c, page 374
cabecear, *r.* to nod in sleep or assent
CABER, *irr.* to be contained—47, page 384
cablegrafiar, *r.* to cable
cacarear, *r.* to cackle
CAER, *irr.* to fall—46, page 383
calcar, *r.* to trace (lines, etc.)—25b, page 374
calcular, *r.* to calculate
calentar, *irr.* to heat; to warm—1, page 367
calificar, *r.* to qualify—25b, page 374
calmar, *r.* to calm; to quiet
calumniar, *r.* to slander
calzar, *r.* to put shoes on—25e, page 375
callar, *r.* to cease talking; to keep thoughts to oneself
callarse, *r.* to keep quiet; to become silent
cambiar, *r.* to exchange; to alter
caminar, *r.* to walk
canalizar, *r.* to canalize; to construct canals—25e, page 375
cancelar, *r.* to cancel
canjear, *r.* to exchange (newspapers, prisoners of war, etc.)

- cansar**, *r.* to tire
capitalizar, *r.* to capitalize—25e, page 375
capitanear, *r.* to command troops
capitular, *r.* to capitulate
captar, *r.* to win (sympathy, esteem, etc.)
capturar, *r.* to capture
caracterizar, *r.* to characterize—25e, page 375
carbonizar, *r.* to char—25e, page 375
carcomer, *r.* to consume by 'degrees (health, etc.)
carear, *r.* to confront persons with the purpose of ascertaining the truth
carecer, *irr.* to lack—10, page 368
carenar, *r.* to repair a ship
cargar, *r.* to load; to charge—25c, page 374
caricaturar, *r.* to caricature
cartearse, *r.* to correspond (by letter)
casar, *r.* to marry
cascar, *r.* to crack—25b, page 374
castigar, *r.* to punish—25c, page 374
catalogar, *r.* to list—25c, page 374
catar, *r.* to taste
causar, *r.* to cause
cauterizar, *r.* to cauterize—25e, page 375
cautivar, *r.* to captivate
cavar, *r.* to dig
cavilar, *r.* to think deeply
cazar, *r.* to hunt—25e, page 375
cecear, *r.* to pronounce the *s* like *th*
ceder, *r.* to yield; to cede
cegar, *irr.* to blind—1, page 367
cejar, *r.* to yield
celebrar, *r.* to celebrate; to be glad
censurar, *r.* to censure
centralizar, *r.* to centralize—25e, page 375
centuplicar, *r.* to centuplicate—25b, page 374
ceñar, *r.* to frown
ceñir, *irr.* to gird—16a, page 371
cepillar, *r.* to brush
cercar, *r.* to fence in—25b, page 374
cercenar, *r.* to clip
cerciorarse, *r.* to ascertain
cerner, *irr.* to sift—3, page 367
certificar, *r.* to register (letters); to certify—25b, page 374
CERRAR, *irr.* to close—1, page 367
cesar, *r.* to cease
cifrar, *r.* to base upon
cimentar, *irr.* to lay the foundation (of a building, etc.)—1, page 367
circular, *r.* to circulate
circundar, *r.* to surround
citar, *r.* to quote
civilizar, *r.* to civilize—25e, page 375
clarear, *r.* to dawn
clarificar, *r.* to clarify—25b, page 374
clasificar, *r.* to classify—25b, page 374
clavar, *r.* to nail
cloroformar, *r.* to chloroform
coadyuvar, *r.* to help
coagular, *r.* to coagulate
cobijar, *r.* to shelter
cobrar, *r.* to collect
cocear, *r.* to kick (animals)
cocer, *irr.* to boil—7, page 368
codiciar, *r.* to covet
codificar, *r.* to codify (laws)—25b, page 374
coexistir, *r.* to coexist
coger, *r.* to catch; to take—25h, page 375
cohibir, *r.* to restrain
coincidir, *r.* to coincide
cojear, *r.* to limp
colaborar, *r.* to collaborate
colar, *irr.* to strain; to percolate—5, page 367
coleccionar, *r.* to make a collection
colegir, *irr.* to deduce—15, page 370
colgar, *irr.* to hang up; to hang (criminals)—5, page 367
coligarse, *r.* to confederate—25c, page 374
colindar, *r.* to be contiguous (fields)
colmar, *r.* to fill to the brim; to fulfil
colocar, *r.* to place—25b, page 374
colonizar, *r.* to colonize—25e, page 375
columbrar, *r.* to discern at a distance
comandar, *r.* to command
combatir, *r.* to fight; to combat
combinar, *r.* to combine
comedirse, *irr.* to be moderate—15, page 370
comentar, *r.* to comment
comenzar, *irr.* to begin—1, page 367
comerciar, *r.* to trade
cometer, *r.* to commit
compadecer, *irr.* to pity—10, page 368
comparar, *r.* to compare
comparecer, *irr.* to appear (before a judge)—10, page 368
compartir, *r.* to share; to compart
compeler, *r.* to compel
compendiar, *r.* to abridge
compensar, *r.* to compensate
competir, *irr.* to compete—15, page 370
compilar, *r.* to compile
complacer, *irr.* to please; to accommodate—10, page 368
completar, *r.* to complete
complicar, *r.* to complicate—25b, page 374
componer, *irr.* to compose; to repair—40, page 381
comportarse, *r.* to behave
comprimir, *irr.* to constrain; to compress—58, page 387

- comprobar**, *irr.* to verify—5, page 367
comprometerse, *r.* to commit oneself
computar, *r.* to compute
comulgar, *r.* to receive the Holy Eucharist—25c, page 374
comunicar, *r.* to communicate—25b, page 374
concebir, *irr.* to conceive; to imagine—15, page 370
conceder, *r.* to grant
concentrar, *r.* to concentrate
concernir, *irr.* to concern—4, page 367 (used only in the third persons, gerund and active participle)
concertar, *irr.* to agree; to harmonize musical instruments—1, page 367
conciliar, *r.* to conciliate
concluir, *r.* to finish—25, page 373
concordar, *irr.* to agree—5, page 367
concretarse, *r.* to limit oneself to one thing at a time
concurrir, *r.* to get together; to concur
condecorar, *r.* to decorate (with medals, etc.)
condenar, *r.* to condemn
condensar, *r.* to condense
condescender, *irr.* to condescend—3, page 367
condimentar, *r.* to season (food)
condolerse, *irr.* to condole—7, page 368
CONducir, *irr.* to guide; to conduct; to convey—12, page 369
conectar, *r.* to connect
confederar, *r.* to confederate
conferenciar, *r.* to lecture in public; to consult together; to confer
conferir, *irr.* to bestow; to confer—18, page 371
confesar, *irr.* to confess—1, page 367
confiar, *r.* to trust
configurar, *r.* to configure
confinar, *r.* to confine
confirmar, *r.* to confirm
confiscar, *r.* to confiscate—25b, page 374
confortar, *r.* to comfort
confrontar, *r.* to confront
confundir, *r.* to confuse
congelar, *r.* to freeze; to congeal
congeniar, *r.* to be congenial
congestionar, *r.* to congest
congraciarse, *r.* to ingratiate oneself
congratular, *r.* to congratulate
congregar, *r.* to assemble—25c, page 374
conjeturar, *r.* to conjecture
conjurar, *r.* to conjure
conmemorar, *r.* to commemorate
conmover, *irr.* to move to pity—7, page 368
connotar, *r.* to connote
CONocer, *irr.* to become acquainted—10, page 368
conquistar, *r.* to conquer
consagrar, *r.* to consecrate
conseguir, *irr.* to get—15, page 370
consentir, *irr.* to consent—18, page 371
conservar, *r.* to preserve
considerar, *r.* to consider
consignar, *r.* to consign
consolar, *irr.* to console—5, page 367
consolidar, *r.* to consolidate
conspirar, *r.* to conspire
constar, *r.* to know with certainty; to be recorded
constiparse, *r.* to catch a cold
CONSTITUIR, *r.* to constitute—25, page 373
constreñir, *irr.* to constrain—16a, page 371
construir, *r.* to construct—25, page 373
consultar, *r.* to consult
consumir, *r.* to consume
contagiar, *r.* to infect
contaminar, *r.* to contaminate
contar, *irr.* to count; to tell—5, page 367
contemplar, *r.* to observe
contender, *irr.* to contend—3, page 367
contener, *irr.* to contain; to hold—27, page 377
contentar, *r.* to content
contradecir, *irr.* to contradict—35, page 379
contraer, *irr.* to contract—43, page 382
contraseñar, *r.* to countersign
contrastar, *r.* to contrast
contratar, *r.* to make contracts
contravenir, *irr.* to transgress—45, page 383
contribuir, *r.* to contribute—25, page 373
controvertir, *irr.* to controvert—18, page 371
convalecer, *irr.* to convalesce; to recover from sickness—10, page 368
convencer, *r.* to convince—25f, page 375
convenir, *irr.* to agree; to suit—45, page 383
converger, *r.* to converge—25h, page 375
conversar, *r.* to converse
convertir, *irr.* to convert—18, page 371
convidar, *r.* to invite
convocar, *r.* to summon—25b, page 374
cooperar, *r.* to cooperate
coordinar, *r.* to coordinate
copiar, *r.* to copy
coquetear, *r.* to be coquettish
coronar, *r.* to crown
corregir, *irr.* to correct—15, page 370
corresponder, *r.* to correspond
corroborar, *r.* to corroborate

corroer, *irr.* to corrode; to rust—54, page 386
corromper, *r.* to corrupt
cortejar, *r.* to woo
cosechar, *r.* to harvest
costar, *irr.* to cost—5, page 367
costear, *r.* to pay (expenses, etc.); to coast
cotejar, *r.* to check
cotizar, *r.* to quote prices—25e, page 375
cotorrear, *r.* to gabble
crecer, *irr.* to grow—10, page 368
CREER, *r.* to believe—25a, page 374
criar, *r.* to rear
crispar, *r.* to cause to contract convulsively
cristalizar, *r.* to crystallize—25e, page 375
criticar, *r.* to criticise—25b, page 374
cruzar, *r.* to cross—25e, page 375
cuajar, *r.* to curdle
CUBRIR, *irr.* to cover—55, page 386
cuentear, *r.* to gossip
cuestionar, *r.* to question
cuidar, *r.* to take care of; to look after
culminar, *r.* to culminate
culpar, *r.* to blame
cultivar, *r.* to cultivate
curiosear, *r.* to pry into others' affairs
cursar, *r.* to study a subject in school
curtir, *r.* to tan

CH

charlar, *r.* to chat
chillar, *r.* to scream
chismear, *r.* to gossip
chistar, *r.* to utter (used negatively)
chupar, *r.* to suck

D

dactilografar, *r.* to typewrite
danzar, *r.* to dance—25e, page 375
dañar, *r.* to harm
DAR, *irr.* to give—33, page 379
datar, *r.* to date
debatir, *r.* to debate
debilitar, *r.* to weaken
debutar, *r.* to make a debut
decaer, *irr.* to languish—46, page 383
decapitar, *r.* to behead
decepcionar, *r.* to disappoint
decidir, *r.* to decide
DECIR, *irr.* to say; to tell—34, page 379
declamar, *r.* to recite
declarar, *r.* to declare
declinar, *r.* to decline
decorar, *r.* to decorate
decrecer, *irr.* to decrease—10, page 368
decretar, *r.* to decree
dedicar, *r.* to dedicate; to devote—25b, page 374

deducir, *irr.* to deduct—12, page 369
defalcicar, *r.* to defalcate—25b, page 374
defender, *irr.* to defend—3, page 367
deferir, *irr.* to yield—18, page 371
definir, *r.* to define
deformar, *r.* to deform
defraudar, *r.* to defraud
degenerar, *r.* to degenerate
degollar, *irr.* to cut the throat—5, page 367
degradar, *r.* to degrade
deificar, *r.* to deify—25b, page 374
delatar, *r.* to accuse
delegar, *r.* to delegate—25c, page 374
deleitar, *r.* to delight
deletrear, *r.* to spell
deliberar, *r.* to deliberate
DELINQUIR, *r.* to transgress—25k, page 376
delirar, *r.* to rave
demacrarse, *r.* to lose weight and color
democratizar, *r.* to democratize—25e, page 375
demoler, *irr.* to demolish—7, page 368
demorar, *r.* to delay
demonstrar, *irr.* to demonstrate; to show—5, page 367
denotar, *r.* to denote
dentar, *irr.* to teethe—1, page 367
denunciar, *r.* to denounce
departir, *r.* to talk
depender, *r.* to depend; to rely upon
deplorar, *r.* to deplore
deponer, *irr.* to depose—40, page 381
deportar, *r.* to banish; to deport
depositar, *r.* to deposit
deprimir, *r.* to depress
depurar, *r.* to depurate
derivar, *r.* to derive
derogar, *r.* to revoke—25c, page 374
derramar, *r.* to shed
derretir, *irr.* to melt; to thaw—15, page 370
derribar, *r.* to tear down
derrocar, *r.* to overthrow (governments, etc.)—25b, page 374
derrochar, *r.* to squander
derrotar, *r.* to defeat
derruír, *r.* to demolish—25, page 373
derrumbar, *r.* to throw down
desabotonar, *r.* to unbutton
desabrigarse, *r.* to deprive oneself of the protection which clothing, etc., affords—25c, page 374
desabrochar, *r.* to unfasten
desacreditar, *r.* to discredit
desafiar, *r.* to challenge; to defy
desafinar, *r.* to be out of tune
desagradar, *r.* to displease
desaguar, *r.* to drain—25d, page 375

- desahogar**, *r.* to give vent to one's feelings—25c, page 374
desahuciar, *r.* to declare a patient's inability to recover
desairar, *r.* to slight
desalentarse, *irr.* to get discouraged—1, page 367
desalojar, *r.* to dislodge
desaparecer, *irr.* to disappear—10, page 368
desaprobar, *irr.* to disapprove—5, page 367
desarmar, *r.* to disarm
desarraigar, *r.* to uproot—25c, page 374
desarreglar, *r.* to disarrange
desarrollar, *r.* to develop
desatar, *r.* to untie; to unhitch
desatender, *irr.* to pay no attention to; to neglect—3, page 367
desatinar, *r.* to act or talk foolishly
desatornillar, *r.* to unscrew
desautorizar, *r.* to deprive one of his authority—25e, page 375
desavenir, *irr.* to disagree—45, page 383
desbarajustar, *r.* to put out of order
desbaratar, *r.* to spoil (plans)
desbastar, *r.* to educate and polish a rustic
desbocarse, *r.* to run away (horses)—25b, page 374
desbordarse, *r.* to overflow
descalzar, *r.* to take off the shoes and socks or stockings—25e, page 375
descansar, *r.* to rest
descargar, *r.* to unload—25c, page 374
descender, *irr.* to descend—3, page 367
descolgar, *irr.* to unhang—5, page 367
descollar, *irr.* to surpass—5, page 367
descomponer, *irr.* to upset; to decompose; to unsettle—40, page 381
desconcertar, *irr.* to disconcert—1, page 367
desconectar, *r.* to disconnect
desconfiar, *r.* to mistrust
desconocer, *irr.* to fail to recognize—10, page 368
desconsolarse, *irr.* to be afflicted or cheerless—5, page 367
descontar, *irr.* to discount—5, page 367
descorchar, *r.* to uncork
descorrer, *r.* to draw (as to curtain, etc.)
descoser, *r.* to rip
descotar, *r.* to cut ladies' dresses low
describir, *irr.* to describe—57, page 387
descubrir, *irr.* to discover—55, page 386
descuidar, *r.* to neglect
desdecir, *irr.* to take back (as to words); to retract—35, page 379
desdeñar, *r.* to scorn
desdoblar, *r.* to unfold
desechar, *r.* to discard
desembalar, *r.* to unpack
desembarazar, *r.* to disembarrass—25e, page 375
desembarcar, *r.* to disembark—25b, page 374
desembocar, *r.* to empty (rivers)—25b, page 374
desembolsar, *r.* to disburse
desempacar, *r.* to unpack (bales, etc.)—25b, page 374
desempaquetar, *r.* to open packages
desempolvar, *r.* to dust off
desenganchar, *r.* to unhitch
desengañar, *r.* to undeceive
desengrosar, *irr.* to lose weight (fat)—5, page 367
desentenderse, *irr.* to shirk—3, page 367
desenvolver, *irr.* to unwrap—9, page 368
desequilibrar, *r.* to unbalance
desertar, *r.* to desert
desesperarse, *r.* to get desperate
desfigurar, *r.* to disfigure
desganarse, *r.* to lose the desire (for food, etc.)
desgarrar, *r.* to tear
desgastar, *r.* to wear away
desgobernar, *irr.* to misgovern—1, page 367
deshabitar, *r.* to desert a place
deshacer, *irr.* to undo—31, page 378
deshelar, *irr.* to thaw—1, page 367
desheredar, *r.* to disinherit
deshonrar, *r.* to disgrace
desilusionar, *r.* to disillusion
desinfectar, *r.* to disinfect
desistir, *r.* to desist
deslumbrar, *r.* to dazzle
desmayar, *r.* to dismay
desmejorarse, *r.* to grow worse (physically)
desmembrar, *irr.* to dismember—1, page 367
desmemoriarse, *r.* to be forgetful
desmentir, *irr.* to give the lie—18, page 371
desmenuzar, *r.* to crumble—25e, page 375
desmerecer, *irr.* to be lowered in one's estimation—10, page 368
desmontar, *r.* to dismount
desmoralizar, *r.* to demoralize—25e, page 375
desnatar, *r.* to skim the milk
desnudar, *r.* to undress
desobedecer, *irr.* to disobey—10, page 368
desocuparse, *r.* to be through with the performance of a duty, etc.
desoír, *irr.* to fail to heed—38, page 381
desojarse, *r.* to strain one's eyes

- desolar**, *irr.* to desolate—5, page 367
desollar, *irr.* to skin; to speak ill of one—5, page 367
desordenar, *r.* to disarrange
desorganizar, *r.* to disorganize—25c, page 375
desorientarse, *r.* to lose the way
DESOSAR, *irr.* to bone—6, page 368
despachar, *r.* to dispatch; to forward
desparramar, *r.* to spill
despedazar, *r.* to tear into pieces—25e, page 375
despedir, *irr.* to discharge; to take leave—15, page 370
despedirse, *irr.* to take leave; to say good-bye—15, page 370
desperdiciar, *r.* to spoil
despertar, *irr.* to awaken—1, page 367
despertarse, *irr.* to awaken oneself—1, page 367
desposar, *r.* to marry
desplegar, *irr.* to unfold; to display—1, page 367
despoblar, *irr.* to depopulate—5, page 367
desposar, *r.* to marry
despojar, *r.* to despoil
despreciar, *r.* to despise
desprenderse, *r.* to give away (money, etc.)
despreocuparse, *r.* to be unmindful of what others think
destemplarse, *r.* to get indisposed; to get out of tune (musical instruments)
desteñir, *irr.* to discolor—16a, page 371
desterrar, *irr.* to exile; to banish—1, page 367
destilar, *r.* to distill
destinar, *r.* to destine
destituir, *r.* to dismiss from office—25, page 373
destronar, *r.* to dethrone
destronar, *r.* to destroy—25e, page 375
destruir, *r.* to shatter; to destroy—25, page 373
desvanecer, *irr.* to vanish—10, page 368
desvelar, *r.* to keep awake
desvestir, *irr.* to undress—15, page 370
desviar, *r.* to deviate
desvivirse, *r.* to desire anxiously
detallar, *r.* to detail
detener, *irr.* to detain—27, page 377
deteriorar, *r.* to deteriorate
determinar, *r.* to determine
detestar, *r.* to detest
DEVOLVER, *irr.* to return (things)—9, page 368
diagnosticar, *r.* to diagnose—25b, page 374
dibujar, *r.* to draw
difamar, *r.* to defame; to libel
diferenciar, *r.* to differentiate
diferir, *irr.* to postpone—18, page 371
difundir, *r.* to diffuse
digerir, *irr.* to digest—18, page 371
dignarse, *r.* to deign
dilatar, *r.* to delay
dilucidar, *r.* to elucidate
diluír, *r.* to dilute—25, page 373
dimitir, *r.* to resign
DIRIGIR, *r.* to direct; to guide—25i, page 376
DISCERNIR, *irr.* to discern—4, page 367
disciplinar, *r.* to discipline
discontinuar or **descontinuar**, *r.* to discontinue
disculpar, *r.* to excuse
discutir, *r.* to discuss
diseminar, *r.* to spread
disentir, *irr.* to disagree—18, page 371
diseñar, *r.* to sketch
disfrutar, *r.* to enjoy
disgustar, *r.* to displease
disimular, *r.* to feign
disipar, *r.* to dissipate
dislocarse, *r.* to sprain—25b, page 374
disminuír, *r.* to diminish—25, page 373
disolver, *irr.* to dissolve—9, page 368
disparar, *r.* to shoot
disparatar, *r.* to talk nonsense
dispensar, *r.* to excuse
dispersar, *r.* to scatter; to disperse
disponer, *irr.* to dispose—40, page 381
disputar, *r.* to dispute
distar, *r.* to be distant (places, etc.)
distinguir, *r.* to distinguish—25j, page 376
distraer, *irr.* to distract; to amuse—43, page 382
distribuir, *r.* to distribute—25, page 373
disuadir, *r.* to dissuade
divagar, *r.* to digress—25c, page 374
divertir, *irr.* to divert; to amuse—18, page 371
divertirse, *irr.* to amuse oneself—18, page 371
dividir, *r.* to divide
divorciar, *r.* to divorce
divulgar, *r.* to divulge—25c, page 374
doblar, *r.* to fold
dogmatizar, *r.* to dogmatize—25e, page 375
doler, *irr.* to ache—7, page 368
domar, *r.* to tame
domesticar, *r.* to domesticate—25b, page 374
dominar, *r.* to dominate
dorar, *r.* to gild
DORMIR, *irr.* to sleep—21, page 372
dormitar, *r.* to doze

dotar, *r.* to endow
dragar, *r.* to dredge—25c, page 374
dramatizar, *r.* to dramatize—25e, page 375
dulcificar, *r.* to sweeten—25b, page 374
duplicar, *r.* to duplicate—25b, page 374

E

eclipsar, *r.* to eclipse
economizar, *r.* to economize—25e, page 375
edificar, *r.* to build—25b, page 374
editar, *r.* to publish
educar, *r.* to educate—25b, page 374
ejecutar, *r.* to execute
EJERCER, *r.* to practise (a profession)—25f, page 375
elaborar, *r.* to elaborate
electrizar, *r.* to electrify—25e, page 375
electrocutar, *r.* to electrocute
elegir, *irr.* to choose; to elect; to select—15, page 370
elevar, *r.* to raise; to elevate
eliminar, *r.* to eliminate
elogiar, *r.* to praise
eludir, *r.* to elude
emancipar, *r.* to emancipate
embalsamar, *r.* to embalm
embanderar, *r.* to decorate with flags
embarcar, *r.* to embark—25b, page 374
embelesar, *r.* to charm
embellecer, *irr.* to beautify—10, page 368
emborracharse, *r.* to get drunk
embotellar, *r.* to bottle
embromar, *r.* to tease
embrutecerse, *irr.* to grow stupid—10, page 368
embustear, *r.* to fib
emigrar, *r.* to emigrate
emitir, *r.* to emit
emocionarse, *r.* to be moved with emotions
empacar, *r.* to bale; to pack—25b, page 374
empadronar, *r.* to take census; to register taxpayers
empalagar, *r.* to bother; to be sickened by certain foods—25c, page 374
empaparse, *r.* to get soaked
empapelar, *r.* to paper walls
empaquetar, *r.* to pack (packages)
emparentar, *irr.* to become related—1, page 367
empedrar, *irr.* to pave (with stones)—1, page 367
empeñar, *r.* to pawn; to pledge
empeorar, *r.* to get worse
empezar, *irr.* to begin—1, page 367
empobrecerse, *irr.* to become poor—10, page 368

empolvarse, *r.* to powder oneself
emprender, *r.* to undertake
empujar, *r.* to push
emular, *r.* to emulate
enaltecer, *irr.* to praise—10, page 368
enamorar, *r.* to make love
enamorarse, *r.* to fall in love
enamoricarse, *r.* to take a fancy to; to fall slightly in love—25b, page 374
encabezar, *r.* to head—25e, page 375
encajonar, *r.* to put things in drawers; to case
encallar, *r.* to run aground
encaminar, *r.* to guide; to put in the right road
encanecerse, *irr.* to grow gray—10, page 368
encarar, *r.* to face
encarcelar, *r.* to imprison
encarecer, *irr.* to increase in price; to recommend—10, page 368
encargarse, *r.* to take charge—25c, page 374
encariñarse, *r.* to become fond of
encausar, *r.* to indict
encender, *irr.* to light—3, page 367
encerrar, *irr.* to lock up—1, page 367
encoger, *r.* to shrink—25h, page 375
encomendar, *irr.* to recommend—1, page 367
encomiar, *r.* to praise
encontrar, *irr.* to find—5, page 367
encorvar, *r.* to bend
encuadernar, *r.* to bind (books)
encurtir, *r.* to pickle
endosar, *r.* to indorse
endulzar, *r.* to sweeten—25e, page 375
endurecer, *irr.* to harden—10, page 368
enemistarse, *r.* to sever friendships
enervar, *r.* to enervate
enfadarse, *r.* to get angry
enfermarse, *r.* to get sick
enflaquecer, *irr.* to grow thin—10, page 368
enfrentar, *r.* to face
enfriar, *r.* to cool
enfurruñarse, *r.* to grow angry
enfurecerse, *irr.* to become furious (or enraged)—10, page 368
engalanar, *r.* to adorn
enganchar, *r.* to hitch; to hook
engañar, *r.* to deceive
engatusar, *r.* to entice
engendrar, *r.* to beget
engolfarse, *r.* to absorb oneself in meditation
engordar, *r.* to grow fat
engrandecer, *irr.* to enlarge; to aggrandize; to magnify—10, page 368

- engrasar, *r.* to grease
 engreírse, *irr.* to become conceited—16, page 370
 engrosar, *irr.* to gain weight—5, page 367
 engullir, *irr.* to gobble—14, page 370
 enhebrar, *r.* to thread a needle
 enjaular, *r.* to cage
 enjuagar, *r.* to rinse—25c, page 374
 enjugar, *r.* to dry—25c, page 374
 enladrillar, *r.* to pave with bricks
 enlatar, *r.* to can
 enlazar, *r.* to lasso—25e, page 375
 enloquecerse, *irr.* to become demented—10; page 368
 enmendar, *irr.* to correct—1, page 367
 enmudecer, *irr.* to become silent (or dumb)—10, page 368
 enojarse, *r.* to get angry
 enorgullecerse, *irr.* to become proud—10, page 368
 enredar, *r.* to entangle
 enriquecerse, *irr.* to become rich—10, page 368
 enrojarse, *irr.* to blush; to redden—10, page 368
 enronquecerse, *irr.* to get hoarse—10, page 368
 ensalivar, *r.* to moisten with saliva
 ensalzar, *r.* to praise—25e, page 375
 ensanchar, *r.* to widen
 ensangrentar, *irr.* to stain with blood—1, page 367
 ensayar, *r.* to rehearse
 enseñar, *r.* to teach; to show
 ensillar, *r.* to saddle
 ensordecer, *irr.* to deafen—10, page 368
 ensuciar, *r.* to soil
 entender, *irr.* to understand—3, page 367
 enternecerse, *irr.* to be moved to pity—10, page 368
 enterrar, *irr.* to bury—1, page 367
 entibiar, *r.* to make lukewarm
 entoldar, *r.* to cover with an awning
 entonar, *r.* to begin to sing; to sing in tune
 entorpecer, *irr.* to obstruct—10, page 368
 entrar, *r.* to enter
 entreabrir, *irr.* to open a door slightly—56, page 387
 entregar, *r.* to deliver, to hand over—25c, page 374
 entremeterse, *r.* to intrude
 entreoír, *irr.* to hear indistinctly—38, page 381
 entretener, *irr.* to entertain—27, page 377
 entrever, *irr.* to see in a confused way—44, page 383
 entrevistar, *r.* to interview
 entristecerse, *irr.* to become sad—10, page 368
 entrometer, *r.* to butt in; to insert
 enturbiar, *r.* to muddle
 entusiasmarse, *r.* to become enthusiastic
 enumerar, *r.* to enumerate
 enunciar, *r.* to enunciate
 envalentonarse, *r.* to get courage
 envanecerse, *irr.* to become vain—10, page 368
 envasar, *r.* to tun; to bottle
 envejecerse, *irr.* to grow old—10, page 368
 envenenar, *r.* to poison
 envidiar, *r.* to envy
 enviudar, *r.* to become a widow or a widower
 envolver, *irr.* to wrap—9, page 368
 equilibrar, *r.* to balance
 equipar, *r.* to equip
 equivaler, *irr.* to be equivalent—23, page 373
 ERGUIR, *irr.* to erect—49, page 384
 erigir, *r.* to erect—25i, page 376
 erogar, *r.* to lay out; to spend—25c, page 374
 erradicar, *r.* to eradicate—25b, page 374
 ERRAR, *irr.* to err—2, page 367
 erutar, *r.* to belch
 escabechar, *r.* to pickle
 escabullirse, *irr.* to sneak away—14, page 370
 escampar, *r.* to stop raining
 escandalizar, *r.* to scandalize—25e, page 375
 escapar, *r.* to escape
 escardar, *r.* to weed out
 escarmentar, *irr.* to correct severely; to be tutored by experience—1, page 367
 escarnecer, *irr.* to scoff; to jeer; to mock—10, page 368
 escasear, *r.* to be scarce
 escatimar, *r.* to curtail (that which is to be given)
 esclavizar, *r.* to enslave—25e, page 375
 escocer, *irr.* to smart—7, page 368
 escoger, *r.* to choose—25h, page 375
 escoltar, *r.* to escort
 esconder, *r.* to hide
 escotar, *r.* to share in a common expense
 ESCRIBIR, *irr.* to write—57, page 387
 escrutar, *r.* to scrutinize
 esculpir, *r.* to sculpture; to engrave
 escupir, *r.* to expectorate
 esforzarse, *irr.* to exert oneself—5, page 367
 esgrimir, *r.* to fence
 esmaltar, *r.* to enamel
 esmerarse, *r.* to do one's best
 espantar, *r.* to frighten
 esparcir, *r.* to spread—25g, page 375

especificar, r. to specify—25b, page 374
especular, r. to speculate
espiar, r. to spy
espumar, r. to skim
esquivar, r. to shun
establecer, irr. to establish—10, page 368
estafar, r. to swindle
estallar, r. to explode
estampar, r. to imprint (as a kiss)
estancar, r. to corner; to monopolize—25b, page 374
ESTAR, irr. to be—29, page 377
estarcir, r. to stencil—25g, page 375
estenografiar, r. to write in shorthand
estereotipar, r. to stereotype
esterilizar, r. to sterilize—25e, page 375
estibar, r. to stow away
estilarse, r. to be in fashion
estimar, r. to esteem
estimular, r. to stimulate
estipular, r. to stipulate
estorbar, r. to be in one's way
estrangular, r. to strangle
estrechar, r. to make narrow
estrellar, r. to dash to pieces
estremecerse, irr. to tremble—10, page 368
estropear, r. to spoil
estrujar, r. to squeeze (fruits for juice)
estucar, r. to stucco—25b, page 374
eterizar, r. to etherize—25e, page 375
eternizar, r. to eternize; to make eternal—25e, page 375
evacuar, r. to evacuate
evadir, r. to evade
evangelizar, r. to evangelize—25e, page 375
evaporar, r. to evaporate
evocar, r. to evoke—25b, page 374
evolucionar, r. to make evolutions or manœuvres
exagerar, r. to exaggerate
exaltarse, r. to get excited
examinar, r. to examine
exasperar, r. to exasperate
excrcelar, r. to set free (a prisoner)
exceder, r. to exceed
exceptuar, r. to except
excitar, r. to excite
exclamar, r. to exclaim
excluir, r. to exclude—25, page 373
excomulgar, r. to excommunicate
excusar, r. to excuse
exhalar, r. to exhale
exhibir, r. to exhibit
exhumar, r. to exhume
exigir, r. to demand; to exact; to require—25i, page 376
eximir, r. to exempt

expedir, irr. to forward (to issue)—15, page 370
expeler, r. to expel
experimentar, r. to experiment
expiar, r. to expiate
expirar, r. to expire
explicar, r. to explain—25b, page 374
explorar, r. to explore
explotar, r. to exploit
exponer, irr. to expose—40, page 381
exprimir, r. to squeeze
expulsar, r. to expel
extender, irr. to enlarge—3, page 367
exterminar, r. to exterminate
EXTINGUIR, r. to extinguish—25j, page 376
extirpar, r. to eradicate
extraer, irr. to extract—43, page 382
extrañarse, r. to be surprised
extraviarse, r. to go astray
extremar, r. to carry to an extreme

F

fabricar, r. to manufacture—25b, page 374
facturar, r. to invoice; to check (baggage, etc.)
facultar, r. to empower
fajar, r. to swaddle
falsificar, r. to counterfeit—25b, page 374
faltar, r. to be short (of time, money, etc.); to offend
fallecer, irr. to die—10, page 368
fanatizar, r. to make one fanatic—25e, page 375
fascinar, r. to fascinate
fastidiar, r. to annoy
fatigarse, r. to be tired out
favorecer, irr. to favor—10, page 368
fecundizar, r. to fecundate—25e, page 375
fechar, r. to date (a letter)
felicitar, r. to congratulate
fertilizar, r. to fertilize—25e, page 375
fiar, r. to trust; to give credit
figurarse, r. to imagine
fijar, r. to fix
filiar, r. to register the pedigree and description of a person
filosofar, r. to philosophize
filtrar, r. to filter
fingir, r. to feign—25i, page 376
firmar, r. to sign
flaquear, r. to weaken (limbs and spirit)
fletar, r. to charter a ship
flirtear or flertear, r. to flirt
flojear, r. to slacken
florecer, irr. to bloom—10, page 368
flotar, r. to float

fluctuar, r. to fluctuate
fluír, r. to flow—25, page 373
foliar, r. to folio (a book)
forjar, r. to forge
formalizarse, r. to grow formal—25e, page 375
formar, r. to form
formular, r. to formulate
forrar, r. to line (clothes); to cover books
fortalecer, irr. to strengthen—10, page 368
fortificar, r. to fortify—25b, page 374
forzar, irr. to force; . . . *la vista*, to strain one's eyes—5, page 367
fotografar, r. to photoengrave
fotografiar, r. to photograph
fracasar, r. to fail
fraccionar, r. to divide into fractions
fracturar, r. to rupture
fraternizar, r. to fraternize—25e, page 375
frecuentar, r. to frequent
fregar, irr. to scrub; to wash dishes; to scour; to rub—1, page 367
FREÍR, irr. to fry—17; page 371
frotar, r. to rub
fruncir, r. to pucker; to knit the eyebrows; to scowl—25g, page 375
frustrar, r. to frustrate
fulminar, r. to fulminate
fumigar, r. to fumigate
funcionar, r. to work; to function
fundir, r. to found; to cast
fusilar, r. to shoot

G

galantear, r. to court
galopar, r. to gallop
gangosear, r. to speak with a twang
garantizar, r. to guarantee—25e, page 375
gargarizar, r. to gargle—25e, page 375
garrapatear, r. to scribble; to scrawl
gasear, r. to gas
gastar, r. to spend
gatear, r. to go on all fours
gemir, irr. to moan—15, page 370
generalizar, r. to generalize—25e, page 375
germinar, r. to germinate; to bud
gesticular or *gestear, r.* to gesticulate
gestionar, r. to take steps to accomplish something
girar, r. to draw on (drafts, etc.); to turn around
glorificar, r. to glorify—25b, page 374
gobernar, irr. to govern—1, page 367
golosinear, r. to eat delicacies
golpear, r. to strike
gorjear, r. to warble

gotear, r. to leak; to drip
GOZAR, r. to enjoy—25e, page 375
grabar, r. to engrave
graduar, r. to graduate
granizar, r. to hail—25e, page 375
granjear, r. to win (esteem and sympathy of others)
granular, r. to granulate
gratificar, r. to gratify—25b, page 374
gravitar, r. to gravitate
guadañar, r. to cut with the scythe
guardar, r. to keep
guarecerse, irr. to take refuge or shelter—10, page 368
guarnecer, irr. to garnish—10, page 368
guasearse, r. to make fun of
guiar, r. to guide
guillotinar, r. to guillotine
gustar, r. to taste; to please; to like; to have a liking for

H

HABER, irr. to have (auxiliary verb)—26, page 376
habilitar, r. to qualify; to act as administrator of an estate
habitar, r. to live; to dwell
habituarse, r. to get accustomed to
HACER, irr. to do; to make—31, page 378
halar, r. to pull
hallar, r. to find
hamacarse, r. to swing in the hammock—25b, page 374
haraganear, r. to idle
harmonizar, r. to harmonize—25c, page 374
hartar, r. to glut
hastiar, r. to get bored
hechizar, r. to fascinate—25e, page 375
heder, irr. to stink—3, page 367
helar, irr. to freeze—1, page 367
henchir, irr. to fill up—15, page 370
herir, irr. to wound—18, page 371
hermanar, r. to match (things); to unite
hermosear, r. to beautify
herrar, irr. to shoe (horses)—1, page 367
hervir, irr. to boil—18, page 371
higienizar, r. to make sanitary—25e, page 375
hilar, r. to spin
hilvanar, r. to baste
hincharse, r. to swell
hipnotizar, r. to hypnotize; to mesmerize—25e, page 375
hipotecar, r. to mortgage—25b, page 374
hojear, r. to turn the leaves of a book
holgar, irr. to be idle—5, page 367
holgazanear, r. to idle

hollar, *irr.* to tread upon—5, page 367
honrar, *r.* to honor
horripilar, *r.* to inspire horror
horrorizar, *r.* to terrify—25e, page 374
hospedar, *r.* to lodge
hostigar, *r.* to trouble; to harass—25c, page 374
huír, *r.* to flee—25, page 373
humedecer, *irr.* to moisten; to dampen—10, page 368
humillar, *r.* to humiliate
hundir, *r.* to sink
hurtar, *r.* to steal

I

idealizar, *r.* to idealize—25e, page 375
idear, *r.* to plan; to scheme
identificar, *r.* to identify—25b, page 374
ignorar, *r.* to be ignorant of
ilusionarse, *r.* to create illusions
ilustrar, *r.* to illustrate
imantar, *r.* to magnetize; to charge with magnetism
imbuír, *r.* to imbue—25, page 373
impacientarse, *r.* to get impatient
impartir, *r.* to impart
impedir, *irr.* to prevent—15, page 370
impeler, *r.* to impel
implantar, *r.* to implant
implicar, *r.* to implicate—25b, page 374
implorar, *r.* to implore
imponer, *irr.* to impose—40, page 381
importunar, *r.* to pester
imposibilitar, *r.* to disable
impregnar, *r.* to impregnate
impresionarse, *r.* to be impressed
IMPRIMIR, *irr.* to print—58, page 387
improvisar, *r.* to extemporize
inaugurar, *r.* to inaugurate
incapacitar, *r.* to incapacitate
incendiar, *r.* to set on fire
incitar, *r.* to incite
inclinarse, *r.* to incline
incluír, *r.* to include; to enclose—25, page 373
incomodar, *r.* to inconvenience; to make one angry
incomunicar, *r.* to deprive one of social intercourse or communication—25b, page 374
incorporar, *r.* to incorporate
incriminar, *r.* to incriminate
incrustar, *r.* to inlay
inculcar, *r.* to inculcate—25b, page 374
incumbir, *r.* to concern
incurrir, *r.* to incur
indagar, *r.* to investigate—25c, page 374
indemnizar, *r.* to indemnify—25e, page 375
indicar, *r.* to indicate—25b, page 374
indisponerse, *irr.* to get indisposed—40, page 381
inducir, *irr.* to induce—12, page 369
indultar, *r.* to pardon (criminals)
infectar, *r.* to infect
inferir, *irr.* to infer—18, page 371
inflamar, *r.* to inflame
inflar, *r.* to inflate; to puff or blow up
influenciar, *r.* to influence
influir, *r.* to influence—25, page 373
informar, *r.* to inform
infringir, *r.* to violate; to infringe—25i, page 375
infundir, *r.* to infuse
ingresar, *r.* to enter (an institution of learning)
inhalar, *r.* to inhale
iniciar, *r.* to initiate
injuriar, *r.* to insult
inmigrar, *r.* to immigrate
inmortalizar, *r.* to immortalize—25e, page 375
inmunizar, *r.* to make immune—25e, page 375
inmutarse, *r.* to change (expressions of face due to emotions)
innovar, *r.* to innovate
inocular, *r.* to inoculate
inquietar, *r.* to trouble
inquirir, *irr.* to inquire—20, page 372
insertar, *r.* to insert
insinuar, *r.* to insinuate
insistir, *r.* to insist
insolentarse, *r.* to become insolent
inspeccionar, *r.* to inspect
inspirar, *r.* to inspire
instalar, *r.* to install; to place
instar, *r.* to urge
instigar, *r.* to instigate—25c, page 374
instituir, *r.* to institute; to establish—25, page 373
instruír, *r.* to instruct—25, page 373
insubordinarse, *r.* to rebel
insultar, *r.* to insult
integrar, *r.* to reimburse
intentar, *r.* to attempt
intercalar, *r.* to intercalate
interceder, *r.* to intercede
interceptar, *r.* to intercept
interesarse, *r.* to interest oneself; to get interested
interpelar, *r.* to interpellate
interpolar, *r.* to interpolate
interpretar, *r.* to interpret
interrogar, *r.* to question—25c, page 374
intervenir, *irr.* to intervene—45, page 383
intimar, *r.* to become intimate
intimidar, *r.* to intimidate
intitular, *r.* to entitle

intrigar, *r.* to plot—25c, page 374
introducir, *irr.* to introduce—12, page 369
intrusear, *r.* to intrude
inundar, *r.* to inundate
inutilizar, *r.* to render useless—25e, page 375
invadir, *r.* to invade
invalidar, *r.* to invalidate
inventar, *r.* to invent
inventariar, *r.* to take inventory
invernar, *irr.* to winter—1, page 367
invertir, *irr.* to invest; to invert—18, page 371
investigar, *r.* to investigate—25c, page 374
investir, *irr.* to confer (an honor, etc.)—15, page 370
invitar, *r.* to invite
invocar, *r.* to invoke—25b, page 374
inyectar, *r.* to inject
IR, *irr.* to go—37, page 380
irradiar, *r.* to irradiate
irrigar, *r.* to irrigate—25c, page 374
irritar, *r.* to irritate
izar, *r.* to hoist—25e, page 375

J

jabonar, *r.* to soap
jactarse, *r.* to vaunt
jalear, *r.* to animate with enthusiastic manifestations (dancers, bull-fighters, etc.)
jaranear, *r.* to carouse; to jest
jeringar, *r.* to syringe; to annoy—25c, page 374
jinetear, *r.* to ride on horseback for show
jorobar, *r.* to annoy
juagar, *r.* to rinse (mouth, cups, etc.)—25c, page 374
jubilar, *r.* to place on the retired list
JUGAR, *irr.* to play—19, page 372
juguetear, *r.* to frolic
juntar, *r.* to join
jurar, *r.* to swear
justificar, *r.* to justify
justipreciar, *r.* to appraise
juzgar, *r.* to judge—25c, page 374

L

labrar, *r.* to plow
lacerar, *r.* to lacerate
lacrar, *r.* to seal with sealing wax
lagotear, *r.* to wheedle
lamentar, *r.* to lament; to regret
lamer, *r.* to lick
lanchar, *r.* to launch
languidecer, *irr.* to languish—10, page 368

lanzar, *r.* to throw—25e, page 375
latir, *r.* to beat; to palpitate
laurear, *r.* to crown with laurels; to honor
laxar, *r.* to loosen
leer, *r.* to read—25a, page 374
legalizar, *r.* to legalize—25e, page 375
legar, *r.* to bequeath—25c, page 374
legitimar, *r.* to legitimize
leñar, *r.* to cut wood
levantar, *r.* to lift
liar, *r.* to tie (bundles, etc.); to bundle
libar, *r.* to suck juice softly; to perform a libation
liberalizar, *r.* to liberalize—25e, page 375
libertar, *r.* to free
librar, *r.* to draw (drafts, etc.); to free
licenciar, *r.* to discharge (soldiers); to licentiate
lidiar, *r.* to contend; to fight (bulls, etc.)
lijar, *r.* to sandpaper
limar, *r.* to file
limitar, *r.* to limit
linchar, *r.* to lynch
liquidar, *r.* to liquidate
lisiar, *r.* to injure; to cripple
lisonjear, *r.* to flatter
litigar, *r.* to litigate—25c, page 374
litografiar, *r.* to lithograph
localizar, *r.* to localize—25e, page 375
lograr, *r.* to attain; to succeed in getting
loquear, *r.* to revel; to act like a crazy person
lubricar, *r.* to lubricate—25b, page 374
LUCIR, *irr.* to glitter—11, page 369
lustrar, *r.* to polish (shoes)

LL

llagar, *r.* to ulcerate—25c, page 374
LLEGAR, *r.* to arrive—25c, page 374
llenar, *r.* to fill
llover, *irr.* to rain—7, page 368
lloviznar, *r.* to drizzle

M

machacar, *r.* to pound—25b, page 374
madrugar, *r.* to rise early—25c, page 374
madurar, *r.* to ripen
magnetizar, *r.* to magnetize—25e, page 375
magullar, *r.* to bruise
malacostumbrarse, *r.* to acquire bad habits
malcasarse, *r.* to be mismated (in marriage)
malcomer, *r.* to eat poorly
maldecir, *irr.* to curse—36, page 380
malemplear, *r.* to misuse

- malgastar**, *r.* to misspend
malhumorarse, *r.* to get ill-humored
maliciar, *r.* to suspect maliciously
malquistar, *r.* to estrange friends
maltratar, *r.* to ill-treat
malvender, *r.* to sell at a loss
malversar, *r.* to misuse funds
mamar, *r.* to suck
manar, *r.* to spring
mancillar, *r.* to stain (a reputation)
mancomunar, *r.* to unite (persons or funds for a purpose)
manchar, *r.* to soil; to spot
mandar, *r.* to send
manejar, *r.* to manage; to handle
maniatar, *r.* to handcuff
manifestar, *irr.* to inform—1, page 367
maniobrar, *r.* to manœuvre (troops, etc.)
manipular, *r.* to manipulate
manosear, *r.* to handle
mantener, *irr.* to maintain; to support—27, page 377
manufacturar, *r.* to manufacture
maquinar, *r.* to plan (secretly)
maravillar, *r.* to marvel; to astonish
marcar, *r.* to mark—25b, page 374
marcharse, *r.* to go away
marchitarse, *r.* to wither
marearse, *r.* to get seasick
martillar, *r.* to hammer
mascar, *r.* to chew—25b, page 374
mascullar, *r.* to mumble
masticar, *r.* to chew; to masticate—25b, page 374
materializar, *r.* to materialize—25e, page 375
matizar, *r.* to blend colors—25e, page 375
matricular, *r.* to register; to matriculate
mayar, *r.* to mew (cats)
mecanografiar, *r.* to typewrite
mecer, *r.* to rock; to swing—25f, page 375
mediar, *r.* to mediate
medir, *irr.* to measure—15, page 370
meditar, *r.* to meditate
mejorar, *r.* to improve
mentonar, *r.* to mention
mendigar, *r.* to beg alms—25c, page 374
menear, *r.* to stir
menguar, *r.* to diminish—25d, page 375
menoscabar, *r.* to impair
menospreciar, *r.* to underestimate; to underrate; to despise
menospreciarse, *r.* to belittle oneself
mentar, *irr.* to mention—1, page 367
mentir, *irr.* to lie—18, page 371
menudear, *r.* to retail; to go into details
mercar, *r.* to trade; to buy—25b, page 374
merecer, *irr.* to deserve—10, page 368
merendar, *irr.* to lunch—1, page 367
mermar, *r.* to dwindle
merodear, *r.* to maraud
mesar, *r.* to tear the hair or beard
metaforizar, *r.* to use metaphors—25e, page 375
metalizarse, *r.* to be money mad—25e, page 375
metamorfosear, *r.* to metamorphose; to transform
meter, *r.* to put in
metodizar, *r.* to methodize—25e, page 375
mezclar, *r.* to mix
migar, *r.* to crumb bread—25c, page 374
militar, *r.* to militate; to serve in the army
militarizar, *r.* to militarize—25e, page 375
mimar, *r.* to pet
minar, *r.* to mine; to undermine
mirar, *r.* to look at; to look
mitigar, *r.* to mitigate—25c, page 374
mixturar, *r.* to mix
modelar, *r.* to model
moderar, *r.* to moderate
modernizar, *r.* to modernize—25e, page 375
modificar, *r.* to modify—25b, page 374
modular, *r.* to modulate
mofarse, *r.* to jeer
mojar, *r.* to wet
moldear, *r.* to mould
moler, *irr.* to grind—7, page 368
mondar, *r.* to peel
monopolizar, *r.* to monopolize—25c, page 374
montar, *r.* to mount
moralizar, *r.* to moralize—25e, page 375
morar, *r.* to live
morder, *irr.* to bite—7, page 368
morigerar, *r.* to restrain
MORIR, *irr.* to die—22, page 373
morirse, *irr.* to die—22, page 373
mortificar, *r.* to mortify—25b, page 374
mostrar, *irr.* to show—5, page 367
MOVER, *irr.* to move—7, page 368
movilizar, *r.* to mobilize—25e, page 375
mudarse, *r.* to move
muír, *r.* to milk—25, page 373
multar, *r.* to fine
multiplicar, *r.* to multiply—25b, page 374
murmurar, *r.* to gossip; to murmur
mutilar, *r.* to mutilate

N

- nacer**, *irr.* to be born—10, page 368
nadar, *r.* to swim
narrar, *r.* to narrate
naturalizar, *r.* to naturalize—25e, page 375

naufregar, *r.* to be shipwrecked—25c, page 374
navegar, *r.* to navigate—25c, page 374
necear, *r.* to play the fool
negar, *irr.* to deny—1, page 367
negociar, *r.* to negotiate
neutralizar, *r.* to neutralize—25e, page 375
nevar, *irr.* to snow—1, page 367
niquelar, *r.* to nickel-plate
nivelar, *r.* to level
nombrar, *r.* to name
nominar, *r.* to nominate; to name
noticiar, *r.* to inform
notificar, *r.* to notify—25b, page 374
numerar, *r.* to numerate
nutrir, *r.* to nourish

O

obedecer, *irr.* to obey—10, page 368
objetar, *r.* to object
obligar, *r.* to oblige; to compel—25c, page 374
obrar, *r.* to act; to work
obscurecer, *irr.* to obscure; to grow dark—10, page 368
obsequiar, *r.* to treat
observar, *r.* to observe
obstinarse, *r.* to be obstinate
obstruir, *r.* to obstruct—25, page 373
obtener, *irr.* to obtain—27, page 377
ocasionar, *r.* to cause
ocultar, *r.* to hide
ocurrir, *r.* to happen
odiar, *r.* to hate
ofender, *r.* to offend
ofrecer, *irr.* to offer—10, page 368
OÍR, *irr.* to hear—38, page 381
OLER, *irr.* to smell—8, page 368
operar, *r.* to operate
oponer, *irr.* to oppose—40, page 381
oprimir, *r.* to oppress
orar, *r.* to pray
ordeñar, *r.* to milk (animals)
orear, *r.* to air; to ventilate
organizar, *r.* to organize—25e, page 375
orientarse, *r.* to find one's bearings
originar, *r.* to originate
osar, *r.* to dare
oscilar, *r.* to oscillate
ostentar, *r.* to make a show of
otorgar, *r.* to grant—25c, page 374
oxidar, *r.* to oxidate
oxigenar, *r.* to oxygenate

P

pacer, *irr.* to graze—10, page 368
pacificar, *r.* to pacify—25b, page 374
pactar, *r.* to stipulate

padecer, *irr.* to suffer—10, page 368
pagar, *r.* to pay—25c, page 374
paladear, *r.* to relish
paliar, *r.* to palliate
palidecer, *irr.* to grow pale—10, page 368
palpar, *r.* to feel (with hands)
paralizar, *r.* to paralyze—25e, page 375
parear, *r.* to pair
parecerse, *irr.* to resemble; to seem—10, page 368
parlar, *r.* to chatter
parodiar, *r.* to parody
parrandear, *r.* to frolic
participar, *r.* to participate; to inform
pasaportear, *r.* to issue passports
pasmar, *r.* to cause a spasm; to astonish
pasquinar, *r.* to lampoon; to satirize
pasteurizar, *r.* to pasteurize—25e, page 375
patalear, *r.* to kick about violently
patear, *r.* to stamp the feet
patentar, *r.* to patent
patentizar, *r.* to make evident—25e, page 375
patinar, *r.* to skate
patrocinar, *r.* to patronize
patrullar, *r.* to patrol
pausar, *r.* to pause
pavimentar, *r.* to pave
pavonearse, *r.* to show off; to strut
pedir, *irr.* to ask for; to ask—15, page 370
pegar, *r.* to strike; to stick—25c, page 374
peligrar, *r.* to be in danger
pellizcar, *r.* to pinch—25b, page 374
penar, *r.* to suffer
pendenciar, *r.* to quarrel
pender, *r.* to be pending; to impend
penetrar, *r.* to penetrate
pensar, *irr.* to think—1, page 367
pensionar, *r.* to pension
percibir, *r.* to perceive
PERDER, *irr.* to lose—3, page 367
perdonar, *r.* to forgive; to pardon
perdurar, *r.* to last a long time
perecer, *irr.* to perish—10, page 368
peregrinar, *r.* to go on a pilgrimage
perfeccionar, *r.* to perfect
perfilar, *r.* to profile
perforar, *r.* to perforate
perfumar, *r.* to perfume
perjudicar, *r.* to harm—25b, page 374
perjurar, *r.* to commit perjury; to swear falsely
permanecer, *irr.* to stay—10, page 368
permitir, *r.* to allow
permutar, *r.* to exchange
pernear, *r.* to move the legs violently
perniquebrar, *irr.* to break one or two legs—1, page 367
pernoctar, *r.* to spend the night out

- perorar, r.* to deliver a speech or an oration
perpetrar, r. to perpetrate
perpetuar, r. to perpetuate
perseguir, irr. to pursue—15, page 370
perseverar, r. to persevere
persignarse, r. to make the sign of the cross
persistir, r. to persist
personarse, r. to appear personally
personificar, r. to personify—25b, page 374
persuadir, r. to persuade
pertenecer, irr. to belong—10, page 368
pertrechar, r. to supply (armies)
perturbar, r. to disturb
pervertir, irr. to pervert—18, page 371
pesar, r. to weigh
pescar, r. to fish—25b, page 374
pespuntar, r. to backstitch
petrificar, r. to petrify—25b, page 374
piafar, r. to stamp with the hoof (horses)
piar, r. to peep (chickens)
picar, r. to sting; to itch; to peck (birds); to burn (peppers)—25b, page 374
picotear, r. to pick with the beak
pinchar, r. to prick
pintar, r. to paint
pisar, r. to step
pisotear, r. to tread under foot
pitar, r. to blow a whistle
pitorrearse, r. to make fun of
PLACER, irr. to please—50, page 384
plagar, r. to plague; to infest—25c, page 374
plagiar, r. to plagiarize
plantar, r. to plant
PLAÑIR, irr. to bewail—14, page 370
platear, r. to silverplate
platicar, r. to converse—25b, page 374
plegar, irr. to fold—1, page 367
pleitear, r. to litigate
pluralizar, r. to pluralize—25e, page 375
poblar, irr. to populate—5, page 367
podar, r. to prune
PODER, irr. to be able—39, page 381
PODRIR, irr. to decay; to rot—51, page 385
poetizar, r. to render poetical—25e, page 375
polcar, r. to dance the polka—25b, page 374
ponderar, r. to praise highly
PONER, irr. to place; to put—40, page 381
popularizar, r. to popularize—25e, page 375
pordiosear, r. to beg (alms)
porfiar, r. to insist
portar, r. to carry (arms, etc.)
- portarse, r.* to behave
posar, r. to rest
poseer, r. to possess—25a, page 374
posesionarse, r. to take possession
posibilitar, r. to render possible
posponer, irr. to postpone—40, page 381
postrar, r. to prostrate
practicar, r. to practise—25b, page 374
precaucionarse, r. to take precautions
precaver, r. to guard against
preceder, r. to precede
preciarse, r. to take a pride in
precipitar, r. to precipitate
precisar, r. to need (Spanish America)
PREDECIR, irr. to foretell—35, page 379
predestinar, r. to predestinate
predeterminar, r. to predetermine
predicar, r. to preach—25b, page 374
predisponer, irr. to predispose—40, page 381
predominar, r. to predominate
preferir, irr. to prefer—18, page 371
pregonar, r. to announce publicly
preludiar, r. to play a prelude
premeditar, r. to premeditate
premiar, r. to reward
prendarse, r. to fall in love
PRENDER, irr. to arrest—59, page 387
presar, r. to press
preocuparse, r. to worry; to preoccupy
presagiar, r. to presage
prescindir, r. to omit
presenciar, r. to witness; to be present
presentar, r. to present
presentir, irr. to have a presentiment or premonition—18, page 371
preservar, r. to preserve
presidir, r. to preside
prestidigitar, r. to juggle
presumir, r. to presume
pretender, r. to pretend
pretextar, r. to make use of a pretext
prevaricar, r. to prevaricate—25b, page 374
prevenir, irr. to warn—45, page 383
prever, irr. to foresee—44, page 383
privar, r. to deprive
privilegiar, r. to privilege
probar, irr. to try; to taste—5, page 367
proceder, r. to behave
procesar, r. to prosecute
proclamar, r. to proclaim
procurar, r. to procure
prodigar, r. to lavish—25c, page 374
producir, irr. to produce—12, page 369
profanar, r. to profane; to use profane language
proferir, irr. to proffer; to utter—18, page 371
profesar, r. to profess

profetizar, *r.* to prophesy—25e, page 375
profundizar, *r.* to go deep into a matter—25e, page 375
progresar, *r.* to progress
prolongar, *r.* to prolong—25c, page 374
prometer, *r.* to promise
promiscuar, *r.* to eat meat and fish on fast days
promover, *irr.* to promote—7, page 368
propagar, *r.* to propagate—25c, page 374
propalar, *r.* to divulge
propasarse, *r.* to take undue liberties
propender, *r.* to tend towards
propinar, *r.* to give (a beating)
proponer, *irr.* to propose—40, page 381
proporcionar, *r.* to provide; to furnish
prorratar, *r.* to prorate; to apportion
prorrogar, *r.* to put off—25c, page 374
prorrumpir, *r.* to break forth
proscribir, *irr.* to outlaw—57, page 387
proseguir, *irr.* to proceed—15, page 370
prosperar, *r.* to prosper
prosternarse, *r.* to prostrate oneself
prostituir, *r.* to prostitute—25, page 373
PROTEGER, *r.* to protect—25h, page 375
protestar, *r.* to protest
PROVEER, *irr.* to provide—60, page 387
provenir, *irr.* to originate—45, page 383
provocar, *r.* to provoke—25b, page 374
proyectar, *r.* to project
publicar, *r.* to publish—25b, page 374
pugnar, *r.* to fight
pujar, *r.* to outbid
pulir, *r.* to polish
pulular, *r.* to swarm
pulverizar, *r.* to pulverize—25e, page 375
punzar, *r.* to puncture—25e, page 375
purgarse, *r.* to take a laxative
purificar, *r.* to purify—25b, page 374

Q

quebrar, *irr.* to break—1, page 367
quemar, *r.* to set on fire
QUERER, *irr.* to want; to love (when the object is a person)—41, page 382

R

rabiar, *r.* to be enraged; to have hydrophobia
radiar, *r.* to radiate
radicar, *r.* to live; to take root—25b, page 374
RAER, *irr.* to fray—53, page 386
rajarse, *r.* to crack
ralearse, *r.* to become sparse (hair)
rallar, *r.* to grate
ramificarse, *r.* to branch off—25b, page 374

ranciarse, *r.* to become rancid or scarce
rapar, *r.* to crop (the hair)
raptar, *r.* to abduct
rarificar, *r.* to rarefy—25b, page 374
rasar, *r.* to raze; to touch lightly
rascar, *r.* to scratch (lightly)—25b, page 374
rasgar, *r.* to tear—25c, page 374
raspar, *r.* to scrape
rastrear, *r.* to scent; to sell carcass wholesale
rasurar, *r.* to shave
ratear, *r.* to filch
ratificar, *r.* to ratify—25b, page 374
rayar, *r.* to draw lines; to rule
razonar, *r.* to reason
reaccionar, *r.* to react
realizar, *r.* to fulfil—25e, page 375
realzar, *r.* to make prominent—25e, page 375
reanimar, *r.* to revive; to reanimate
reaparecer, *irr.* to reappear—10, page 368
reasumir, *r.* to resume
reavivar, *r.* to revive
rebajar, *r.* to lower (prices, etc.); to rebate
rebanar, *r.* to slice
rebatir, *r.* to refute
rebelarse, *r.* to mutiny
reblandecer, *irr.* to soften—10, page 368
rebosar, *r.* to overflow
rebotar, *r.* to rebound
rebozarse, *r.* to muffle oneself up—25e, page 375
rebuscar, *r.* to search carefully—25b, page 374
recaer, *irr.* to relapse—46, page 383
recalcar, *r.* to emphasize—25b, page 374
recalentar, *irr.* to overheat; to reheat—1, page 367
recapacitar, *r.* to recall to mind
recapitular, *r.* to recapitulate; to sum up
recargar, *r.* to overcharge—25c, page 374
recatarse, *r.* to act with modesty
recaudar, *r.* to collect (taxes, etc.)
recelar, *r.* to distrust
recetar, *r.* to prescribe medicine
reciprocarse, *r.* to reciprocate—25b, page 374
reclamar, *r.* to claim
recluir, *irr.* to seclude—25, page 373
reclutar, *r.* to recruit
recocer, *irr.* to boil to excess; to boil again—7, page 368
recoger, *r.* to gather—25h, page 375
recomendar, *irr.* to recommend—1, page 367
recompensar, *r.* to recompense
reconcentrar, *r.* to concentrate

- reconfirmar**, *r.* to reconfirm; to confirm again
reconocer, *irr.* to recognize—10, page 368
reconquistar, *r.* to reconquer
reconstituír, *r.* to reorganize—25, page 373
recontar, *irr.* to recount—5, page 367
reconvenir, *irr.* to reprimand—45, page 383
recopilar, *r.* to compile
recordar, *irr.* to remember—5, page 367
recorrer, *r.* to scour (the streets, etc.)
recortar, *r.* to clip
recostar, *irr.* to lean against—5, page 367
recrearse, *r.* to amuse oneself
recrudecer, *irr.* to recrudescence; to become recrudescence—10, page 368
rectificar, *r.* to rectify—25b, page 374
regular, *r.* to recoil; to recede
recuperar, *r.* to recuperate
rechazar, *r.* to refuse—25e, page 375
rechinar, *r.* to squeak; to gnash the teeth
redactar, *r.* to compose (literary work)
redimir, *r.* to redeem
redondear, *r.* to make round
reducir, *irr.* to reduce—12, page 369
redundar, *r.* to redound
reedificar, *r.* to rebuild—25b, page 374
reelegir, *irr.* to reelect—15, page 370
reembarcar, *r.* to reëmbark—25b, page 374
reembolsar, *r.* to reimburse
reemplazar, *r.* to replace—25e, page 375
refaccionar, *r.* to finance (Cuba); to repair buildings
referir, *irr.* to refer—18, page 371
refinar, *r.* to refine
reflejar, *r.* to reflect
reflexionar, *r.* to meditate
reformar, *r.* to reform
reforzar, *irr.* to strengthen—5, page 367
refregar, *irr.* to rub—1, page 367
refreír, *irr.* to fry very well or too much; to fry again—17, page 371
refrenar, *r.* to refrain
refrendar, *r.* to sign a document to effect its legality
refrescar, *r.* to refresh; to cool—25b, page 374
refrigerar, *r.* to refresh; to refrigerate
refugiarse, *r.* to take refuge
refunfuñar, *r.* to growl
refutar, *r.* to refute
regalar, *r.* to make presents
regañar, *r.* to scold; to chide
regar, *irr.* to water—1, page 367
regatear, *r.* to haggle over the price
regenerar, *r.* to regenerate
regentar, *r.* to manage
regir, *irr.* to rule—15, page 370
registrar, *r.* to search; to record
regocijarse, *r.* to gladden
regularizar, *r.* to regulate—25e, page 375
rehacer, *irr.* to make over—31, page 378
rehusar, *r.* to refuse
reimprimir, *irr.* to reprint—58, page 387
reinar, *r.* to reign
reincidir, *r.* to relapse into vice or error
reintegrar, *r.* to reimburse
REÍR, *irr.* to laugh—16, page 370
reiterar, *r.* to reiterate; to repeat
rejuvenecer, *irr.* to grow young—10, page 368
relajar, *r.* to relax; to be vicious
relampaguear, *r.* to lighten
relatar, *r.* to relate
releer, *r.* to read over again—25a, page 374
relegar, *r.* to lay aside; to banish—25c, page 375
relevar, *r.* to relieve (guards)
relinchar, *r.* to neigh
relucir, *irr.* to shine—11, page 369
relumbrar, *r.* to sparkle
rellenar, *r.* to refill
remachar, *r.* to rivet
remangar, *r.* to roll up sleeves, etc.—25c, page 374
remar, *r.* to row
rematar, *r.* to finish; to auction
remedar, *r.* to imitate
remediar, *r.* to remedy
remendar, *irr.* to mend—1, page 367
remesar, *r.* to send; to remit
remilgarse, *r.* to affect excessive neatness, refinement and gracefulness—25c, page 374
remitir, *r.* to remit
remojar, *r.* to soak (things in water)
remolcar, *r.* to tow—25b, page 374
remontar, *r.* to soar
remover, *irr.* to remove—7, page 368
remunerar, *r.* to remunerate
rendir, *irr.* to render—15, page 370
renegar, *irr.* to apostatize; to curse—1, page 367
renguear, *r.* to limp (in Argentina)
renovar, *irr.* to renovate—5, page 367
rentar, *r.* to yield (a rent or income)
renunciar, *r.* to resign
REÑIR, *irr.* to quarrel—16a, page 371
reorganizar, *r.* to reorganize—25e, page 375
reparar, *r.* to notice
repartir, *r.* to distribute
repasar, *r.* to review
repatriar, *r.* to repatriate
repercutir, *r.* to resound
repetir, *irr.* to repeat—15, page 370

- repicar, *r.* to chime; to chop meats very finely—25b, page 374
 replantar, *r.* to replant
 replegar, *irr.* to refold—1, page 367
 replicar, *r.* to answer—25b, page 374
 reponer, *irr.* to replace—40, page 381
 reportar, *r.* to report
 reposar, *r.* to repose
 reprender, *r.* to censure; to scold
 representar, *r.* to represent
 reprimir, *r.* to restrain
 reprobar, *irr.* to reprove; to condemn—5, page 367
 reprochar, *r.* to reproach
 reproducir, *irr.* to reproduce—12, page 369
 repudiar, *r.* to repudiate
 repugnar, *r.* to be repugnant; to act with aversion
 reputar, *r.* to repute
 requebrar, *irr.* to pay compliments (when making love); to woo; to break again—1, page 367
 requerir, *irr.* to require; to court—18, page 371
 resaltar, *r.* to stand out
 resarcir, *r.* to compensate—25g, page 375
 resbalar, *r.* to glide
 rescatar, *r.* to ransom
 resentirse, *irr.* to resent; to be impaired—18, page 371
 reseñar, *r.* to make a review
 reservar, *r.* to reserve
 residir, *r.* to reside
 resignarse, *r.* to be resigned
 resistir, *r.* to resist
 resolver, *irr.* to solve; to decide—9, page 368
 resollar, *irr.* to take breath; to pant; to break silence—5, page 367
 resonar, *irr.* to resound—5, page 367
 respetar, *r.* to respect
 resplandecer, *irr.* to glitter; to shine—10, page 368
 restablecerse, *irr.* to recuperate—10, page 368
 restar, *r.* to subtract
 restaurar, *r.* to restore
 restituir, *r.* to give back—25, page 373
 restregar, *irr.* to rub—1, page 367
 resucitar, *r.* to resuscitate; to return to life
 resultar, *r.* to result
 retardar, *r.* to delay
 retener, *irr.* to retain—27, page 377
 retorcer, *irr.* to wring—7, page 368
 retornar, *r.* to return
 retractar, *r.* to retract; to recant
 retraerse, *irr.* to live a retired life—43, page 382
 retratar, *r.* to photograph
 retribuir, *r.* to recompense—25, page 373
 retroceder, *r.* to fall back
 reventar, *irr.* to burst—1, page 367
 reverdecer, *irr.* to grow green again—10, page 368
 revisar, *r.* to revise
 revivir, *r.* to revive
 revocar, *r.* to revoke—25b, page 374
 revolucionar, *r.* to revolt
 rezar, *r.* to pray—25e, page 375
 ridiculizar, *r.* to ridicule—25e, page 375
 rifar, *r.* to raffle
 rizar, *r.* to curl—25e, page 375
 robar, *r.* to rob; to steal
 robustecerse, *irr.* to get strong—10, page 368
 rociar, *r.* to sprinkle
 rodar, *r.* to revolve
 ROER, *irr.* to gnaw—54, page 386
 rogar, *irr.* to beg—5, page 367
 ROMPER, *irr.* to break—61, page 387
 roncar, *r.* to snore—25b, page 374
 rondar, *r.* to patrol
 rotular, *r.* to label
 roturar, *r.* to break up new ground
 ruborizarse, *r.* to blush—25e, page 375
 rugir, *r.* to roar—25h, page 375
 rumiar, *r.* to ruminate; to meditate
 rusticar, *r.* to rusticate—25b, page 374

S

- SABER, *irr.* to know—42, page 382
 sablear, *r.* to sponge on one's friends; to obtain petty loans from friends
 saborear, *r.* to relish; to enjoy
 sabrorear, *r.* to find delicious (things to eat)
 sacar, *r.* to take out—25b, page 374
 saciar, *r.* to satiate
 sacramentar, *r.* to administer the sacraments
 sacrificar, *r.* to sacrifice—25b, page 374
 sacudir, *r.* to jerk; to shake
 sajar, *r.* to scarify
 salar, *r.* to salt
 saldar, *r.* to settle (accounts)
 SALIR, *irr.* to go out—24, page 373
 sanar, *r.* to heal
 sancionar, *r.* to sanction
 sancochar, *r.* to parboil
 sangrar, *r.* to bleed
 santificar, *r.* to consecrate—25b, page 374
 santiguarse, *r.* to make the sign of the cross; to cross oneself—25d, page 375
 saquear, *r.* to ransack
 SATISFACER, *irr.* to satisfy—32, page 378
 saturar, *r.* to saturate

- sazonar**, *r.* to season; to ripen
SECAR, *r.* to dry—25b, page 374
secarse, *r.* to dry oneself—25b, page 374
seducir, *irr.* to seduce; to corrupt—12, page 369
segar, *irr.* to mow—1, page 367
segregar, *r.* to segregate—25c, page 374
seguir, *irr.* to follow—15, page 370
seleccionar, *r.* to select
sellar, *r.* to seal
sembrar, *irr.* to sow—1, page 367
sentar, *irr.* to fit; to sit down—1, page 367
SENTIR, *irr.* to feel—18, page 371
separar, *r.* to separate
sepultar, *r.* to bury
SER, *irr.* to be—28, page 377
serenarse, *r.* to grow calm or clear (elements and man)
sermonear, *r.* to reprimand; to lecture
serrar, *irr.* to saw—1, page 367
SERVIR, *irr.* to serve—15, page 370
sesear, *r.* to pronounce the *th* like *s*
sestear, *r.* to take a nap
silabear, *r.* to syllabicate
simbolizar, *r.* to symbolize—25e, page 375
simpatizar, *r.* to like; to be congenial; to sympathize—25e, page 375
simplificar, *r.* to simplify—25b, page 374
sincerarse, *r.* to vindicate oneself
sincopar, *r.* to syncopate
sindicar, *r.* to syndicate—25b, page 374
sintetizar, *r.* to synthesize—25e, page 375
sistematizar, *r.* to systematize—25e, page 375
sitiar, *r.* to lay siege
situar, *r.* to situate
sobar, *r.* to handle a person with too much familiarity
sobornar, *r.* to bribe
sobrar, *r.* to be left over
sobrellevar, *r.* to bear; to endure
sobrepujar, *r.* to excel
sobresalir, *irr.* to surpass—24, page 373
sobrevivir, *r.* to survive
socarrar, *r.* to scorch
socavar, *r.* to undermine
socorrer, *r.* to succour
sofisticar, *r.* to sophisticate—25b, page 374
sofocar, *r.* to suffocate—25b, page 374
solazar, *r.* to solace—25e, page 375
soldar, *irr.* to solder—5, page 367
solemnizar, *r.* to solemnize—25e, page 375
SOLER, *irr.* to be accustomed—62, page 387
solicitar, *r.* to solicit
solidificar, *r.* to solidify—25b, page 374
soliloquiar, *r.* to soliloquize
soliviantar, *r.* to induce; to rouse
soltar, *irr.* to set free; to loosen—5, page 367
solucionar, *r.* to solve; to offer a solution
solventar, *r.* to settle accounts
sollozar, *r.* to sob—25e, page 375
someter, *r.* to submit
sonar, *irr.* to sound; to ring—5, page 367
sondear, *r.* to fathom
sonreír, *irr.* to smile—16, page 370
sonrojarse, *r.* to blush
sonrosarse, *r.* to blush
sonsacar, *r.* to get information from others (skilfully)—25b, page 374
soñar, *irr.* to dream—5, page 367
soplar, *r.* to blow
soportar, *r.* to bear; to endure
sorprender, *r.* to surprise
sortear, *r.* to cast lots
sosegar, *irr.* to pacify—1, page 367
sospechar, *r.* to suspect
sostener, *irr.* to sustain—27, page 377
sostituír, *r.* to substitute—25, page 373
suavizar, *r.* to soften—25e, page 375
subarrendar, *irr.* to sublet—1, page 367
subastar, *r.* to sell at auction
subdividir, *r.* to subdivide
sublevarse, *r.* to rise in rebellion
sublimar, *r.* to sublimate; to exalt
subordinar, *r.* to subordinate
subrayar, *r.* to underline
subsanan, *r.* to correct
subscribir, *irr.* to subscribe—57, page 387
subsistir, *r.* to subsist
subvencionar, *r.* to subsidize
subyugar, *r.* to subjugate—25c, page 374
suced, *r.* to happen
sucumbir, *r.* to succumb
sufragar, *r.* to defray—25c, page 374
sugerir, *irr.* to suggest—18, page 371
suicidarse, *r.* to commit suicide
sumergir, *r.* to submerge—25i, page 376
sujetar, *r.* to hold fast
sumar, *r.* to sum up
suministrar, *r.* to minister
sumir, *r.* to sink, to overwhelm
supeditar, *r.* to subdue
superar, *r.* to surpass
suplantar, *r.* to supplant
suplicar, *r.* to implore—25b, page 374
suponer, *irr.* to suppose—40, page 381
suprimir, *r.* to suppress
supurar, *r.* to suppurate
surcar, *r.* to furrow; to cut through—25b; page 374
surgir, *r.* to come forth—25i, page 376
surtir, *r.* to supply; to assort
suscitar, *r.* to stir up
suspender, *r.* to suspend
suspirar, *r.* to sigh

sustentar, *r.* to support; to nourish
 sustituir, *r.* to substitute—25, page 373
 sustraer, *irr.* to withdraw oneself; to
 deduct; to elude—43, page 382
 susurrar, *r.* to murmur

T

tacañear, *r.* to act the miser
 tachar, *r.* to charge one (with defects);
 to find fault with
 tajar, *r.* to cut and trim a quill pen; to
 cut
 taladrar, *r.* to drill
 talar, *r.* to fell trees
 tallar, *r.* to measure the height of a
 person; to engrave; to cut (trees)
 tambalear, *r.* to stagger
 tantear, *r.* to keep score; to try
 TAÑER, *irr.* to play a stringed instru-
 ment—13, page 369
 tapar, *r.* to cover
 tapizar, *r.* to decorate with tapestry
 —25e, page 375
 tardar, *r.* to tarry; to be late
 tasar, *r.* to tax
 tejer, *r.* to weave
 telefonar, *r.* to telephone
 telefonear, *r.* to telephone
 telegrafiar, *r.* to telegraph
 temblar, *irr.* to tremble—1, page 367
 templarse, *r.* to be moderate; to temper
 tender, *irr.* to tend—3, page 367
 TENER, *irr.* to have—27, page 377
 tentar, *irr.* to feel with the fingers—1,
 page 367
 teñir, *irr.* to dye—16a, page 371
 teorizar, *r.* to theorize—25e, page 375
 tergiversar, *r.* to misrepresent
 testar, *r.* to make a last will
 testificar, *r.* to testify—25b, page 374
 tijeretear, *r.* to cut with scissors
 tildar, *r.* to put a tilde over the n, to
 brand
 tilintear, *r.* to produce a metallic sound;
 to tinkle
 timar, *r.* to cheat
 timbrar, *r.* to cancel stamps on letters;
 to seal
 timonear, *r.* to steer
 tiranizar, *r.* to oppress—25e, page 375
 tirar, *r.* to throw
 tiritar, *r.* to shiver
 tirotear, *r.* to exchange shots
 titubear, *r.* to hesitate
 titular, *r.* to title
 tizar, *r.* to smut
 tocar, *r.* to play; to touch—25b, page 374
 tolerar, *r.* to tolerate
 topar, *r.* to butt or strike with the head;
 to run across
 torcer, *irr.* to twist—7, page 368
 torear, *r.* to fight bulls (in the ring)
 tornar, *r.* to return
 tornasolar, *r.* to cause change in colors
 torpedear, *r.* to torpedo
 torturar, *r.* to torture
 tostar, *irr.* to toast—5, page 367
 tozar, *r.* to butt (with the head)—25e;
 page 375
 traducir, *irr.* to translate—12, page 369
 TRAER, *irr.* to bring; to carry—43, page
 382
 tragar, *r.* to swallow—25c, page 374
 traicionar, *r.* to betray; to commit
 treason
 trajinar, *r.* to go to and fro (for business
 purposes)
 tramar, *r.* to plot; to scheme
 tramitar, *r.* to put through (a business
 deal); to transact
 trampear, *r.* to swindle
 trancar, *r.* to bar (a door)—25b, page 374
 tranquilizar, *r.* to tranquilize; to quiet
 down—25e, page 375
 transcender, *irr.* to transcend—3, page
 367
 transcribir, *irr.* to transcribe; to copy
 —57, page 387
 transcurrir, *r.* to elapse
 transferir, *irr.* to transfer—18, page 371
 transformar, *r.* to transform
 transigir, *r.* to give in; to accommodate
 —25i, page 376
 transitar, *r.* to go from one place to
 another
 transmigrar, *r.* to transmigrate
 transmitir, *r.* to transmit
 transparentarse, *r.* to be transparent
 trasbordar, *r.* to transship, to transfer
 from one ship to another
 trascordarse, *irr.* to forget—5, page 367
 trascurrir, *r.* to pass away
 trasformar, *r.* to transform
 trasladar, *r.* to remove
 trasnochar, *r.* to sit up all night
 traspasarse, *r.* to exceed proper bounds
 trasplantar, *r.* to transplant
 trasportar, *r.* to transport
 trastornar, *r.* to upset
 tratar, *r.* to treat (in the sense of behav-
 ing) to try
 trazar, *r.* to plan out—25e, page 375
 trepar, *r.* to climb
 trepidar, *r.* to vibrate; to tremble
 tributar, *r.* to pay homage; to pay tribute
 trillar, *r.* to thrash
 trinar, *r.* to get furious; to trill
 trinchar, *r.* to carve
 triplicar, *r.* to treble—25b, page 374
 tripular, *r.* to man a ship

triturar, *r.* to crush
 triunfar, *r.* to triumph
 trocar, *irr.* to exchange—5, page 367
 trompear, *r.* to give blows (with the fists, Spanish America); to whip a top
 tronar, *irr.* to thunder—5, page 367
 tronchar, *r.* to break a trunk or branches of trees
 tronzar, *r.* to plait (dresses)—25e, page 375
 tropezar, *irr.* to stumble—1, page 367
 trotar, *r.* to trot
 truncar, *r.* to truncate—25b, page 374
 tullirse, *irr.* to be crippled—14, page 370
 tumbar, *r.* to throw down
 tunantear, *r.* to act the rascal
 turbar, *r.* to disturb
 tutear, *r.* to address in a familiar form (using either *tú* or *vosotros*)

U

ubicar, *r.* to locate; to be located—25b, page 374
 ufanarse, *r.* to pride oneself
 ultrajar, *r.* to offend
 uncir, *r.* to yoke—25g, page 375
 ungir, *r.* to anoint—25i, page 376
 unificar, *r.* to unify—25b, page 374
 untar, *r.* to smear
 urdir, *r.* to scheme; to warp
 usar, *r.* to use
 usufructuar, *r.* to enjoy the profits from something
 usurear, *r.* to practise usury
 usurpar, *r.* to usurp
 utilizar, *r.* to utilize—25e, page 375

V

vacar, *r.* to give up work temporarily—25b, page 374
 vaciar, *r.* to empty
 vacilar, *r.* to hesitate
 vacunar, *r.* to vaccinate
 vadear, *r.* to wade
 vagabundear, *r.* to loaf
 vagar, *r.* to roam—25c, page 374
 VALER, *irr.* to be worth—23, page 373
 validar, *r.* to validate
 valorar, *r.* to appraise; to value
 valsar, *r.* to waltz
 valuar, *r.* to appraise
 vanagloriarse, *r.* to boast of
 varar, *r.* to ground
 variar, *r.* to vary
 vaticinar, *r.* to foretell
 vedar, *r.* to forbid
 vegetar, *r.* to vegetate
 velar, *r.* to keep vigil
 vencer, *r.* to defeat—25f, page 375
 vendar, *r.* to bandage

vendimiar, *r.* to gather the vintage
 venerar, *r.* to venerate
 vengar, *r.* to avenge—25c, page 374
 VENIR, *irr.* to come—45, page 383
 ventilar, *r.* to ventilate
 VER, *irr.* to see—44, page 383
 verbenear, *r.* to make merry
 verbosear, *r.* to be verbose
 verificar, *r.* to verify—25b, page 374
 versar, *r.* to treat of
 verter, *irr.* to pour; to spill—3, page 367
 vestir, *irr.* to dress—15, page 370
 vibrar, *r.* to vibrate
 viciar, *r.* to vitiate
 victorear, *r.* to hurrah; to shout
 vigilar, *r.* to watch
 vigorizar, *r.* to invigorate—25e, page 375
 vilipendiar, *r.* to revile
 vindicar, *r.* to vindicate—25b, page 374
 violar, *r.* to violate
 violentar, *r.* to enforce by violent means
 virar, *r.* to tack (ships)
 visar, *r.* to countersign
 vislumbrar, *r.* to glimpse
 vituallar, *r.* to victual
 vituperar, *r.* to censure
 vivificar, *r.* to vivify—25b, page 374
 vocalizar, *r.* to vocalize—25e, page 375
 vocear, *r.* to cry out
 vociferar, *r.* to howl; to shout
 volar, *irr.* to fly—5, page 367
 volcar, *irr.* to turn upside down—5, page 367
 voltear, *r.* to roll over; to tumble; to spill
 volver, *irr.* to return—9, page 368
 vomitar, *r.* to vomit
 votar, *r.* to vote
 vulcanizar, *r.* to vulcanize—25e, page 375
 vulnerar, *r.* to harm one either physically or morally

Y

YACER, *irr.* to lie in the grave—52, page 385

Z

zafarse, *r.* to escape
 zambullir, *irr.* to plunge—14, page 370
 zampuzar, *r.* to duck; to dip—25e, page 375
 zanganear, *r.* to loaf
 zanjar, *r.* to open ditches; to settle business amicably
 zapar, *r.* to sap
 zapatear, *r.* to strike with the shoe
 zarpar, *r.* to sail
 zozobrar, *r.* to sink
 ZURCIR, *r.* to darn—25g, page 375
 zurrar, *r.* to spank

ENGLISH-SPANISH LIST OF VERBS

In this list only the irregular verbs are followed by a number. For verbs which are regular and which either suffer orthographical changes or are defective see the Spanish-English list. Regular verbs which are used in the lessons are not included in this group.

A

abandon, abandonar, *r.*
 abduct, raptar, *r.*
 abolish, abolir, *r.*
 abound, abundar, *r.*
 abridge, compendiar, *r.*
 absent oneself, ausentarse, *r.*
 absolve, absolver, *irr.*—9, page 368
 absorb, absorber, *r.*
 absorb oneself in meditation, engolfarse, *r.*
 abstract, abstraer, *irr.*—43, page 382
 abstain, abstenerse, *irr.*—27, page 377
 abuse, abusar, *r.*
 accept, aceptar, *r.*
 acclaim, aclamar, *r.*
 accommodate, acomodar, *r.*
 accompany, acompañar, *r.*
 accumulate, acumular, *r.*
 accuse, delatar, *r.*
 accustom, acostumbrar, *r.*
 ache, doler, *irr.*—7, page 368
 acquiesce, asentir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 acquire, adquirir, *irr.*—20, page 372
 acquire bad habits, malacostumbrarse, *r.*
 act, obrar, *r.*
 act as godfather, apadrinar, *r.*
 act or talk foolishly, desatinar, *r.*
 act the miser, tacañear, *r.*
 act with modesty, recatarse, *r.*
 act the rascal, tunantear, *r.*
 adapt, adaptar, *r.*
 add, añadir, *r.*
 address in a familiar way (using either tú or vosotros), tutear, *r.*
 adduce, aducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 adhere, adherir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 adjust, ajustar, *r.*
 administer the sacraments, sacramentar, *r.*
 admire, admirar, *r.*
 admit, admitir, *r.*
 adopt, adoptar, *r.*; . . . (children), ahijar, *r.*; . . . mannerisms, amane-rarse, *r.*
 adore, adorar, *r.*

adorn, adornar, *r.*; engalanar, *r.*; atildar, *r.*; ataviar, *r.*
 adorn (with jewels), alhajar, *r.*
 adulterate, adulterar, *r.*
 advance, avanzar, *r.*
 advise, aconsejar, *r.*
 affect, afectar, *r.*
 affect excessive neatness, refinement and gracefulness, remilgarse, *r.*
 affirm, afirmar, *r.*
 affront, afrentar, *r.*
 aggregate, agregar, *r.*
 agitate, agitar, *r.*
 agree, acordar, *irr.*—5, page 367; con-venir, *irr.*—45, page 383; concertar, *irr.*—1, page 367; concordar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 aim, apuntar, *r.*
 air, orear, *r.*
 allege, alegar, *r.*
 allow, permitir, *r.*
 allude, aludir, *r.*
 alter, alterar, *r.*
 alternate, alternar, *r.*
 amalgamate, amalgamar, *r.*
 Americanize oneself, americanizarse, *r.*
 amortize, amortizar, *r.*
 amplify, ampliar, *r.*
 amputate, amputar, *r.*
 amuse, divertir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 amuse oneself, recrearse, *r.*; divertirse, *irr.*—18, page 371
 analyze, analizar, *r.*
 animate, animar, *r.*
 animate with enthusiastic manifesta-tions (dancers, bullfighters, etc.), jalear, *r.*
 anchor, anclar, *r.*
 annex, anexas, *r.*; anexionar, *r.*
 annihilate, aniquilar, *r.*
 annul, anular, *r.*
 announce, anunciar, *r.*
 announce publicly, pregonar, *r.*
 annoy, fastidiar, *r.*; jorobar, *r.*
 anoint, ungir, *r.*
 answer, replicar, *r.*
 anticipate, anticipar, *r.*

- apostatize, renegar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 appeal, apelar, *r.*
 appear, aparccer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 appear personally, personarse, *r.*; apersonarse, *r.*
 appear (before a judge), comparecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 apply, aplicar, *r.*
 apportion, prorratear, *r.*
 appraise, valuar, *r.*; avaluar, *r.*; justipreciar, *r.*; valorar, *r.*
 appreciate, apreciar, *r.*
 approach, aproximar, *r.*; arrimar, *r.*
 appropriate, apropiar, *r.*
 approve, aprobar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 argue, arguír, *r.*
 arm, armar, *r.*
 armour, blindar, *r.*
 arrest, arrestar, *r.*; prender, *irr.*—59, page 387
 arrive, arribar, *r.*
 articulate, articular, *r.*
 ascend, ascender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 ascertain, cerciorarse, *r.*
 ask for, pedir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 asphalt, asfaltar, *r.*
 asphyxiate, asfixiar, *r.*
 aspire, aspirar, *r.*
 assault, asaltar, *r.*
 assay, aquilatar, *r.*
 assemble, congregar, *r.*
 assert, aseverar, *r.*
 assign, asignar, *r.*
 assimilate, asimilar, *r.*
 assist, asistir, *r.*
 associate, asociar, *r.*
 assort, surtir, *r.*
 assume, asumir, *r.*
 astonish, asombrar, *r.*; maravilllar, *r.*
 attack, atacar, *r.*
 attain, lograr, *r.*
 attempt, intentar, *r.*
 attempt a crime, atentar, *r.*
 attend, atender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 attenuate, atenuar, *r.*
 attest, atestiguar, *r.*
 attract, atraer, *irr.*—43, page 382
 attribute, atribuir, *irr.*—25, page 373
 augur, augurar, *r.*
 authorize, autorizar, *r.*
 avenge, vengar, *r.*
 avoid, evitar, *r.*
 awaken, despertar, *irr.*—1, page 367;
 . . . oneself, despertarse, *irr.*—1, page 367
 balance, equilibrar, *r.*
 bale, empacar, *r.*
 bandage, vendar, *r.*
 banish, deportar
 baptize, bautizar, *r.*
 bar (a door), trancar, *r.*
 base upon, cifrar, *r.*
 baste, hilvanar, *r.*
 bathe, bañar, *r.*
 be, ser, *irr.*—28, page 377; estar, *irr.*—29, page 377
 be able, poder, *irr.*—39, page 381
 be accustomed, soler, *irr.*—62, page 387
 be afflicted or cheerless, desconsolarse, *irr.*—5, page 367
 be at death's door, agonizar, *r.*
 be born, nacer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 be congenial, congeniar, *r.*
 be contiguous (fields), colindar, *r.*
 be contained, caber, *irr.*—47, page 384
 be coquettish, coquetear, *r.*
 be crippled, tullirse, *irr.*—14, page 370
 be distant (places, etc.), distar, *r.*
 be enraged, rabiar, *r.*
 be equivalent, equivaler, *irr.*—23, page 373
 be filled with cracks, agrietarse, *r.*
 be forgetful, desmemoriarse, *r.*
 be glad, alegrarse, *r.*; celebrar, *r.*
 be idle, holgar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 be ignorant of, ignorar, *r.*
 be illusioned, ilusionarse, *r.*
 be impressed, impresionarse, *r.*
 be in danger, peligrar, *r.*
 be in fashion, estilarse, *r.*
 be in one's way, estorbar, *r.*
 be interested in, interesarse, *r.*
 be left over, sobrar, *r.*
 be located, ubicar, *r.*
 be lowered in one's estimation, desmerecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 be mismated (in marriage), malcasarse, *r.*
 be moderate, templarse, *r.*
 be moderate, comedirse, *irr.*—15, page 370
 be money-mad, metalizarse, *r.*
 be moth-eaten, apolillarse, *r.*
 be moved to pity, enternecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 be moved with emotions, emocionarse, *r.*
 be obstinate, obstinarse, *r.*
 be out of tune, desafinar, *r.*
 be pending, pender, *r.*
 be repugnant, repugnar, *r.*
 be resigned, resignarse, *r.*
 be shipwrecked, naufragar, *r.*
 be short (of money, etc.), faltar, *r.*
 be scarce, escasear, *r.*

B

- back in (vehicles), atracar, *r.*
 backstitch, pespuntar, *r.*

- be surprised, extrañarse, *r.*
 be thankful for, agradecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 be tired out, fatigarse, *r.*
 be transparent, transparentarse, *r.*
 be through (with the performance of a duty), desocuparse, *r.*
 be unmindful of what others think, despreocuparse, *r.*
 be verbose, verbosear, *r.*
 be worth, valer, *irr.*—23, page 373
 bear, soportar, *r.*; sobrellevar, *r.*
 beat (heart, etc.), latir, *r.*
 beautify, hermosear, *r.*; embellecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become a coward, acobardarse, *r.*
 become a widow (or a widower), enviudar, *r.*
 become acclimated, aclimatarse, *r.*
 become acquainted, conocer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become conceited, engrairse, *irr.*—16, page 370
 become dazed, aturdirse, *r.*
 become demented, enloquecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become enthusiastic, entusiasmarse, *r.*
 become fond of, encariñarse, *r.*; aficionarse, *r.*
 become furious, enfurecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become insolent, insolentarse, *r.*
 become intimate, intimar, *r.*
 become more secure, afianzarse, *r.*
 become passionately fond of, apasionarse, *r.*
 become poor, empobrecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become proud, enorgullecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become related, emparentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 become rich, enriquecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become sad, entristecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become silent (or dumb), enmudecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 become sour, agriarse, *r.*
 become sparse (hair), ralear, *r.*
 become stupid, alelarse, *r.*
 become timid, apocarse, *r.*; achicarse, *r.*
 become vain, envanecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 beg, rogar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 beg alms, mendigar, *r.*; pordiosear, *r.*
 begin, comenzar, *irr.*—1, page 367; empezar, *irr.*—1, page 367; . . . to fall asleep, admormecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368; . . . to sing, entonar, *r.*
 behave, portarse, *r.*; comportarse, *r.*; proceder, *r.*
 behead, decapitar, *r.*
 belch, erutar, *r.*
 believe, creer, *r.*
 belittle oneself, menospreciarse, *r.*
 belong, pertenecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 bend, encorvar, *r.*
 benefit, beneficiar, *r.*
 bequeath, legar, *r.*
 bestow, conferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 bet, apostar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 betray, traicionar, *r.*
 bewail, plañir, *irr.*—14, page 370
 bind (books), encuadernar, *r.*
 bite, morder, *irr.*—7, page 368
 blame, culpar, *r.*
 bleach, blanquear, *r.*
 bleed, sangrar, *r.*
 blend colors, matizar, *r.*
 bless, bendecir, *irr.*—36, page 380
 blind, cegar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 blockade, bloquear, *r.*
 bloom, florecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 blow, soplar, *r.*
 blow a whistle, pitar, *r.*
 blush, ruborizarse, *r.*; sonrojar, *r.*; sonrojarse, *r.*; enrojecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 boast, blasonar, *r.*
 boast of, vanagloriarse, *r.*
 boil, cocer, *irr.*—7; page 368; hervir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 boil to excess, recocer, *irr.*—7, page 368
 bombard, bombardear, *r.*
 bone, desosar, *irr.*—6, page 368
 bore, aburrir, *r.*
 bore (holes), barrenar, *r.*; agujerear, *r.*
 bother, empalagar, *r.*
 bottle, embotellar, *r.*
 boycott, boycotear, *r.*
 brag, alardear, *r.*
 branch off, ramificarse, *r.*
 brandish, blandir, *r.*
 break, romper, *irr.*—61, page 387; quebrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 break the trunk or branches of trees, tronchar, *r.*
 break forth, prorrumpir, *r.*
 break one or two legs, perniquebrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 break up new ground, roturar, *r.*
 breakfast, almorzar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 breathe, alentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 bribe, sobornar, *r.*
 bring, traer, *irr.*—43, page 382
 bruise, magullar, *r.*
 brush, cepillar, *r.*
 bubble, bullir, *irr.*—14, page 370
 bud, brotar, *r.*

build, edificar, *r.*
 burn, abrasar, *r.*; arder, *r.*
 burnish, bruñir, *irr.*—14, page 370
 burst, reventar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 bury, enterrar, *irr.*—1, page 367; sepul-
 tar, *r.*
 butt (with the head), tozar, *r.*; topar, *r.*
 . . . in, entrometer, *r.*
 button, abotonar, *r.*

C

cable, cablegrafiar, *r.*
 cackle, cacarear, *r.*
 cage, enjaular, *r.*
 calculate, calcular, *r.*
 calm, calmar, *r.*; aquietar, *r.*
 can, enlatar, *r.*
 canalize, canalizar, *r.*
 cancel, cancelar, *r.*
 cancel stamps on letters, timbrar, *r.*
 capitalize, capitalizar, *r.*
 capitulate, capitular, *r.*
 captivate, cautivar, *r.*
 capture, capturar, *r.*
 caress, acariciar, *r.*
 caricature, caricaturar, *r.*
 carouse, jaranear, *r.*
 carpet, alfombrar, *r.*
 carry (arms, etc.), portar, *r.*
 carry off, arrebatarse, *r.*
 carry to an extreme, extremar, *r.*
 carve, trinchar, *r.*
 catch, coger, *r.*
 catch a cold, acatarrarse, *r.*; constiparse,
 r.
 cause, causar, *r.*; ocasionar, *r.*
 cause a spasm, pasmar, *r.*
 cause a change in colors, tornasolar, *r.*
 cauterize, cauterizar, *r.*
 cease, cesar, *r.*
 cease talking, callar, *r.*
 celebrate, celebrar, *r.*
 censure, censurar, *r.*; reprimir, *r.*;
 vituperar, *r.*
 centralize, centralizar, *r.*
 centuplicate, centuplicar, *r.*
 challenge, desafiar, *r.*
 change (expressions of the face), in-
 mutarse, *r.*
 charter a ship, fletar, *r.*
 char, carbonizar, *r.*
 characterize, caracterizar, *r.*
 charge one (with defects), tachar, *r.*
 charm, embelesar, *r.*
 chat, charlar, *r.*
 chatter, parlar, *r.*
 cheapen, abaratar, *r.*
 cheat, timar, *r.*
 check, cotejar, *r.*; . . . (baggage),
 facturar, *r.*
 chew, mascar, *r.*
 chime, repicar, *r.*
 chloroform, cloroformar, *r.*
 choose, escoger, *r.*; elegir, *irr.*—15,
 page 370
 circulate, circular, *r.*
 civilize, civilizar, *r.*
 claim, reclamar, *r.*
 clarify, clarificar, *r.*
 classify, clasificar, *r.*
 clean, asear, *r.*
 climb, trepar, *r.*
 clip, recortar, *r.*; cercenar, *r.*
 close, cerrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 co-operate, cooperar, *r.*
 co-ordinate, coordinar, *r.*
 coagulate, coagular, *r.*
 codify (laws), codificar, *r.*
 coexist, coexistir, *r.*
 coincide, coincidir, *r.*
 collaborate, colaborar, *r.*
 collect, cobrar, *r.*
 collect (taxes, etc.), recaudar, *r.*
 colonize, colonizar, *r.*
 combine, combinar, *r.*
 come, venir, *irr.*—45, page 383
 come forth, surgir, *r.*
 comfort, confortar, *r.*
 command, comandar, *r.*; . . . (troops),
 capitanear, *r.*
 commemorate, conmemorar, *r.*
 comment, comentar, *r.*
 commit, cometer, *r.*
 commit oneself, comprometerse, *r.*
 commit perjury, perjurar, *r.*
 commit suicide, suicidarse, *r.*
 communicate, comunicar, *r.*
 compare, comparar, *r.*
 compel, obligar, *r.*; compeler, *r.*
 compensate, compensar, *r.*; resarcir, *r.*
 compete, competir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 compile, compilar, *r.*; recopilar, *r.*
 complete, completar, *r.*
 complicate, complicar, *r.*
 compose, componer, *irr.*—40, page 381;
 . . . (literary work), redactar, *r.*
 compress (bales), agarrotar, *r.*
 compute, computar, *r.*
 conceive, concebir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 concentrate, concentrar, *r.*; reconcen-
 trar, *r.*
 concern, concernir, *irr.*—4, page 367;
 atañer, *irr.*—13, page 369; incumbir, *r.*
 conciliate, conciliar, *r.*
 condemn, condenar, *r.*
 condense, condensar, *r.*
 condescend, condescender, *irr.*—3, page
 367
 condole, condolerse, *irr.*—7, page 368
 conduct, conducir, *irr.*—12, page 369

confederate, *confederar, r.*; *coligarse, r.*
confer, *conferenciar, r.*
confer (an honor), *investir, irr.*—15, page 370
confess, *confesar, irr.*—1, page 367
configure, *configurar, r.*
confine, *confinar, r.*
confirm, *confirmar, r.*
confiscate, *confiscar, r.*
confront, *confrontar, r.*; *afrontar, r.*
confront persons (for the purpose of ascertaining the truth), *carear, r.*
confuse, *confundir, r.*
congest, *congestionar, r.*
congratulate, *congratular, r.*; *felicitar, r.*
conjecture, *conjeturar, r.*; *barruntar, r.*
conjure, *conjurar, r.*
connect, *conectar, r.*
connote, *connotar, r.*
conquer, *conquistar, r.*
consecrate, *consagrar, r.*; *santificar, r.*
consent, *consentir, irr.*—18, page 371; *acceder, r.*
consider, *considerar, r.*
consign, *consignar, r.*
console, *consolar, irr.*—5, page 367
consolidate, *consolidar, r.*
conspire, *conspirar, r.*
constitute, *constituír, r.*
constrain, *constreñir, irr.*—16a, page 371; *comprimir, irr.*—58, page 387
construct, *construír, r.*
consult, *consultar, r.*
consume, *consumir, r.*
consume by degress (health, etc.), *carcomer, r.*
contain, *contener, irr.*—27, page 377
contaminate, *contaminar, r.*
contend, *contender, irr.*—3, page 367; *lidiar, r.*
content, *contentar, r.*
contract, *contraer, irr.*—43, page 382; (not used in the sense of making contracts)
contract orally, *apalabrar, r.*
contradict, *contradecir, irr.*—35, page 379
contrast, *contrastar, r.*
contribute, *contribuír, r.*
controvert, *controvertir, irr.*—18, page 371
convalesce, *convalecer, irr.*—10, page 368
converge, *converger, r.*
converse, *conversar, r.*; *platicar, r.*
convert, *convertir, irr.*—18, page 371
convince, *convencer, r.*
cool, *enfriar, r.*
co-operate, *cooperar, r.*
co-ordinate, *coordinar, r.*
copy, *copiar, r.*

corner (the market), *estancar, r.*
correct, *corregir, irr.*—15, page 370; *enmendar, irr.*—1, page 367; *subsanan, r.*; . . . **severely**, *escarmentar, irr.*—1, page 367
correspond, *corresponder, r.*
correspond by letter, *cartear, r.*
corroborate, *corroborar, r.*
corrode, *corroer, irr.*—54, page 386
corrupt, *corromper, r.*
cost, *costar, irr.*—5, page 367
count, *contar, irr.*—5, page 367
counterfeit, *falsificar, r.*
countersign, *contraseñar, r.* *visar, r.*
court, *galantear, r.*
cover, *tapar, r.*; *cubrir, irr.*—55, page 386
cover with an awning, *entoldar, r.*
covet, *codiciar, r.*; *ambicionar, r.*
crack, *cascar, r.*; *rajarse, r.*
cram, *atestar, r.*
create illusions, *ilusionarse, r.*
credit, *acreditar, r.*
criticise, *criticar, r.*
crop (the hair), *rapar, r.*
cross, *atravesar, irr.*—1, page 367; *cruzar, r.*
crown, *coronar, r.*
crown with laurels, *laurear, r.*
crumb bread, *migar, r.*
crumble, *desmenuzar, r.*
crush, *aplastar, r.*; *triturar, r.*
cry out, *vocear, r.*
crystallize, *cristalizar, r.*
culminate, *culminar, r.*
cultivate, *cultivar, r.*
curdle, *cuajar, r.*
curl, *rizar, r.*
curse, *maldecir, irr.*—36, page 380; *blasfemar, r.*
curtail, *escatimar, r.*
cut and trim a quill pen, *tajar, r.*
cut with the scythe, *guadañar, r.*
cut ladies' dresses low, *descotar, r.*
cut the throat, *degollar, irr.*—5, page 367
cut with scissors, *tijeretear, r.*
cut wood, *leñar, r.*

D

dance, *danzar, r.*; . . . **the polka**, *polcar, r.*
dare, *osar, r.*; . . . **to**, *atreverse, r.*
dash to pieces, *estrellar, r.*
date, *datar, r.*; . . . **(a letter)**, *fechar, r.*
dawn, *amanecer, irr.*—10, page 368; *clarear, r.*
dazzle, *deslumbrar, r.*
deaden (pain, colors, etc.), *amortiguar, r.*
deafen, *ensordecir, irr.*—10, page 368

- debate, debatir, *r.*
 decay, podrir, *irr.*—51, page 385
 deceive, engañar, *r.*
 decide, decidir, *r.*
 decipher, descifrar, *r.*
 declare, declarar, *r.*
 declare a patient's inability to recover, deshauciar, *r.*
 decline, declinar, *r.*
 decompose, descomponer, *irr.*; 40, page 381
 decorate, decorar, *r.*; . . . with medals, condecorar, *r.*
 decorate with flags, embanderar, *r.*
 decorate with tapestry, tapizar, *r.*
 decrease, decrecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 decree, decretar, *r.*
 dedicate, dedicar, *r.*
 deduce, colegir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 deduct, deducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 defame, difamar, *r.*
 defeat, derrotar, *r.*; vencer, *r.*
 defend, defender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 defer, diferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 define, definir, *r.*
 deform, deformar, *r.*
 defraud, defraudar, *r.*
 defray, sufragar, *r.*
 defy, desafiar, *r.*
 degenerate, degenerar, *r.*
 degrade, degradar, *r.*
 deify, deificar, *r.*
 deign, dignarse, *r.*
 delay, demorar, *r.*; dilatar, *r.*; retardar, *r.*
 delegate, delegar, *r.*
 deliberate, deliberar, *r.*
 delight, deleitar, *r.*
 deliver a speech or an oration, perorar, *r.*
 delude, alucinar, *r.*
 democratize, democratizar, *r.*
 demolish, demoler, *irr.*—7, page 368; derruír, *r.*
 demonstrate, demostrar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 demoralize, desmoralizar, *r.*
 denote, denotar, *r.*
 denounce, denunciar, *r.*
 deny, negar, *irr.*—1; page 367
 depend, depender, *r.*
 deplore, deplorar, *r.*
 deport, deportar, *r.*
 depopulate, despoblar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 deport, deportar, *r.*
 depose, deponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 deposit, depositar, *r.*; . . . in an archive, archivar, *r.*
 depress, deprimir, *r.*
 deprive, privar, *r.*
 deprive of social intercourse or communication, incomunicar, *r.*
 deprive one of his authority, desautorizar, *r.*
 deprive oneself of the protection which clothing, etc., affords, desabrigarse, *r.*
 depurate, depurar, *r.*
 derail a train, descarrilar, *r.*
 derive, derivar, *r.*
 descend, descender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 describe, describir, *irr.*—57, page 387
 desert, desertar, *r.*
 desert a place, deshabitar, *r.*
 deserve, merecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 desire anxiously, desvivirse, *r.*
 desist, desistir, *r.*
 desolate, desolar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 despise, despreciar, *r.*
 destroy, destrozar, *r.*; arrasar, *r.*
 destine, destinar, *r.*
 detail, detallar, *r.*
 detain, detener, *irr.*—27, page 377
 deteriorate, deteriorar, *r.*
 determine, determinar, *r.*
 detest, detestar, *r.*; abominar, *r.*
 dethrone, destronar, *r.*
 develop, desarrollar, *r.*
 deviate, desviar, *r.*
 diagnose, diagnosticar, *r.*
 die, fallecer, *irr.*—10, page 368; **mo-**
 rirse, *irr.*—22, page 373; morir, *irr.*
 —22, page 373
 differ, disentir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 differentiate, diferenciar, *r.*
 diffuse, difundir, *r.*
 dig, cavar, *r.*
 digest, digerir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 digress, divagar, *r.*
 dilute, diluír, *r.*
 diminish, disminuir, *r.*; menguar, *r.*
 disable, imposibilitar, *r.*
 disagree, desavenir, *irr.*—45, page 383;
 disentir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 disarm, desarmar, *r.*
 disappear, desaparecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 disappoint, decepcionar, *r.*
 disapprove, desaprobear, *irr.*—5, page 367
 disarrange, desarreglar, *r.*, desordenar, *r.*
 disburse, desembolsar, *r.*
 discard, desechar, *r.*
 discern, discernir, *irr.*—4, page 367
 discern at a distance, columbrar, *r.*
 discharge, despedir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 . . . (soldiers), licenciar, *r.*
 discipline, disciplinar, *r.*
 discolor, desteñir, *irr.*—16a, page 371
 disconcert, desconcertar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 disconnect, desconectar, *r.*
 discontinue, discontinuar, *r.*
 discount, descontar, *irr.*—5, page 367

discover, descubrir, *irr.*—55, page 386
 discredit, desacreditar, *r.*
 discuss, discutir, *r.*
 disembark, desembarcar, *r.*
 disembarrass, desembarazar, *r.*
 disinfect, desinfectar, *r.*
 disfigure, desfigurar, *r.*
 disgrace, deshonrar, *r.*
 disillusion, desilusionar, *r.*
 disinherit, desheredar, *r.*
 dislodge, desalojar, *r.*
 dismiss from office, destituir, *r.*
 dismay, dismayar, *r.*
 dismember, desmembrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 dismount, desmontar, *r.*
 disobey, desobedecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 disorganize, desorganizar, *r.*
 dispatch, despachar, *r.*
 displease, desagradar, *r.*; disgustar, *r.*
 dispose, disponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 dispute, disputar, *r.*; . . . obstinately, altercar, *r.*
 dissipate, disipar, *r.*
 dissolve, disolver, *irr.*—9, page 368
 dissuade, disuadir, *r.*
 distinguish, distinguir, *r.*
 distil, destilar, *r.*
 distract, distraer, *irr.*—43, page 382
 distribute, distribuir, *r.*; repartir, *r.*
 distrust, recelar, *r.*
 disturb, disturbar, *r.*; perturbar, *r.*; turbar, *r.*
 divert, divertir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 divide, dividir, *r.*
 divide into fractions, fraccionar, *r.*
 divorce, divorciar, *r.*
 divulge, divulgar, *r.*; propalar, *r.*
 do, hacer, *irr.*—31, page 378
 do one's best, esmerarse, *r.*
 dock (steamers), atracar, *r.*
 dogmatize, dogmatizar, *r.*
 domesticate, domesticar, *r.*
 dominate, dominar, *r.*
 doze, dormitar, *r.*
 drag along, arrastrar, *r.*
 drain, desaguar, *r.*
 dramatize, dramatizar, *r.*
 draw, dibujar, *r.*
 draw (as to a curtain, etc.), descorrer, *r.*
 draw on (drafts, etc.), girar, *r.*; librar, *r.*
 draw lines, rayar, *r.*
 dream, soñar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 dredge, dragar, *r.*
 dress, vestir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 drill, taladrar, *r.*
 drizzle, lloviznar, *r.*
 drown, ahogar, *r.*
 dry, enjugar, *r.*
 duck, zampuzar, *r.*

duplicate, duplicar, *r.*
 dust off, desempolvar, *r.*
 dwindle, mermar, *r.*
 dye, teñir, *irr.*—16a, page 371

E

eat delicacies, golosinear, *r.*
 eat meat and fish on fast days, promiscuar, *r.*
 eat poorly, malecomer, *r.*
 eclipse, eclipsar, *r.*
 economize, economizar, *r.*
 educate, educar, *r.*
 educate and polish a rustic, desbastar, *r.*
 elaborate, elaborar, *r.*
 elapse, transcurrir, *r.*
 electrify, electrizar, *r.*
 electrocute, electrocutar, *r.*
 eliminate, eliminar, *r.*
 elucidate, dilucidar, *r.*
 elude, eludir, *r.*
 emancipate, emancipar, *r.*
 embalm, embalsamar, *r.*
 embark, embarcar, *r.*
 embezzle, defalcar, *r.*
 embrace, abrazar, *r.*
 emigrate, emigrar, *r.*
 emit, emitir, *r.*
 emphasize, acentuar, *r.*; recalcar, *r.*
 empower, facultar, *r.*
 empty, vaciar, *r.*
 empty (rivers), desembocar, *r.*
 emulate, emular, *r.*
 enamel, esmaltar, *r.*
 enclose, adjuntar, *r.*
 endow, dotar, *r.*
 endure, aguantar, *r.*
 enervate, encrvar, *r.*
 enforce by violent means, violentar, *r.*
 engrave, grabar, *r.*
 enjoy, disfrutar, *r.*; . . . the profits from something, usufructuar, *r.*
 enlarge, agrandar, *r.*; extender, *irr.*—3, page 367; engrandecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 enslave, esclavizar, *r.*
 entangle, enredar, *r.*
 enter, entrar, *r.*; . . . an institution of learning, ingresar, *r.*
 entertain, entretener, *irr.*—27, page 377; agasajar, *r.*
 entice, engatusar, *r.*
 entitle, intitular, *r.*
 enumerate, enumerar, *r.*
 enunciate, enunciar, *r.*
 envy, envidiar, *r.*
 equip, equipar, *r.*
 eradicate, erradicar, *r.*; extirpar, *r.*
 erase, borrar, *r.*

erect, erigir, *r.*; erguir, *irr.*—49, page 384
 err, errar, *irr.*—2, page 367
 escape, escapar, *r.*; zafarse, *r.*
 escort, escoltar, *r.*
 establish, establecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 esteem, estimar, *r.*
 estrange friends, malquistar, *r.*
 eternize, eternizar, *r.*
 etherize, eterizar, *r.*
 evacuate, evacuar, *r.*
 evade, evadir, *r.*
 evangelize, evangelizar, *r.*
 evaporate, evaporar, *r.*
 evoke, evocar, *r.*
 exaggerate, exagerar, *r.*
 examine, examinar, *r.*
 exasperate, exasperar, *r.*
 exceed, exceder, *r.*; . . . proper bounds, traspasarse, *r.*
 excel, sobrepujar, *r.*; descollar, *irr.*—5; page 367
 except, exceptuar, *r.*
 exchange, cambiar, *r.*; permutar, *r.*; trocar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 exchange (newspapers, prisoners of war, etc.), canjear, *r.*
 exchange shots, tirotear, *r.*
 excite, excitar, *r.*
 exclaim, exclamar, *r.*
 exclude, excluir, *r.*
 excommunicate, excomulgar, *r.*
 excuse, dispensar, *r.*; disculpar, *r.*; excusar, *r.*
 execute, ejecutar, *r.*; ajusticiar, *r.*
 exempt, eximir, *r.*
 exert oneself, esforzarse, *irr.*—5, page 367
 exhale, exhalar, *r.*
 exhaust, agotar, *r.*
 exhibit, exhibir, *r.*
 exhume, exhumar, *r.*
 exile, desterrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 expectorate, escupir, *r.*
 expel, expulsar, *r.*; expeler, *r.*
 experiment, experimentar, *r.*
 expiate, expiar, *r.*
 expire, expirar, *r.*
 explain, explicar, *r.*
 explode, estallar, *r.*
 exploit, explotar, *r.*
 explore, explorar, *r.*
 expose, exponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 extemporize, improvisar, *r.*
 exterminate, exterminar, *r.*
 extinguish, extinguir, *r.*
 extract, extraer, *irr.*—43, page 382

F

face, enfrentar, *r.*; . . . (dangers, etc.), arrostrar, *r.*; encarar, *r.*

fail, fracasar, *r.*
 fail to heed, desoir, *irr.*—38, page 381
 fail to recognize, desconocer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 fall, caer, *irr.*—46, page 383
 fall back, retroceder, *r.*
 fall in line, alinearse, *r.*
 fall in love, enamorarse, *r.*; prendarse, *r.*
 fall into lethargy, aletargarse, *r.*
 fall slightly in love, enamoricarse, *r.*
 fan, abanicar, *r.*
 fascinate, fascinar, *r.*; hechizar, *r.*
 fast, ayunar, *r.*
 fasten, amarrar, *r.*
 fasten (with hooks and eyes), abrochar, *r.*
 fathom, sondear, *r.*
 favor, favorecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 feed, alimentar, *r.*
 feel, sentir, *irr.*—18, page 371; . . . with the fingers, tentar, *irr.*—1, page 367; . . . (with the hand), palpar, *r.*
 feign, fingir, *r.*; disimular, *r.*
 fell trees, talar, *r.*
 fence, esgrimir, *r.*; . . . in, cercar, *r.*; . . . (with wire), alambrar, *r.*
 fertilize, fertilizar, *r.*
 fib, embustear, *r.*
 fight, combatir, *r.*; pugnar, *r.*
 fight a duel, batirse, *r.*
 fight bulls (in the ring), torear, *r.*
 file, limar, *r.*
 filch, ratear, *r.*
 fill, llenar, *r.*
 fill to the brim, colmar, *r.*
 fill up, henchir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 filter, filtrar, *r.*
 finance, refaccionar (Cuba), *r.*
 find, hallar, *r.*; encontrar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 find delicious (things to eat), sabrorear, *r.*
 find one's bearings, orientarse, *r.*
 fine, multar, *r.*
 finish, concluir, *r.*; rematar, *r.*
 fish, pescar, *r.*
 fit, sentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 fix, fijar, *r.*
 flatter, lisonjear, *r.*; adular, *r.*
 flee, huír, *r.*
 fling, arrojar, *r.*
 flirt, flirtear, *r.*
 float, flotar, *r.*
 flow, fluír, *r.*
 fluctuate, fluctuar, *r.*
 fly, volar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 fold, doblar, *r.*; plegar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 folio a book, foliar, *r.*
 follow, seguir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 force, forzar, *irr.*—5, page 367

foretell, vaticinar, *r.*; predecir, *irr.*—35, page 379
 forbid, vedar, *r.*
 forge, forjar, *r.*
 forget, trascordarse, *irr.*—5, page 367
 forgive, perdonar, *r.*
 form, formar, *r.*
 formulate, formular, *r.*
 foresee, prever, *irr.*—44, page 383
 foretell, predecir, *irr.*—35, page 379
 fortify, fortificar, *r.*
 forward, expedir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 founder, afondar, *r.*
 found, fundir, *r.*
 fraternize, fraternizar, *r.*
 fray, raer, *irr.*—53, page 386
 free, libertar, *r.*
 freeze, helar, *irr.*—1, page 367; congelar, *r.*
 frequent, frecuentar, *r.*
 frighten, asustar, *r.*; espantar, *r.*; atemorizar, *r.*; amedrentar, *r.*
 frolic, jugar, *r.*; parrandear, *r.*
 frown, ceñar, *r.*
 frustrate, frustrar, *r.*
 fry, freír, *irr.*—17, page 371
 fry very well or too much, refreír, *irr.*—17, page 371
 fulfil, realizar, *r.*; cumplir, *r.*
 fumigate, fumigar, *r.*
 fulminate, fulminar, *r.*
 furnish, amoblar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 furrow, surcar, *r.*

G

gabble, cotorrear, *r.*
 gain weight, engrosar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 gallop, galopar, *r.*
 gargle, gargarizar, *r.*
 garnish, guarnecer, *irr.*—10, page 368; aliñar, *r.*
 gas (liquids, etc.), gasear, *r.*
 gather, recoger, *r.*
 gather the vintage, vendimiar, *r.*
 generalize, generalizar, *r.*
 germinate, germinar, *r.*
 gesticulate, gesticular, *r.*; accionar, *r.*; gestear, *r.*
 get, conseguir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 get accustomed to, habituarse, *r.*
 get angry, enojarse, *r.*; enfadarse, *r.*
 get bored, hastiarse, *r.*
 get busy, atarearse, *r.*
 get courage, envalentonarse, *r.*
 get desperate, desesperarse, *r.*
 get discouraged, desalentarse, *irr.*—1, page 367
 get drunk, emborracharse, *r.*; embriagarse, *r.*
 get excited, exaltarse, *r.*

get furious, trinar, *r.*; enfurecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 get hoarse, enronquecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 get ill-humored, malhumorarse, *r.*
 get impatient, impacientarse, *r.*
 get indisposed, indisponerse, *irr.*—40, page 381; destemplarse, *r.*
 get information from others (skilfully), sonsacar, *r.*
 get intoxicated, embriagarse, *r.*
 get ready, alistarse, *r.*
 get seasick, marearse, *r.*
 get sick, enfermarse, *r.*
 get soaked, empaparse, *r.*
 get strong, robustecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 get together, concurrir, *r.*; reunir, *r.*
 get worse, empeorar, *r.*
 gild, dorar, *r.*
 gird, ceñir, *irr.*—16a, page 371
 give, dar, *irr.*—33, page 379
 give (a beating), propinar, *r.*
 give a toast, brindar, *r.*
 give away, desprenderse, *r.*
 give back, restituir, *r.*
 give blows (with fists), trompear, *r.* (Spanish America)
 give in, transigir, *r.*
 give notice, avisar, *r.*
 give the extreme unction, sacramentar, *r.*; dar la unción or extremaunción
 give the lie, desmentir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 give up work temporarily, vacar, *r.*
 give vent to one's feelings, desahogar, *r.*
 gladden, regocijarse, *r.*
 glide, resbalar, *r.*
 glimpse, vislumbrar, *r.*
 glitter, lucir, *irr.*—11, page 369; resplandecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 glorify, glorificar, *r.*
 glut, hartar, *r.*
 gnaw, roer, *irr.*—54, page 386
 go, ir, *irr.*—37, page 380
 go astray, extraviarse, *r.*
 go away, marcharse, *r.*
 go deep, ahondar, *r.*; . . . into a matter, profundizar, *r.*
 go from one place to another, transitar, *r.*
 go on a pilgrimage, peregrinar, *r.*
 go out, salir, *irr.*—24, page 373
 go to a distant place, alejarse, *r.*
 go to and fro (for business purposes), trajinar, *r.*
 go to bed, acostarse, *irr.*—5, page 367
 go upon all fours, gatear, *r.*
 gobble, engullir, *irr.*—14, page 370
 gossip, chismear, *r.*; cuentear, *r.*; murmurar, *r.*

govern, gobernar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 graduate, graduar, *r.*
 grant, conceder, *r.*; otorgar, *r.*
 granulate, granular, *r.*
 grate, rallar, *r.*
 gratify, gratificar, *r.*
 gravitate, gravitar, *r.*
 graze, pacer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 grease, engrasar, *r.*
 grieve, afligir, *r.*
 grind, moler, *irr.*—7, page 368
 ground (ships), varar, *r.*
 group, agrupar, *r.*
 grow, crecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 grow angry, enfurruñarse, *r.*
 grow calm or clear (elements and man),
 serenarse, *r.*
 grow fat, engordar, *r.*
 grow formal, formalizarse, *r.*
 grow gray, encanecerse, *irr.*—10, page
 368
 grow green again, reverdecir, *irr.*—10,
 page 368
 grow old, envejecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 grow pale, palidecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 grow rancid or stale, ranciarse, *r.*
 grow stiff with cold, aterirse (*defective*)
 grow stronger (winds, etc.), arreciar, *r.*
 grow stupid, embrutecerse, *irr.*—10,
 page 368
 grow thin, enflaquecer, *irr.*—10, page
 368
 grow worse (physically), desmejorarse, *r.*
 grow young, rejuvenecer, *irr.*—10,
 page 368
 growl, refunfuñar, *r.*
 guarantee, garantizar, *r.*
 guard against, precaver, *r.*
 guess, adivinar, *r.*
 guess right, acertar, *irr.*—1, page 367;
 atinar, *r.*
 guide, guiar, *r.*; conducir, *irr.*—12, page
 369; encaminar, *r.*
 guild, dorar, *r.*
 guillotine, guillotinar, *r.*

H

haggle over the price, regatear, *r.*
 hail, granizar, *r.*
 hammer, martillar, *r.*
 handcuff, maniatar, *r.*
 handle, manosear, *r.*
 handle a person with too much familiar-
 ity, sobar, *r.*
 hang, ahorcar, *r.*
 hang up, colgar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 happen, suceder, *r.*; ocurrir, *r.*; aconte-
 cer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 harden, endurecer, *irr.*—10, page 368

harm, dañar, *r.*; perjudicar, *r.*; . . . one
 either physically or morally, vulnerar,
 r.
 harmonize, armonizar, *r.*; harmonizar, *r.*
 harness, ensillar, *r.*
 harvest, cosechar, *r.*
 hasten, apresurar, *r.*
 hate, odiar, *r.*; aborrecer, *irr.*—10, page
 368
 have, tener, *irr.*—27, page 377; haber,
 irr.—26, page 376
 have a desire for, apetecer, *irr.*—10,
 page 368
 have a liking for, gustar, *r.*
 have a presentiment, presentir, *irr.*—
 18, page 371
 head, encabezar, *r.*
 heal, sanar, *r.*
 heap, amontonar, *r.*
 hear, oír, *irr.*—38, page 381
 hear indistinctly, entreoír, *irr.*—38;
 page 381
 heat, calentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 help, ayudar, *r.*; coadyuvar, *r.*
 hesitate, titubear, *r.*; vacilar, *r.*
 hide, ocultar, *r.*; esconder, *r.*
 hitch, enganchar, *r.*
 hoist, izar, *r.*
 hold fast, sujetar, *r.*
 honor, honrar, *r.*
 howl, vociferar, *r.*; aullar, *r.*; alborotar,
 r.
 humiliate, humillar, *r.*
 hunt, cazar, *r.*
 hurrah, victorear, *r.*
 hurry, apurarse, *r.*
 hypnotize, hipnotizar, *r.*

I

idealize, idealizar, *r.*
 identify, identificar, *r.*
 idle, haraganear, *r.*; holgazanear, *r.*
 illtreat, maltratar, *r.*
 illustrate, ilustrar, *r.*
 imagine, imaginarse, *r.*; figurarse, *r.*
 imbue, imbuir, *r.*
 imitate, imitar, *r.*; remedar, *r.*
 immigrate, inmigrar, *r.*
 immortalize, inmortalizar, *r.*
 impair, menoscabar, *r.*
 impart, impartir, *r.*
 impel, impeler, *r.*
 impend, pender, *r.*
 implant, implantar, *r.*
 implicate, implicar, *r.*
 implore, suplicar, *r.*; implorar, *r.*
 impose, imponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 impregnate, impregnar, *r.*
 imprint (as a kiss), estampar, *r.*

imprison, encarcelar, *r.*; aprisionar, *r.*
 improve, mejorar, *r.*
 inaugurate, inaugurar, *r.*
 incapacitate, incapacitar, *r.*
 incite, incitar, *r.*
 incline, inclinar, *r.*
 include, incluir, *r.*
 inconvenience, incomodar, *r.*
 incorporate, incorporar, *r.*
 increase, aumentar, *r.*
 increase in price, encarecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 incriminate, incriminar, *r.*
 inculcate, inculcar, *r.*
 incur, incurrir, *r.*
 indemnify, indemnizar, *r.*
 indicate, indicar, *r.*
 indict, encausar, *r.*
 indorse, endosar, *r.*
 induce, inducir, *irr.*—12, page 369; soliviantar, *r.*
 infect, infectar, *r.*; contagiar, *r.*
 infer, inferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 inflame, inflamar, *r.*
 inflate, inflar, *r.*
 influence, influir, *r.*; influenciar, *r.*
 inform, informar, *r.*; noticiar, *r.*; manifestar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 infuse, fundir, *r.*
 ingratiate oneself, congraciarse, *r.*
 inhale, inhalar, *r.*
 initiate, iniciar, *r.*
 inject, inyectar, *r.*
 injure, lisiar, *r.*
 inlay, incrustar, *r.*
 innovate, innovar, *r.*
 inoculate, inocular, *r.*
 inquire, inquirir, *irr.*—20, page 372
 insert, insertar, *r.*
 insinuate, insinuar, *r.*
 insist, insistir, *r.*; porfiar, *r.*
 inspect, inspeccionar, *r.*
 inspire, inspirar, *r.*
 inspire horror, horripilar, *r.*
 install, instalar, *r.*
 install a sewer system, alcantarillar, *r.*
 instigate, instigar, *r.*
 institute, instituir, *r.*
 instruct, instruir, *r.*
 insult, insultar, *r.*; injuriar, *r.*
 intercalate, intercalar, *r.*
 intercede, interceder, *r.*
 intercept, interceptar, *r.*; atajar, *r.*
 interest oneself, interesarse, *r.*
 interpellate, interpelar, *r.*
 interpolate, interpolar, *r.*
 interpret, interpretar, *r.*
 intervene, intervenir, *irr.*—45, page 383
 interview, entrevistar, *r.*
 intimidate, intimidar, *r.*

introduce, introducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 intrude, intrusar, *r.*; entrometerse, *r.*
 inundate, inundar, *r.*
 invade, invadir, *r.*
 invalidate, invalidar, *r.*
 invent, inventar, *r.*
 invest, investir, *irr.*—15, page 370; invertir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 investigate, investigar, *r.*; indagar, *r.*
 invigorate, vigorizar, *r.*
 invite, invitar, *r.*; convidar, *r.*
 invoice, facturar, *r.*
 invoke, invocar, *r.*
 iron, aplachar, *r.*
 irradiate, irradiar, *r.*
 irrigate, irrigar, *r.*
 irritate, irritar, *r.*
 isolate, aislar, *r.*
 issue passports, pasaportear, *r.*
 itch, picar, *r.*

J

jeer, mofarse, *r.*
 jerk, sacudir, *r.*
 join, juntar, *r.*
 joke, bromear, *r.*
 judge, juzgar, *r.*
 juggle, prestidigitar, *r.*
 justify, justificar, *r.*

K

keep, guardar, *r.*
 keep awake, desvelar, *r.*
 keep quiet, callarse, *r.*
 keep score, tantear, *r.*
 keep vigil, velar, *r.*
 kick (animals), cocear, *r.*
 kick about violently, patalear, *r.*
 kiss, besar, *r.*
 kiss repeatedly, besuquear, *r.*
 knead, amasar, *r.*
 knot, anudar, *r.*
 know, saber, *irr.*—42, page 382
 know with certainty, constar, *r.*

L

label, rotular, *r.*
 lacerate, lacerar, *r.*
 lack, carecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 lament, lamentar, *r.*
 lampoon, pasquinar, *r.*
 languish, languidecer, *irr.*—10, page 368; decaer, *irr.*—46, page 383
 lasso, enlazar, *r.*
 last a long time, perdurar, *r.*
 laugh, reír, *irr.*—16, page 370
 launch, lanzar, *r.*
 lay aside, relegar, *r.*; . . . (in a corner), arrinconar, *r.*
 lay out, erogar, *r.*

- lay siege, *sitiar, r.*
 lay the foundation (of a building, etc.),
 cimentar, irr.—1, page 367
 leak, *gotear, r.*
 lean against, *apoyarse, r.; recostar, irr.—5, page 367*
 lecture in public, *conferenciar, r.*
 legalize, *legalizar, r.*
 legitimize, *legitimar, r.*
 lengthen, *alargar, r.*
 level, *allanar, r.*
 libel, *difamar, r.*
 liberalize, *liberalizar, r.*
 lick, *lamer, r.*
 lie, *mentir, irr.—18, page 371*
 lie down, *acostarse, irr.—5, page 367*
 lie in the grave, *yacer, irr.—52, page 385*
 lift, *levantar, r.*
 lift up, *alzar, r.*
 light, *alumbrar, r.; encender, irr.—3, page 367*
 lighten, *relampaguear, r.; aligerar, r.*
 like, *gustar, r.*
 limit, *limitar, r.*
 limit oneself to one thing at a time, *concretarse, r.*
 limp, *cojear, r.; renguear, r. (Argentina)*
 line (clothing), *forrar, r.*
 liquidate, *liquidar, r.*
 list, *catalogar, r.*
 listen, *escuchar, r.*
 lithograph, *litografiar, r.*
 litigate, *litigar, r.; pleitear, r.*
 live, *habitar, r.; morar, r.; radicar, r.; . . . a retired life, retraerse, irr.—43, page 382*
 level, *nivelar, r.*
 load, *cargar, r.*
 loaf, *vagabundear, r.; zanganear, r.*
 localize, *localizar, r.*
 lock up, *encerrar, irr.—1, page 367*
 lodge, *hospedar, r.; alojar, r.*
 long for, *anhelar, r.*
 look after, *cuidar, r.*
 look at, *mirar, r.*
 loosen, *aflojar, r.; laxar, r.*
 lose, *perder, irr.—3, page 367; . . . the desire (for food, etc.), desganarse, r.; . . . the way, desorientarse, r.; . . . weight (fat), desengrosar, irr.—5, page 367; . . . weight and color, demacrarse, r.*
 lower (prices, etc.), *rebajar, r.*
 lubricate, *lubricar, r.*
 lunch, *merendar, irr.—1, page 367*
 lynch, *linchar, r.*
- M
- magnetize, *imantar, r.; magnetizar, r.*
 maintain, *mantener, irr.—27, page 377*
 make, *hacer, irr.—31, page 378*
 make a collection, *coleccionar, r.*
 make a debut, *debutar, r.*
 make a last will, *testar, r.*
 make a note of, *anotar, r.*
 make a review, *reseñar, r.*
 make a show of, *ostentar, r.*
 make an elaborate toilet, *acicalar, r.*
 make bitter, *amargar, r.*
 make clear, *aclarar, r.*
 make contracts, *contratar, r.*
 make evident, *patentizar, r.*
 make evolutions or manœuvres, *evolucionar, r.*
 make fun of, *burlarse, r.; pitorrearse, r.; guasearse, r.*
 make good use of, *aprovechar, r.*
 make holes, *agujerear, r.*
 make immune, *inmunizar, r.*
 make look ugly, *afear, r.*
 make love, *enamorar, r.*
 make lukewarm (a liquid), *entibiar, r.*
 make merry, *verbenear, r.*
 make narrow, *estrechar, r.*
 make one fanatic, *fanatizar, r.*
 make over, *rehacer, irr.—31, page 378*
 make pleasant, *amenizar, r.*
 make presents, *regalar, r.*
 make prominent, *realzar, r.*
 make round, *redondear, r.*
 make sanitary, *higienizar, r.*
 make the sign of the cross, *santiguarse, r.; persignarse, r.*
 make use of a pretext, *pretextar, r.*
 make wild statements, *barbarizar, r.*
 man a ship, *tripular, r.*
 manage, *manejar, r.; administrar, r.; regentar, r.*
 manipulate, *manipular, r.*
 manœuvre (troops, etc.), *maniobrar, r.*
 manufacture, *fabricar, r.; manufacturar, r.*
 maraud, *merodear, r.*
 mark, *marcar, r.*
 marry, *casar, desposar, r.*
 marvel, *maravillar, r.*
 match (things), *hermanar, r.*
 materialize, *materializar, r.*
 measure, *medir, irr.—15, page 370*
 measure the height (of persons), *tallar, r.*
 meditate, *meditar, r.; reflexionar, r.*
 mediate, *mediar, r.*
 melt, *derretir, irr.—15, page 370*
 mend, *remendar, irr.—1, page 367*
 mention, *mencionar, r.; mentar, irr.—1, page 367*
 metamorphose, *metamorfosear, r.*
 methodize, *metodizar, r.*
 mew, *mayar, r.*

militarize, *militarizar, r.*
militate, *militar, r.*
milk, *ordeñar, r.; muír, r.*
mine, *minar, r.*
minister, *suministrar, r.*
misgovern, *desgobernar, irr.—1, page 367*
misrepresent, *tergiversar, r.*
misspend, *malgastar, r.*
mistrust, *desconfiar, r.*
misuse, *malemployar, r.*
misuse funds, *malversar, r.*
mitigate, *mitigar, r.; aplacar, r.*
mix, *mezclar, r.; mixturar, r.*
mix water with some other liquid, *aguar, r.*
moan, *gemir, irr.—15, page 370*
mobilize, *movilizar, r.*
model, *modelar, r.*
moderate, *moderar, r.*
modernize, *modernizar, r.*
modify, *modificar, r.*
modulate, *modular, r.*
moisten, *humedecer, irr.—10, page 368;*
. . . with saliva, ensalivar, r.
monopolize, *monopolizar, r.; acaparar, r.*
moralize, *moralizar, r.*
mortgage, *hipotecar, r.*
mortify, *mortificar, r.*
mould, *moldear, r.*
mount, *montar, r.*
move, **mover**, *irr.—7, page 368; mudarse, r.; . . . to pity, conmoover, irr.—7, page 368*
move the legs violently, *pernear, r.*
mow, *segar, irr.—1, page 367*
muddle, *enturbiar, r.*
muffle oneself up, *rebozarse, r.*
multiply, *multiplicar, r.*
mumble, *mascular, r.*
murder, *asesinar, r.*
murmur, *susurrar, r.*
mutilate, *mutilar, r.*
mutiny, *rebelarse, r.*

N

nail, *clavar, r.*
name, *nombrar, r.; nominar, r.*
narrate, *narrar, r.*
naturalize, *naturalizar, r.*
navigate, *navegar, r.*
need, *precisar, r. (Spanish America)*
neglect, *descuidar, r.*
negotiate, *negociar, r.*
neigh, *relinchar, r.*
neutralize, *neutralizar, r.*
nickelplate, *niquelar, r.*
nod in sleep or assent, *cabecear, r.*
nominate, *nominar, r.; nombrar, r.*

notice, *reparar, r.*
notify, *notificar, r.*
nourish, *nutrir, r.; alimentar, r.*
numerate, *numerar, r.*

O

obey, *obedecer, irr.—10, page 368*
object, *objetar, r.*
oblige, *obligar, r.*
obscure, *obscurer, irr.—10, page 368*
observe, *observar, r.; contemplar, r.*
obstruct, *obstruir, r.; entorpecer, irr.—10, page 368*
obtain, *obtener, irr.—27, page 377; agenciar, r.*
offend, *ofender, r.; ultrajar, r.*
offer, *ofrecer, irr.—10, page 368*
omit, *omitir, r.; prescindir, r.*
open, *abrir, irr.—56, page 387; . . . ditches, zanjar, r.*
open a door slightly, *entreabrir, irr.—56, page 387*
operate, *operar, r.*
oppose, *oponer, irr.—40, page 381*
oppress, *oprimir, r.; tiranizar, r.*
order, *ordenar, r.*
originate, *originar, r.; provenir, irr.—45, page 383*
organize, *organizar, r.*
oscillate, *oscilar, r.*
outbid, *pujar, r.*
outlaw, *proscribir, irr.—57, page 387*
overcharge, *recargar, r.*
overflow, *rebosar, r.*
overflow (rivers, etc.), *desbordarse, r.*
overheat, *recalentar, irr.—1, page 367*
overthrow (governments, etc.), *derrocar, r.*
owe, *adeudar, r.*
oxidate, *oxidar, r.*
oxygenate, *oxigenar, r.*

P

pacify, *pacificar, r.; sosegar, irr.—1, page 367*
pack (packages), *empaquetar, r.*
paint, *pintar, r.*
pair, *parear, r.*
palliate, *paliar, r.*
paper walls, *empapelar, r.*
paralyze, *paralizar, r.*
parboil, *sancochar, r.*
pardon (criminals), *indultar, r.*
parody, *parodiar, r.*
participate, *participar, r.*
pasteurize, *pasteurizar, r.*
patent, *patentar, r.*
patrol, *patrullar, r.; rondar, r.*
patronize, *patrocinar, r.*

- pause, pausar, *r.*
 pave, pavimentar, *r.*; adoquinar, *r.*;
 . . . with bricks, enladrillar, *r.*; . . .
 with stones, empedrar, *irr.*—1, page
 367
 pawn, empeñar, *r.*
 pay, abonar, *r.*; . . . expenses, etc.,
 costear, *r.*; . . . homage, tributar, *r.*;
 . . . no attention to, desatender,
 irr.—3, page 367
 pay compliments (when making love),
 requebrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 peck (birds), picar, *r.*
 peel, mondar, *r.*
 peep (chickens, etc.), piar, *r.*
 penetrate, penetrar, *r.*
 pension, pensionar, *r.*
 perceive, percibir, *r.*
 perfect, perfeccionar, *r.*
 perforate, perforar, *r.*
 perfume, perfumar, *r.*
 perish, perecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 perpetrate, perpetrar, *r.*
 perpetuate, perpetuar, *r.*
 persevere, perseverar, *r.*
 persist, persistir, *r.*
 personify, personificar, *r.*
 persuade, persuadir, *r.*
 pervert, pervertir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 pester, importunar, *r.*
 pet, mimar, *r.*
 petrify, petrificar, *r.*
 philosophize, filosofar, *r.*
 photoengrave, fotograbar, *r.*
 photograph, fotografiar, *r.*; retratar, *r.*
 pick with the beak, picotear, *r.*
 pickle, escabechar, *r.*
 pile up, apilar, *r.*
 pinch, pellizcar, *r.*
 pity, compadecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 place, poner, *irr.*—40, page 381
 place before, anteponer, *irr.*—40, page
 381
 place on the retired list, jubilar, *r.*
 plagiarize, plagiar, *r.*
 plague, plagar, *r.*
 plait (dresses), tronzar, *r.*
 plan, idear, *r.*
 plan (secretly), maquinar, *r.*
 plan out, trazar, *r.*
 plant, plantar, *r.*
 play, jugar, *irr.*—19, page 372
 play a stringed instrument, tañer, *irr.*
 —13, page 369; tocar, *r.*
 play a prelude (music), preludiar, *r.*
 play the fool, necear, *r.*
 please, agradar, *r.*; placer, *irr.*—50, page
 384; complacer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 plot, intrigar, *r.*; tramar, *r.*
 plow, labrar, *r.*
 plunge, zambullir, *irr.*—14, page 370
 pluralize, pluralizar, *r.*
 point out, señalar, *r.*
 poison, envenenar, *r.*
 polish (shoes), lustrar, *r.*; pulir, *r.*
 popularize, popularizar, *r.*
 populate, poblar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 postpone, posponer, *irr.*—40, page 381;
 aplazar, *r.*
 possess, poseer, *r.*
 pound, machacar, *r.*
 pour, verter, *irr.*—3, page 367
 powder oneself, empolvase, *r.*
 practise usury, usurear, *r.*
 praise, alabar, *r.*; elogiar, *r.*; ensalzar,
 r.; encomiar, *r.*; enaltecer, *irr.*—10,
 page 368
 praise highly, ponderar, *r.*
 pray, rezar, *r.*; orar, *r.*
 preach, predicar, *r.*
 precede, preceder, *r.*
 precipitate, precipitar, *r.*
 predestinate, predestinar, *r.*
 predetermine, predeterminar, *r.*
 predispose, predisponer, *irr.*—40, page
 381
 predominate, predominar, *r.*
 prefer, preferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 premeditate, premeditar, *r.*
 presage, presagiar, *r.*
 prescribe medicine, recetar, *r.*
 present, presentar, *r.*
 preserve, conservar, *r.*; preservar, *r.*
 preside, presidir, *r.*
 press, prensar, *r.*
 presume, presumir, *r.*
 pretend, pretender, *r.*; aparentar, *r.*
 prevaricate, prevaricar, *r.* (law)
 prevent, impedir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 prick, pinchar, *r.*
 pride oneself, ufanarse, *r.*
 print, imprimir, *irr.*—58, page 387
 privilege, privilegiar, *r.*
 proceed, proseguir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 proclaim, proclamar, *r.*
 procure, procurar, *r.*
 produce, producir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 produce a metallic sound, tilintear, *r.*
 profane, profanar, *r.*
 profess, profesar, *r.*
 proffer, proferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 profile, perfilar, *r.*
 progress, progresar, *r.*
 project, proyectar, *r.*
 prolong, prolongar, *r.*
 promise, prometer, *r.*
 promote, promover, *irr.*—7, page 368
 pronounce the *s* like *th*, cecear, *r.*
 pronounce the *th* like *s*, sesear, *r.*
 propagate, propagar, *r.*

prophecy, profetizar, *r.*
propose, proponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
prorate, prorratear, *r.*
prosecute, procesar, *r.*
prosper, prosperar, *r.*
prostitute, prostituir, *r.*
prostrate, postrar, *r.*
prostrate oneself, prosternarse, *r.*
protect, proteger, *r.*; amparar, *r.*
protest, protestar, *r.*
provide, proveer, *irr.*—60, page 387;
 proporcionar, *r.*
provoke, provocar, *r.*
prune, podar, *r.*
pry into others' affairs, curiosear, *r.*
publish, editar, *r.*
pucker the lips, fruncir, *r.*
puff with anger, bufar, *r.*
pull, halar, *r.*; . . . out, arrancar, *r.*
pulverize, pulverizar, *r.*
puncture, punzar, *r.*
punish, castigar, *r.*
purify, purificar, *r.*
pursue, perseguir, *irr.*—15, page 370
push, empujar, *r.*
push through, atropellar, *r.*
put, poner, *irr.*—37, page 380
put a tilde over the n, tildar, *r.*
put in, meter, *r.*
put in the right road, encaminar, *r.*
put off, prorrogar, *r.*
put one to shame, avergonzar, *irr.*—5,
 page 367
put out of order (things), desbarajustar,
 r.
put shoes on, calzar, *r.*
put things in drawers, encajonar, *r.*
put through (a business deal), tramitar,
 r.
put to bed, acostar, *irr.*—5, page 367

Q

qualify, calificar, *r.*
qualify (to act as administrator of an estate), habilitar, *r.*
quarrel, reñir, *irr.*—16a, page 371; pendenciar, *r.*
question, cuestionar, *r.*; interrogar, *r.*
quiet, tranquilizar, *r.*
quote, citar, *r.*
quote prices, cotizar, *r.*

R

radiate, radiar, *r.*
raffle, rifar, *r.*
rage, bramar, *r.*
rain, llover, *irr.*—7, page 368
raise, clevar, *r.*
ransack, saquear, *r.*

ransom, rescatar, *r.*
rarefy, rarificar, *r.*
ratify, ratificar, *r.*
rave, delirar, *r.*
raze, rasar, *r.*
re-embark, reembargar, *r.*
reach, alcanzar, *r.*
react, reaccionar, *r.*
read over again, releer, *r.*
reappear, reaparecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
rear, criar, *r.*
reason, razonar, *r.*
rebel, insubordinarse, *r.*
rebound, rebotar, *r.*
rebuild, reedificar, *r.*
recall to mind, recapacitar, *r.*
recapitulate, recapitular, *r.*
receive the Holy Eucharist, comulgar, *r.*
reciprocate, reciprocicar, *r.*
recite, declamar, *r.*
recognize, reconocer, *irr.*—10, page 368
recoil, regular, *r.*
recommend, recomendar, *irr.*—1, page 367;
 encomendar, *irr.*—1, page 367
recompense, recompensar, *r.*; retribuir,
 r.
reconfirm, reconfirmar, *r.*
reconquer, reconquistar, *r.*
record, registrar, *r.*
recount, recontar, *irr.*—5, page 367
recrudesce, recrudecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
recruit, reclutar, *r.*
rectify, rectificar, *r.*
recuperate, recuperar, *r.*; restablecerse,
 irr.—10, page 368
redeem, redimir, *r.*
redound, redundar, *r.*
reduce, reducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
re-elect, reelegir, *irr.*—15, page 370
refer, referir, *irr.*—18, page 371
refill, rellenar, *r.*
refine, refinar, *r.*
reflect, reflejar, *r.*
refold, replegar, *irr.*—1, page 367
reform, reformar, *r.*
refrain, refrenar, *r.*
refresh, refrescar, *r.*; refrigerar, *r.*
refrigerate, refrigerar, *r.*
refuse, rehusar, *r.*; rechazar, *r.*
refute, refutar, *r.*; rebatir, *r.*
regenerate, regenerar, *r.*
register (in schools), matricular, *r.*
register the pedigree and description of a person, filiar, *r.*
regret, lamentar, *r.*
regulate, regularizar, *r.*
rehearse, ensayar, *r.*
reign, reinar, *r.*
reimburse, reembolsar, *r.*; reintegrar,
 r.; integrar, *r.*

- reiterate, reiterar, *r.*
 relapse, recaer, *irr.*—46, page 383; (generally used when speaking of sickness); . . . into vice or error, reincidir, *r.*
 relate, relatar, *r.*
 relax, relajar, *r.*
 relieve, aliviar, *r.*; relevar, *r.* (guards)
 relish, saborear, *r.*; paladear, *r.*
 remedy, remediar, *r.*
 remember, recordar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 remit, remitir, *r.*
 remove, remover, *irr.*—7, page 368; trasladar, *r.*
 remunerate, remunerar, *r.*
 render, rendir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 render poetical, poetizar, *r.*
 render possible, posibilitar, *r.*
 render useless, inutilizar, *r.*
 renew, reanudar, *r.*
 renovate, renovar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 rent, arrendar, *irr.*—1, page 367; alquilar, *r.*
 reorganize, reorganizar, *r.*; reconstituír, *r.*
 repair a ship, carenar, *r.*
 repatriate, repatriar, *r.*
 repeat, repetir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 repent, arrepentirse, *irr.*—18, page 371
 replace, reponer, *irr.*—40, page 381; reemplazar, *r.*
 replant, replantar, *r.*
 report, reportar, *r.*
 repose, reposar, *r.*
 represent, representar, *r.*
 reprimand, reconvenir, *irr.*—45, page 383; sermonear, *r.*
 reprint, reimprimir, *irr.*—58, page 387
 reproach, reprochar, *r.*
 reproduce, reproducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 reprove, reprobar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 repudiate, repudiar, *r.*
 repute, reputar, *r.*
 require, requerir, *irr.*—18; page 371
 resemble, asemejar, *r.*; parecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 resent, resentirse, *irr.*—18, page 371
 reserve, reservar, *r.*
 reside, residir, *r.*
 resign, dimitir, *r.*; renunciar, *r.*
 resist, resistir, *r.*
 resound, resonar, *irr.*—5, page 367; re-percutir, *r.*
 respect, respetar, *r.*
 rest, descansar, *r.*; posar, *r.*
 restore, restaurar, *r.*
 restrain, reprimir, *r.*; cohibir, *r.*; morigerar, *r.*
 resuscitate, resucitar, *r.*
 result, resultar, *r.*
 retail, menudear, *r.*
 retain, retener, *irr.*—27, page 377
 retract, retractar, *r.*
 return, volver, *irr.*—9, page 368; tornar, *r.*; retornar, *r.*; . . . (things), devolver, *irr.*—9, page 368
 revel, loquear, *r.*
 review, repasar, *r.*
 revile, vilipendiar, *r.*
 revise, revisar, *r.*
 revive, revivir, *r.*; reanimar, *r.*; reavivar, *r.*
 revoke, revocar, *r.*; derogar, *r.*
 revolt, revolucionar, *r.*
 revolve, rodar, *r.*
 reward, premiar, *r.*
 ride on horseback, cabalgar, *r.*; . . . on horseback for show, jinetear, *r.*
 ridicule, ridicular, *r.*
 rinse, enjuagar, *r.*; . . . (mouth, cups, etc.), juagar, *r.*
 riot, amotinarse, *r.*
 rip, descoser, *r.*
 ripen, madurar, *r.*
 rise early, madrugar, *r.*
 rise in rebellion, sublevarse, *r.*
 risk, arriesgar, *r.*
 rivet, remachar, *r.*
 roam, vagar, *r.*
 roar, rugir, *r.*
 roast, asar, *r.*
 rob, robar, *r.*
 roll over, voltear, *r.*
 roll up, arrollar, *r.*
 roll up the sleeves, etc.; remangar, *r.*
 rouse, soliviantar, *r.*
 row, remar, *r.*
 rub, frotar, *r.*; refregar, *irr.*—1, page 367; restregar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 ruin, arruinar, *r.*
 rule, regir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 ruminare, rumiar, *r.*
 run aground, encallar, *r.*
 run away (horses), desbocarse, *r.*
 run into (streets, rivers, etc.), afluir, *r.*
 run to, acudir, *r.*
 rupture, fracturar, *r.*
 rusticate, rusticar, *r.*

S

- sacrifice, sacrificar, *r.*
 saddle, ensillar, *r.*
 sail, zarpar, *r.*
 salt, salar, *r.*
 salt and dry meat, acecinar, *r.*
 sanction, sancionar, *r.*
 sandpaper, lijar, *r.*
 sap, zapar, *r.*
 satiate, saciar, *r.*
 satisfy, satisfacer, *irr.*—32, page 378

- saturate, saturar, *r.*
 save (persons), salvar, *r.* . . . (money), ahorrar, *r.*
 saw, serrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 say, decir, *irr.*—34, page 379
 say good-bye, despedirse, *irr.*—15, page 370
 scandalize, escandalizar, *r.*
 scarify, sajar, *r.*
 scatter, dispersar, *r.*
 scent, rastrear, *r.*
 scheme, urdir, *r.*
 scoff, escarnecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 scold, regañar, *r.*
 scorch, soearrar, *r.*
 scorn, desdeñar, *r.*
 scour (streets, etc.), recorrer, *r.*
 scrape, raspar, *r.*
 scratch (lightly), rascar, *r.*
 scream, chillar, *r.*
 scribble, borronear, *r.*; garrapatear, *r.*
 scrub, fregar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 scrutinize, escrutar, *r.*
 sculpture, esculpir, *r.*
 scythe, guadañar, *r.*
 seal, sellar, *r.*
 seal stamps, timbrar, *r.*
 seal with sealing-wax, lacrar, *r.*
 search, registrar, *r.*
 search carefully, rebuscar, *r.*
 season, sazonar, *r.*; . . . (food), condimentar, *r.*
 seclude, recluír, *r.*
 second, secundar, *r.*
 seduce, seducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 see, ver, *irr.*—44, page 383; . . . in a confused way, entrever, *irr.*—44, page 383
 segregate, segregar, *r.*
 seize, agarrar, *r.*; asir, *irr.*—48, page 384
 select, seleccionar, *r.*
 sell at a loss, malvender, *r.*
 sell at auction, subastar, *r.*
 send, mandar, *r.*; remesar, *r.*
 separate, separar, *r.*; apartar, *r.*
 serve, servir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 set free, soltar, *irr.*—5, page 367; a prisoner, excarcelar, *r.*
 set on fire, incendiar, *r.*; quemar, *r.*
 settle accounts, saldar, *r.*; solventar, *r.*
 settle down, asentarse, *irr.*—1, page 367
 sever friendship, enemistarse, *r.*
 shake up, agitar, *r.*
 share, compartir, *r.*
 share in a common expense, escotar, *r.*
 sharpen, afilar, *r.*; . . . (wits), aguzar, *r.*
 shatter, destruir, *r.*
 shave, rasurar, *r.*
 shed, derramar, *r.*
 shelter, cobijar, *r.*; albergar, *r.*
 shine, brillar, *r.*; relucir, *irr.*—11, page 369
 shirk, desentenderse, *irr.*—3, page 367
 shiver, tiritar, *r.*
 shoe (horses), herrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 shoot, fusilar, *r.*; disparar, *r.*
 show, mostrar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 show off, pavonearse, *r.*
 shrink, encoger, *r.*
 shuffle the cards, barajar, *r.*
 shun, esquivar, *r.*
 sift, cerner, *irr.*—3, page 367
 sigh, suspirar, *r.*
 sign, firmar, *r.*
 sign a document to effect its legality, refrendar, *r.*
 silverplate, platear, *r.*
 simplify, simplificar, *r.*
 sing in tune, entonar, *r.*
 sink, hundir, *r.*; . . . (water), sumir, *r.*; zozobrar, *r.*
 sit down, sentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 sit up all night, trasnochar, *r.*
 situate, situar, *r.*
 skate, patinar, *r.*
 sketch, diseñar, *r.*; bosquejar, *r.*
 skim, espumar, *r.*; . . . the milk, desnatar, *r.*
 skin, desollar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 slacken, flojear, *r.*
 slander, calumniar, *r.*
 slap, abofetear, *r.*
 sleep, dormir, *irr.*—21, page 372
 slice, rebanar, *r.*
 slight, desairar, *r.*
 smart, escocer, *irr.*—7, page 368
 smear, untar, *r.*
 smell, oler, *irr.*—8, page 368
 smile, sonreír, *irr.*—16, page 370
 smooth, alisar, *r.*
 smut, tizar, *r.*
 snatch away another's employment or sweetheart, birlar, *r.*
 sneak away, escabullirse, *irr.*—14, page 370
 sneeze, estornudar, *r.*
 snow, nevar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 soak (things), remojar, *r.*
 soap, jabonar, *r.*
 soar, remontar, *r.*
 sob, sollozar, *r.*
 soften, suavizar, *r.*; ablandar, *r.*; reblandecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 soil, ensuciar, *r.*; manchar, *r.*
 solace, solazar, *r.*
 solder, soldar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 solemnize, solemnizar, *r.*
 solicit, solicitar, *r.*
 solidify, solidificar, *r.*

- soliloquize, soliloquiar, *r.*
 solve, resolver, *irr.*—9, page 368; solucionar, *r.*
 sophisticate, sofisticar, *r.*
 sound, sonar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 sow, sembrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 spank, zurrar, *r.*
 sparkle, relumbrar, *r.*
 speak with a twang, gangosear, *r.*; ganguear, *r.*
 specify, especificar, *r.*
 speculate, especular, *r.*
 spell, deletrear, *r.*
 spend, gastar, *r.*
 spend the night out, pernoctar, *r.*
 spill, derramar, *r.*; desparramar, *r.*
 spin, hilar, *r.*
 spoil, desperdiciar, *r.*; estropear, *r.*; . . . (plans), desbaratar, *r.*; . . . (garments), ajar, *r.*
 sponge on one's friends, sablear, *r.*
 sprain, dislocar, *r.*
 spread, diseminar, *r.*; esparcir, *r.*
 spring, manar, *r.*
 sprinkle, rociar, *r.*
 spy, espiar, *r.*
 squander, derrochar, *r.*
 squeak, rechinar, *r.*
 squeeze, exprimir, *r.*
 squeeze (fruits for juice), estrujar, *r.*
 stagger, tambalear, *r.*
 stain (a reputation), mancillar, *r.*
 stain with blood, ensangrentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 stamp (horses), piafar, *r.*
 stamp the foot, patear, *r.*
 stand out, resaltar, *r.*
 stay, permanecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 steal, hurtar, *r.*; robar, *r.*
 steer, timonear, *r.*
 stencil, estarcir, *r.*
 step, pisar, *r.*
 stereotype, estereotipar, *r.*
 sterilize, esterilizar, *r.*
 stimulate, estimular, *r.*
 stink, apestar, *r.*; heder, *irr.*—3, page 367
 stipulate, estipular, *r.*; pactar, *r.*
 stir, menear, *r.*
 stir up, suscitar, *r.*
 stone, apedrear, *r.*
 stoop, agacharse, *r.*
 stop raining, escampar, *r.*
 store, almacenar, *r.*
 stow away, estibar, *r.*
 strain, colar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 strain one's eyes, desojarse, *r.*; forzar (la vista), *irr.*—5, page 367
 strangle, estrangular, *r.*
 strengthen, reforzar, *irr.*—5, page 367; . . . (persons), fortalecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 strike, pegar, *r.*; (blows, etc.), golpear, *r.*; . . . with the shoe, zapatear, *r.*
 struggle, bregar, *r.*
 stucco, estucar, *r.*
 study a subject (in a school), cursar, *r.*
 stumble, tropezar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 subdivide, subdividir, *r.*
 subdue, supeditar, *r.*
 subjugate, subyugar, *r.*
 sublet, subarrendar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 sublimate, sublimar, *r.*
 submerge, sumergir, *r.*
 submit, someter, *r.*
 subordinate, subordinar, *r.*
 subscribe, subscribir, *irr.*—57, page 387
 subsidize, subvencionar, *r.*
 subsist, subsistir, *r.*
 substitute, sustituir, *r.*; substituir, *r.*
 subtract, restar, *r.*
 succour, socorrer, *r.*
 succumb, sucumbir, *r.*
 suck, mamar, *r.*; chupar, *r.*
 suck juice softly, libar, *r.*
 suffer, padecer, *irr.*—10, page 368; penar, *r.*
 suffice, bastar, *r.*
 suffocate, sofocar, *r.*; afixiar, *r.*
 suggest, sugerir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 sum up, recapitular, *r.*; sumar, *r.*
 summon, convocar, *r.*
 supplant, suplantar, *r.*
 supply, abastecer, *irr.*—10, page 368; . . . (armies), pertrechar, *r.*; surtir, *r.*
 support, sustentar, *r.*
 suppose, suponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 suppress, suprimir, *r.*
 suppurate (medicine), supurar, *r.*
 surprise, sorprender, *r.*
 surpass, sobresalir, *irr.*—24, page 373; superar, *r.*; descollar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 surround, circundar, *r.*
 survive, sobrevivir, *r.*
 suspect, sospechar, *r.*
 suspect maliciously, maliciar, *r.*
 suspend, suspender, *r.*
 sustain, sostener, *irr.*—27, page 377
 swaddle, fajar, *r.*
 swallow, tragar, *r.*
 swarm, pulular, *r.*
 swear, jurar, *r.*; blasfemar, *r.*
 sweeten, endulzar, *r.*; azucarar, *r.*; dulcificar, *r.*
 swell, hincharse, *r.*
 swim, nadar, *r.*
 swindle, estafar, *r.*; trampear, *r.*
 swing in the hammock, hamacarse, *r.*
 syllabicate, silabear, *r.*

symbolize, simbolizar, *r.*
 syncopate, sincopar, *r.*
 syndicate, sindicat, *r.*
 synthesize, sintetizar, *r.*
 syringe, jeringar, *r.*
 systematize, sistematizar, *r.*

T

tack (nautical), virar, *r.*
 talk nonsense, disparatar, *r.*
 take a fancy to, enamoricarse, *r.*
 take a laxative, purgarse, *r.*
 take a nap, sestear, *r.*
 take away, quitar, *r.*
 take back (words), desdecir, *irr.*—35, page 379
 take breath, resollar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 take care of, cuidar, *r.*
 take census, empadronar, *r.*
 take charge, encargarse, *r.*
 take in tow, remolcar, *r.*
 take inventory, inventariar, *r.*
 take leave, despedirse, *irr.*—15, page 370
 take long, tardar, *r.*
 take off, quitar, *r.*; . . . the shoes and socks or stockings, descalzar, *r.*
 take possession, posesionarse, *r.*; apoderarse, *r.*; adueñarse, *r.*
 take a pride in, preciarse, *r.*
 take precautions, precaucionarse, *r.*
 take refuge, refugiarse, *r.*; guarecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 take root, arraigar, *r.*
 take steps, gestionar, *r.*
 take undue liberties, propasarse, *r.*
 talk nonsense, disparatar, *r.*
 tame, amansar, *r.*; domar, *r.*
 tan, curtir, *r.*
 tarry, tardar, *r.*
 taste, gustar, *r.*; catar, *r.*
 tax, tasar, *r.*
 teach, enseñar, *r.*
 tear, rasgar, *r.*; desgarrar, *r.*
 tear down, derribar, *r.*
 tear into pieces, despedazar, *r.*
 tear the hair or beard, mesar, *r.*
 tease, embromar, *r.*
 teethe, dentar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 telephone, telefonar, *r.*; telefonar, *r.*
 telegraph, telegrafiar, *r.*
 tell, contar, *irr.*—5, page 367; decir, *irr.*—34, page 379
 tend, tender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 tend towards, propender, *r.*
 terrify, horrorizar, *r.*; aterrorizar, *r.*; aterrar, *r.*
 testify, testificar, *r.*
 thaw, deshelar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 theorize, teorizar, *r.*

think, pensar, *irr.*—1, page 367; . . .
 deeply, cavar, *r.*
 thrash, trillar, *r.*
 thread a needle, enhebrar, *r.*
 threaten, amenazar, *r.*
 throw, tirar, *r.*; botar, *r.*; lanzar, *r.*
 throw down, tumbar, *r.*; derrumbar, *r.*
 thunder, tronar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 tie (bundles, etc.), liar, *r.*; atar, *r.*
 tighten, apretar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 tire, cansar, *r.*
 title, titular, *r.*
 toast, tostar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 tolerate, tolerar, *r.*
 torpedo, torpedear, *r.*
 torture, torturar, *r.*
 trace (lines, etc.), calcar, *r.*
 trade, comerciar, *r.*; mercar, *r.*
 train, amaestrar, *r.*
 transcend, transcender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 transcribe, transcribir, *irr.*—57, page 387
 transfer, transferir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 transform, transformar, *r.*; metamorphosear, *r.*
 transgress, delinquir, *r.*; contravenir, *irr.*—45, page 383
 tranship, trasbordar, *r.*
 translate, traducir, *irr.*—12, page 369
 transmigrate, transmigrar, *r.*
 transmit, transmitir, *r.*
 transplant, trasplantar, *r.*
 transport, trasportar, *r.*
 tread upon, hollar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 tread under foot, pisotear, *r.*
 treasure, atesorar, *r.*
 treat (with presents, attentions, etc.), obsequiar, *r.*
 treat (in the sense of behaving) tratar, *r.*
 treat of, versar, *r.*
 treat with familiarity (when speaking), tutear, *r.*
 treble, triplicar, *r.*
 tremble, temblar, *irr.*—1, page 367; estremecerse, *irr.*—10, page 368
 triumph, triunfar, *r.*
 trot, trotar, *r.*
 trouble, hostigar, *r.*; inquietar, *r.*
 truncate, truncar, *r.*
 trust, confiar, *r.*; fiar, *r.*
 try, probar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 tun, envasar, *r.*
 tune, afinar, *r.*
 turn the leaves of a book, hojear, *r.*
 turn upside down, volcar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 twist, torcer, *irr.*—7, page 368
 typewrite, mecanografiar, *r.*; dactilografiar, *r.*

U

ulcerate, llagar, *r.*
 unbalance, desequilibrar, *r.*
 unbutton, desabotonar, *r.*
 uncork, descorchar, *r.*
 uncover, destapar, *r.*
 undeceive, desengañar, *r.*
 underestimate, menospreciar, *r.*
 underline, subrayar, *r.*
 undermine, socavar, *r.*
 underrate, menospreciar, *r.*
 understand, entender, *irr.*—3, page 367
 undertake, emprender, *r.*
 undo, deshacer, *irr.*—31, page 378
 undress, desnudar, *r.*; desvestir, *irr.*—15, page 370
 unfasten, desabrochar, *r.*
 unfold, desdoblar, *r.*; desplegar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 unhang, descolgar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 unhitch, desenganchar, *r.*
 unify, unificar, *r.*
 unite, unir, *r.*; . . . (persons or funds for an object), mancomunar, *r.*
 unload, descargar, *r.*
 unpack, desempaquetar, *r.*; desempaçar, *r.*; . . . (bales, etc.), desembalar, *r.*
 unscrew, desatornillar, *r.*
 unsettle, descomponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 untie, desatar, *r.*
 unwrap, desenvolver, *irr.*—9, page 368
 upset, trastornar, *r.*; descomponer, *irr.*—40, page 381
 uproot, desarraigar, *r.*
 urge, apremiar, *r.*; instar, *r.*
 use, usar, *r.*; . . . metaphors, metaforizar, *r.*
 usurp, usurpar, *r.*
 utilize, utilizar, *r.*
 utter (used negatively), chistar, *r.*

V

vaccinate, vacunar, *r.*
 validate, validar, *r.*
 vanish, desvanecer, *irr.*—10, page 368
 varnish, barnizar, *r.*
 vary, variar, *r.*
 vaunt, jactarse, *r.*
 vegetate, vegetar, *r.*
 venerate, venerar, *r.*
 ventilate, ventilar, *r.*
 verify, verificar, *r.*; comprobar, *irr.*—5, page 367
 vibrate, vibrar, *r.*; trepidar, *r.*
 victual, vituallar, *r.*
 vindicate, vindicar, *r.*
 vindicate oneself, sincerarse, *r.*

violate, violar, *r.*; infringir, *r.*
 vitiate, viciar, *r.*
 vivify, vivificar, *r.*
 vocalize, vocalizar, *r.*
 vomit, vomitar, *r.*
 vote, votar, *r.*
 vulcanize, vulcanizar, *r.*

W

wade, vadear, *r.*
 wait, aguardar, *r.*
 walk, caminar, *r.*; andar, *irr.*—30, page 378
 waltz, valsar, *r.*
 want, querer, *irr.*—41, page 382
 warble, gorjear, *r.*
 warn, advertir, *irr.*—18, page 371; pre-venir, *irr.*—45, page 383
 watch, vigilar, *r.*
 water, regar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 waylay, asechar, *r.*
 weaken, debilitar, *r.*; (limbs and spirit), flaquear, *r.*
 wear away, desgastar, *r.*
 weigh, pesar, *r.*
 weave, tejer, *r.*
 weed out, escardar, *r.*
 wet, mojar, *r.*
 wheedle, lagotear, *r.*
 whip, azotar, *r.*
 widen, ensanchar, *r.*
 win (sympathy, esteem, etc.), captar, *r.* granjear, *r.*
 winter, invernar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 wish anxiously, ansiar, *r.*
 withdraw oneself, sustraerse, *irr.*—43, page 382
 wither, marchitarse, *r.*
 witness, presenciar, *r.*
 woo, cortejar, *r.*; requebrar, *irr.*—1, page 367
 work, funcionar, *r.*
 wound, herir, *irr.*—18, page 371
 worry, preocuparse, *r.*; angustiar, *r.*
 wrap, envolver, *irr.*—9, page 368
 wring, retorcer, *irr.*—7, page 368
 wrinkle, arrugar, *r.*
 write, escribir, *irr.*—57, page 387; . . . biographies, biografiar, *r.*; . . . in shorthand, estenografiar, *r.*
 wrong, agraviar, *r.*

Y

yawn, bostezar, *r.*
 yield, ceder, *r.*; cejar, *r.*; . . . a rent or income, rentar, *r.*
 yoke, uncir, *r.*

INDEXES OF ALL THE WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS WHICH OCCUR IN THE LESSONS

SPANISH-ENGLISH

This list does not include the words or expressions used in the "Grammar." Numbers indicate lesson in which words occur.

A

- a, to, at—4
a **ciencia cierta**, with certainty (**saber a ciencia cierta**)—29
a **crédito**, on credit—19
a **eso de**, at about—17
a **gritos**, at the top of one's voice (**grito**, shout, howl)—36
a **juzgar por**, judging by—38
a **la perfección**, perfectly, to perfection—20
a **menudo**, often—19
a **mi juicio**, according to my judgment (lit. to my judgment)—30
a **mi vez**, in my turn—34
a **pesar de eso**, in spite of that—28
a **pie**, on foot, afoot—23
a **veces**, at times—30
abanico, fan—10
abeja, bee—27
abiertos, opened—28
abogado, lawyer—21
aborto de la naturaleza, freak of nature—40
abrazo, embrace (noun)—29
abrigo de pieles, fur coat—10
abril, *m.*, April—12
abrir, *irr.*, to open—18
abrochador, *m.*, button hook—11
absolutamente, absolutely—12
absoluto, absolute—12
abuelo, grandfather, (**abuela**, *f.*)—13
abuelos, grandparents, grandfathers—13
aburrirse, to be (or get) bored—20
acabar, to end, to finish—28
acabar de, to have just—28
aceite, *m.*, oil—8
aceituna, olive (also **oliva**)—7
acera, sidewalk—23
acerca de, about—29
acercarse, to approach—38
acompañar, to accompany—38
acontecimiento, event, happening (**memorable acontecimiento**)—33
acordeón, *m.*, accordion—27
acostarse, *irr.*, to go to bed, to lie down—36
acróbata, *m. f.*, acrobat—40
actor, *m.*, actor (**actriz**, actress)—30
actor cómico, comedian, (lit. comic actor)—30
actriz trágica, tragédienne (lit. tragic actress)—30
actuar, to play (in theatres); to act—30
adelantado, advanced—28
adelantar, to run fast; to gain time; to improve; to progress—14
además, besides—17
adiós, *m.*, good-bye, farewell—9
adiós para siempre, good-bye forever, (lit. good-bye for always)—9
administración general de correos, *f.*, main post-office—36
admiración, *f.*, admiration—30
admirador, *m.*, admirer—22
admirados, admired—22
adoquín, *m.*, paving stone—28
aeroplano, aeroplane—10
afeitar, to shave—27
afición, *f.*, fondness—27
África, Africa—18
agosto, August—12
agradable, agreeable, pleasant—11
agradecimiento, gratefulness, gratitude—38
agua, water—4
agua de manantial, spring water—7
agua mineral, mineral water—7
águila, eagle—34
aguja, needle—10
ahijada, goddaughter—25
ahora, now—6
aires populares, popular airs, (**aire**, *m.*, air)—20
ajo, garlic—7
ajuar de novia, *m.*, trousseau—33
al, to the, at the—12
al amanecer, at dawn—26
al andar, while going, on going or walking—39

- al anochecer, at nightfall—26
 al contado, for cash—19
 al cuidado de, under the care of (lit. to the care of)—24
 al sentirse mordido, upon feeling himself bitten—38
 ala, wing, brim of a hat—39
 alargar, to stretch out, to lengthen—36
 alarma, alarm (noun)—36
 alarmar, to alarm—24
 albañil, *m.*, mason, bricklayer—23
 albaricoque, *m.*, apricot—7
 albóndiga, meat ball—8
 alegrarse, to gladden, to rejoice—29
 alegre, gay, lighthearted, cheerful—21
 alegría, joy—18
 alemán, *m.*, German (for both language and nationality)—22
 Alemania, Germany—19
 alfabeto, alphabet—3
 alfiler, *m.*, pin—10
 alfiler de corbata, *m.*, scarfpin—40
 alfombra, carpet—23
 álgebra, algebra—40
 algo, something—6
 algodón, *m.*, cotton—10
 alguien, someone, somebody, anybody—14
 alguna, some (plural algunas)—5
 alguna vez, sometimes (plural algunas veces)—5
 alimento, food—24
 aliviado, relieved—39
 alma, (ser un alma de Dios) soul—30
 almacenar, to store—18
 almanaque, *m.*, almanac—35
 almeja, clam—6
 almendra, almond—7
 almohada, pillow—26
 almohadón, *m.*, cushion—26
 almorzar, *irr.*, to breakfast—17
 almuerzo, breakfast—17
 alondra, lark—26
 alrededores, *m.*, surroundings, environs. (alrededor, around)—23
 alta mar, high sea—39
 alto, tall, high—14
 alumno, pupil, student—28
 allá, there (no ve más allá de sus narices)—28
 allí, there—26
 amable, amiable—13
 amanecer, *m.*, dawn (al amanecer)—26
 amante, loving, lover (noun)—29
 amapola, poppy—20
 amar, to love—33
 amargamente, bitterly, (tan amargamente)—38
 amargo, bitter—27
 amargura, bitterness, sorrow—25
 amarillo, yellow—21
 amarse, to love oneself; to love each other or one another—33
 amarse con delirio, to be desperately in love with each other (lit. to love each other with delirium)—33
 amenazando, threatening—38
 América, America—3
 América del Sur, South America (also Sud América)—14
 americano, American—22
 amigo, friend, (*amiga, f.*)—13
 amor, *m.*, love—21
 amor con amor se paga, love repays (or begets) love (lit. love with love is paid)—32
 amueblar, to furnish—23
 anciana respetable, respectable old lady—30
 ancha, wide—14
 andar, to walk, to go—14
 andén de la estación, *m.*, platform of the railroad station—38
 ángel, *m.*, angel—29
 anguila, eel—9
 angustia, anguish, (dando ayes de angustia)—38
 anillo de compromiso, engagement ring—33
 animal, *m.*, animal—34
 anoche, last night—20
 anochecer, to grow dark (al anochecer)—26
 ante un notario público, before a notary public—37
 anteayer, the day before yesterday—12
 antes, before—5
 antes de, before—5
 antigüedad, *f.*, olden times—30
 antiguo, old, ancient—20
 anunciar, to advertise, to announce—35
 anuncio, advertisement, sign, announcement (aviso in Argentina)—35
 año, year—12
 año bisiesto, leap year—15
 apagar, to put out—36
 apariencia, appearance—35
 apenas, scarcely, hardly—27
 apetito, appetite—8
 apetito voraz, ravenous or voracious appetite—31
 apio, celery—6
 aplaudir, to applaud—30
 aplicación, *f.*, scholarship, industriousness, application—40
 aprender, to learn—4
 aprender de memoria, to learn by heart (lit. to learn of memory)—33
 aprobar, *irr.*, to approve—40

- aprobar la asignatura**, to pass in the subject—40
aproximadamente, approximately, nearly—31
aquellos, those—26
aquí, here—32
arándano, cranberry, (pavo con salsa de arándano)—8
araña, spider—34
arañar, to scratch—31
arañazo, scratch—32
árbol, *m.*, tree—18
árbol frutal, fruit tree—26
arco iris, *m.*, rainbow—35
arenque en escabeche *m.*, pickled herring—8
Argentina, Argentina—3
argentino, Argentinian—22
aristocrática, aristocratic—33
aritmética, arithmetic—40
armónica, harmonica, (also *harmónica*)—27
arquitecto, architect—21
arquitectura, architecture—21
arte, *m.*, art (arte is feminine in the plural) (*verdadera obra de arte*)—35
arteria, artery—16
artículo, article—18
artículos de tocador, toilet articles—19
artística, artistic—20
arreglar, to arrange; to settle; to adjust—39
arreglar el equipaje, to get the baggage ready (lit. to arrange the baggage)—39
arreglarse, to manage, to arrange oneself—35
arriba, above, upstairs, over, up—27
arroz, *m.*, rice—7
arroz con leche, *m.*, rice pudding—8
asada, baked, roasted (*patata asada*)—5
ascensor, *m.*, elevator—35
asearse, to clean oneself, to make one's toilet—26
asegurar, to assure; to insure—34
así, thus, so, in this way—11
así, así, so, so—20
así es la vida, such is life (lit. so is the life)—13
Asia, Asia—18
asiento, seat—38
asignada, assigned—19
asignatura, subject (course of study)—40
asomarse, to begin to appear—38
asomarse a la ventanilla, to look out of the window—38
aspecto, aspect—30
aspiración, *f.*, aspiration—31
asustarse, to be frightened—38
atados, tied, fastened—28
ataque cerebral, *m.*, stroke of apoplexy (lit. cerebral attack)—37
atrás, backwards, behind (*echarse hacia atrás*)—38
atrasar, to run slow, to lose time, to go backwards—14
atún, *m.*, tunny (or tuna) fish—8
aumento, increase (*vidrio de aumento*)—40
aunque, though, even though—34
Australia, Australia—19
australiano, Australian—22
automóvil, *m.*, automobile—23
auxilio, aid, help, assistance (*corre en auxilio de*)—38
avena, oats—35
avenida, avenue—23
avestruz, *m.*, ostrich—34
¡ay, hija mía!, woe is me, my daughter!—39
ayer, yesterday—12
ayes de angustia, woes of anguish (*dando ayes de angustia*)—38
ayuda de cámara, valet—17
azúcar, *m., f.*, sugar—8
azúcar granulado o en terrones, granulated or lump sugar—8
azucarera, sugar bowl—8
azucena, white lily—20
azul, blue—21

B

- bacalao**, codfish—7
bahía, bay—23
bailar, to dance—20
bailarina, dancer (female), **bailarín**, *masc.*—30
bajar, to come (or go) down; to come (or go) downstairs; to descend—36
bajo, short, low—14
bajo los ojos, under (or below) the eyes—32
bajo profundo, deep bass—30
ballena, whale—39
banana, banana (also *plátano*)—6
banco, bank, bench—13
banda municipal, municipal band—20
bandada de gaviotas, flock of seagulls—39
bandido, bandit—40
bandolín, *m.*, mandolin—20
banjo, banjo—20
banquero, banker—21
baño, bath (*cuarto de baño*)—18
barba *chin*, beard—16
barbería, barber shop (also *peluquería* which means tonsorial parlor)—27

- barbero**, barber (also **peluquero**)—27
barítono, barytone—30
barómetro, barometer—40
barrer, to sweep—25
bastante, enough—4
bastante bien, fairly well—4
bastante grande, fairly large—31
bastante largas, fairly long—33
bastón, *m.*, walking stick, cane—10
bata, dressing gown, bath robe—36
batalla, battle—40
batata, sweet-potato—8
batidor de huevos, egg beater—23
baúl, *m.*, trunk (**vestir con lo mejor del baúl**)—34
bebé, *m.*, baby (also **nene**)—38
beber, to drink—4
bebida, beverage—6
becerro, calfskin—14
beldad, *f.*, beauty—33
belga, Belgian—22
Bélgica, Belgium—19
bella, beautiful—25
belleza, beauty—30
berenjena, eggplant—8
beso, kiss—29
betún, *m.*, shoe-polish—11
biblioteca, library—23
bicicleta, bicycle—32
bien, well—3
bigote, *m.*, mustache—24
billete, *m.*, ticket—10
billete de ferrocarril, railroad ticket—10
biombo, screen (also **mampara**)—23
bisabuelo, great-grandfather—13
bistec, *m.*, beefsteak (also **biftec**)—5
bizca, cross-eyed, squint-eyed—31
bizcocho, biscuit, lady finger—38
biznieto, great-grandson—13
blanca, white—10
blusa, blouse, waist—10
boca del estómago, pit of the stomach—32
boda, wedding—33
bodega, cellar, hold of a ship (in Cuba, grocery store)—18
bofetada, slap—32
Bolivia, Bolivia—13
boliviano, Bolivian—22
bolsa de mano, hand bag—11
bolsillo, pocket—10
bomba de incendio, fire-engine—36
bombero, fireman—36
bombo y platillos, bassdrum and cymbals—20
bombón, *m.*, bonbon—7
bondad, *f.*, kindness—25
bonita, pretty—11
bordar, to embroider—25
borla de empolvase, powder puff—25
borrador, eraser, rough draft of a letter—28
bosque, *m.*, forest, woods, grove—27
bota, high shoe, boot (**botín** in many places of South America)—10
botella, bottle—6
botellita de extracto, small bottle of extract—25
botón, *m.*, button—10
brasileño, Brazilian—22
brazalete, *m.*, bracelet—33
brazo, arm—16
brisa marina, sea breeze—33
buenas noches, good evening or good night (lit. good evenings or nights)—9
buenas tardes, good afternoon (lit. good afternoons)—9
bueno, good—6
Buenos Aires, Buenos Aires—3
buenos días, good morning (lit. good days)—9
bufanda, muffler—11
buque, *m.*, ship—39
burro, donkey, a very stupid person—31
buscar, to look for, to seek—32
buscar camorra, to look for trouble—32

C

- caballero**, gentleman, Sir—11
caballo, horse—20
cabeza, head—16
cabezazo, knock (or blow) with the head—32
cabra, she-goat—34
cabritilla, kidskin—14
cabrito, kid (**pierna de cabrito**)—7
cacahuete, *m.*, peanut, (**cacahuete** in Mexico; **maní** in almost all Spanish America)—6
cacao, cocoa—9
cacerola, stewpan, saucepan—23
cada, each, every—15
cadena de reloj, watch chain—37
cadera, hip—16
caer, *irr.*, to fall—35
café, *m.*, coffee—4
café con leche, coffee with milk—5
cafetera, coffeepot—23
caja, box—10
cajero, cashier—31
calabaza, pumpkin—7
calamidad, *f.*, calamity—14
calcetines, *m.*, socks (**medias cortas** in several places of South America)—9
caldo de gallina, chicken broth, (lit. (broth of hen))—11
calendario, calendar—35
calentar, *irr.*, to heat—26

- calidad**, *f.*, quality—37
caliente, hot, warm—19
calma, calmness, composure, calm—38
calvo, bald—31
calzador, *m.*, shoehorn—11
calle, *f.*, street—18
cama, bed—26
camarero, steward, waiter, (*camarera*, chambermaid, waitress)—17
camarón, *m.*, shrimp—6
camarote, *m.*, stateroom—39
camello, camel—32
camino, way, road—25
camisa, shirt—9
camisería, haberdashery, shirt store—27
camiseta, undershirt—9
camorrista, *m., f.*, quarrelsome, bully (both noun and adj.)—32
campana, bell—36
campo, country, field—26
Canadá, *m.*, Canada—19
canadiense, *m.*, Canadian—22
canapé, *m.*, couch (also *diván*)—23
canario, canary bird—32
canción, *f.*, song (also *canto*)—18
canela, cinnamon color (as a noun it is cinnamon)—21
cangrejo, crab—7
cansada, tired—20
cantante, *m., f.*, singer—30
cantar, to sing—18
canto del gallo, rooster's crow (lit. song of the rooster)—26
capital, *f.*, capital (city)—3
capítulo, chapter—30
cara, face (expensive as adj.)—16
carácter, *m.*, character—30
¡caramba!, the deuce!, by Jove!—27
caramelo, caramel—7
carbón, *m.*, coal—23
carbonería, coal yard—23
carbonero, coal man, coal dealer—23
cardinal, cardinal (*cardinal* as a noun is a prelate of the church)—15
carey, *m.*, tortoise-shell—35
caricia, caress—29
cariñosa, affectionate—29
caritativo, charitable—32
carne, *f.*, meat—4
carnero, ram, mutton (*costillas de carnero*)—5
carnicería, meat market—7
carnicero, butcher—12
carpintero, carpenter—23
carta, letter—31
cartel, *m.*, poster, placard—35
cartera de bolsillo, wallet—35
carrera, career, course of studies—21
carrete de hilo, *m.*, spool of thread or cotton—10
casa, house, home—8
casa de campo, country home—40
casa de comercio, business house (lit. house of commerce)—23
casa de huéspedes, boarding house (lit. house of guests; also *casa de pensión*)—27
casado, married—31
casamiento, marriage, wedding—33
casarse, to get married, to marry—33
cascanueces, *m.*, nutcracker (also *rompenueces*)—8
casi, almost—8
caso, case—14
castaña, chestnut—8
catálogo, catalogue—35
cataplasma, poultice, cataplasm, a very troublesome person—24
¡cataplún!, crash!, bang!—38
catástrofe, *f.*, catastrophe, conflagration—36
catedral, *f.*, cathedral—23
catorce, fourteen—14
catre, *m.*, cot—26
causa, cause (*por esta causa*)—37
cebada, barley—35
cebolla, onion—7
ceja, eyebrow—16
célebre, celebrated, famous—22
celestial, celestial—26
celos, jealousy (in the singular it means zeal, ardor, fervor)—21
cena, supper—17
cenar, to sup—17
centavo, cent—34
centeno, rye—35
centro, center—20
cepillo de dientes, tooth-brush—19
cepillo para la ropa, clothes brush—11
cerca de, near (*cerca* also means near when used alone)—18
cerdo, pig, pork (*costillas de cerdo*)—5
cereal, *m.*, cereal—5
cerebral, cerebral (*ataque cerebral*)—37
cerebro, brain, cerebrum—16
cereza, cherry—6
certificar, to register (letters), to certify—39
cerrar, *irr.*, to close; to shut—18
cesta, basket—38
cesto para papeles, waste-basket—28
ciego, blind—31
cielo, heaven (*mi cielo*)—29
cien mil, one hundred thousand—15
ciencia, science (*a ciencia cierta*)—29
científica, scientific—21
ciento, one hundred—15
cierta, certain (*saber a ciencia cierta*)—29
ciertas ideas, certain ideas—32

- ciervo, deer—34
 cigarrillo turco, Turkish cigarette—37
 cigarro habano, Havana cigar—37
 cigüeña, stork, crane—34
 cima, summit—40
 cinco, five—9
 cincuenta, fifty—15
 cincuenta mil, fifty thousand—15
 cincuenta y dos, fifty-two—15
 cinematógrafo, moving pictures (also cine)—19
 cinta, ribbon—11
 cintura, waist line—16
 cinturón, *m.*, belt—11
 circo, circus—40
 circular, *f.*, circular (noun)—35
 ciruela, plum—6
 cisne, *m.*, swan—32
 ciudad, *f.*, city—14
 civilización moderna, *f.*, modern civilization—26
 civilizado, civilized—21
 clara, clear, bright—29
 claramente, clearly—24
 clase, *f.*, class, kind, species—6
 clavel, *m.*, carnation—20
 clavo, nail—40
 cobrador, *m.*, conductor, collector, (*mayoral* in several places of South America)—34
 cocido, boiled dinner which consists of meats and vegetables—17
 cocido, cooked (in boiling hot water) (*huevo cocido*)—5
 cocina, kitchen—18
 cocina económica, kitchen range—23
 cocinar, to cook—25
 cocinera, cook—17
 coco, coconut—7
 cocodrilo, crocodile—34
 coche, carriage, coach—18
 cochero, coachman—17
 codo, elbow (*hablar por los codos*)—27
 cojo, lame (*rengo* in Argentina and other places of South America)—31
 col, *f.*, cabbage (*repollo* in several places of South America)—7
 cola, train (of a dress), tail, glue—33
 colador, *m.*, strainer—23
 colcha, coverlet, quilt—26
 colchón, *m.*, mattress—26
 colección, *f.*, collection—25
 coleccionista, collector—22
 colegio, college—23
 coliflor, *f.*, cauliflower—4
 colocar, to place—28
 Colombia, Colombia—13
 colombiano, Colombian—22
 color, *m.*, *f.*, color—18
 colorado, red (also *rojo*)—21
 collar, *m.*, necklace—33
 coma, comma—27
 comedia, comedy—30
 comedor, *m.*, dining room—18
 comer, to eat, to dine—4
 comercial, commercial—35
 comerciante, *m.*, merchant—18
 comercio, commerce (*casa de comercio*)—23
 comestibles, *m.*, eatables—6
 cómico, comic (*actor cómico*)—30
 comida, meal, dinner—17
 comida fuerte, heavy meal—17
 comida ligera, light meal—17
 como, as, like—13
 ¿cómo está usted? how are you?—10
 como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras, as if he were being skinned alive (lit. as if they were tearing off him the skin in strips)—38
 compañía, company—20
 compartimiento, compartment (also *compartimento*)—38
 completamente, completely—32
 complicación, *f.*, complication (*habrá complicaciones*)—37
 comprar, to buy—5
 comprender, to understand—4
 compromiso, compromise, engagement, (*anillo de compromiso*)—33
 con, with—4
 con mucho gusto, with much pleasure—11
 con su permiso, with your permission—9
 conciencia, conscience—40
 concierto, concert—20
 concisión, *f.*, conciseness—33
 concurrencia, gathering—20
 condicional, conditional—34
 condiscípulo, classmate, fellow student—28
 conejo, rabbit—32
 confitería, confectionery store—7
 confitero, confectioner—12
 confusión, *f.*, confusion—38
 conjugación, *f.*, conjugation—11
 conjugar, to conjugate—11
 conjunto de perfecciones, ensemble (or whole) of perfections—25
 conmigo, with me—13
 conmover, *irr.*, to move one's feelings; to move to pity—38
 conmover el corazón, to move one's heart—38
 conocer, *irr.*, to be acquainted, to know, to become acquainted—25
 conocido, acquaintance—20
 conocimiento de embarque, bill of lading (lit. knowledge of shipment)—31

- consecuencia**, consequence—31
conseguir, *irr.*, to get, to obtain (with effort)—35
consideración, *f.* consideration—12
consistir, to consist—17
consonante, *f.*, consonant—3
constantemente, constantly—23
construir, to construct, to build—39
contabilidad, *f.*, accounting—21
contado, counted (*al contado*)—19
contar, *irr.*, to count, to tell—29
contener, *irr.*, to contain, to hold—38
contenido, contents, context—36
contestar, to answer—32
contigua, adjoining—24
continente, *m.*, continent—3
continuamente, continually—37
continuar, to continue—3
contra, against (*pegarse con la cabeza contra*)—38
contralto, *f.*, contralto (masc. when applied to boys)—30
contrario, contrary. (*lo contrario*, the contrary)—22
conversación, *f.* conversation—25
conversación amena, pleasant (or delightful), conversation—25
copiosamente, copiously, abundantly (*nevar copiosamente*)—35
coral, *m.*, coral—22
corazón, *m.*, heart—16
corbata, necktie—9
cordero, lamb (*costillas de cordero*)—5
cordón de zapatos, shoe lace—10
corneta, cornet—20
corporal, corporal (*sentido corporal*)—16
cortaplumas, *m.*, penknife, pocket-knife—35
cortar, to cut—5
cortesía, courtesy—9
cortina de encaje, lace curtain—23
corto, short—28
corre en auxilio de, runs to the help of. (*lit. in help of*)—38
correa de cuero, leather strap—28
correctamente, correctly—31
correcto, correct—3
correo, post office, mail—39
correr, to run—32
corresponsal, *m., f.*, correspondent—31
cosa, thing—7
coser, to sew—25
Costa Rica, Costa Rica—13
costado izquierdo, left side—32
costarricense, Costa Rican—22
costilla, rib, chop—16
costilla de carnero, mutton chop—5
costilla de cerdo, pork chop—5
costilla de cordero, lamb chop—5
costilla de ternera, veal chop—5
costilla de vaca, rib of beef—5
costumbre, *f.*, custom, habit—17
costurera, seamstress—27
costurero, workbasket—25
creación dramática, dramatic creation—30
crear, to create—26
crédito, credit (*a crédito*)—19
creer, to believe—22
crema, cream, cold cream, (cream is also called *nata*)—7
creyente, *m., f.*, believer, (*firme creyente*)—32
criado, servant (also *sirviente*)—17
criatura, infant, child, creature—29
crisis política, political crisis—27
cristal, *m.*, crystal (*jarro de cristal*)—8
cristalino, crystalline, crystal-like—23
cruzar, to cross—39
cuadro, picture—26
cual, which (*cuál* interrogative; plural *cuáles*)—12
cuando, when (*cuándo* interrogative)—4
cuánto, how much (*cuántos*, how many)—14
¿cuánto tiempo?, how long? (*lit. how much time*)—15
¡cuánto me alegro de verle!, how glad I am to see you! (*lit. how much I rejoice myself of to see you*)—27
cuarenta, forty—15
cuarenta mil, forty thousand—15
cuarta, fourth—4
cuarto, quarter, room—14
cuarto de baño, bathroom—18
cuatro, four—9
cuatrocientos, four hundred—15
Cuba, Cuba—13
cubano, Cuban—22
cubierta, covered (as a noun it means deck of a ship, and cover)—38
cuchara, spoon—5
cucharadilla, teaspoonful (also *cuchara-dita*)—24
cucharilla, teaspoon—8
cuchichear, to whisper—28
cuchillo, knife—5
cuello, collar, neck—10
cuento, story, tale, short story—30
cuerda, cord, rope (*dar cuerda*)—14
cuero, leather, rawhide, skin (of animals)—28
cuervo, raven, crow—34
cuidado, care—24
culebra, snake—34
cultura, culture—21
cumpleaños, *m.*, birthday—25
cumplir, to fulfil, to discharge (a duty)—35
cuna, cradle—37

cuñado, brother-in-law—13
 curar, to cure—24
 curso, course—40
 cutis, *m.*, skin—24
 cuya, whose—29

CH

chaleco, vest, waistcoat—9
 chaqueta, coat (also *americana*; *saco* in almost all Spanish America)—9
 charol, patent leather—14
 Chile, Chile—3
 chileno, Chilean—22
 chimenea, chimney—37
 China, China—19
 chino, Chinaman, Chinese—22
 chiquillo, little (or small) child—29
 chiquirritín, very, very, little one (*mi chiquirritín*)—29
 chocolate, *m.*, chocolate—5
 chófer, *m.*, chauffeur—17
 chuleta de ternera, veal cutlet—7

D

dando ayes de angustia, uttering cries of anguish (lit. giving, etc.)—38
 dar, *irr.*, to give—14
 dar a, to face (lit. to give to)—18
 dar cuerda, to wind up (lit. to give cord)—14
 dar paseos, to take walks (lit. to give walks)—24
 dar un grito agudo, to utter a sharp cry—38
 darse un apretón de manos, to shake hands (lit. to give each other a squeeze of hands)—29
 dátíl, *m.*, date (fruit)—8
 de, of—3
 de alguna manera, in some way—35
 de cuando en cuando, now and then—8
 de doce a una, between twelve and one o'clock (lit. from twelve to one)—17
 de esos, of the kind (lit. of those)—32
 de esta manera, in this way or fashion (lit. of this manner)—11
 de este modo, in this way—29
 de la más alta novedad, of the latest fashion—33
 de nuevo, again—36
 de prisa, hurriedly, in a hurry—24
 de punta ancha, broad toed, (speaking of shoes)—14
 de punta estrecha, narrow pointed (speaking of shoes)—14
 de regalo, as a gift or present—35
 de un modo muy agradable, in a very pleasant way or manner—11

de un modo nervioso, in a nervous way—36
 deber, to owe, must, ought (*deber* as a noun means duty)—28
 debido a, due to, owing to—24
 débil ataque, weak attack—38
 décima, tenth—10
 decir, *irr.*, to say, to tell—13
 dedal, *m.*, thimble—10
 dedo, finger—16
 dedo anular, ring finger—16
 dedo cordial, middle finger—16
 dedo del pie, toe—16
 dedo índice, index finger—16
 dedo meñique, little finger (also *pequeño*, small)—16
 dedo pulgar, thumb—16
 dedos de la mano, fingers of the hand—16
 dejar, to leave; to bequeath—26
 dejar de, to fail; to stop—26
 del, of the—3
 del mismo modo, in the same way—20
 delantal, *m.*, apron—10
 delante, before, ahead (*por delante*)—29
 deleite, *m.*, delight—39
 delfín, *m.*, dolphin—39
 delgado, thin, slender, slim—22
 delicado, delicate—25
 delicia, delight—20
 delicioso, delicious, delightful—29
 delirio, delirium (*amarse con delirio*)—33
 demasiado, too much—24
 dentista, *m.*, *f.*, dentist—21
 dentro de pocos días, in a few days—33
 departamento de exportación, export department—31
 dependiente, *m.*, clerk—31
 derecha, right, straight (*mano derecha*)—16
 desagradable, disagreeable—24
 desayunar, to breakfast lightly—17
 desayuno, light breakfast—17
 descanso, rest—40
 descompuesto, out of order—14
 desde, from, since—23
 desear, to desire, to wish—4
 desempeñar, to discharge (a duty); to play, to act; to redeem (pawn tickets)—30
 desempeñar un papel, to play a rôle, to act a part—30
 desengaño, disappointment—37
 desinfectante, *m.*, disinfectant—24
 desmayo, swoon, fainting fit—36
 despacio, slowly—24
 despedida, farewell—39

- despedirse**, *irr.*, to take leave, to say good-bye—38
despensa, pantry—18
despertador, *m.*, alarm clock (also **reloj despertador**)—26
despertarse, *irr.*, to awaken oneself, to wake up—26
después, after, afterwards—4
después de, after—4
después de haberme quedado dormido, after having fallen asleep—36
desternillarse, to break one's cartilage—40
desternillarse de risa, to split one's sides with laughter—40
destrucción, *f.*, destruction—36
detalle, *m.*, detail—29
diálogo, dialogue—10
diamante, *m.*, diamond—33
días, *m.*, days (**buenos días**)—9
días de la semana, days of the week—12
dibujo, drawing—40
diccionario, dictionary—29
diciembre, *m.*, December—12
dictar, to dictate—31
diecinueve, nineteen—14
dieciocho, eighteen—14
dieciséis, sixteen—14
diecisiete, seventeen—14
diente, *m.*, tooth—16
dientes de perlas, pearly teeth (lit. of pearls)—22
diez, ten—14
diez mil, ten thousand—15
diferente, different—34
difícil, difficult—28
dificultad, *f.*, difficulty—4
digestión, *f.*, digestion—24
digna, worthy—24
digo la pura verdad, I say the exact truth (lit. the pure truth)—24
diminuto, diminute, diminutive, little, small—33
Dinamarca, Denmark—19
dinamarqués, *m.*, Dane—22
dineral, *m.*, large sum of money (**vale un dineral**)—33
dinero, money—7
Dios, *m.*, God (**ser un alma de Dios**)—30
Dios mediante, God willing—34
director, *m.*, director, principal of a school—20
dirigir, to direct, to guide, to address somebody a letter, etc.—27
dirigirle la palabra, to address him (lit. to direct the word to him)—27
disco fonográfico, phonographic record—23
disgusto, trouble, shock, sorrow, disgust—37
dispénsame, excuse me, pardon me—9
distinguido, distinguished—25
disturbar, to disturb—18
divertirse, *irr.*, to amuse oneself—20
divinamente, divinely, heavenly, admirably, very well—20
doce, twelve—14
docena, dozen—40
dólar, *m.*, dollar (**duro** in Spain; **peso** in Spanish America)—33
dolor, *m.*, pain—25
domingo, Sunday—12
dominicano, Dominican—22
don, Mr. (with dignity; used only before the name of a person)—33
doncella, maid—17
donde, where (**dónde** interrogative)—3
dormir, *irr.*, to sleep—18
dormitorio, bedroom, dormitory (also **alcoba**)—18
dos, two—9
dos cientos, two hundred—15
dos puntos, colon—27
dote, *m.*, *f.*, dowry—33
drama, *m.*, drama—30
dramática, dramatic (**creación dramática**—30)
dromedario, dromedary—34
dudar, to doubt—32
dueño, owner—25
dulces, *m.*, candy, sweetmeats—6
dulzura, sweetness—30
durante, during—26
duración, *f.*, duration—15
durar, to last—15
duro, dollar—33

E

- económica**, economic, economical (**cocina económica**)—23
Ecuador, Ecuador—13
ecuatoriano, Ecuadorian—22
echar, to cast, to throw—38
echarse hacia atrás, to throw oneself backwards (lit. towards behind)—38
edad, *f.*, age—31
edificio, building, edifice—18
efectos de escritorio, stationery—23
efectuarse, to take place—33
ejecución, *f.*, execution—38
ejemplo, example—15
ejercer, to practise (a profession)—21
ejercicio, exercise—3
el, the (*masc. sing.*)—3
él, he—4
el despertar, the awakening—26
el elegido de su corazón, the chosen one of (his or) her heart—33
el mundo comedia es, the world is a farce (lit. comedy)—30

- el otro, the other one—31
 el que, the one who, he who (*la que*, the one who, she who)—21
 el uno tiene veinticuatro años, one is twenty-four years old (lit. the one has twenty-four years)—31
 elegancia, elegance—33
 elegante, elegant, stylish—10
 elegantísimo, most elegant—33
 elefante, *m.*, elephant—29
 elegido, chosen (*el elegido de su corazón*)—33
 ella, she—4
 ellos, they—4
 embarcarse, to go on board, to board (ships)—39
 embudo, funnel—23
 eminente, eminent—30
 emparedado, sandwich (*sandwich* is generally used instead of *emparedado*)—17
 empedernido, hardened, stony (*fumador empedernido*)—37
 empezar, *irr.*, to begin—26
 empleado, employee—31
 emplear, to use, to employ—9
 en, in, at, on, into—3
 en cambio, on the other hand—22
 en fin, in short—27
 en la misma forma que antes, in the same form (or way) as before—14
 en la posición que debe, in the position that he ought to—28
 en lontananza, in the distance—39
 en lugar de, instead of, in place of—38
 en mí, within me, in me—26
 en punto, sharp, precisely (lit. in point)—14
 en seguida, immediately—31
 en seguida de, immediately after—19
 en seguida que, immediately after—26
 en todas las partes, everywhere (lit. in all the parts or places)—10
 en un santiamén, in the twinkling of an eye (lit. in a very short moment)—36
 en unas cuantas horas, in a few hours—40
 en vez de, instead of—28
 encaje, *m.*, lace (*cortina de encaje*)—23
 encantar, to charm, to enrapture—29
 encender, *irr.*, to light—26
 encía, gum (of the mouth)—16
 enciclopedia, encyclopedia—37
 encima de, on, upon—26
 encontrar, *irr.*, to find; to meet; to encounter—25
 encurtido, pickle—6
 enero, January—12
 énfasis, *m.*, emphasis—24
 enfermera, nurse—24
 enfermo, ill, sick—22
 enloquecido, maddened—38
 enormes llamas, huge flames—36
 ensalada, salad—8
 ensordecedor, deafening—38
 ensueño, dream—39
 enterarse, to note, to take notice, to become aware—36
 entero, entire, whole (*espejo de cuerpo entero*)—23
 entonces, then, afterwards—24
 entre, between—17
 entregar, to deliver, to hand over—36
 entremés, *m.*, relish, appetizer—17
 entusiasmo, enthusiasm—31
 enviar, to send—35
 envidia, envy—21
 época de los exámenes, examination time (lit. epoch, etc.)—40
 equipaje, *m.*, baggage—39
 equivalente, equivalent—12
 equivocación, *f.*, mistake—32
 error, *m.*, error—32
 es, is—3
 es increíble, it is incredible—35
 esa, that—15
 escabeche, pickled (*arenque en escabeche*)—8
 escalera, ladder, staircase—36
 escarbadientes, *m.*, toothpick (also *mondadientes*)—8
 escoba, broom—23
 escobilla, whisk-broom—11
 escocés, *m.*, Scotch—22
 Escocia, Scotland—19
 escribir, *irr.*, to write—21
 escribir a máquina, to typewrite—31
 escribir taquigráficamente, to write in shorthand—31
 escritor de nota, noted writer (*escritora, f.*)—30
 escritorio, writing desk, office—28
 escuchar, to listen—11
 escudilla, bowl—5
 escuela, school—21
 escultor, *m.*, sculptor (*escultora, f.*)—30
 esencial, essential—24
 eso, (neuter) that (*a pesar de eso*)—28
 esos, those (*de esos*)—32
 espacio, space—18
 espaciosa, spacious, high (speaking of foreheads)—24
 espalda, back—16
 España, Spain—3
 español, *m.* Spanish (for both language and nationality)—3
 espárrago, asparagus—6
 especialmente, especially—13

espectáculo, show, pageant, spectacle—40
espejo de cuerpo entero, full-length mirror—23
espejo redondo, round looking-glass—35
esperanza, hope—21
esperar, to expect, to wait, to hope—37
espina, thorn, fish-bone (**espina dorsal**)—28
espina dorsal, spinal chord, backbone—28
espinaca, spinach—7
esponja, sponge—11
esposo, husband (**esposa**, *f.*)—13
espuma, foam—39
esquina, edge, corner—38
esta, this—11
establecimiento, establishment—35
establo, stable (also **caballeriza** and **cuadra**)—23
estación, *f.* season, station—15
estación del ferrocarril, railroad station (**estación**, *f.*, **ferrocarril**, *m.*)—10
estaciones del año, seasons of the year—15
Estados Unidos, United States—3
estando en su sano juicio, being of sound mind (lit. being in his sane judgment)—37
estar, *irr.*, to be—11
estar a la cuarta pregunta, to be penniless (lit. to be at the fourth question)—13
estar a la mesa, to be at the table—11
estar de buen humor, to be in good humor (lit. to be of good humor)—24
estar de pie, to be standing—28
estar encantada, to be charmed, to be enraptured—29
estar resfriado, to have a cold (lit. to be cooled or chilled)—24
estar sentado, to be seated—28
estas, *f.*, these—12
estatua de mármol, marble statue—28
este, *m.*, this, the latter—12
este, (noun) *m.*, east (**norte**, **sur**, **este**, **y oeste**)—23
estirar, to stretch—28
esto salta a la vista, this is self-evident (lit. this jumps to the sight)—24
estómago, stomach—16
estornudar, to sneeze—24
estos, these—37
estrecha, narrow—14
estrenar, to wear for the first time—27
estuche de terciopelo, *m.*, velvet case—25
estudiante, *m.*, *f.*, student—21
estudiar, to study—4
estudio, study (noun)—21

etcétera, etc., and so forth—14
Europa, Europe—18
evitar, to avoid, to evade—35
examen, examination (**época de los exámenes**)—40
examen de fin de curso, final examination (lit. examination of end of course)—40
excelente, excellent—31
excepción, *f.*, exception—17
excepto, except—24
exigir, to demand, to exact, to require—37
existir, to exist—4
éxito, success—21
expediente, red tape—37
experimento, experiment, test—21
explosión formidable, *f.*, terrific explosion—36
exportación, *f.*, exportation, export (**departamento de exportación**)—31
exportador, *m.*, exporter—18
exportar, to export—18
expresar, to express (by means of speech)—32
expresión de cortesía, *f.*, expression of courtesy—9
expresivo, expressive—22
expreso, express (also **expres**)—39
extracto, extract (**botellita de extracto**)—25
extranjero, foreigner, alien, abroad—20
extraordinario, extraordinary (**mérito extraordinario**)—25

F

fábrica, factory—31
fabricación, *f.*, make, construction—35
fabricante, *m.*, manufacturer—31
facción, *f.*, feature (of the face)—24
fácil, easy—4
facilidad, *f.*, ease, facility—4
facilidad pasmosa, wonderful ease—33
facilitar, to facilitate, to make easy—26
fácilmente, easily—27
factura, invoice (**hacer las facturas**)—31
falda, skirt—10
fallo del jurado, jury's decision—37
familia, family—17
famosa, famous—20
farmacéutico, pharmacist, druggist (also **boticario**)—21
farmacia, drug store, pharmacy (also **botica**)—24
fatal momento, fatal moment—38
favor, *m.*, favor—3
favorito, favorite, pet—34
febrero, February—12
felicidad, *f.*, happiness—32

felicitaciones, *f.*, congratulations—40
 feliz, happy—19
 ferviente, fervent (*hacer votos fervientes*)—32
 ferretería, hardware store—23
 ferrocarril, *m.*, railroad (*estación del ferrocarril*)—10
 fideos, vermicelli (a kind of very thin spaghetti)—9
 fiel, faithful—24
 figurar, to figure—30
 Filipinas, Philippines—13
 filipino, Filipino—22
 filósofo, philosopher—30
 filtro, filter—37
 fin, *m.*, end (*en fin*)—27
 fina, refined, fine, polished—25
 firme creyente, firm believer (*creyente, f., m.*)—32
 física, physical, (physics as a noun)—25
 flan, *m.*, custard (also *natilla*)—8
 flauta, flute—20
 flor, *f.*, flower—18
 flor silvestre, wild flower—26
 florero, flower vase—23
 folleto, pamphlet, booklet—35
 fondo, bottom, depth, background—39
 fonógrafo, talking machine, phonograph—23
 forma, form—14
 formidable, formidable, terrific (*explosión formidable*)—36
 forro, cover (of a book), lining of a dress, (*ni por el forro*)—40
 fosa nasal, nostril—16
 fósforo, match (also *cerilla*)—11
 fosforescente, phosphorescent (*luces fosforescentes*)—39
 fotografía, photograph, picture, photography—22
 frac, *m.*, dress coat—10
 francés, *m.*, French (for both language and nationality)—22
 Francia, France—3
 frasco, flask—39
 frazada, blanket—26
 fregar, *irr.*, to scrub, to scour, to rub—25
 fregar los platos, to wash the dishes—25
 frente, *f.*, forehead—24
 fresa, strawberry (*frutilla* in Argentina)—7
 fresco, fresh—7
 fría, cold—19
 fricción, *f.*, friction—37
 frijoles, *m.*, beans (in Mexico, Cuba, and other countries); in Argentina, *porotos*; in Spain, *judías* and *alubias*
 frío, cold (noun), (*tener frío, hace frío*)—19
 fritos, fried (*huevos fritos*)—5

fruta, fruit—5
 frutería, fruit store—7
 frutero, fruit dealer—12
 fuego, fire (*tocar a fuego*)—36
 fuente, *f.*, fountain—18
 fuera, outside, out—26
 fuerte, strong—24
 Fulano de Tal, So and So (*Mr.*)—33
 fumador empedernido, *m.*, inveterate smoker—37
 fumar, to smoke—37
 funda, case, covering—38
 fusil, *m.*, gun—37
 futuro (*indicativo*), future (*indicativo*)—6
 futuro de subjuntivo, future subjunctive—39
 futuro perfecto (*indicativo*), future perfect (*indicativo*)—29
 futuro perfecto de subjuntivo, future perfect subjunctive—39

G

galleta, biscuit, cracker—8
 gallina, hen (*caldo de gallina*)—11
 gallo, rooster (*canto del gallo*)—26
 ganar, to earn, to win—30
 ganas, desires, desire (*tener ganas de*)—18
 ganso, goose—32
 garage, *m.*, garage—23
 garganta, throat—16
 gárgara, gargle—24
 gato, cat—20
 gaviota, sea-gull (*bandada de gaviotas*)—39
 gemelos de teatro, opera glasses (*gemelos*, cuff-buttons, twins)—25
 generalmente, generally—5
 generoso, generous—17
 gente, *f.*, people—17
 geografía, geography—40
 geometría, geometry—40
 gimnasia, gymnastics—40
 gimnasio, gymnasium—24
 girafa, giraffe—34
 goce intenso, *m.*, intense joy—26
 golondrina, swallow—33
 golpe, *m.*, blow—32
 goma de borrar, eraser (for pencil or ink)—35
 gorra, cap—10
 gorrión, *m.*, sparrow—32
 gota, drop (of a liquid), gout—38
 gozar, to enjoy—24
 grabadas, engraved—40
 gracias, *f.*, thank you, thanks (also *graces*)—10 and 11
 graciosa, graceful, cunning—25

grande, large, grand—3
granulado, granulated (*azúcar granulado o en terrones*)—8
grato recuerdo, pleasant recollection or memory—39
Grecia, Greece—19
griego, Greek (for both language and nationality)—22
grillo, cricket—33
gris, gray—21
gritar, to shout, to scream—29
grito, shout, howl, cry, scream (*dar un grito agudo*)—38
grosella, currant—8
gruesa, stout, fat, corpulent, thick—14
guapo, good-looking, bold, courageous—31
grupo, group—28
guante, *m.*, glove—9
Guatemala, Guatemala—13
guatemalteco, Guatemalan—22
guiñar, to wink—28
guisante, *m.*, pea—7
guitarra, guitar—20
gusto, taste (sense of), pleasure—16

H

había, there was, there were—26
habitación, *f.*, room, habitation—18
hablador, talkative, talker—27
hablar, to speak—4
hablar por los codos, to talk through one's hat (lit. to talk through the elbows)—27
habrá complicaciones, there will be complications—37
hace buen tiempo, it is good weather—19
hace calor, it is warm—19
hace dos años, two years ago—29
hace frío, it is cold—19
hace mal tiempo, it is bad weather—19
hace sol, it is sunny—19
hace un día muy bueno, it is a very fine day—19
hace viento, it is windy—19
hace ya varios meses, since several months ago (lit. makes already several months)—33
hacer, *irr.*, to do, to make—16
hacer ejercicio, to take exercise (lit. to make exercise)—24
hacer las camas, to make the beds—25
hacer las facturas, to make out the invoices—31
hacer un viaje, to take a trip (lit. to make a trip)—27
hacer votos fervientes, to sincerely hope (lit. to make fervent vows)—32

hacerse afeitarse, to get a shave (lit. to make oneself shave)—27
hacerse comprender, to make oneself understood—33
hacerse cortar el pelo, to get a hair cut (lit. to make oneself cut the hair)—27
hacia, towards (*echarse hacia atrás*)—38
haciendo añicos, breaking into a thousand pieces (lit. making bits)—38
haciendo el vago, loafing—40
hágame, do me—3
hágame usted el favor de, do me the favor of—11
hambre, *f.*, hunger (*tener hambre*)—18
harina, flour—9
harmonía, harmony (also *armonía*)—26
harpa, harp (also *arpa*)—20
hasta, until, till—9
hasta la semana próxima, until next week—9
hasta luego, good-bye for a while, bye-bye, so long—9
hasta mañana, until to-morrow—9
hasta pasado mañana, until the day after to-morrow—9
hay, there is, there are—8
helado, ice cream (also *mantecado* and *sorbete*)—6
heredar, to inherit—37
heredero, heir—37
hermano, brother (*hermana*, *f.*)—13
hermoso, beautiful—18
heroísmo, heroism—36
hielo, ice—35
hierba, grass—18
hierro, iron (*fierro* in Argentina)—26
hígado, liver—16
higiene personal, personal hygiene—26
higo, fig—7
hijo, son (*hija*, *f.*)—13
hijo mayor, oldest (or eldest) son—27
hijo menor, youngest son—27
himno, hymn—39
hipopótamo, hippopotamus—34
hirviendo, boiling hot—19
hispanoamericano, Spanish-American—33
historia, history—40
histórico, historical—39
¡hola!, hello!—27
Holanda, Holland—19
holandés, *m.*, Hollander—22
hombre, man—17
hombro, shoulder—16
honda impresión, *f.*, deep impression—32
Honduras, Honduras—13
hondureño, Honduran—22
hongo, mushroom (also *seta*)—11

honradez, *f.*, honesty—17
honrado, honest—37
hora, hour—15
horizonte, *m.*, horizon—38
hormiga, ant—27
horquilla, hair-pin—11
horrible, horrible—24
horriblemente, horribly—20
hospital, *m.*, hospital—9
hotel, *m.*, hotel—9
hoy, to-day—6
huelga, strike—27
huerta, vegetable garden (**huerto**, orchard)—26
hueso, bone—16
huésped, guest (**casa de huéspedes**)—27
huevo, egg—4
huevo cocido, hard-boiled egg—5
huevo frito, fried egg (also **huevo estrellado**)—5
huevo pasado por agua, soft-boiled egg (lit. passed through water)—5
huevo revuelto, scrambled egg—5
humano, human—16
humo, smoke—36
humor, *m.* humor—24

I

idea, idea—3
ideal, *adj.*, ideal—25
ideales, *m.*, ideals—21
idioma, *m.*, language—4
iglesia, church—23
iluminar, to illuminate, to light—39
imagen, *f.*, image—26
imaginación, *f.*, imagination—13
imaginarse, to imagine—32
imitar, to imitate—28
imperativo, imperative—31
imperfecto (indicativo), imperfect (indicative)—26
imperfecto de subjuntivo, imperfect subjunctive—34
impermeable, raincoat—11
importador, *m.*, importer—18
importante, important—4
importantísima, most important—21
importar, to import—18
impresión, *f.*, impression (**honda impresión**)—32
inapetente, without appetite—38
incendio, fire, conflagration—36
incomparable, incomparable—26
inconscientemente, unconsciously—28
incorrecto, incorrect—3
independencia, independence—22
indigestión, *f.*, indigestion—24
indisposición, *f.*, indisposition, slight disorder in health—24

indispuesto, indisposed—24
indudablemente, undoubtedly—32
infinidad, *f.*, endless number, (lit. infinity)—16
infinito, infinite, infinitely—26
ingeniería, engineering—21
ingeniero, engineer—21
Inglaterra, England—3
inglés, *m.*, English (for both language and nationality)—12
iniciales, *f.*, initials—40
inmediatamente, immediately—11
inmensa, immense (**popularidad inmensa**)—30
inmensamente, immensely—27
inocente, innocent—28
insecto, insect—27
inseparable, inseparable—31
instante, *m.*, instant—39
institución docente, institution of learning—21
instrumento, instrument—20
intelectual, intellectual—40
inteligencia, intelligence—25
inteligente, intelligent—21
intención, *f.*, intention—23
intensamente, intensely—21
intenso, intense (**goce intenso**)—26
interés, *m.*, interest—34
interior, *m.*, interior, inside—27
interminable, endless—37
intérprete, *m., f.*, interpreter—31
interrumpir, to interrupt—26
intestino, intestine—16
íntimo, intimate, private (when referring to life)—21
invariablemente, invariably—17
investigación, *f.*, research work, investigation—21
invierno, winter—15
invitación, *f.*, invitation—33
ir, *irr.*, to go—12
Irlanda, Ireland—19
irlandés, *m.*, Irish, Irishman—22
Italia, Italy—19
italiano, Italian (for both language and nationality)—22
izquierda, left (**mano izquierda**)—16

J

jabalí, *m.*, wild boar—34
jabón, *m.*, soap—10
jalea, jelly—8
jamón, *m.*, ham—5
Japón, *m.*, Japan—19
japonés, *m.*, Japanese (for both language and nationality)—22
jardín, *m.*, garden—20
jardín zoológico, zoölogical garden—32

jardinero, gardener—17
jarro de cristal, crystal or glass pitcher—8
jaula, cage—38
jinete maravilloso, wonderful rider—40
jorobado, hunchback (also **corcovado**)—31
joven, *m., f.*, young man, young woman, young lady (**joven**, *adj.*, young—25)
joya, jewel, gem—25
joya literaria, literary gem—30
joyería, jewelry store—25
jueves, *m.*, Thursday—12
juez, *m.*, judge (**sentencia del juez**)—37
jugar, *irr.*, to play—32
jugoso, juicy—26
juguete, *m.*, toy—29
juicio, judgment (a **mi juicio**)—30
julio, July—12
junio, June—12
junto a, close to—28
jurado, jury (**fallo del jurado**)—37
justicia, justice—37
juzgado municipal, municipal court—37

L

la, the (*fem. sing.*)—3
la caridad bien ordenada empieza por uno mismo, charity begins at home (*lit. charity well ordered begins by oneself*)—30
la menor duda, the least doubt—29
la misma, the same—15
labio, lip—16
laboratorio, laboratory—21
ladrar, to bark—31
lago, lake—23
lágrima, tear—25
lámpara, lamp—26
lana, wool—26
langosta, lobster—6
lápiz, *m.*, pencil—10
larga, long—27
las, the (*fem. plur.*)—3
lata, can (*noun*); (also a bothersome conversation)—7
lavabo, washstand—23
lavandera, laundress, washerwoman—17
lavandería, laundry—17
lavar, to wash—17
lavarse, to wash oneself—19
lazo, bow, loop, trap—33
le, to him, to her, to you, him, you, etc.—14
lección, *f.*, lesson—3
leche, *f.*, milk—4
leche condensada, condensed milk—6
lechería, dairy, creamery—7
lechero, milkman—12

lechuga, lettuce—6
lechuza, owl—34
leer, to read (**leyendo**, reading)—21
legumbres, *f.*, vegetables (also **verduras**)—5
lejana, remote, distant, far away (**tierra lejana**)—39
lengua, tongue—16
león, *m.*, lion—34
letra, letter—3
letra gorda, large letter, heavy type (of letters), (*lit. fat letter*)—35
levantarse, to get up—19
leve, slight, light (of weight)—27
levita, frock coat—10
ley, *f.*, law—37
leyes, *f.*, laws, law—21
libertad, *f.*, liberty—22
librería, bookstore—23
libro, book—11
libro de cocina, cook book—25
ligas, *f.*, garters—11
ligera, light, swift—17
Lima, Lima—3
limón, *m.*, lemon—7
limonada, lemonade—4
limpia, clean, cleanly—19
limpiar, to clean—19
linda, pretty—29
lista de los platos, bill of fare (*lit. list of the dishes*; also **lista de la comida**)—8
listo, smart, clever, ready—22
litera, berth—39
literaria, literary (**joya literaria**)—30
lo, the (*neuter*), definite article; as a pronoun it is *it, him, you*, etc.—10
lo futuro, the future—25
lo que, that which, what, that, which—8
lobo, wolf—34
loco, crazy—37
lomo de cerdo, loin of pork—7
loncha, slice—17
Londres, *m.*, London—3
lontananza, distance (**en lontananza**)—39
loro, parrot—38
los, the (*masc. plural*)—3
luces fosforescentes, phosphorescent lights—39
lucha, struggle—25
luchar, to struggle, to fight—36
luchar con las llamas, to fight the flames—36
luego, after a little while (**hasta luego**)—9
lugar, *m.*, place (*noun*)—33
lujoso, luxurious—40
luna de miel, *f.*, honeymoon (*lit. moon of honey*)—33

lunática, lunatic—37
 lunes, *m.*, Monday—12
 luz, *f.*, light—18

LL

llama, llama (animal), flame—34
 llamar, to call—29
 llamarse, to be called—17
 llave, *f.*, key—36
 llegar, to arrive—27
 lleno, full—26
 llevar, to carry, to take, to wear—28
 llevar los libros, to keep the books—31
 llorar, to cry, to weep—38
 llover, *irr.*, to rain—35
 llover a cántaros, to rain in torrents,
 bucketfuls or cats and dogs—35
 lluvia, rain—35

M

macarrones, *m.*, macaroni—8
 madera, wood—18
 madre, mother—13
 Madrid, *m.*, Madrid—3
 madrina, godmother—25
 maestro, teacher—21
 magistralmente, masterly, in a masterly
 fashion—30
 magnífico, magnificent, gorgeous—25
 maíz, *m.*, corn—35
 mal, badly (as a noun, mal is damage,
 harm, evil)—20
 maleta, valise, suitcase—39
 mamá, mother (used by children and
 grown-up persons)—29
 manantial, *m.*, spring (agua de manan-
 tial)—7
 manco, without one arm or hand, arm-
 less, handless—31
 mandíbula, jaw—16
 manguera, hose (fire hose)—36
 manguito, muff—10
 mano, *f.*, hand—16
 mano derecha, right hand—16
 mano izquierda, left hand—16
 mantel, *m.*, tablecloth—8
 mantequilla, butter (pan y mantequilla)
 —4
 manzana, apple—6
 mañana, to-morrow (*adv.*), morning
 (noun)—6
 máquina fotográfica, camera (lit. photo-
 graphic machine)—40
 mar, *m.*, *f.*, sea—23
 maravilloso, wonderful (jinete mara-
 villosa)—40
 marearse, to get seasick—39
 mareo, seasickness—39

marfil, *m.*, ivory—35
 margarita, daisy—20
 marina, marine (brisa marina)—33
 marino, seaman, sailor—21
 mariposa, butterfly—33
 mármol, marble (estatuas de már-
 mol)—20
 martes, *m.*, Tuesday—12
 marzo, March—12
 más, more—9
 más que, more than—15
 masticar, to chew, to masticate—24
 matar, to kill—38
 materia, matter, subject (course of
 study)—40
 matrimonio, marriage, matrimony, mar-
 ried couple—33
 maullar, to mew—31
 mayo, May—12
 mayor, greater, older, elder (hijo mayor)
 —27
 mazorca de maíz, ear of corn—7
 me, me, to me (me alegre muchísimo)—
 10
 me alegre muchísimo, very pleased to
 hear it (lit. I rejoice myself very
 much)—10
 mecanógrafo de primera, first class
 typist (also dactilógrafo)—31
 mecedora, rocking-chair—23
 mecer, to rock, to swing—39
 media, half—14
 mediante, intervening, by means of
 (Dios mediante)—34
 medias, *f.*, stockings—10
 medicina, medicine—21
 médico, physician, doctor—21
 medio, means, way, half—26
 mediodía, *m.*, noon—17
 mejicano, Mexican (Mexicans say mexi-
 cano)—22
 Méjico, Mexico (Mexicans say México)
 —13
 mejilla, cheek—16
 mejor, better—21
 melocotón, *m.*, peach (durazno in al-
 most all Spanish America)—6
 melodía, melody—26
 melón, *m.*, melon—6
 membrillo, quince—9
 memorable acontecimiento, memorable
 event or happening—33
 memoria, memory—32
 mencionado, mentioned—13
 menor, smaller, minor, younger (hijo
 menor)—27
 menos, less—14
 mensajero, messenger—36
 mentira, lie—24
 menú, *m.*, menu—17

- mercadería**, merchandise—18
mercado, market—7
mercantil, mercantile (*perito mercantil*)—21
merecida, deserved—30
merendar, *irr.*, to lunch—17
merienda, lunch—17
mérito extraordinario, extraordinary merit—25
mermelada, marmalade—5
mero, halibut—9
mes, *m.*, month—12
mesa, table—8
meses del año, months of the year—12
mi, my—13
mí, me (*en mí*, within me)—26
mi cielo, my heaven—29
mi chiquirritín, my very, very, little one—29
microscopio, microscope—40
miedo, fear (*tener miedo*)—19
miel, *f.*, honey—6
miembro, member—17
mientras, while—11
miércoles, *m.*, Wednesday—12
mil, one thousand—15
mil y pico, a thousand and some odd, a thousand and one—33
miles, thousands—21
militar, *m.*, soldier, military man—21
millón, *m.*, million—13
millonario, millionaire—13
mineral, mineral (*agua mineral*)—7
minuto, minute—14
mío, mine—13
miseria, misery—25
misericordioso, merciful—32
misma, same—6
moda, fashion (*de moda*, fashionable)—40
moderna, modern (*civilización moderna*)—26
modesta, modest—25
modista, dressmaker—27
modo, mode, way—11
mojarse, to get wet—35
molestar, to trouble, to molest—24
molesto, uncomfortable, annoying—24
momento, moment (*fatal momento*)—38
monería, cunning action (of a child), monkey-shine—29
mono, monkey, cut—34
montaña, mountain—23
mora, mulberry, blackberry (*zarzamora*)—8
morado, purple—21
moral, moral (*morale* as a noun)—25
morder, *irr.*, to bite—31
mordisco, bite—32
moreno, brown (*brunnette* when refer-
ring to a dark complexioned person),
(also *pardo* and *castaño*)—21
morirse, *irr.*, to die—37
mosca, fly—18
mosquito, mosquito—18
mostaza, mustard—8
mosto, grape juice—6
mostrar, *irr.*, to show—38
motivo, motive—37
mozo, waiter, young man—17
muchacho, boy (*muchacha*, girl)—28
muchas veces, many times or many a time—8
muchísimo, very much—10
mucho, much (a great deal)—4
mudo, dumb—31
mueble, *m.*, piece of furniture—23
mueblería, furniture store—23
muela, molar tooth (*puñetazo en las muelas*)—32
muelle, *m.*, wharf, pier—39
mujer, woman, wife—17
mundo, world—13
municipal, municipal (*banda municipal*)—20
muñeca, wrist, doll—16
murciélago, bat—34
músculo, muscle—16
museo, museum—23
música, music—20
musical, musical—20
músico, musician—20
muy, very—3
muy bien, gracias; ¿y usted?, very well, thank you; and you?—10
muy bien, también, gracias, very well, also, thank you—10

N

- nácar**, *m.*, mother-of-pearl—35
nacer, *irr.*, to be born—29
nación, *f.*, nation—3
nada, nothing—6
nadie, nobody—20
naranja, orange—6
naranjada, orangeade—6
naranjo, orange tree—33
nariz, *f.*, nose—16
nasal, nasal (*fosa nasal*)—16
natilla, custard (*flan*)—8
naturaleza, nature (*aborto de la naturaleza*)—30
naturalmente, naturally—21
navaja de afeitar, razor—27
Navidad, *f.*, Christmas—34
necesidad, *f.*, need (noun), necessity—34
necesario, necessary—4
necesitar, to need—8
negro, black—10

- nervio**, nerve—16
nervioso, nervous—36
nevar, *irr.*, to snow—35
nevar copiosamente, to snow hard or abundantly—35
ni . . . ni, neither . . . nor—11
ni por el forro, not even through the cover—40
Nicaragua, Nicaragua—13
nicaragüense, *m.*, Nicaraguan—22
nieto, grandson (*nieta*, *f.*)—13
nieve, *f.*, snow—35
niños, children—20
• níquel, *m.*, nickel—14
no, no, not—3
no hace ni frío ni calor, it is neither cold nor warm—19
no hay de qué, you are welcome, (lit. there is not of what; also *de nada*, of nothing)—11
no tengo ni frío ni calor, I am neither cold nor warm—19
no ve más allá de sus narices, (he) does not see beyond his nose—28
noche, night, evening—29
nombre, *m.*, name—12
nomeolvides, *f.*, forget-me-not—20
norte, **sur**, **este y oeste**, north, south, east and west—23
Noruega, Norway—19
noruego, Norwegian—22
nosotros, we—4
notar, to notice—27
notario, notary (*ante un notario público*)—37
novcientos, nine hundred—15
novedad, novelty, fashion (*de la más alta novedad*)—33
novela, novel—30
novelista, *m., f.*, novelist—30
novena, ninth—9
noventa, ninety—15
novia, bride, sweetheart (*novio*, *masc.*)—33
noviembre, *m.*, November—12
nueve, nine—14
nuevo, new—12
nuez, *f.*, nut, walnut—6
número, number—15
números cardinales, cardinal number—15
nunca, never—19
- O
- o**, or—4
obra, play, work—30
obra maestra, masterpiece (lit. master-work)—30
observar, to observe—26
- obtener**, *irr.*, to obtain, to attain—29
ocasión, *f.*, occasion—22
océano, ocean—39
octava, eighth—8
octubre, *m.*, October—12
ocupar, to occupy—38
ochenta, eighty—15
ocho, eighth—9
ochocientos, eight hundred—15
odio, hatred—21
oeste, *m.*, west (*norte*, *sur*, *este y oeste*)—23
oficialmente, officially—34
oficina, office (also *despacho* and *escritorio*; *bufete*, lawyer's office)—18
oficina central de telégrafos, main telegraph office—36
oficio, occupation, calling—29
oído, hearing (sense of)—16
oír, *irr.*, to hear—20
ojal, *m.*, buttonhole—10
ojeada, glance—38
ola, wave—39
olfato, smell (sense of)—16
olvidar, to forget—15
omitir, to omit—14
ómnibus, *m.*, bus, jitney, omnibus (*guagua* in Cuba)—18
once, eleven—14
ópera, opera—18
operario, operator, workman—31
opinar, to think, to opine—27
oportunidad, *f.*, opportunity—9
oración, *f.*, sentence (of grammar), oration, prayer—28
orador, *m.*, orator (*oradora*, *fem.*)—30
ordenar, to order—32
oreja, ear—16
organista, *m., f.*, organist—30
órgano, organ—20
oro, gold—14
orquesta, orchestra—20
oso, bear—34
ostra, oyster—7
otoño, autumn, fall—15
otro, other, another—11
oveja, ewe, sheep (*rebaño de ovejas*)—33
- P
- paciencia**, patience—17
padre, father—13
padrino, godfather (*padrinos*, godparents)—25
pagar, to pay—34
página, page—30
país, *m.*, country, nation—20
paja, straw (*sombrero de paja*)—10
pájaro, bird—18
palabra, word—3

- paladar, *m.*, palate—16
 palacio, palace—20
 pálido, pale—22
 palmera, palm tree—33
 paloma, pigeon, dove—32
 pan, *m.*, bread—4
 pan y mantequilla, bread and butter—4
 panadería, bakery—7
 panadero, baker—12
 Panamá, Panama—13
 panameño, Panaman, Panamanian—22
 panecillo, roll—5
 pantalones, *m.*, trousers (also *pantalón*)—9
 pantera, panther—34
 pañuelo, handkerchief—9
 papá, father (*papá* is used by children and grown-up persons)—27
 papel, *m.*, paper—10
 papel de cartas, writing paper (lit. paper of letters)—10
 papel secante, *m.*, blotter, blotting paper—35
 paquete, *m.*, package—10
 par, *m.*, pair—9
 para, for, in order to—8
 para mí, for me—18
 paraguas, *m.*, umbrella—10
 Paraguay, Paraguay—13
 paraguayo, Paraguayan—22
 parar, to stop—14
 parche, plaster; patch (on garments, etc.)—24
 parecerse, *irr.*, to resemble—38
 pared, *f.*, wall—18
 pariente, *m.*, relative (*parienta, f.*)—13
 París, *m.*, Paris—3
 párpado, eyelid—16
 parque, *m.*, park—23
 parte, *f.*, part, place—3
 particular, particular, private (*secretario particular*)—31
 partir, to depart; to break—31
 partir a mundos mejores, to depart to a better world (lit. better worlds)—37
 parroquiano, customer, client—27
 pasado, past—12
 pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow—9
 pasar, to pass, to spend (time)—11
 pasar por alto, to overlook (lit. to pass through high)—32
 pasarme, to pass to me—11
 pasearse, to promenade, to walk—26
 paseo, walk, promenade, (*dar paseos*)—24
 pasmosa, amazing, wonderful (*facilidad pasmosa*)—33
 pasta dentífrica, toothpaste—19
 pastel de manzanas, *m.*, apple pie—6
 pastelillos, *m.*, small cakes (also *pastas*; *masas* in several places of South America)—8
 pastilla de jabón, cake of soap—10
 pastilla de limón, lemon drop—7
 patada, kick—32
 patata, potato (*papa* in almost all Spanish America)—4
 patata asada, baked potato—5
 patata frita, fried potato—5
 patines, *m.*, skates—32
 patio, courtyard—18
 patrona, landlady, patroness (*patrón, masc.*)—27
 pausa, pause—27
 pavo, turkey—6
 pavo con salsa de arándano, turkey with cranberry sauce—8
 pavo real, peacock—32
 payaso, clown—40
 paz, *f.*, peace—18
 pechera de la camisa, shirt-bosom—35
 pecho, chest, breast—16
 pedagogía, pedagogy (art of teaching)—21
 pedazo, piece—13
 pedir, *irr.*, to ask, to ask for, to order, to request—29
 pedrada, blow with a thrown stone—32
 pegar, to strike, to stick—38
 pegarse con la cabeza contra, to strike one's head against—38
 peinarse, to comb one's hair—19
 peine, *m.*, comb—19
 pelo rizado, curly hair—29
 pelota, ball—37
 pellejo, skin, raw-hide (*como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras*)—38
 pena, sorrow—25
 pensamiento, pansy (also thought)—20
 pensar, *irr.*, to think—24
 penúltimo, next to the last, penult—28
 peor, worse (*temo lo peor*)—40
 pepino, cucumber—7
 pequeña, small (also *chica* which as a noun means girl)—7
 pequeñito, very small—35
 pera, pear—6
 percha, hat (or clothes) rack—23
 perder, *irr.*, to lose—38
 perdiz, *f.*, partridge—32
 perejil, *m.*, parsley—7
 perfectamente, perfectly—3
 perfecto, perfect—6
 perfecto de indicative—present perfect or perfect (indicative)—6
 perfecto de subjuntivo, perfect subjunctive—35
 perfumado, perfumed—19

- perfume raro, *m.*, rare perfume—25
 Perico de los Palotes, John Doe—33
 periódico, newspaper—30
 perito mercantil, expert accountant—21
 perla, pearl—22
 pero, but—6
 persona, person—12
 persona mayor, grown-up person—20
 personal, personal (*higiene personal*)—26
 pertenecer, *irr.*, to belong—25
 Perú, *m.* Peru—3
 peruano, Peruvian—22
 perro, dog—20
 pésame, *m.* condolence—40
 pescadería, fish market—7
 pescado, fish—6
 peso, weight (*peso* is also dollar in Spanish America)—39
 pestaña, eyelash—16
 pez volador, flying fish—39
 pianista, *m., f.*, pianist—30
 piano, piano—20
 picar, to sting, to itch. to peck (birds); to burn (peppers)—31
 pie, *m.*, foot—16
 piedra preciosa, precious stone—33
 pierna, leg—16
 pierna de cabrito, leg of kid—7
 pierna de carnero, leg of mutton—7
 pierna de cordero, leg of lamb—7
 píldora, pill—24
 pimienta, pepper (spice)—8
 pimiento, pepper (vegetable); (*ají* in several Spanish speaking countries; in Mexico *chile*)—7
 pino, pine—26
 pintor, *m.*, painter, artist (who paints)—30
 piña, pineapple (also *ananá*)—7
 pipa, pipe (for smoking)—37
 pisapapeles, *m.*, paper weight—35
 piso, story, floor—18
 pizarra, blackboard (also *encerado* and *pizarrón*)—28
 placer, *m.*, pleasure—11
 plan, *m.*, plan, design—38
 planchar, to iron—25
 plata, silver—14
 platillo, saucer, small plate—8
 platillos, cymbals (*bombo y platillos*)—20
 platino, platinum—33
 plato, plate, dish—5
 playa, seashore, seashore resort—40
 plaza, square, plaza—20
 pleito, lawsuit—37
 pluma, pen—10
 pluma estilográfica, fountain-pen (also *pluma-fuente*)—40
 plural, plural (singular y plural)—14
 pluscuamperfecto condicional, past conditional—37
 pluscuamperfecto de subjuntivo, past perfect subjunctive—37
 pobre, poor, unfortunate—13
 poco, little—4
 poder, *irr.*, to be able—15
 poema, poem—25
 poesía sublime, sublime poetry—30
 poeta, *m.*, poet (*poetisa, f.*)—30
 policía, police (*policía* is policeman when *masc.*)—36
 política, political, polite (*crisis política*)—27
 polvera, powderbox—25
 polvos de dientes, tooth-powder (*polvos*, powder; *polvo*, dust)—19
 polvos para la cara, face powder (also *polvos para el cutis* or *de tocador*)—25
 pollo, chicken—6
 poner, *irr.*, to put—26
 ponerse a, to begin to (lit. to put oneself to)—38
 ponerse los zapatos, to put the shoes on (lit. to put oneself the shoes)—26
 ponerse nervioso, to get nervous—40
 popa, stern (noun)—39
 popular, popular—18
 popularidad inmensa, *f.*, immense popularity—30
 por, by, through—5
 por consiguiente, consequently, therefore—6
 por delante, in front of—29
 por ejemplo, for example, for instance—15
 por esta causa, on this account—37
 por esta razón, for this reason, on this account—6
 por este motivo, on this account—37
 por favor, if you please (lit. by favor)—39
 por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunca, procrastination is the thief of time (lit. through the street of Afterwards one goes to the house of Never)—30
 por la mañana, in the morning (lit. by the morning)—5
 por la noche, in the evening or in the night (lit. by the evening or by the night)—5
 por la tarde, in the afternoon (lit. by the afternoon)—5
 por medio de, by means of—33
 por otras razones, for other reasons—15
 por qué, why—4

- por regla general**, as a general rule (lit. by general rule)—26
por supuesto, of course—40
por teléfono, over the telephone (lit. by, etc.)—29
por último, finally, at last—5
porque, because—3
portaplumas, m., penholder—35
portero, porter—17
portorriqueño, Porto Rican (Porto Ricans say **puertorriqueño**)—22
Portugal, m., Portugal—19
portugués, m., Portuguese (for both language and nationality)—22
posible, possible—15
posición, f., position (**en la posición que debe**)—28
postre, m., dessert—8
pozal, m., pail (**balde** in Argentina)—23
practicar, to practise—29
precioso, precious, beautiful—29
predilecto, favorite—20
pregunta, question (noun)—13
preguntar, to ask, to question—14
premio, reward—40
prenda de vestir, garment (**prenda**, jewel, is used as a term of endearment)—26
prendedor, m., breastpin—33
preocupaciones, f., worries, preoccupations—39
preparar, to set; to prepare—8
presentación, f., presentation—40
presente de indicativo, present indicative—4
presente de subjuntivo, present subjunctive—32
presidente, m., president—3
prestar, to lend, to loan—11
prestar atención, to pay attention (lit. to lend attention)—28
prestarme, to lend to me—11
pretérito absoluto (indicativo), preterit or past (indicative)—12
pretérito absoluto (indicativo), preterit or past (indicative)—12
pretérito anterior (indicativo), past anterior (indicative)—27
pretérito pluscuamperfecto (indicativo), pluperfect or past perfect (indicative)—29
primavera, spring—15
primer actor, leading man (lit. first actor)—30
primero, first—3
primo, cousin (**prima, f.**)—13
primo carnal, first cousin—31
primo segundo, second cousin—39
princesa, princess—40
principal, principal, main—20
príncipe, prince—40
principiar, to begin—12
prisa, hurry (**de prisa**)—24
proa, bow (of a ship)—39
probable, probable—27
probar, irr., to taste, to try, to test—27
prodigar, to lavish, to give profusely—29
producir, irr., to produce—26
productor, m., producer—30
profecía, prophesy—35
profesión, f., profession—21
profesor, m., professor (**profesora f.**)—20
profeta, prophet—30
profundamente, deeply—38
profundo, deep, profound (**bajo profundo**)—30
programa, m., program—35
progreso, progress—21
prohibir, to forbid—32
prometida, fiancée, betrothed—33
pronto, soon—10
pronunciar, to pronounce—3
propina, tip, gratuity—17
prosa, prose—30
proverbio, proverb—30
próxima, next—9
proyecto, project—27
publicar, to publish—30
público, public (**ante un notario público**)—37
puchero, cooking pot—23
puerta, door—18
Puerto Rico, Porto Rico—13
puesta del sol, sunset—26
pulmón, m., lung—16
pulverizador, m., atomizer, spray—37
punta, point—14
puntapié, m., kick with the tip of the shoe—32
punto, period—27
punto y coma, semicolon—27
puntos cardinales, points of the compass—23
puñetazo en las muelas, punch on the jaw (lit. blow with the fist on the molar teeth)—32
puño, cuff—9
pura, pure (**digo la pura verdad**)—24
puro, pure—26

Q

- que**, that, which, who, (interrogative form **qué**, what)—3
¡qué buen semblante tiene usted hoy!, how well you look to-day! (lit. what a good countenance you have to-day)—27
¿qué cuenta usted de bueno?, what is the good news? (lit. what do you count or tell of good?)—27

¡qué desagradable!, how disagreeable—
24
¿qué hora es?, what time is it?—14
que son tan ricas, which are so rich—39
¡qué triste! how sad!—24
que va a llevarlo, which is going to take
it (lit. which goes, etc.)—39
que yo sepa, as far as I know—35
quedarse, to remain—36
quedarse dormido, to fall asleep—36
quejarse, to complain—24
querer, *irr.*, to want; to love (when the
object is a person)—17
querer decir, to mean to say (lit. to
want to say)—17
querido, dear—30
queso, cheese—6
quien, who (interrogative *quién*)—3
¿quién es?, who is it? (lit. who is?)—36
quince, fifteen—14
quinientos, five hundred—15
quinientos mil, five hundred thousand—
15
quinina, quinine—24
quinta, fifth—5
quitar, to remove, to take off—38

R

rábano, radish—7
ramo de flores, bouquet (also *ramillete*
de, etc.)—25
rana, frog—32
raqueta, racket (for tennis)—32
rara vez, seldom, rarely—19
raro, rare (*perfume raro*)—25
raso, satin—11
rata, rat—34
ratón, *m.*, mouse—34
ratos deliciosos, delightful times (lit.
whiles or little whiles)—29
rayo, thunderbolt, beam or ray of light—
35
razón, *f.*, reason (*por esta razón*)—6
reanudar, to resume—36
rebanada de pan, slice of bread—8
rebaño de ovejas, flock of sheep—33
rebuznar, to bray—31
receta, prescription—24
recibir, to receive—25
recién casados, newly wedded couple
(lit. recently married)—33
recitar, to recite—28
recobrar, to recover, to recuperate—32
recreo, recreation, amusement—34
recuerdo, recollection, remembrance,
souvenir, memory (*recuerdos*, re-
gards, recollections)—38
redondo, round (*espejo redondo*)—35
refrán, *m.*, saying (noun)—32

refrigerio, refreshment (with something
to eat)—17
regalo, gift, present—25
regla, ruler, rule, precept—35
regresar, to return—34
regular, normal, regular—24
reina, queen—40
reír, *irr.*, to laugh—24
relámpago, flash of lightning—35
reloj, *m.*, watch—14
reloj de pared, *m.*, clock—23
relojero, watch maker—14
remendar, *irr.*, to mend—25
remolacha, beet—7
reparador, refreshing (as to sleep), re-
pairer (*sueño reparador*)—26
repartidas, distributed, sent out—33
repetir, *irr.*, to repeat—3
repisa, mantelpiece, rack, bracket—38
reprobar, *irr.*, to rebuke; to reject—40
reprobar la asignatura, to fail to pass in
the subject—40
República Argentina, Argentine Repub-
lic—3
reputación, *f.*, reputation, repute—30
resfriado (noun), a cold, (also *catarro*
and *constipado*)—24
resfriado fuerte, a severe cold—24
resfriarse, to catch a cold—24
reside, resides—3
respectiva, respective—21
respectivamente, respectively—3
respetable, respectable (*anciana res-
petable*)—30
respirar, to breathe—24
responder, to answer, to respond—11
respuesta, answer (noun)—14
restaurant, *m.*, restaurant (also *fonda*)—
8
resto, rest, remainder—28
restregar, *irr.*, to rub—36
resultado, outcome, result—27
retirarse, to retire—20
retoño, offspring, sprout, sprig—29
reunir, to gather—36
revelar, to reveal, to show—27
revista, magazine, review—35
revólver, *m.*, revolver—37
rey, king—40
rico, rich—13
rinoceronte, *m.*, rhinoceros—34
riña, quarrel, fray—32
riñón, *m.*, kidney—16
río, river—23
risa, laughter—25
rivalidad, *f.*, rivalry—37
rizado, curly, curled (*pelo rizado*)—29
roble, *m.*, oak—18
robusto, robust—24
rodear, to surround—28

rodilla, knee—16
 romper, *irr.*, to break—36
 ronca, adj., hoarse—36
 roncar, to snore—24
 ropa blanca, linen, underwear, handkerchiefs, etc.
 ropa de cama, bed clothing—26
 ropa interior, underwear (lit. interior clothing)—10
 rosa, pink, adj. (*rosa* as a noun is rose)—18
 rosbif, *m.*, roast beef—5
 rubí, *m.*, ruby—22
 rubio, blond—29
 ruibarbo, rhubarb—8
 ruido, noise—38
 ruiseñor, *m.*, nightingale—33
 Rusia, Russia—19
 ruso, Russian (for both language and nationality)—22

S

sábado, Saturday—12
 sábana, sheet (of a bed)—26
 saber, *irr.*, to know—19
 saber a ciencia cierta, to know with certainty (lit. to know to certain science)—29
 sabio, learned man, wise man, wise—21
 sacar, to draw, to remove, to pull out—28
 sacar punta al lápiz, to sharpen the pencil (lit. to draw point to the pencil)—28
 sal, *j.*, salt—8
 sala, parlor—18
 sala de clase, *f.*, classroom (also aula)—11
 salario, salary—31
 salchichón, *m.*, salami, big sausage—17
 salero, saltcellar—8
 salida del sol, sunrise—26
 salir, *irr.*, to go out, to leave—26
 salmón, *m.*, salmon—8
 salsa, sauce, dressing—8
 salta de alegría, (he) jumps with joy (lit. of joy)—29
 saltamontes, *m.*, grasshopper, 33
 saltar, to jump—29
 salto, jump, leap, bound—39
 salud, *f.*, health—22
 saludar, to greet, to salute—39
 salvadoreño, Salvadorian—22
 salvar, to save—36
 San Salvador, *m.*, San Salvador—13
 sandía, watermelon (also melón de agua)—7
 sangre, *f.*, blood—16
 sano, sane, healthy, sound (*estando en su sano juicio*)—37
 Santiago, Santiago—3
 santo, holy, saint—13
 Santo Domingo, San Domingo—13
 santo lazo del matrimonio, holy bonds of matrimony—33
 sardina, sardine—6
 sartén, *f.*, frying-pan—23
 sastre, *m.*, tailor—34
 satisfacción, *f.*, satisfaction—22
 saxófono, saxophone—20
 secarse, to dry oneself—19
 secreta, secret—17
 secretario particular, private secretary (lit. particular secretary)—31
 sed, *f.*, thirst, (*tener sed*)—18
 seda, silk—10
 seguida, followed (*en seguida*)—19
 según, according to—17
 segundo, second (adj.)—3; second (noun)—15
 seguramente, surely—34
 seguro, sure, certain—37
 seis, six—9
 seiscientos, six hundred—15
 sello de correo, postage stamp (also estampilla)—22
 semana, week (*días de la semana*)—12
 semejante, similar, adj. (as a noun, fellow creature, *m.*)—36
 semicírculo, semicircle—28
 sensata, sensible—25
 sentar, *irr.*, to fit, to sit down (*el que mejor me sienta*, the one which fits me best)—34
 sentencia del juez, judge's sentence—37
 sentidos corporales, corporal senses—16
 sentir, *irr.*, to feel, to be sorry—32
 señalado, noted, marked, famous—25
 señalar, to point out—23
 señor, Mr., Sir, gentleman—3
 señora, Mrs., madam, lady—3
 señorita, Miss, young lady—3
 septiembre, *m.*, September (also setiembre)—12
 séptima, seventh—7
 ser, *irr.*, to be—13
 sér (noun), being—16
 ser un adoquín, to be a blockhead (lit. to be a paving stone)—28
 ser un alma de Dios, to be exceedingly good (lit. to be a soul of God)—30
 ser un pedazo de atún, to be exceedingly stupid (lit. to be a piece of tunny fish)—28
 ser un pedazo de pan, to be exceedingly good (lit. to be piece of bread)—13
 sereno, night watchman—17
 seria, serious—40
 serpiente, *f.*, serpent—34
 servilleta, napkin—8

- servir, irr.*, to serve—17
sesenta, sixty—15
setecientos, seven hundred—15
setenta, seventy—15
sexta, sixth—6
si, if—5
sí, yes—3
si él llegase a heredar, if he succeeded in inheriting (lit. if he reached, etc.)—37
siempre, always—14
siempre que, whenever—29
sienes, f., temples (part of the body)—16
siéntese, sit down—27
siento infinito, I am very sorry—32
siete, seven—9
siguiente, following—9
sílaba, syllable—3
silbar, to whistle—38
silla, chair—23
sillón, m., armchair—23
simpático, nice, congenial—29
simpatizar, to like, to be congenial, to sympathize—29
sin, without—4
singular y plural, m., singular and plural—14
sírvase, take it please (lit. serve yourself)—11
sitio, place—26
sobaco, armpit—16
sobre, about, on, over, upon (as a noun it is envelope)—27
sobretudo, overcoat (principally in Spanish America; *gabán* and *abrigo* in Spain)—9
sobrino, nephew (*sobrina, f.*)—13
sociedad, f., society—17
socorro (noun), help, aid, assistance—38
sofá, m., sofa—23
sol, sun; *hace sol*—19; (*salida del sol*)—26
solamente, only—4
solapa, lapel—28
soler, irr., to be accustomed, to be in the habit of—26
solo, only, alone—16
soltero, bachelor, unmarried—31
sombrerería, hat store—9
sombrerero, hatter—12
sombrero, hat—9
sombrero blando, soft hat—11
sombrero de copa, silk hat (also *chistera*)—10
sombrero de Jipijapa, Panama hat—11
sombrero de paja, straw hat—10
sombrero hongo, derby hat—11
sombrilla, parasol—10
son, are—3
sonar, irr., to sound; to ring—36
sonar el timbre, to ring (or sound) the bell—36
sonora, sonorous (that which sounds loud and clear)—24
soñar, irr., to dream—18
sopa, soup—5
sordo, deaf—30
sostener, irr., to sustain, to support, to carry on—33
sótano, basement—18
su, his, her, your, their, etc.—21
suave, soft—33
subir, to go up, to come up, to go or to come upstairs, to ascend—36
subjuntivo, subjunctive—32
sublime, sublime (*poesía sublime*)—30
subterráneo, subterranean (*tren subterráneo*)—23
sucia, dirty, soiled—17
suceso, event, happening—27
sudar, to perspire—32
Suecia, Sweden—19
sueco, Swede, Swedish—22
suegra, mother-in-law (*suegro, m.*)—13
suela, sole (of shoes)—14
suele dar, is in the habit of taking (referring to walks)—27
suelo, floor—18
sueño, sleep (*tener sueño*)—18
sueño reparador, refreshing sleep—26
sufrir, to suffer—20
sufrir el último examen, to take the last examination—40
Suiza, Switzerland—19
suizo, Swiss—22
superiores, superior (*tribunales superiores*)—37
suplicar, to beseech, to beg—32
sur, m., south (*norte, sur, este y oeste*)—23
suyo, yours, his, hers, etc.—13

T

- tabaco*, tobacco—37
tacón, heel (of shoe); (*talón*, heel of foot)—14
tacto, touch (sense of)—16
talento, talent—27
también, also—3
tampoco, neither—11
tan amargamente, so bitterly—38
tan bueno como, as good as—13
tantos, so many—25
tapa, cover, lid—40
taquigrafía, shorthand, stenography—31
tararear, to hum—39
tarde, afternoon, late (*por la tarde*)—5
tarjeta postal, post card—29
tartamudear, to stammer—31

- taza, cup—5
 te, *m.*, tea—4
 teatro, theatre—19
 techo, ceiling—18
 tejado, roof—18
 teléfono, telephone (*por teléfono*)—29
 telégrafo, telegraph (*oficina central de telégrafos*)—36
 telegrama, *m.*, telegram—36
 tema, theme—4
 temer, to fear—32
 temo lo peor, I fear the worst—40
 temperatura, temperature—19
 temporada, season (not used when speaking of the seasons of the year)—30
 temprano, early—10
 tendero, storekeeper—12
 tenedor, *m.*, fork—5
 tenedor de libros, *m.*, bookkeeper—31
 tener, *irr.*, to have, to hold, to possess—7
 tener celos, to be jealous—21
 tener envidia, to be envious—21
 tener esperanza, to be hopeful—21
 tener ganas de, to have a mind to, to feel like—18
 tener hambre, to be hungry—18
 tener la misma edad, to be of the same age (lit. to have the same age)—31
 tener miedo, to be afraid—19
 tener que, to have to—24
 tener razón, to be right (lit. to have reason)—22
 tener sed, to be thirsty—18
 tener sueño, to be sleepy—18
 tengo calor, I am warm—19
 tengo frío, I am cold—19
 tenis, *m.*, tennis—32
 tenor, *m.*, tenor—30
 tenteempié, *m.*, a bite to eat, a snack (also *piscolabis*)—17
 tercero, third—3
 terciopelo, velvet (*estuche de terciopelo*)—25
 terminar, to end, to finish, to terminate—15
 termómetro, thermometer—40
 ternera, calf, veal (*costillas de ternera*)—5
 terrible, terrible—38
 terrones, *m.*, lumps (*azúcar granulado o en terrones*)—8
 testamentaria, execution of the will (also *testamentaría*)—37
 testamento, last will, will, testament—37
 testigo, *m., f.*, witness—37
 tetera, teapot—23
 tibia, tepid, lukewarm—19
 tiempo, tense, weather, time—12
 tienda, store, dry-goods store—10
 tienda de comestibles, grocery store (*almacén* in some places of Spanish America; *tienda de ultramarinos* in Spain)—23
 tierno, tender—26
 tierra lejana, far away or distant land—39
 tigre, *m.*, tiger—34
 tijeras, *f.*, scissors—10
 timbre, *m.*, quality, tone, timbre, color (when speaking of voices)—24
 tinta, ink—10
 tintero, inkstand, inkwell—10
 tío, uncle (*tía, f.*)—13
 tiple ligera, light soprano—30
 tira, strip (*como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras*)—38
 tirabuzón, *m.*, corkscrew—23
 tirantes, *m.*, suspenders—11
 tiza, chalk—28
 toalla, towel—19
 tobillo, ankle—16
 tocador, dressing-table, boudoir, one who touches (*artículos de tocador*)—19
 tocar, to play (musical instruments), to touch—20
 tocar a fuego, to announce a fire—36
 tocino, bacon—5
 todavía, still, yet, as yet—25
 todo, all, everything, whole, every—8
 todo el mundo, everybody (lit. all the world)—20
 todo lo que hay, everything that there is—8
 todos los días, every day—14
 tomar, to take—4
 tomate, *m.*, tomato—4
 tome asiento, take a seat—9
 tónico, tonic—24
 tonto, foolish, stupid—22
 tormenta, storm—25
 toro, bull—34
 toronja, grapefruit—7
 tortilla, omelet (in Mexico and other Spanish speaking countries, *tortilla* is corn griddle cake; omelet is *tortilla de huevos*)—5
 torre, *f.*, tower—23
 toser, to cough—24
 tostada, toast (noun)—17
 total, total, whole (masc. as a noun)—36
 trabajadora, industrious, laborious (*trabajador, masc.*)—25
 trabajar, to work—21
 traducción, *f.*, translation—28
 traducir, *irr.*, to translate—31
 traductor, *m.*, translator—31

traer, *irr.*, to bring—36
 tragedia, tragedy—30
 trágica, tragic (actriz trágica)—30
 traje, *m.*, suit of clothes, dress—10
 tranquila, tranquil, quiet—18
 transeunte, *m.*, passer-by—36
 transparente (noun), window shade;
 transparent, *adj.*—23
 tranvía eléctrico, *m.* trolley car, electric
 car—18
 trece, thirteen—14
 treinta, thirty—14
 treinta mil, thirty thousand—15
 treinta y uno, thirty-one—15
 tren, *m.*, train—10
 tren subterráneo, subway train—23
 tres, three—9
 trescientos, three hundred—15
 trescientos sesenta y cinco, three hun-
 dred and sixty-five—15
 tribunales superiores, higher courts—37
 trigo, wheat—35
 trigonometría, trigonometry—40
 triste, sad—22
 trombón, *m.*, trombone—20
 tronar, *irr.*, to thunder—35
 trono, throne—40
 tropical, tropical—27
 trozo, piece, chunk—18
 trueno, thunder—35
 trucha, trout—7
 tú, you (*fam. form sing.*)—4
 tuerto, blind in one eye—31
 tulipán, *m.*, tulip—20
 tunante, *m.*, rascal, little rascal—29
 turco, Turkish (cigarrillo turco)—37
 Turquía, Turkey—19

U

último, last—18
 un, a, one (*masc. sing.*)—3
 un día sí y otro no, every other day—27
 una, a, one (*fem. sing.*)—3
 una vez, once, one time—26
 undécima, eleventh—11
 única, only, unique—33
 unir, to unite—33
 universidad, *f.*, university—23
 uno, one—9
 uña, fingernail—16
 Uruguay, *m.*, Uruguay—13
 uruguayo, Uruguayan—22
 uso, use—26
 usted, you (*polite form sing.*)—3
 usted expresa, you express—3
 utensilios de cocina, *m.*, kitchen uten-
 sils—23
 útil, useful—4
 uva, grape—6

V

vaca, cow, beef (costillas de vaca)—8
 vacación, *f.*, vacation, recess—40
 vago, loafer (haciendo el vago)—40
 vale un dineral, it is worth a large sum
 of money—33
 valer, *irr.*, to be worth—33
 valor artístico, artistic value—25
 valle, *m.*, valley—23
 vapor, *m.*, steamer, steam—10
 varias, several, various—13
 vaso, glass, tumbler—5
 veces, *f.*, times, turns (*algunas veces*;
 vez, sing.)—5
 vecindad, *f.*, neighborhood, vicinity—18
 vecino, neighbor—28
 vehículo, vehicle, conveyance—34
 veinte, twenty—14
 veinte mil, twenty thousand—15
 veinticinco, twenty-five—14
 veinticuatro, twenty-four—14
 veintidós, twenty-two—14
 veintinueve, twenty-nine—14
 veintiocho, twenty-eight—14
 veintiséis, twenty-six—14
 veintisiete, twenty-seven—14
 veintitrés, twenty-three—14
 veintiuno, twenty-one—14
 vela, candle—36
 veleta, weather-cock or vane, a very
 fickle person—23
 velo, veil (velo para la cara)—11
 velo para la cara, face veil—11
 vena, vein—16
 venda, bandage—24
 venezolano, Venezuelan—22
 Venezuela, Venezuela—13
 venir, *irr.*, to come—25
 ventana, window—18
 ventanilla, little window—38
 ver, *irr.*, to see—23
 veranear, to spend the summer—40
 verano, summer—15
 verbo, *m.*, verb—11
 verdad, *f.*, truth—11
 verdadera obra de arte, real work of art
 (*lit. true work of art*)—35
 verdaderamente, truly—22
 verdadero, veritable, true, real—32
 verde, green—21
 verduras, vegetables (legumbres)—5
 vestíbulo, vestibule, lobby, hall—36
 vestido, dress—27
 vestir, *irr.*, to dress—34
 vestir con lo mejor del baúl, to dress in
 one's Sunday best (*lit. to dress with*
 the best of the trunk)—34
 veterinario, veterinarian (horse doctor)
 —21

viajar, to travel—10
 viaje, *m.*, trip, voyage—27
 vida, life—22
 vidrio de aumento, magnifying glass—40
 vidrio de ventana, window-pane—36
 viento, wind (*hace viento*)—19
 viernes, *m.*, Friday—12
 vinagre, *m.*, vinegar—8
 violencia, violence—38
 violentamente, violently—36
 violeta, violet (as a color it is masculine)—20
 violín, *m.*, violin—20
 violinista, *m., f.*, violinist—30
 violoncelo, cello—20
 visita, visit—37
 visitar, to visit—21
 vista, sight (sense of)—16
 vistoso, showy, flaring—38
 viuda, widow—31
 vivir, to live—4
 vocabulario, vocabulary—3
 vocal, *f.*, vowel—3
 vocerío, clamour, hallooing—36
 volador, flying (*pez volador*)—39
 vomitando humo, ejecting smoke—38
 voraz, voracious, ravenous (*apetito voraz*)—31
 vosotros, you (*fam. form plur.*)—4
 voto, vow, vote (*hacer votos fervientes*)—32
 voz, *f.*, voice—24
 vuelo, flight (of birds)—39

W

Washington, Washington—3

Y

y, and—3
 y así me arreglo, and so I manage—35
 ya, already—39
 yerno, son-in-law (also *hijo político*)—13
 yo, I—4
 yo no comprendo, I do not understand—3
 yo soy así, I am this way (*lit. I am so*)—35

Z

zanahoria, carrot—7
 zapatería, shoe store—9
 zapatero, *m.*, shoemaker—12
 zapatilla, slipper (also *babucha* and *chinela*)—11
 zapato, shoe, low shoe—9
 zapatos de goma, rubbers, rubber shoes (also *chanclos*; in Mexico, *zapatos de hule*)—10
 zarzamora, blackberry (also *mora*)—8
 zarzaparrilla, sarsaparilla—6
 zoológico, zoölogical (*jardín zoológico*)—32
 zorro, fox, an astute person—34
 zumbar, to buzz—31
 zumo, juice (also *jugo*)—9
 zurcir, to darn—25

ENGLISH-SPANISH

This list does not include the words or expressions used in the "Grammar." Numbers indicate lesson in which words occur.

A

a, un—3; una—3
a bite to eat, tenteempié—17
a cold, resfriado—24
a severe cold, resfriado fuerte—24
a thousand and some odd, mil y pico—33
about, sobre—27; acerca de—29
above, arriba—27
absolute, absoluto—12
absolutely, absolutamente—12
accompany, *inf.*, acompañar—38
according to, según—17
according to my judgment, a mi juicio—30
accordion, acordeón—27
accounting, contabilidad—21
acquaintance, conocido—20
acrobat, acróbata—40
actor, actor—30
actress, actriz—30
address him, *inf.*, dirigirle la palabra—27
adjoining, contigua—24
admiration, admiración—30
admired, admirados—22
admirer, admirador—22
advanced, adelantado—28
advertise, *inf.*, anunciar—35
advertisement, anuncio—35
aeroplane, aeroplano—10
affectionate, cariñosa—29
Africa, África—18
after, después, después de—4
after a little while, luego—9
after having fallen asleep, después de haberme quedado dormido—36
afternoon, tarde—5
again, de nuevo—36
against, contra—38
age, edad—31
agreeable, agradable—11
aid, auxilio—38
alarm, *inf.*, alarmar—24
alarm (noun), alarma—36
alarm-clock, despertador—26
algebra, álgebra—40
all, todo—8
almanac, almanaque—35

almond, almendra—7
almost, casi—8
alphabet, alfabeto—3
already, ya—39
also, también—3
always, siempre—14
amazing, pasmosa—33
America, América—3
American, americano—22
amiable, amable—13
amuse oneself, *inf.*, divertirse—20
and, y—3
and so I manage, y así me arreglo—35
angel, ángel—29
anguish, angustia—38
animal, animal—34
ankle, tobillo—16
announce a fire, *inf.*, tocar a fuego—36
answer, *inf.*, responder—11; contestar—32
answer (noun), respuesta—14
ant, hormiga—27
appearance, apariencia—35
appetite, apetito—8
applaud, *inf.*, aplaudir—30
apple, manzana—6
apple pie, pastel de manzanas—6
approach, *inf.*, acercarse—38
approve, *inf.*, aprobar—40
approximately, aproximadamente—31
apricot, albaricoque—7
April, abril—12
apron, delantal—10
architect, arquitecto—21
architecture, arquitectura—21
are, son—3
Argentina, Argentina—3
Argentine Republic, República Argentina—3
Argentinian, argentino—22
aristocratic, aristocrática—33
arithmetic, aritmética—40
around, alrededor—23
arm, brazo—16
arm chair, sillón—23
armpit, sobaco—16
arrange, *inf.*, arreglar—39
arrange oneself, arreglarse—35
arrive, *inf.*, llegar—27

art, arte—35
 artery, arteria—16
 article, artículo—18
 artistic, artística—20
 artistic value, valor artístico—15
 as, como—13
 as a general rule, por regla general—26
 as a gift or present, de regalo—35
 as far as I know, que yo sepa—35
 as good as, tan bueno como—13
 as if he were being skinned alive, como si le estuviesen arrancando el pellejo a tiras—38
 Asia, Asia—18
 ask, *inf.*, preguntar, 14
 ask for, *inf.*, pedir—29
 asparagus, espárrago—6
 aspect, aspecto—30
 aspiration, aspiración—31
 assigned, asignada—19
 assure, *inf.*, asegurar—34
 at about, a eso de—17
 at dawn, al amanecer—26
 at last, por último—5
 at nightfall, al anochecer—26
 at the top of one's voice, a gritos—36
 at times, a veces—30
 atomizer, pulverizador—37
 August, agosto—12
 Australia, Australia—19
 Australian, australiano—22
 automobile, automóvil—23
 autumn, otoño—15
 avenue, avenida—23
 avoid, *inf.*, evitar—35
 awaken oneself, *inf.*, despertarse—26

B

baby, bebé—38
 bachelor, soltero—31
 back, espalda—16
 backwards, atrás—38
 bacon, tocino—5
 badly, mal—20
 baggage, equipaje—39
 baked, asada—5
 baked potato, patada asada—5
 baker, panadero—12
 bakery, panadería—7
 bald, calvo—31
 ball, pelota—37
 banana, banana—6
 bandage, venda—24
 bandit, bandido—40
 banjo, banjo—20
 bank, banco—13
 banker, banquero—21
 barber, barbero—27

barber shop, barbería—27
 bark, *inf.*, ladrar—31
 barley, cebada—35
 barometer, barómetro—40
 barytone, barítono—30
 basement, sótano—18
 basket, cesta—38
 bass drum, bombo—20
 bat, murciélago—34
 bath, baño—18
 bathroom, cuarto de baño—18
 battle, batalla—40
 bay, bahía—23
 be, *inf.*, estar—11; ser—13
 be a blockhead, *inf.*, ser un adoquín—28
 be able, *inf.*, poder—15
 be accustomed, *inf.*, soler—26
 be acquainted, *inf.*, conocer—25
 be afraid, *inf.*, tener miedo—19
 be at the table, *inf.*, estar a la mesa—11
 be bored, *inf.*, aburrirse—20
 be born, *inf.*, nacer—29
 be called, *inf.*, llamarse—17
 be charmed, *inf.*, estar encantada—29
 be desperately in love with each other, *inf.*, amarse con delirio—33
 be envious, *inf.*, tener envidia—21
 be exceedingly good, *inf.*, ser un pedazo de pan—13; ser un alma de Dios—30
 be exceedingly stupid, *inf.*, ser un pedazo de atún—28
 be frightened, *inf.*, asustarse—38
 be hopeful, *inf.*, tener esperanza—21
 be hungry, *inf.*, tener hambre—18
 be in good humor, *inf.*, estar de buen humor—24
 be jealous, *inf.*, tener celos—21
 be of the same age, *inf.*, tener la misma edad—31
 be penniless, *inf.*, estar a la cuarta pregunta—13
 be right, *inf.*, tener razón—22
 be seated, *inf.*, estar sentado—28
 be sleepy, *inf.*, tener sueño—18
 be standing, *inf.*, estar de pie—28
 be thirsty, *inf.*, tener sed—18
 be worth, *inf.*, valer—33
 beans, frijoles, judías—7
 bear, oso—34
 beautiful, hermoso—18; bella—25
 beauty, belleza—30; beldad—33
 because, porque—3
 bed, cama—26
 bed clothing, ropa de cama—26
 bedroom, dormitorio—18
 bee, abeja—27
 beefsteak, bistec—5
 beet, remolacha—7
 before, antes, antes de—5; delante (por delante)—29

- before a notary public, ante un notario público—37
 begin, *inf.*, principiar—12; empezar—26
 begin to, *inf.*, ponerse a—38
 begin to appear, *inf.*, asomarse—38
 being (noun), sér—33
 being of sound mind, estando en su sano juicio—37
 Belgian, belga—22
 Belgium, Bélgica—19
 believe, *inf.*, creer—22
 believer, creyente—32
 bell, timbre, campana—36
 belong, pertenecer—25
 belt, cinturón—11
 berth, litera—39
 beseech, *inf.*, suplicar—32
 besides, además—17
 better, mejor—21
 between, entre—17
 between twelve and one o'clock, de doce a una—17
 beverage, bebida—6
 bicycle, bicicleta—32
 bill of fare, lista de los platos—8
 bill of lading, conocimiento de embarque—31
 bird, pájaro—18
 birthday, cumpleaños—25
 biscuit, galleta—8; bizcocho—38
 bite, *inf.*, morder—31
 bite, mordisco—32
 bitter, amargo—27
 bitterly, amargamente—38
 bitterness, amargura—25
 black, negro—10
 blackberry, zarzamora—8
 blackboard, pizarra—28
 blanket, frazada—26
 blind, ciego—31
 blind in one eye, tuerto—31
 blond, rubio—29
 blood, sangre—16
 blotter, papel secante—35
 blouse, blusa—10
 blow, golpe—32
 blow with a thrown stone, pedrada—32
 blue, azul—21
 board (ships), *inf.*, embarcarse—39
 boarding house, casa de huéspedes—27
 boiled dinner, cocido—17
 boiling hot, hirviendo—19
 Bolivia, Bolivia—13
 Bolivian, boliviano—22
 bonbon, bombón—7
 bone, hueso—16
 book, libro—11
 bookkeeper, tenedor de libros—31
 bookstore, librería—23
 bottle, botella—6
 bottom, fondo—39
 bouquet, ramo de flores—25
 bow (of a ship) proa—39
 bow, lazo—33
 bowl, escudilla—5
 box, caja—10
 boy, muchacho—28
 bracelet, brazalete—33
 brain, cerebro—16
 bray, *inf.*, rebuznar—31
 Brazilian, brasileño—22
 bread, pan—4
 bread and butter, pan y mantequilla—4
 break, *inf.*, romper—36
 break one's cartilage, *inf.*, desternillarse—40
 breakfast, almuerzo—17
 breakfast, *inf.*, almorzar—17
 breakfast lightly, *inf.*, desayunar—17
 breaking into a thousand pieces, haciendo añicos—38
 breastpin, prendedor—33
 breathe, *inf.*, respirar—24
 bride, novia—33
 bring, *inf.*, traer—36
 broad-toed (speaking of shoes), de punta ancha—14
 broom, escoba—23
 brother, hermano—13
 brother-in-law, cuñado—13
 brown, moreno—21
 Buenos Aires, Buenos Aires—3
 building, edificio—18
 bull, toro—34
 bus, ómnibus—18
 business house, casa de comercio—23
 but, pero—6
 butcher, carnicero—12
 butter, mantequilla—4
 butterfly, mariposa—33
 button, botón—10
 buttonhole, ojal—10
 button hook, abrochador—11
 buy, *inf.*, comprar—5
 buzz, *inf.*, zumbar—31
 by, por—5
 by means of, por medio de—33

C

- cabbage, col.—7
 cage, jaula—38
 cake of soap, pastilla de jabón—10
 calamity, calamidad—14
 calendar, calendario—35
 calf, ternera—5
 calfskin, becerro—14
 call, *inf.*, llamar—29
 calmness, calma—38
 camel, camello—32

- camera**, máquina fotográfica—40
can (noun), lata—7
Canada, Canadá—19
Canadian, canadiense—22
canary bird, canario—32
candle, vela—36
candy, dulces—6
cap, gorra—10
capital (city), capital—3
caramel, caramelo—7
cardinal, cardinal—15
cardinal numbers, números cardinales—15
care, cuidado—24
career (in the sense of course of studies), carrera—21
caress, caricia—29
carnation, clavel—20
carpenter, carpintero—23
carpet, alfombra—23
carriage, coche—18
carrot, zanahoria—7
carry, inf., llevar—28
case, caso—14; funda—38
cashier, cajero—31
cast, inf., echar—38
cat, gato—20
catalogue, catálogo—35
catastrophe, catástrofe—36
catch a cold, inf., resfriarse—24
cathedral, catedral—23
cauliflower, coliflor—4
cause, causa—37
ceiling, techo—18
celebrated, célebre—22
celery, apio—6
celestial, celestial—26
cellar, bodega—18
cello, violoncelo—20
cent, centavo—34
center, centro—20
cereal, cereal—5
cerebral, cerebral—37
certain, cierta—29
certain ideas, ciertas ideas—32
chair, silla—23
chalk, tiza—28
chapter, capítulo—30
character, carácter—30
charitable, caritativo—32
charity begins at home, la caridad bien ordenada empieza por uno mismo—30
charm, inf., encantar—29
chauffeur, chófer—17
cheek, mejilla—16
cheese, queso—6
cherry, cereza—6
chest, pecho—16
chestnut, castaña—8
chew, inf., masticar—24
chicken, pollo—6; . . . -broth, caldo de gallina—11
children, niños—20
Chile, Chile—3
Chilean, chileno—22
chimney, chimenea—37
chin, barba—16
China, China—19
Chinaman, chino—22
chocolate, chocolate—5
chosen, elegido—33
Christmas, Navidad—34
church, iglesia—23
cinnamon color, canela—21
circular (noun), circular—35
circus, circo—40
city, ciudad—14
civilized, civilizado—21
clam, almeja—6
clamour, vocerío—36
class, clase—6
classmate, condiscípulo—28
classroom, sala de clase—11
clean, limpia—19
clean, inf., limpiar—19
clean oneself, inf., asearse—26
clear, clara—29
clearly, claramente—24
clerk, dependiente—31
clock, reloj de pared—23
close, inf., cerrar—18
close to, junto a—28
clothes brush, cepillo para la ropa—11
clothing, ropa—17
clown, payaso—40
coachman, cochero—17
coal, carbón—23
coal man, carbonero—23
coal yard, carbonería—23
coat, chaqueta—9
cocoa, cacao—9
cocoanut, coco—7
codfish, bacalao—7
coffee, café—4
coffee with milk, café con leche—5
coffeepot, cafetera—23
cold, fría, frío—19
collar, cuello—10
collection, colección—25
collector, coleccionista—22
college, colegio—23
colon, dos puntos—27
color, color—18
Colombia, Colombia—13
Colombian, colombiano—22
comb, peine—19
comb one's hair, inf., peinarse—19
come, inf., venir—25
come (or go) down, inf., bajar—36
comedian, actor cómico—30

- comedy, comedia—30
 comic, cómico—30
 comma, coma—27
 commerce, comercio—23
 commercial, comercial—35
 company, compañía—20
 compartment, compartimiento—38
 complain, *inf.*, quejarse—24
 completely, completamente—32
 complication, complicación—37
 compromise, compromiso—33
 concert, concierto—20
 conciseness, concisión—33
 condensed milk, leche condensada—6
 conditional, condicional—34
 condolence, pésame—40
 conductor, cobrador—34
 confectioner, confitero—12
 confectionery store, confitería—7
 conflagration, incendio—36
 confusion, confusión—38
 congratulations, felicitaciones—40
 conjugate, *inf.*, conjugar—11
 conjugation, conjugación—11
 conscience, conciencia—40
 consequence, consecuencia—31
 consequently, por consiguiente—6
 consideration, consideración—12
 consist, *inf.*, consistir—17
 consonant, consonante—3
 constantly, constantemente—23
 construct, *inf.*, construir—39
 contain, *inf.*, contener—38
 contents, contenido—36
 continually, continuamente—37
 continent, continente—3
 continue, *inf.*, continuar—3
 contralto, contralto—30
 contrary, contrario—22
 conversation, conversación—25
 conveyance, vehículo—34
 cook (fem.), cocinera—17
 cook, *inf.*, cocinar—25
 cook book, libro de cocina—25
 cooked, cocido—5
 cooking pot, puchero—23
 copiously, copiosamente—35
 coral, coral—22
 cord, cuerda—14
 corkscrew, tirabuzón—23
 corn, maíz—35
 cornet, corneta—20
 corporal, corporal—16
 corporal senses, sentidos corporales—16
 correct, correcto—3
 correctly, correctamente—31
 correspondent, corresponsal—31
 Costa Rica, Costa Rica—13
 Costa Rican, costarricense—22
 cot, catre—26
 cotton, algodón—10
 couch, canapé—23
 cough, *inf.*, toser—24
 count, *inf.*, contar—29
 counted, contado—19
 country, país (nation)—20; campo (field)—26
 country home, casa de campo—40
 course, curso—40
 courtesy, cortesía—9
 courtyard, patio—18
 cousin, primo—13
 cover (as to book), forro—40; tapa—40
 covered, cubierta—38
 coverlet, colcha—26
 cow, vaca—5
 crab, cangrejo—7
 cradle, cuna—37
 cranberry, arándano—8
 crash!, ¡cataplún!—38
 crazy, loco—37
 cream, crema—7
 create, *inf.*, crear—26
 creation, creación—30
 creature, criatura—29
 credit, crédito—19
 cricket, grillo—33
 crocodile, cocodrilo—34
 cross, *inf.*, cruzar—39
 cross-eyed, bizca—31
 cry, *inf.*, llorar—38
 crystal, cristal—8
 crystal (or glass) pitcher, jarro de cristal—8
 crystalline, cristalino—23
 Cuba, Cuba—13
 Cuban, cubano—22
 cucumber, pepino—7
 cuff, puño—9
 culture, cultura—21
 cunning action (of a child), monería—29
 cup, taza—5
 cure, *inf.*, curar—24
 curly, rizado—29
 curly hair, pelo rizado—29
 currant, grosella—8
 cushion, almohadón—26
 custard, flan—8
 custom, costumbre—17
 customer, parroquiano—27
 cut, *inf.*, cortar—5
 cymbals, platillos—20

D

- dairy, lechería—7
 daisy, margarita—20
 dance, *inf.*, bailar—20
 dancer, *f.*, bailarina—30
 Dane, dinamarqués—22

darn, *inf.*, zurcir—25
date (fruit), dátil—8
dawn, *inf.*, amanecer—26
days, días—9
days of the week, días de la semana—12
deaf, sordo—30
deafening, ensordecedor—38
dear, querido—30
December, diciembre—12
deep, profundo—30
deep bass, bajo profundo—30
deep impression, honda impresión—32
deeply, profundamente—38
deer, ciervo—34
delicate, delicado—25
delicious, delicioso—29
delight, delicia—20; deleite—39
delightful times, ratos deliciosos—29
delirium, delirio—33
deliver, *inf.*, entregar—36
demand, *inf.*, exigir—37
Denmark, Dinamarca—19
dentist, dentista—21
depart, *inf.*, partir—31
depart to a better world, *inf.*, partir a mundos mejores—37
derby hat, sombrero hongo—11
deserved, merecida—30
desire, *inf.*, desear—4
desires, ganas—18
dessert, postre—8
destruction, destrucción—36
detail, detalle—29
dialogue, diálogo—10
diamond, diamante—33
dictate, *inf.*, dictar—31
dictionary, diccionario—29
different, diferente—34
difficult, difícil—28
difficulty, dificultad—4
digestion, digestión—24
die, *inf.*, morir—37
diminute, diminuto—33
dine, *inf.*, comer—4
dining room, comedor—18
direct, *inf.*, dirigir—27
director, director—20
dirty, sucia—17
disagreeable, desagradable—24
disappointment, desengaño—37
discharge (a duty), desempeñar—30
disinfectant, desinfectante—24
distance, lontananza—39
distinguished, distinguido—25
distributed, repartidas—33
disturb, *inf.*, disturbar—18
divinely, divinamente—20
do, *inf.*, hacer—16
do me, hágame—3

do me the favor of, hágame usted el favor de—11
dog, perro—20
dollar, dólar—33
dolphin, delfín—39
Dominican, dominicano—22
donkey, burro—31
door, puerta—18
dormitory, dormitorio—18
doubt, *inf.*, dudar—32
dowry, dote—33
dozen, docena—40
drama, drama—30
dramatic creation, creación dramática—30
draw, *inf.*, sacar—28
drawing, dibujo—40
dream, *inf.*, soñar—18
dream (noun), ensueño—39
dress, vestido—27
dress, *inf.*, vestir—34
dress in one's Sunday best, *inf.*, vestir con lo mejor del baúl—34
dresscoat, frac—10
dressing-gown, bata—36
dressings-table, tocador—19
dressmaker, modista—27
drink, *inf.*, beber—4
dromedary, dromedario—34
drop (of a liquid), gota—38
drug store, farmacia—24
dry oneself, *inf.*, secarse—19
dry-goods store, tienda—10
due to, debido a—24
dumb, mudo—31
duration, duración—15
during, durante—26
dust, polvo—19

E

each, cada—15
eagle, águila—34
ear, oreja—16
ear of corn, mazorca de maíz—7
early, temprano—10
earn, *inf.*, ganar—30
ease, facilidad—4
easily, fácilmente—27
east, este—23
easy, fácil—4
eat, *inf.*, comer—4
eatables, comestibles—6
economic, económica—23
Ecuador, Ecuador—13
Ecuadorian, ecuatoriano—22
edge, esquina—38
eel, anguila—9
egg, huevo—4
egg-beater, batidor de huevos—23

eggplant, berenjena—8
 eight, ocho—9
 eight hundred, ochocientos—15
 eighteen, dieciocho—14
 eighth, octava—8
 eighty, ochenta—15
 ejecting smoke, vomitando humo—38
 elbow, codo—27
 eldest son, hijo mayor—27
 electric car, tranvía eléctrico—18
 elegance, elegancia—33
 elegant, elegante—10
 elephant, elefante—29
 elevator, *m.*, ascensor—35
 eleven, once—14
 eleventh, undécima—11
 embrace (noun), abrazo—29
 embroider, *inf.*, bordar—25
 eminent, eminente—30
 emphasis, énfasis—24
 employee, empleado—31
 encyclopedia, enciclopedia—37
 end, *inf.*, terminar—15; acabar—28
 end, fin—27
 endless, interminable—37
 endless number, infinidad—16
 engagement ring, anillo de compromiso—33
 engineer, ingeniero—21
 engineering, ingeniería—21
 England, Inglaterra—3
 English, inglés—12
 engraved, grabadas—40
 enjoy, *inf.*, gozar—24
 enough, bastante—4
 ensemble (or whole) of perfections, conjunto de perfecciones—25
 enthusiasm, entusiasmo—31
 entire, entero—23
 envy, envidia—21
 equivalent, equivalente—12
 eraser, borrador—28; . . . (for pencil or ink), goma de borrar—35
 error, error—32
 especially, especialmente—13
 essential, esencial—24
 establishment, establecimiento—35
 etc., etcétera—14
 Europe, Europa—18
 event, suceso—27; acontecimiento—33
 every day, todos los días—14
 every other day, un día sí y otro no—27
 everybody, todo el mundo—20
 everything that there is, todo lo que hay—8
 everywhere, en todas las partes—10
 examination, examen—40
 examination time, época de los exámenes—40
 example, ejemplo—15

excellent, excelente—31
 except, excepto—24
 exception, excepción—17
 excuse me, dispénsame—9
 execution, ejecución—38
 execution of the will, testamentaria—37
 exercise, ejercicio—3
 exist, *inf.*, existir—4
 expect, *inf.*, esperar—37
 experiment, experimento—21
 expert accountant, perito mercantil—21
 export, *inf.*, exportar—18
 export department, departamento de exportación—31
 exportation, exportación—31
 exporter, exportador—18
 express, expreso—39
 express, *inf.*, expresar—32
 expressions of courtesy, expresión de cortesía—9
 expressive, expresivo—22
 extract, extracto—25
 extraordinary, extraordinario—25
 extraordinary merit, mérito extraordinario—25
 eyebrow, ceja—16
 eyelash, pestaña—16
 eyelid, párpado—16

F

face, *inf.*, dar a—18
 face, cara—16
 face powder, polvos para la cara—25
 face veil, velo para la cara—11
 facilitate, *inf.*, facilitar—26
 factory, fábrica—31
 fail, *inf.*, dejar de—26
 fail to pass in the subject, reprobar la asignatura—40
 fairly large, bastante grande—31
 fairly long, bastante largas—33
 fairly well, bastante bien—4
 faithful, fiel—24
 fall, *inf.*, caer—35
 fall asleep, quedarse dormido—36
 family, familia—17
 famous, famosa—20
 fan, abanico—10
 far away (or distant) land, tierra lejana—39
 farewell, despedida—39
 fashion, moda—40
 fatal moment, fatal momento—38
 father, padre—13; papá—27
 favor, favor—3
 favorite, predilecto—20; favorito—34
 fear, miedo—19
 fear, *inf.*, temer—32
 feature (of the face), facción—24

- February**, febrero—12
feel, *inf.*, sentir—32
fervent, ferviente—32
fiancée, prometida—33
fifteen, quince—14
fifth, quinta—5
fifty, cincuenta—15
fifty-two, cincuenta y dos—15
fifty thousand, cincuenta mil—15
fig, higo—7
fight the flames, *inf.*, luchar con las llamas—36
figure, *inf.*, figurar—30
Filipino, filipino—22
filter, filtro—37
final examination, examen de fin de curso—40
finally, por último—5
find, *inf.*, encontrar—25
finger, dedo—16
finger nail, uña—16
fingers of the hand, dedos de la mano—16
fire, incendio, fuego—36
fire-engine, bomba de incendio—36
fireman, bombero—36
firm believer, firme creyente—32
first, primero—3
first class typist, mecanógrafo de primera—31
first cousin, primo carnal—31
fish, pescado—6
fish market, pescadería—7
fit, *inf.*, sentar (as to clothing)—34
five, cinco—9
five hundred, quinientos—15
five hundred thousand, quinientos mil—15
flash of lightning, relámpago—35
flask, frasco—39
flight (of birds), vuelo—39
flock of sea gulls, bandada de gaviotas—39
flock of sheep, rebaño de ovejas—33
floor, suelo—18
flour, harina—9
flower, flor—18
flower vase, florero—23
flute, flauta—20
fly (noun), mosca—18
flying (fish), (pez) volador—39
flying fish, pez volador—39
foam, espuma—39
followed, seguida—19
following, siguiente—9
fondness, afición—27
food, alimento—24
foolish, tonto—22
foot, pie—16
for, para—8
for cash, al contado—19
for example, por ejemplo—15
for me, para mí—18
for other reasons, por otras razones—15
for this reason, por esta razón—6
forbid, *inf.*, prohibir—32
forehead, frente—24
foreigner, extranjero—20
forest, bosque—27
forget, *inf.*, olvidar—15
forget-me-not, nomeolvides—20
fork, tenedor—5
form, forma—14
formidable, formidable—36
forty, cuarenta—15
forty thousand, cuarenta mil—15
fountain, fuente—18
fountain-pen, pluma estilográfica—40
four, cuatro—9
four hundred, cuatrocientos—15
fourteen, catorce—14
fourth, cuarta—4
fox, zorro—34
France, Francia—3
freak of nature, aborto de la naturaleza—40
French, francés—22
fresh, fresco—7
friction, fricción—37
Friday, viernes—12
fried, frito—5
fried egg, huevo frito—5
fried potato, patata frita—5
friend, amigo—13
frock coat, levita—10
frog, rana—32
from, desde—23
fruit, fruta—5
fruit dealer, frutero—12
fruit store, frutería—7
fruit tree, árbol frutal—26
frying-pan, sartén—23
fulfil, *inf.*, cumplir—35
full, lleno—26
full length mirror, espejo de cuerpo entero—23
funnel, embudo—23
fur coat, abrigo de pieles—10
furnish, *inf.*, amueblar—23
furniture store, mueblería—23
future (indicative), futuro (indicativo)—6
future perfect (indicative), futuro perfecto (indicativo)—29
future perfect subjunctive, futuro perfecto de subjuntivo—39
future subjunctive, futuro de subjuntivo—39

G

garden, jardín—20
 gardener, jardinero—17
 gargle, gárgara—24
 garlic, ajo—7
 garment, prenda de vestir—26
 garters, ligas—11
 gather, *inf.*, reunir—36
 gathering, concurrencia—20
 gay, alegre—21
 generally, generalmente—5
 generous, generoso—17
 gentleman, caballero—11
 geography, geografía—40
 geometry, geometría—40
 German, alemán—22
 Germany, Alemania—19
 get, *inf.*, conseguir—35
 get a hair cut, *inf.*, hacerse cortar el pelo—27
 get a shave, *inf.*, hacerse afeitar—27
 get married, *inf.*, casarse—33
 get nervous, *inf.*, ponerse nervioso—40
 get seasick, *inf.*, marearse—39
 get the baggage ready, *inf.*, arreglar el equipaje—39
 get up, *inf.*, levantarse—19
 get wet, *inf.*, mojarse—35
 gift, regalo—25
 giraffe, girafa—34
 give, *inf.*, dar—14
 gladden, *inf.*, alegrarse—29
 glance, ojeada—38
 glass, vaso—5
 glove, guante—9
 go, *inf.*, ir—12
 go on board, *inf.*, embarcarse—39
 go out, *inf.*, salir—26
 go to bed, *inf.*, acostarse—36
 go up, *inf.*, subir—36
 God, Dios—30
 God willing, Dios mediante—34
 goddaughter, ahijada—25
 godfather, padrino—25
 godmother, madrina—25
 godparents, padrinos—25
 gold, oro—14
 good, bueno—6
 good afternoon, buenas tardes—9
 good evening, buenas noches—9
 good morning, buenos días—9
 good-bye, adiós—9
 good-bye for a while, hasta luego—9
 good-bye forever, adiós para siempre—9
 good-looking, guapo—31
 goose, ganso—32
 graceful, graciosa—25
 grandfather, abuelo—13
 grandparents, abuelos—13

grandson, nieto—13
 granulated, granulado—8
 granulated or lump sugar, azúcar granulado o en terrones—8
 grape, uva—6
 grapefruit, toronja—7
 grape juice, mosto—6
 grass, hierba—18
 grasshopper, saltamontes—33
 gratefulness, agradecimiento—38
 gray, gris—21
 great-grandfather, bisabuelo—13
 great-grandson, biznieto—13
 greater, mayor—27
 Greece, Grecia—19
 Greek, griego—22
 green, verde—21
 greet, *inf.*, saludar—39
 grocery store, tienda de comestibles—23
 group, grupo—28
 grow dark, *inf.*, anochecer—26
 grown-up person, persona mayor—20
 Guatemala, Guatemala—13
 Guatemalan, guatemalteco—22
 guest, huesped—27
 guitar, guitarra—20
 gum (of the mouth), encía—16
 gun, fusil—37
 gymnasium, gimnasio—24
 gymnastics, gimnasia—40

H

haberdashery, camisería—27
 hair-pin, horquilla, 11
 half, media—14
 halibut, mero—9
 ham, jamón—5
 hand, mano—16
 hand bag, bolsa de mano—11
 handkerchief, pañuelo—9
 happiness, felicidad—32
 happy, feliz—19
 hard-boiled egg, huevo cocido—5
 hard-hearted, empedernido—37
 hardware store, ferretería—23
 harmonica, armónica—27
 harmony, armonía—26
 harp, harpa—20
 hat, sombrero—9
 hat store, sombrerería—9
 hatter, sombrerero—12
 hat (or clothes) rack, percha—23
 hatred, odio—21
 Havana cigar, cigarro habano—37
 have, *inf.*, tener—7
 have a cold, *inf.*, estar resfriado—24
 have a mind to, *inf.*, tener ganas de—18
 have just, *inf.*, acabar de—28
 have to, *inf.*, tener que—24

he, él—4
 he does not see beyond his nose, no ve
 más allá de sus narices—28
 head, cabeza—16
 health, salud—22
 hear, *inf.*, oír—20
 hearing (sense of), oído—16
 heart, corazón—16
 heat, *inf.*, calentar—26
 heaven, cielo—29
 heavy meal, comida fuerte—17
 heel (of shoe), tacón—14
 heir, heredero—37
 hello!, ¡hola!—27
 help (noun), socorro—38
 hen, gallina—11
 here, aquí—32
 heroism, heroísmo—36
 high, alto—14
 high sea, alta mar—39
 high shoe, bota—10
 higher courts, tribunales superiores—37
 hip, cadera—16
 hippopotamus, hipopótamo—34
 his, su—21
 historical, histórico—39
 history, historia—40
 hoarse, ronca—36
 hold, *inf.*, contener—38
 Holland, Holanda—19
 Hollander, holandés—22
 holy, santo—13 and 33
 holy bonds of matrimony, santo lazo del
 matrimonio—33
 Honduran, hondureño—22
 Honduras, Honduras—13
 honest, honrado—37
 honesty, honradez—17
 honey, miel—6
 honeymoon, luna de miel—33
 hope, esperanza—21
 horizon, horizonte—38
 horrible, horrible—24
 horribly, horriblemente—20
 horse, caballo—20
 hose (fire hose), manguera—36
 hospital, hospital—9
 hot, caliente—19
 hotel, hotel—9
 hour, hora—15
 house, casa—8
 how are you? ¿cómo está usted?—10
 how disagreeable! ¡qué desagradable!—
 24
 how glad I am to see you! ¡cuánto me
 alegro de verle!—27
 how long, ¿cuánto tiempo?—15
 how sad! ¡qué triste!—24
 how well you look to-day! ¡qué buen
 semblante tiene usted hoy!—27

huge flames, enormes llamas—36
 hum, *inf.*, tararear—39
 human, humano—16
 human being, ser humano—16
 humor, humor—24
 hunchback, jorobado—31
 hunger, hambre—18
 hurriedly, de prisa—24
 hurry, prisa—24
 husband, esposo—13
 hymn, himno—39

I

I, yo—4
 I am cold, tengo frío—19
 I am neither cold nor warm, no tengo
 ni frío ni calor—19
 I am this way, yo soy así—35
 I am very sorry, siento infinito—32
 I am warm, tengo calor—19
 I do not understand, yo no comprendo—
 3
 I fear the worst, temo lo peor—40
 I say the exact truth, digo la pura verdad
 —24
 ice, hielo—35
 ice cream, helado—6
 idea, idea—3
 ideal, *adj.*, ideal—25
 ideals (noun), ideales—21
 if, si—5
 if he succeeded in inheriting, si él llegase
 a heredar—37
 if you please, por favor—39
 ill, enfermo—22
 illuminate, *inf.*, iluminar, 39
 image, imagen—26
 imagination, imaginación—13
 imagine, *inf.*, imaginarse—32
 imitate, *inf.*, imitar—28
 immediately, inmediatamente—11; en
 seguida—31
 immediately after, en seguida de—19;
 en seguida que—26
 immense, inmensa—30
 immense popularity, popularidad in-
 mensa—30
 immensely, inmensamente—27
 imperative, imperativo—31
 imperfect (indicative), imperfecto (in-
 dicativo)—26
 imperfect subjunctive, imperfecto de
 subjuntivo—34
 import, *inf.*, importar—18
 important, importante—4
 importer, importador—18
 impression, impresión—32
 in, en—3
 in a few days, dentro de pocos días—33

510 WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS USED IN THE LESSONS

- in a few hours, en unas cuantas horas—40
 in a nervous way, de un modo nervioso—36
 in a very pleasant way, de un modo muy agradable—11
 in front of, por delante—29
 in my turn, a mi vez—34
 in short, en fin—27
 in some way, de alguna manera—35
 in spite of that, a pesar de eso—28
 in the afternoon, por la tarde—5
 in the distance, en lontananza—39
 in the evening, por la noche—5
 in the morning, por la mañana—5
 in the position that he ought to, en la posición que debe—28
 in the same form (or way) as before, en la misma forma que antes—14
 in the same way, del mismo modo—20
 in the twinkling of an eye, en un santiamén—36
 in this way or fashion, de esta manera—11; de este modo—29
 incomparable, incomparable—26
 incorrect, incorrecto—3
 increase, aumento—40
 independence, independencia—22
 index finger, dedo índice—16
 indigestion, indigestión—24
 indisposed, indispuesto—24
 indisposition, indisposición—24
 industrious, trabajadora—25
 infant, criatura—29
 infinite, infinito—26
 inherit, *inf.*, heredar—37
 initials, iniciales—40
 ink, tinta—10
 inkstand, tintero—10
 innocent, inocente—28
 insect, insecto—27
 inseparable, inseparable—31
 instant, instante—39
 instead of, en vez de—28; en lugar de—38
 institution of learning, institución docente—21
 instrument, instrumento—20
 intellectual, intelectual—40
 intelligence, inteligencia—25
 intelligent, inteligente—21
 intense, intenso—26
 intense joy, goce intenso—26
 intensely, intensamente—21
 intention, intención—23
 interest, interés—34
 interior, interior—27
 interpreter, intérprete—31
 interrupt, *inf.*, interrumpir—26
 intervening, mediante—34
 intestine, intestino—16
 intimate, íntimo—21
 into, en—3
 invariably, invariablemente—17
 inveterate smoker, fumador empedernido—37
 invitation, invitación—33
 invoice, factura—31
 Ireland, Irlanda—19
 Irish, irlandés—22
 iron, *inf.*, planchar—25
 iron, hierro—26
 is, es—3
 is in the habit of taking (referring to walks), suele dar—27
 it is a very fine day, hace un día muy bueno—19
 it is bad weather, hace mal tiempo—19
 it is cold, hace frío—19
 it is good weather, hace buen tiempo—19
 it is incredible, es increíble—35
 it is neither cold nor warm, no hace ni frío ni calor—19
 it is sunny, hace sol—19
 it is warm, hace calor—19
 it is windy, hace viento—19
 it is worth a large sum of money, vale un dineral—33
 Italian, italiano—22
 Italy, Italia—19
 ivory, marfil—35
- J
- January, enero—12
 Japan, Japón—19
 Japanese, japonés—22
 jaw, mandíbula—16
 jealousy, celos—21
 jelly, jalea—8
 jewel, joya—25
 jewelry store, joyería—25
 John Doe, Perico de los Palotes—33
 joy, alegría—18
 judge, juez—37
 judgment, juicio—30
 judge's sentence, sentencia del juez—37
 judging by, a juzgar por—38
 juice, zumo, jugo—9
 juicy, jugoso—26
 July, julio—12
 jump, *inf.*, saltar—29
 jump, salto—39
 jumps with joy, salta de alegría—29
 June, junio—12
 jury's decision, fallo del jurado—37
 justice, justicia—37

K

keep the books, *inf.*, llevar los libros—31
 key, llave—36
 kick, patada—32
 kick with the tip of the shoe, puntapié—32
 kid, cabrito—7
 kidskin, cabritilla—14
 kidney, riñón—16
 kill, *inf.*, matar—38
 kindness, bondad—25
 king, rey—40
 kiss, beso—29
 kitchen, cocina—18
 kitchen range, cocina económica—23
 kitchen utensils, utensilios de cocina—23
 knee, rodilla—16
 knife, cuchillo—5
 knock (or blow) with the head, cabezazo—32
 know, *inf.*, saber—19
 know with certainty, *inf.*, saber a ciencia cierta—29

L

laboratory, laboratorio—21
 lace, encaje—23
 lace curtain, cortina de encaje—23
 ladder, escalera—36
 lake, lago—23
 lamb, cordero—5
 lamb chop, costilla de cordero—5
 lame, cojo—31
 lamp, lámpara—26
 landlady, patrona—27
 language, idioma—4
 lapel, solapa—28
 large, grande—3
 large letter, letra gorda—35
 large sum of money, dineral—33
 lark, alondra—26
 last, *inf.*, durar—15
 last, último—18
 last night, anoche—20
 last will, testamento—37
 laugh, *inf.*, reír—24
 laughter, risa—25
 laundress, lavandera—17
 laundry, lavandería—17
 lavish, *inf.*, prodigar—29
 law, ley—37
 laws, leyes—21
 lawsuit, pleito—37
 lawyer, abogado—21
 leading man, primer actor—30
 leap year, año bisiesto—15
 learn, *inf.*, aprender—4

learn by heart, *inf.*, aprender de memoria—33
 learned man, sabio—21
 leather, cuero—28
 leather strap, correa de cuero—28
 leave, *inf.*, dejar—26
 left, izquierda—16
 left hand, mano izquierda—16
 left side, costado izquierdo—32
 leg, pierna—16
 leg of kid, pierna de cabrito—7
 leg of lamb, pierna de cordero—7
 leg of mutton, pierna de carnero—7
 lemon, limón—7
 lemon drop, pastilla de limón—7
 lemonade, limonada—4
 lend, *inf.*, prestar—11
 lend to me, *inf.*, prestarme—11
 less, menos—14
 lesson, lección—3
 letter (of the alphabet), letra—3; carta—31
 lettuce, lechuga—6
 liberty, libertad—22
 library, biblioteca—23
 lie, mentira—24
 life, vida—22
 light, *inf.*, encender—26; iluminar—39
 light, ligera, adj.—17; luz—18
 light breakfast, desayuno—17
 light meal, comida ligera—17
 light soprano, tiple ligera—30
 like, *inf.*, simpatizar (also to be congenial)—29
 Lima, Lima—3
 linen, ropa blanca—17
 lion, león—34
 lip, labio—16
 listen, *inf.*, escuchar—11
 literary, literaria—30
 literary gem, joya literaria—30
 little, poco—4
 little (or small) child, chiquillo—29
 little finger, dedo meñique—16
 little window, ventanilla—38
 live, *inf.*, vivir—4
 liver, hígado—16
 llama, llama (animal)—34
 loafer, vago—40
 loafing, haciendo el vago—40
 lobster, langosta—6
 loin of pork, lomo de cerdo—7
 London, Londres—3
 long, larga—27
 look for, *inf.*, buscar—32
 look for trouble, *inf.*, buscar camorra—32
 look out of the window, *inf.*, asomarse a la ventanilla—38
 lose, *inf.*, perder—38

love, *inf.*, amar—33
 love, amor—21
 love oneself, *inf.*, amarse—33
 love repays (or begets) love, amor con amor se paga—32
 loving, amante—29
 low, bajo—14
 lukewarm, tibia—19
 lumps, terrones—8
 lunatic, lunática—37
 lunch, *inf.*, merendar—17
 lunch, merienda—17
 lung, pulmón—16
 luxurious, lujoso—40

M

macaroni, macarrones—8
 maddened, enloquecido—38
 Madrid, Madrid—3
 magazine, revista—35
 magnificent, magnífico—25
 magnifying glass, vidrio de aumento—40
 maid, doncella—17
 main post-office, administración general de correos—36
 main telegraph office, oficina central de telégrafos—36
 make, *inf.*, hacer—16
 make, fabricación—35
 make one's toilet, asearse—26
 make oneself understood, *inf.*, hacerse comprender—33
 make out the invoices, *inf.*, hacer las facturas—31
 make the beds, *inf.*, hacer las camas—25
 man, hombre—17
 manage, *inf.*, arreglarse—35
 mandolin, bandolín—20
 mantelpiece, repisa—38
 manufacturer, fabricante—31
 many times, muchas veces—8
 marble, mármol—20
 marble statue, estatua de mármol—20
 March, marzo—12
 marine, marina—33
 market, mercado—7
 marmalade, mermelada—5
 marriage, matrimonio—33; casamiento—33
 married, casado—31
 mason, albañil—23
 masterly, magistralmente—30
 masterpiece, obra maestra—30
 match, fósforo—11
 matter, materia—40
 mattress, colchón—26
 May, mayo—12
 me, me—10; mí—26
 meal, comida—17
 mean to say, *inf.*, querer decir—17
 means, medio—26
 meat, carne—4
 meat ball, albóndiga—8
 meat market, carnicería—7
 medicine, medicina—21
 melody, melodía—26
 melon, melón—6
 member, miembro—17
 memorable event or happening, memorable acontecimiento—33
 memory, memoria—32
 mend, *inf.*, remendar—25
 mentioned, mencionado—13
 menu, menú—17
 mercantile, mercantil—21
 merchandise, mercadería—18
 merchant, comerciante—18
 merciful, misericordioso—32
 merit, mérito—25
 messenger, mensajero—36
 mew, *inf.*, maullar—31
 Mexican, mejicano—22
 Mexico, Méjico—13
 microscope, microscopio—40
 middle finger, dedo cordial—16
 million, millón—13
 millionaire, millonario—13
 milk, leche—4
 milkman, lechero—12
 mine, mío—13
 mineral, mineral—7
 mineral water, agua mineral—7
 minute, minuto—14
 misery, miseria—25
 Miss, señorita—3
 mistake, equivocación—32
 mode, modo—11
 modern, moderna—26
 modern civilization, civilización moderna—26
 modest, modesta—25
 molar tooth, muela—32
 moment, momento—38
 Monday, lunes—12
 money, dinero—7
 monkey, mono—34
 month, mes—12
 months of the year, meses del año—12
 moral, moral—25
 morale, moral—25
 more, más—9
 more than, más que—15
 mosquito, mosquito—18
 most elegant, elegantísimo—33
 most important, importantísima—21
 mother, madre—13; mamá—29
 mother-in-law, suegra—13
 mother-of-pearl, nácar—35
 motive, motivo—37

mountain, montaña—23
mouse, ratón—34
move one's feelings, conmover—38
move one's heart, *inf.*, conmover el corazón—38
moving pictures, cinematógrafo—19
Mr., señor—3; don—33
Mrs., señora—3
much, mucho—4
muff, manguito—10
muffier, bufanda—11
municipal, municipal—20
municipal band, banda municipal—20
municipal court, juzgado municipal—37
muscle, músculo—16
museum, museo—23
mushroom, hongo—11
music, música—20
musical, musical—20
musician, músico—20
mustache, bigote—24
mustard, mostaza—8
mutton, carnero—5
mutton chop, costilla de carnero—5
my, mi—13
my heaven, mi cielo—29
my very, very little one, mi chiquirritín—29

N

nail, clavo—40
name, nombre—12
napkin, servilleta—8
narrow, estrecha—14
narrow pointed (speaking of shoes), de punta estrecha—14
nasal, nasal—16
nation, nación—3; país—20
naturally, naturalmente—21
nature, naturaleza—40
near, cerca de—18
necessary, necesario—4
necessity, necesidad—34
neck, cuello—10
necklace, collar—33
necktie, corbata—9
need, *inf.*, necesitar—8
need (noun), necesidad—34
needle, aguja—10
neighbor, vecino—28
neighborhood, vecindad—18
neither, tampoco—11
neither . . . nor, ni . . . ni—11
nephew, sobrino—13
nerve, nervio—16
nervous, nervioso—36
never, nunca—19
new, nuevo—12
newly wedded couple, recién casados—33

newspaper, periódico—30
next, próxima—9
next to the last, penúltimo—28
Nicaragua, Nicaragua—13
Nicaraguan, nicaragüense—22
nice, simpático—29
nickel, níquel—14
night, noche—29
night-watchman, sereno—17
nightingale, ruiseñor—33
nine, nueve—14
nine hundred, novecientos—15
nineteen, diecinueve—14
ninety, noventa—15
ninth, novena—9
no, no—3
nobody, nadie—20
noise, ruido—38
noon, mediodía—17
normal, regular—24
north, norte—23
Norway, Noruega—19
Norwegian, noruego—22
nose, nariz—16
nostril, fosa nasal—16
not even through the cover, ni por el forro—40
notary, notario—37
note, *inf.*, enterarse—36
noted, señalado—25
noted writer, escritor de nota—30
nothing, nada—6
notice, *inf.*, notar—27
novel, novela—30
novelist, novelista—30
novelty, novedad—33
November, noviembre—12
now, ahora—6
now and then, de cuando en cuando—8
number, número—15
nurse, enfermera—24
nut, nuez—6
nutcracker, cascanueces—8

O

oak, roble—18
oats, avena—35
observe, observar—26
obtain, obtener—29
occasion, ocasión—22
occupation, oficio—29
occupy, ocupar—38
ocean, océano—39
October, octubre—12
of, de—3
of course, por supuesto—40
of the, del—3
of the kind, de esos—32
of the latest fashion, de la más alta novedad—33

prince, príncipe—40
 princess, princesa—40
 principal, principal—20
 private (when referring to life), íntimo—21
 private secretary, secretario particular—31
 probable, probable—27
 procrastination is the thief of time, por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunca—30
 produce, *inf.*, producir—26
 producer, productor—30
 profession, profesión—21
 professor, profesor—20
 program, programa—35
 progress, progreso—21
 project, proyecto—27
 promenade, *inf.*, pasearse—26
 pronounce, *inf.*, pronunciar—3
 prophecy, profecía—35
 prophet, profeta—30
 prose, prosa—30
 proverb, proverbio—30
 public, público—37
 publish, *inf.*, publicar—30
 pumpkin, calabaza—7
 punch on the jaw, puñetazo en las muelas—32
 pupil, alumno—28
 pure, puro—26
 purple, morado—21
 put, *inf.*, poner—26
 put out, *inf.*, apagar—36
 put the shoes on, *inf.*, ponerse los zapatos—26

Q

quality, timbre (when speaking of voices)—24; calidad—37
 quarrel, riña—32
 quarrelsome, camorrista—32
 quarter, cuarto—14
 queen, reina—40
 question, pregunta—13
 quince, membrillo—9
 quinine, quinina—24

R

rabbit, conejo—32
 racket (for tennis), raqueta—32
 radish, rábano—7
 railroad, ferrocarril—10
 railroad station, estación del ferrocarril—10
 railroad ticket, billete de ferrocarril—10
 rain, *inf.*, llover—35
 rain, lluvia—35
 rain in torrents, *inf.*, llover a cántaros—35

rain-coat, impermeable—11
 rainbow, arco iris—35
 rare perfume, perfume raro—25
 rascal, tunante—29
 rat, rata—34
 raven, cuervo—34
 ravenous (or voracious) appetite, apé-
tito voraz—31
 razor, navaja de afeitar—27
 read, *inf.*, leer—21
 real work of art, verdadera obra de arte—35
 reason, razón—6
 rebuke, *inf.*, reprobar—40
 receive, *inf.*, recibir—25
 recite, *inf.*, recitar—28
 recollection, recuerdo—38
 recover, *inf.*, recobrar—32
 recreation, recreo—34
 red, colorado—21
 red-tape, expedienteo—37
 refined, fina—25
 refreshing, reparador (as to sleep)—26
 refreshing sleep, sueño reparador—26
 refreshment, refrigerio—17
 regards, recuerdos—38
 register (letters), *inf.*, certificar—39
 regular, regular—24
 rejoice, *inf.*, alegrarse—29
 relative, pariente—13
 relieved, aliviado—39
 relish (noun), entremés—17
 remain, *inf.*, quedarse—36
 remote, lejana—39
 remove, *inf.*, quitar—38
 repeat, *inf.*, repetir—3
 reputation, reputación—30
 research work, investigación—21
 resemble, *inf.*, parecerse—38
 resides, reside—3
 respectable, respetable—30
 respectable old lady, anciana respetable—30
 respective, respectiva—21
 respectively, respectivamente—3
 rest, resto—28; descanso—40
 restaurant, restaurant, fonda—8
 resume, *inf.*, reanudar—36
 retire, *inf.*, retirarse—20
 return, *inf.*, regresar—34
 reveal, *inf.*, revelar—27
 revolver, revólver—37
 reward, premio—40
 rhinoceros, rinoceronte—34
 rhubarb, ruibarbo—8
 rib, costilla—5
 rib of beef, costilla de vaca—5
 ribbon, cinta—11
 rice, arroz—7
 rice pudding, arroz con leche—8

rich, rico—13
 right, derecha—16
 right hand, mano derecha—16
 ring finger, dedo anular—16
 ring or sound the bell, *inf.*, sonar el timbre—36
 rivalry, rivalidad—37
 river, río—23
 roast beef, rosbif—5
 robust, robusto—24
 rock, *inf.*, mecer—39
 rocking-chair, mecedora—23
 roll, panecillo—5
 roof, tejado—18
 room, habitación—18
 rooster, gallo—26
 rooster's crow, canto del gallo—26
 round, redondo—35
 round looking-glass, espejo redondo—35
 rub, *inf.*, restregar—36
 rubbers, zapatos de goma—10
 ruby, rubí—22
 ruler, regla—35
 run, *inf.*, correr—32
 run fast, *inf.*, adelantar—14
 run slow, *inf.*, atrasar—14
 runs to the help of, corre en auxilio de—38
 Russia, Rusia—19
 Russian, ruso—22
 rye, centeno—35

S

sad, triste—22
 saint, santo (Santo Domingo)—13
 salad, ensalada—8
 salami, salchichón—17
 salary, salario—31
 salmon, salmón—8
 salt, sal—8
 saltcellar, salero—8
 Salvadorian, salvadoreño—22
 same, misma—6
 San Domingo, Santo Domingo—13
 San Salvador, San Salvador—13
 sandwich, emparedado—17
 sane, sano—37
 Santiago, Santiago—3
 sardine, sardina—6
 sarsaparilla, zarzaparrilla—6
 satin, raso—11
 satisfaction, satisfacción—22
 Saturday, sábado—12
 sauce, salsa—8
 saucer, platillo—8
 save, *inf.*, salvar—36
 saxophone, saxófono—20
 say, *inf.*, decir—13
 saying (noun), refrán—32

scarcely, apenas—27
 scarfpin, alfiler de corbata—40
 scholarship, aplicación—40
 school, escuela—21
 science, ciencia—29
 scientific, científica—21
 scissors, tijeras—10
 Scotch, escocés—22
 Scotland, Escocia—19
 scrambled egg, huevo revuelto—5
 scratch, *inf.*, arañar—31
 scratch, arañazo—32
 screen, biombo—23
 scrub, *inf.*, fregar—25
 sculptor, escultor—30
 sea, mar—23
 sea breeze, brisa marina—33
 seagull, gaviota—39
 seaman, marino—21
 seashore, playa—40
 seasickness, mareo—39
 seamstress, costurera—27
 season, estación—15; temporada (not used when speaking of the seasons of the year)—30
 seasons of the year, estaciones del año—15
 seat, asiento—38
 second (adj.), segundo—3
 second (noun), segundo—15
 second cousin, primo segundo—39
 secret, secreta—17
 see, *inf.*, ver—23
 seldom, rara vez—19
 semicircle, semicírculo—28
 semicolon, punto y coma—27
 send, *inf.*, enviar—35
 sensible, sensata—25
 sentence, oración—28
 September, septiembre—12
 serious, seria—40
 serpent, serpiente—34
 servant, criado—17
 serve, *inf.*, servir—17
 set, *inf.*, preparar—8
 seven, siete—9
 seven hundred, setecientos—15
 seventeen, diecisiete—14
 seventh, séptima—7
 seventy, setenta—15
 several, varias—13
 sew, *inf.*, coser—25
 shake hands, *inf.*, darse un apretón de manos—29
 sharp, en punto—14
 sharpen the pencil, *inf.*, sacar punta al lápiz—28
 shave, *inf.*, afeitar—27
 she, ella—4
 she-goat, cabra—34

prince, príncipe—40
princess, princesa—40
principal, principal—20
private (when referring to life), íntimo—21
private secretary, secretario particular—31
probable, probable—27
procrastination is the thief of time, por la calle de Después se va a la casa de Nunca—30
produce, *inf.*, producir—26
producer, productor—30
profession, profesión—21
professor, profesor—20
program, programa—35
progress, progreso—21
project, proyecto—27
promenade, *inf.*, pasearse—26
pronounce, *inf.*, pronunciar—3
prophecy, profecía—35
prophet, profeta—30
prose, prosa—30
proverb, proverbio—30
public, público—37
publish, *inf.*, publicar—30
pumpkin, calabaza—7
punch on the jaw, puñetazo en las muelas—32
pupil, alumno—28
pure, puro—26
purple, morado—21
put, *inf.*, poner—26
put out, *inf.*, apagar—36
put the shoes on, *inf.*, ponerse los zapatos—26

Q

quality, timbre (when speaking of voices)—24; calidad—37
quarrel, riña—32
quarrelsome, camorrista—32
quarter, cuarto—14
queen, reina—40
question, pregunta—13
quince, membrillo—9
quinine, quinina—24

R

rabbit, conejo—32
racket (for tennis), raqueta—32
radish, rábano—7
railroad, ferrocarril—10
railroad station, estación del ferrocarril—10
railroad ticket, billete de ferrocarril—10
rain, *inf.*, llover—35
rain, lluvia—35
rain in torrents, *inf.*, llover a cántaros—35

rain-coat, impermeable—11
rainbow, arco iris—35
rare perfume, perfume raro—25
rascal, tunante—29
rat, rata—34
raven, cuervo—34
ravenous (or voracious) appetite, apetito voraz—31
razor, navaja de afeitar—27
read, *inf.*, leer—21
real work of art, verdadera obra de arte—35
reason, razón—6
rebuke, *inf.*, reprobar—40
receive, *inf.*, recibir—25
recite, *inf.*, recitar—28
recollection, recuerdo—38
recover, *inf.*, recobrar—32
recreation, recreo—34
red, colorado—21
red-tape, expedienteo—37
refined, fina—25
refreshing, reparador (as to sleep)—26
refreshing sleep, sueño reparador—26
refreshment, refrigerio—17
regards, recuerdos—38
register (letters), *inf.*, certificar—39
regular, regular—24
rejoice, *inf.*, alegrarse—29
relative, pariente—13
relieved, aliviado—39
relish (noun), entremés—17
remain, *inf.*, quedarse—36
remote, lejana—39
remove, *inf.*, quitar—38
repeat, *inf.*, repetir—3
reputation, reputación—30
research work, investigación—21
resemble, *inf.*, parecerse—38
resides, reside—3
respectable, respetable—30
respectable old lady, anciana respetable—30
respective, respectiva—21
respectively, respectivamente—3
rest, resto—28; descanso—40
restaurant, restaurant, fonda—8
resume, *inf.*, reanudar—36
retire, *inf.*, retirarse—20
return, *inf.*, regresar—34
reveal, *inf.*, revelar—27
revolver, revólver—37
reward, premio—40
rhinoceros, rinoceronte—34
rhubarb, ruibarbo—8
rib, costilla—5
rib of beef, costilla de vaca—5
ribbon, cinta—11
rice, arroz—7
rice pudding, arroz con leche—8

rich, rico—13
 right, derecha—16
 right hand, mano derecha—16
 ring finger, dedo anular—16
 ring or sound the bell, *inf.*, sonar el timbre—36
 rivalry, rivalidad—37
 river, río—23
 roast beef, rosbif—5
 robust, robusto—24
 rock, *inf.*, mecer—39
 rocking-chair, mecedora—23
 roll, panecillo—5
 roof, tejado—18
 room, habitación—18
 rooster, gallo—26
 rooster's crow, canto del gallo—26
 round, redondo—35
 round looking-glass, espejo redondo—35
 rub, *inf.*, restregar—36
 rubbers, zapatos de goma—10
 ruby, rubí—22
 ruler, regla—35
 run, *inf.*, correr—32
 run fast, *inf.*, adelantar—14
 run slow, *inf.*, atrasar—14
 runs to the help of, corre en auxilio de—38
 Russia, Rusia—19
 Russian, russo—22
 rye, centeno—35

S

sad, triste—22
 saint, santo (Santo Domingo)—13
 salad, ensalada—8
 salami, salchichón—17
 salary, salario—31
 salmon, salmón—8
 salt, sal—8
 saltcellar, salero—8
 Salvadorian, salvadoreño—22
 same, misma—6
 San Domingo, Santo Domingo—13
 San Salvador, San Salvador—13
 sandwich, emparedado—17
 sane, sano—37
 Santiago, Santiago—3
 sardine, sardina—6
 sarsaparilla, zarzaparrilla—6
 satin, raso—11
 satisfaction, satisfacción—22
 Saturday, sábado—12
 sauce, salsa—8
 saucer, platillo—8
 save, *inf.*, salvar—36
 saxophone, saxófono—20
 say, *inf.*, decir—13
 saying (noun), refrán—32
 scarcely, apenas—27
 scarfpin, alfiler de corbata—40
 scholarship, aplicación—40
 school, escuela—21
 science, ciencia—29
 scientific, científica—21
 scissors, tijeras—10
 Scotch, escocés—22
 Scotland, Escocia—19
 scrambled egg, huevo revuelto—5
 scratch, *inf.*, arañar—31
 scratch, arañazo—32
 screen, biombo—23
 scrub, *inf.*, fregar—25
 sculptor, escultor—30
 sea, mar—23
 sea breeze, brisa marina—33
 seagull, gaviota—39
 seaman, marino—21
 seashore, playa—40
 seasickness, mareo—39
 seamstress, costurera—27
 season, estación—15; temporada (not used when speaking of the seasons of the year)—30
 seasons of the year, estaciones del año—15
 seat, asiento—38
 second (adj.), segundo—3
 second (noun), segundo—15
 second cousin, primo segundo—39
 secret, secreta—17
 see, *inf.*, ver—23
 seldom, rara vez—19
 semicircle, semicírculo—28
 semicolon, punto y coma—27
 send, *inf.*, enviar—35
 sensible, sensata—25
 sentence, oración—28
 September, septiembre—12
 serious, seria—40
 serpent, serpiente—34
 servant, criado—17
 serve, *inf.*, servir—17
 set, *inf.*, preparar—8
 seven, siete—9
 seven hundred, setecientos—15
 seventeen, diecisiete—14
 seventh, séptima—7
 seventy, setenta—15
 several, varias—13
 sew, *inf.*, coser—25
 shake hands, *inf.*, darse un apretón de manos—29
 sharp, en punto—14
 sharpen the pencil, *inf.*, sacar punta al lápiz—28
 shave, *inf.*, afeitar—27
 she, ella—4
 she-goat, cabra—34

518 WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS USED IN THE LESSONS

- sheep (sing.), oveja—33
- sheet (of a bed), sábana—26
- ship, buque—39
- shirt, camisa—9
- shirt bosom, pechera de la camisa—35
- shoe, zapato—9
- shoe-horn, calzador—11
- shoe-lace, cordón de zapatos—10
- shoe polish, betún—11
- shoemaker, zapatero—12
- shoe store, zapatería—9
- short, bajo—14; corto—28
- shorthand, taquigrafía—31
- shoulder, hombro—16
- shout, *inf.*, gritar—29
- shout, grito—38
- show, *inf.*, mostrar—38
- show, espectáculo—40
- showy, vistoso—38
- shrimp, camarón—6
- sidewalk, acera—23
- sight (sense of), vista—16
- silk, seda—10
- silk hat, sombrero de copa—10
- silver, plata—14
- similar, semejante—36
- since several months ago, hace ya varios meses—33
- sincerely hope, *inf.*, hacer votos fervientes—32
- sing, *inf.*, cantar—18
- singer, cantante—30
- singular and plural, singular y plural—14
- sit down, siéntese—27
- six, seis—9
- six hundred, seiscientos—15
- sixteen, dieciseis—14
- sixth, sexta—6
- sixty, sesenta—15
- skates, patines—32
- skin, cutis—24
- skirt, falda—10
- slap, bofetada—32
- sleep, sueño—18
- sleep, *inf.*, dormir—18
- slice, loncha—17
- slice of bread, rebanada de pan—8
- slight, leve—27
- slipper, zapatilla—11
- slowly, despacio—24
- small, pequeña, chica—7
- small bottle of extract, botellita de extracto—25
- small cakes, pastelillos—8
- smaller, menor—27
- smart, listo—22
- smell (sense of), olfato—16
- smoke, humo—36
- smoke, *inf.*, fumar—37
- snake, culebra—34
- sneeze, *inf.*, estornudar—24
- snore, *inf.*, roncar—24
- snow, *inf.*, nevar—35
- snow, nieve—35
- snow hard or abundantly, *inf.*, nevar copiosamente—35
- So and So.(Mr.), Fulano de Tal—33
- so bitterly, tan amargamente—38
- so many, tantos—25
- so, so, así, así—20
- soap, jabón—10
- society, sociedad—17
- socks, calcetines—9
- sofa, sofá—23
- soft, suave—33
- soft-boiled egg, huevo pasado por agua—5
- soft hat, sombrero blando—11
- soldier, militar, soldado—21
- sole (of shoes), suela—14
- some, alguna—5
- someone, alguien—14
- something, algo—6
- sometimes, alguna vez—5
- son, hijo—13
- son-in-law, yerno—13
- song, canción—18
- sonorous, sonora—24
- soon, pronto—10
- sorrow, pena—25
- soul, alma—30
- sound, *inf.*, sonar—36
- soup, sopa—5
- south, sur—23
- South America, América del Sur—14
- space, espacio—18
- spacious, espaciosa—24
- Spain, España—3
- Spanish, español—3
- Spanish American, hispanoamericano—33
- sparrow, gorrión—32
- speak, *inf.*, hablar—4
- spend the summer, veranear—40
- spider, araña—34
- spinach, espinaca—7
- spinal chord, espina dorsal—28
- split one's sides with laughter, *inf.*, desternillarse de risa—40
- sponge, esponja—11
- spool of thread or cotton, carrete de hilo—10
- spoon, cuchara—5
- spring, primavera—15, manantial—7
- spring water, agua de manantial—7
- square, plaza—20
- squeeze, apretón—29
- stable, establo—23
- stammer, *inf.*, tartamudear—31

stateroom, camarote—39
stationery, efectos de escritorio—23
steamer, vapor—10
stern (noun), popa—39
stewpan, cacerola—23
steward, camarero—17
still, todavía—25
sting, *inf.*, picar—31
stockings, medias—10
stomach, estómago—16
stop, *inf.*, to stop—14
store, tienda—10
store, *inf.*, almacenar—18
storekeeper, tendero—12
stork, cigüeña—34
storm, tormenta—25
story, piso—18; cuento—30
stout, gruesa—14
strainer, colador—23
straw, paja—10
straw hat, sombrero de paja—10
strawberry, fresa—7
street, calle—18
stretch, *inf.*, estirar—28
stretch out, *inf.*, alargar—36
strike, *inf.*, pegar—38
strike, huelga—27
strike one's head against, *inf.*, pegarse con la cabeza contra—38
strip, tira—38
stroke of apoplexy, ataque cerebral—37
strong, fuerte—24
student, *m., f.*, estudiante—21
struggle, *inf.*, luchar—36
struggle, lucha—25
study, *inf.*, estudiar—4; . . . (noun), estudio—21
subject (course of study), asignatura materia—40
subjunctive, subjuntivo—32
sublime poetry, poesía sublime—30
subterranean, subterráneo—23
subway train, tren subterráneo—23
success, éxito—21
such is life, así es la vida—13
suffer, *inf.*, sufrir—20
sugar, azúcar—8
sugar bowl, azucarera—8
suit of clothes, traje—10
summer, verano—15
summit, cima—40
sun, sol—19 and 26
Sunday, domingo—12
sunrise, salida del sol—26
sunset, puesta del sol—26
sup, *inf.*, cenar—17
superior, superiores—37
supper, cena—17
sure, seguro—37
surely, seguramente—34

surround, *inf.*, rodear—28
surroundings, alrededores—23
suspenders, tirantes—11
sustain, *inf.*, sostener—33
swallow, golondrina—33
swan, cisne—32
Swede, sueco—22
Sweden, Suecia—19
sweep, *inf.*, barrer—25
sweet potato, batata—8
sweetness, dulzura—30
Swiss, suizo—22
Switzerland, Suiza—19
swoon, desmayo—36
syllable, sílaba—3

T

table, mesa—8
tablecloth, mantel—8
tail, cola—33
tailor, sastre—34
take, *inf.*, tomar—4
take a seat, tome asiento—9
take a trip, *inf.*, hacer un viaje—27
take exercise, *inf.*, hacer ejercicio—24
take it please, sírvase—11
take leave, *inf.*, despedirse—38
take place, *inf.*, efectuarse—33
take the last examination, *inf.*, sufrir el último examen—40
take walks, *inf.*, dar paseos—24
talent, talento—27
talk through one's hat, hablar por los codos—27
talkative, hablador—27
talking machine, fonógrafo—23
tall, alto—14
taste, *inf.*, probar—27
taste (sense of), gusto—16
tea, te—4
teacher, maestro—21
teapot, tetera—23
tear, lágrima—25
teaspoon, cucharilla—8
teaspoonful, cucharadilla—24
telegram, telegrama—36
telegraph, telégrafo—36
telephone, teléfono—29
temperature, temperatura—19
temples (part of the body), sicnes—16
ten, diez—14
ten thousand, diez mil—15
tender, tierno—26
tennis, tenis—32
tenor, tenor—30
tense, tiempo—12
tenth, décima—10
tepid, tibia—19
terrible, terrible—38

- terrific explosion**, explosión formidable—36
thank you, gracias—10 and 11
that, que—3; esa—15
that which, lo que—8
the, el, la, los, las—3; lo—10
the awakening, el despertar—26
the chosen one of (his or) her heart, el elegido de su corazón—33
the day after to-morrow, pasado mañana—9
the day before yesterday, anteayer—12
the deuce! ¡caramba!—27
the future, lo futuro—25
the least doubt, la menor duda—29
the one who, el que—21
the other one, el otro—31
the same, la misma—15
the world is a farce, el mundo comedia es—30
theatre, teatro—19
theme, tema—4
then, entonces—24
there, allí—26; allá—28
there are, hay—8
there is, hay—8
there was, había—26
there will be complications, habrá complicaciones—37
thermometer, termómetro—40
these, estas—12; estos—37
they, ellos—4
thimble, dedal—10
thin, delgado—22
thing, cosa—7
think, *inf.*, pensar—24; opinar—27
third, tercero—3
thirst, sed—18
thirteen, trece—14
thirty, treinta—14
thirty-one, treinta y uno—15
thirty thousand, treinta mil—15
this, esta—11; este—12
this is self evident, esto salta a la vista—24
thorn, espina—28
those, aquellos—26; esos—32
though, aunque—34
thousands, miles—21
threatening, amenazando—38
three, tres—9
three hundred, trescientos—15
three hundred and sixty-five, trescientos sesenta y cinco—15
throat, garganta—16
throne, trono—40
throw oneself backwards, *inf.*, echarse hacia atrás—38
thumb, dedo pulgar—16
thunder, *inf.*, tronar—35
thunder, trueno—35
thunderbolt, rayo—35
Thursday, jueves—12
thus, así—11
ticket, billete—10
tied, atados—28
tiger, tigre—34
time, vez—5
tip, propina—17
tired, cansada—20
to, a—4
to him, le—14
to the, al—12
to-day, hoy—6
to-morrow, mañana—6
toast (noun), tostada—17
tobacco, tabaco—37
toe, dedo del pie—16
toilet articles, artículos de tocador—19
tomato, tomate—4
tongue, lengua—16
tonic, tónico—24
too much, demasiado—24
tooth, diente—16
tooth-brush, cepillo de dientes—19
tooth-paste, pasta dentífrica—19
tooth-pick, escarbadientes—8
tooth-powder, polvos de dientes—19
tortoise-shell, carey—35
total, total—36
touch (sense of), tacto—16
towards, hacia—38
towel, toalla—19
tower, torre—23
toy, juguete—29
tragédienne, actriz trágica—30
tragedy, tragedia—30
tragic, trágica—30
train, tren—10; . . . (of a dress), cola—33
tranquil, tranquila—18
translate, *inf.*, traducir—31
translation, traducción—28
translator, traductor—31
travel, *inf.*, viajar—10
tree, árbol—18
trigonometry, trigonometría—40
trip, viaje—27
trolley car, tranvía eléctrico—18
trombone, trombón—20
tropical, tropical—27
trouble, *inf.*, molestar—24
trouble, disgusto—37
trousers, pantalones—9
trousseau, ajuar de novia—33
trout, trucha—7
truly, verdaderamente—22
trunk, baúl—34
truth, verdad—11

Tuesday, martes—12
tulip, tulipán—20
tunny (or tuna) fish, atún—8
Turkey, Turquía—19
turkey, pavo—6
turkey with cranberry sauce, pavo con salsa de arándano—8
Turkish, turco—37
Turkish cigarette, cigarrillo turco—37
twelve, doce—14
twenty, veinte—14
twenty-eight, veintiocho—14
twenty-five, veinticinco—14
twenty-four, veinticuatro—14
twenty-nine, veintinueve—14
twenty-one, veintiuno—14
twenty-seven, veintisiete—14
twenty-six, veintiséis—14
twenty-thousand, veinte mil—15
twenty-three, veintitrés—14
twenty-two, veintidós—14
two, dos—9
two hundred, dos cientos—15
two years ago, hace dos años—29
typewrite, *inf.*, escribir a máquina—31

U

umbrella, paraguas—10
uncle, tío—13
uncomfortable, molesto—24
unconsciously, inconscientemente—28
under the care of, al cuidado de—24
under (or below) the eyes, bajo los ojos—32
undershirt, camiseta—9
understand, *inf.*, comprender—4
underwear, ropa interior—10
undoubtedly, indudablemente—32
unique, única—33
unite, *inf.*, unir—33
United States, Estados Unidos—3
university, universidad—23
until, hasta—9
until next week, hasta la semana próxima—9
until the day after to-morrow, hasta pasado mañana—9
until to-morrow, hasta mañana—9
upon feeling himself bitten, al sentirse mordido—38
Uruguay, Uruguay—13
Uruguayan, uruguayo—22
use, uso—26
use, *inf.*, emplear—9
useful, útil—4
utter a sharp cry, *inf.*, dar un grito agudo—38
uttering cries of anguish, dando ayes de angustia—38

V

vacation, vacación—40
valet, ayuda de cámara—17
valise, maleta—39
valley, valle—23
various, varios—13
veal chop, costilla de ternera—5
veal cutlet, chuleta de ternera—7
vegetable garden, huerta—26
vegetables, legumbres—5
vehicle, vehículo—34
veil, velo—11
vein, vena—16
velvet, terciopelo—25
velvet case, estuche de terciopelo—25
Venezuela, Venezuela—13
Venezuelan, venezolano—22
verb, verbo—11
veritable, verdadero—32
vermicelli (a kind of very thin spaghetti), fideos—9
very, muy—3
very much, muchísimo—10
very pleased to hear it, me alegro muchísimo—10
very small, pequeñito—35
very, very little one, chiquirritín—29
very well, thank you; and you?, muy bien, gracias, ¿y usted?—10
very well also, thank you, muy bien también, gracias—10
vest, chaleco—9
vestibule, vestíbulo—36
veterinarian, veterinario—21
vinegar, vinagre—8
violence, violencia—38
violently, violentamente—36
violet, violeta—20
violin, violín—20
violinist, violinista—30
visit, visita—37
visit, *inf.*, visitar—21
vocabulary, vocabulario—3
voice, voz—24
voracious, voraz—31
vow, voto—32
vowel, vocal—3

W

waist line, cintura—16
waiter, mozo—17
walk, *inf.*, andar—14
walk, paseo—24
walking stick, bastón—10
wall, pared—18
wallet, cartera de bolsillo—35
walnut, nuez—6
want, *inf.*, querer—17
wash, *inf.*, lavar—17

522 WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS USED IN THE LESSONS

- wash oneself, *inf.*, lavarse—19
 wash the dishes, *inf.*, fregar los platos—25
 washstand, lavabo—23
 Washington, Washington—3
 waste basket, cesto para papeles—28
 watch, reloj—14
 watch chain, cadena de reloj—37
 watch maker, relojero—14
 water, agua—4
 watermelon, sandía—7
 wave, ola—39
 way, camino—25
 we, nosotros—4
 weak attack, débil ataque—38
 wear for the first time, *inf.*, estrenar—27
 weather, tiempo—12 and 19
 weathercock or vane, veleta—23
 wedding, boda—33
 Wednesday, miércoles—12
 week, semana—12
 weight, peso—39
 well, bien—3
 west, oeste—23
 whale, ballena—39
 wharf, muelle—39
 what, qué, lo que—8
 what is the good news?, ¿qué cuenta usted de bueno?—27
 what time is it? ¿qué hora es?—14
 wheat, trigo—35
 when, cuando (cuándo, interrogative)—4
 whenever, siempre que—29
 where, donde (dónde, interrogative)—3
 which, cual (cuál, interrogative; plural, cuáles)—12
 which are so rich, que son tan ricas—39
 which is going to take it, que va a llevarlo—39
 while, mientras—11
 while going, al andar—39
 whisk-broom, escobilla—11
 whisper, *inf.*, cuchichear—28
 whistle, *inf.*, silbar—38
 white, blanca—10
 white lily, azucena—20
 who, quien (quién, interrogative)—3
 who is it? ¿quién es?—36
 whose, cuya—29
 why, por qué—4
 wide, ancha—14
 widow, viuda—31
 wild boar, jabalí—34
 wild flower, flor silvestre—26
 wind, viento—19
 wind up, *inf.*, dar cuerda—14
 window, ventana—18
 windowpane, vidrio de ventana—36
 windowshade, transparente (noun)—23
 wing, ala—39
 wink, *inf.*, guiñar—28
 winter, invierno—15
 wish, *inf.*, desear—4
 with, con—4
 with certainty, a ciencia cierta—29
 with me, conmigo—13
 with much pleasure, con mucho gusto—11
 with your permission, con su permiso—9
 within me, en mí—26
 without, sin—4
 without appetite, inapetente—38
 without one arm or hand, manco—31
 witness, testigo—37
 woe is me, my daughter!, ¡ay, hija mía!—39
 woes of anguish, ayes de angustia—38
 wolf, lobo—34
 woman, mujer—17
 wonderful, maravilloso—40
 wonderful ease, facilidad pasmosa—33
 wonderful rider, jinete maravilloso—40
 wood, madera—18
 wool, lana—26
 word, palabra—3
 work, *inf.*, trabajar—21
 workbasket, costurero—25
 world, mundo—13
 worries, preocupaciones—39
 worse, peor—40
 worthy, digna—24
 wrist, muñeca—16
 write, *inf.*, escribir—21
 write in shorthand, *inf.*, escribir taquígráficamente—31
 writing desk, escritorio—28
 writing paper, papel de cartas—10
- Y
- year, año—12
 yellow, amarillo—21
 yes, sí—3
 yesterday, ayer—12
 you (polite form sing.), usted—3
 you (familiar form sing.), tú—4
 you (familiar form plur.), vosotros—4
 you are welcome, no hay de qué—11
 you express, usted expresa—3
 young, adj., joven—25
 young lady, joven—25
 young man, joven—25
 youngest son, hijo menor—27
 yours, suyo—13
- Z
- zoölogical garden, jardín zoológico—32

MAR 2 1922

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 211 027 7

